Contents

Preface  v

The English Verb  1
► Summaries of verb formation, tense usage, complementation, and phrasal verbs

Verb Forms and Tense Usage  1
  The Six Basic Verb Forms  1
    Base Form  1
    Present  2
    Past  3
    Infinitive  4
    Present Participle  4
    Past Participle  5
  Tense Formation and Usage  5
    The Three Simple Tenses  5
    The Three Perfect Tenses  7
    The Three Progressive Tenses  8
    The Intensive Tenses  9
  The Passive Voice  9

Guide to Conjugations  10
Guide to Complements and Phrasal Verbs  11

Verb Complements  12
  Complement Types  13
    Single Grammatical Element Complements  13
    Multiple Grammatical Element Complements  14

Phrasal Verbs  14
  Separable and Inseparable Phrasal Verbs  15
  The Most Common Phrasal Particles  17

Expressions  18

555 Conjugated Verbs  19
► Alphabetically ordered, with complements, phrasal verbs, and expressions

  Top 40 Verbs: Full page of examples adjoining select conjugation/complement pages

Irregular Verb Form Index  616
► Index showing the base form of all irregular verb forms in the book
This page intentionally left blank
Preface

The Big Book of English Verbs provides more information on the most important verbs in the English language than any other book ever written. It contains basic conjugations and comprehensive usage patterns for 152 irregular verbs (all the irregular verbs that you will probably encounter), plus 403 of the most commonly used regular verbs: 555 verbs in all, with more than 14,000 example sentences.

No other book provides these unique features:

A complete listing of the complements for each verb

Verb complements are grammatical structures that verbs use to make correct, meaningful sentences. English has 18 basic complements, plus dozens of combinations of these. For instance, the verb help, when it means “assist, support,” may use two complements together: an object and an infinitive. The infinitive, however, must be in its base form, that is, used without the to that normally accompanies an infinitive.

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE We helped the staff answer the phones.

Most English learners, even advanced ones, make the mistake of using to with the infinitive, because that is the more common complement. The Big Book of English Verbs is the only book that provides the correct complement in a useful format.

A listing of the important phrasal verb constructions for each verb

Phrasal verbs are idiomatic combinations of verbs plus adverbs or prepositions. For example, the phrasal verb go off can mean “to explode,” even though nothing in the meaning of go or off would lead you to expect this meaning.

Moreover, there are important grammatical differences between phrasal verbs that consist of a verb + an adverb (separable phrasal verbs) and those that consist of a verb + a preposition (inseparable phrasal verbs). If the second element in a phrasal verb is an adverb, the adverb can (and in some cases must) be placed after the object. If the second element is a preposition, however, it can never be moved away from the verb. The Big Book of English Verbs not only gives the meaning of every phrasal verb, but also indicates which combinations are separable and which are inseparable.

We’ve also included a CD-ROM, which contains self-assessment tests on verb tenses, verb complements, and phrasal verbs, as well as five sets of exercises featuring verb use issues that are difficult for English learners.

We are pleased to provide the keys that unlock the English verb system for English learners worldwide.

Mark Lester
Daniel Franklin
Terry Yokota
The English Verb

VERB FORMS AND TENSE USAGE

The Six Basic Verb Forms

Six basic verb forms are used to create the entire tense system of English: base form, present, past, infinitive, present participle, and past participle. These forms are illustrated in the following chart by the regular verb *walk* and the irregular verb *fly*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Base Form</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past Participles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base Form</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>walked</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walks</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>to walk</td>
<td>to fly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle</td>
<td>walking</td>
<td>flying</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>walked</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See “Guide to Conjugations” on page 10.

Base Form

The base form of a verb is its form in a dictionary entry. For example, if you looked up *sang*, the dictionary would refer you to the base form *sing*.

The base form is also the source (or base) for the present (with a few exceptions), infinitive, and present participle of the verb, whether the verb is regular or irregular.

The base form is used as a verb in three ways.

1. It follows certain helping verbs, the most important being the modal auxiliary verbs, or modals for short: *can/could, may/might, will/would, shall/should*, and *must* (Modal verbs themselves have no base form, infinitive, present participle, or past participle; they have only present and past forms.) Note the base form of the verb *be* in the following sentences.

   I may be a little late.
   He will be in New York all week.
   You must be more careful.

   Other verbs followed by the base form of a verb include *dare* (with *not*), *need* (with *not*), and *help*.

   We need not be silent on the issue.

2. The base form is used in imperatives (commands).

   Be good!
   Come here, please.
   Oh, stop it!

3. Less commonly, the base form is used as a complement of certain verbs.

   **OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE**
   We made **them** be quiet.
   My parents helped **me** be a success.

   A base-form infinitive is an infinitive minus the *to*. If an infinitive including the word *to* were substituted for the base-form infinitive in the first example above, the resulting sentence would be ungrammatical.

   *X* We made **them to be** quiet.
VERB FORMS AND TENSE USAGE

Present
With the sole exception of the verb be, the present form of all verbs is derived directly from the base form. The main difference between the present and base forms is that the third-person singular present form adds -s or -es to the base form of the verb; all other present forms are identical to the base form.

The base form of be is different from all of its present tense forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FIRST PERSON</strong></td>
<td><strong>SECOND PERSON</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>you are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are</td>
<td>you are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both the pronunciation and the spelling of the third-person singular present ending are predictable. If the base form ends in a sibilant sound (s, z, x, sh, ch, tch, or j (as in judge)), the ending is pronounced as a separate syllable rhyming with buzz. The ending is spelled -es, unless the base form already ends in -e, in which case only -s is added.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>THIRD-PERSON SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>BASE FORM</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buzz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>budge</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the base form ends in a voiceless consonant sound other than a sibilant, the ending is pronounced /s/ and is spelled -es. (The voiceless consonants are usually spelled with a p, t, ck, k, f, or gh (when pronounced /f/).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>HELP</strong></th>
<th><strong>COLLECT</strong></th>
<th><strong>BACK</strong></th>
<th><strong>PARK</strong></th>
<th><strong>SCOFF</strong></th>
<th><strong>LAUGH</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>helps</td>
<td>collect</td>
<td>collects</td>
<td>back</td>
<td>backs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the base form ends in a voiced consonant other than a sibilant or in a pronounced vowel (as opposed to a silent final -e), the ending is pronounced /z/ and is spelled -s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>ABSORB</strong></th>
<th><strong>FORBID</strong></th>
<th><strong>DIG</strong></th>
<th><strong>LOVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>SWIM</strong></th>
<th><strong>JOIN</strong></th>
<th><strong>FEEL</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAY</strong></th>
<th><strong>AGREE</strong></th>
<th><strong>CRY</strong></th>
<th><strong>OWE</strong></th>
<th><strong>ARGUE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>absorb</td>
<td>absorbs</td>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>forbids</td>
<td>dig</td>
<td>digs</td>
<td>love</td>
<td>loves</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swims</td>
<td>join</td>
<td>joins</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that if the base form ends in -y without a preceding vowel, the -y changes to -ie before the -s ending (see cry above).
A few verbs have irregular third-person singular present forms.

- be: is
- have: has

Two verbs have irregular pronunciations in the third-person singular present form.

- do: does (rhymes with buzz)
- say: says (rhymes with fez)

**Past**

There are two types of past forms: regular and irregular.

Regular verbs form the past tense by adding -ed to the base form (or simply -d if the base form already ends in -e).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE FORM</th>
<th>REGULAR PAST FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>opened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move</td>
<td>moved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>placed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The regular past ending has three different, but completely predictable, pronunciations. If the base form ends in a /t/ or /d/ sound, the -ed is pronounced as a separate syllable rhyming with bud.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE FORM</th>
<th>PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS A SEPARATE SYLLABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adopt</td>
<td>adopted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vote</td>
<td>voted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decide</td>
<td>decided</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depend</td>
<td>depended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the base form ends in a voiceless consonant sound other than /t/, the -ed is pronounced /t/. The final voiceless consonants are usually spelled with a p, ck, k, s, sh, ch, tch, x, f, or gh (when pronounced /f/).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE FORM</th>
<th>PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS /t/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tap</td>
<td>tapped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attack</td>
<td>attacked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss</td>
<td>missed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish</td>
<td>wished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match</td>
<td>matched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mix</td>
<td>mixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cough</td>
<td>coughed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that if the base form ends in a single consonant preceded by a stressed short vowel, the consonant is usually doubled to form the past: permit ~ permitted, stop ~ stopped.

If the base form ends in a pronounced vowel or in a voiced consonant sound other than /d/, the -ed is pronounced /d/. The voiced consonants are usually spelled with a b, g, z, j, m, n, l, or r.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE FORM</th>
<th>PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS /d/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tie</td>
<td>tied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>enjoyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judge</td>
<td>judged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kill</td>
<td>killed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care</td>
<td>cared</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that if the base form ends in -y without a preceding vowel, the -y changes to -ie before the -d ending (cry ~ cried). Also note the spellings of the past forms of lay and pay: laid and paid, respectively.
The past forms of irregular verbs reflect older patterns of forming the past tense. These patterns have merged to such an extent that it is not practical to learn the past forms of irregular verbs on the basis of their historical patterns. Similarities exist, however, in how some irregular verbs form the past tense.

**Vowel change ring**
- ring  rang  sing  sang

**Vowel change + -d**
- sell  sold  tell  told

**No change**
- bet  bet  put  put  rid  rid

Following are the past forms of the ten most common verbs in English, all irregular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE FORM</th>
<th>PAST FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said  (rhymes with fed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**
The infinitive of a verb consists of to + its base form. There are no exceptions—even the verb be is regular: to be.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE FORM</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>to walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>to fly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>to do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infinitives are used as complements of certain verbs.

- I would like to meet your friend.
- They invited us to stay for dinner.

**Present Participle**
The present participle is formed by adding -ing to the base form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE FORM</th>
<th>PRESENT PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>doing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that if a verb ends in a single consonant preceded by a stressed short vowel, the consonant is usually doubled: bet ~ betting, dig ~ digging, drop ~ dropping, refer ~ referring, rid ~ ridding. If a verb ends in silent -e, the -e is dropped before the -ing ending: observe ~ observing, rule ~ ruling, write ~ writing.

The present participle is used in two ways. By far the more common is after a form of the verb be in the progressive tenses.

- The kids were walking to the beach.
- I am flying to Chicago tomorrow.

Less common is the present participle's use as a complement of certain verbs.

- I hate doing the dishes every night.
- I saw Holly talking to Christopher.
Past Participles

There are two types of past participles: regular and irregular. Regular past participles are formed in exactly the same way as the regular past, that is, by adding -ed to the base form. To distinguish the two forms, remember that the past form can occur by itself, but the past participle almost always occurs after a form of be or have.

Like irregular past forms, irregular past participle forms are unpredictable. There is one generalization, however, we can make about them. In older periods of English, most irregular past participles ended in -en. Today, about one third of irregular past participles still retain this -en ending. Thus, if an irregular verb form has an -en (or -n) ending, we know it is a past participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BASE FORM</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past participles are used in three ways in English.

1. They are used in the perfect tenses after the helping verb have.

   They have flown in from Pittsburgh for the wedding.
   We had walked over to meet some friends.
   He will have raised $200.

2. Past participles are used in passive sentences after the helping verb be.

   Motorists are being stopped at the border.
   Her play was seen by thousands of people.

3. Much less common is the past participle's use as a complement of certain verbs.

   We need the car taken to the garage for an oil change.

Tense Formation and Usage

The term tense can have several different meanings, but we use tense to refer to any of the nine different verb constructions that result when the three logical time divisions (present, past, and future) are integrated with the three aspect categories of verbs (simple, perfect, and progressive—simple here means that it is not perfect or progressive). These nine tenses are illustrated in the following chart, with first-person singular forms of walk and fly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>PERFECT</th>
<th>PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td>I walk</td>
<td>I have walked</td>
<td>I am walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I fly</td>
<td>I have flown</td>
<td>I am flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>I walked</td>
<td>I had walked</td>
<td>I was walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I flew</td>
<td>I had flown</td>
<td>I was flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>I will walk</td>
<td>I will have walked</td>
<td>I will be walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I will fly</td>
<td>I will have flown</td>
<td>I will be flying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Three Simple Tenses

PRESENT TENSE

The most confusing feature of the present tense for English learners is that the simple present tense does not actually signify present time. Its three main uses are the following: (1) making factual statements and generalizations, (2) describing habitual actions, and (3) describing predictable future events or actions.

1. The simple present tense is used to state objective facts that are not restricted by time.
A mile is 5,280 feet. The Mississippi River drains the center of the North American continent. Similarly, the simple present tense is used to state facts that are true for the foreseeable future.

We live on Elm Street. This sentence means, “We have not always lived on Elm Street, and at some point in the future, we may move. Nevertheless, it is our current intention to remain living on Elm Street indefinitely.” Contrast this sentence with the following one, which uses the present progressive tense.

We are living on Elm Street. This sentence means, “We are only living on Elm Street temporarily, and we expect to move eventually.”

The simple present tense is also used to make generalizations that are considered valid for the foreseeable future.

I hate spinach. Smoking causes cancer.

(2) The simple present tense is used to describe habitual actions.

Bob checks his e-mail first thing in the morning. This sentence describes what Bob normally does first thing in the morning. It does not mean that Bob is checking his e-mail now, at this very moment. The sentence would still be valid if Bob were on vacation and hadn't checked his e-mail in a week.

(3) The simple present tense is often used for near-future events or actions that one expects to happen.

Our flight leaves at nine. I return home on Sunday.

Note that the simple present tense is not used for uncertain future events. For example, it is not used to describe future weather.

It rains tomorrow.

PAST TENSE

The simple past tense describes an event or action that was completed before the present moment in time; that is, the event or action has already taken place. The past tense can refer to a single point in past time.

We moved into our house on September 5, 1980.

The past tense can also refer to a span of time in the past, as long as it was completed before the present.

Janet worked in sales for nearly ten years.

This sentence means that Janet is no longer working in sales at this time.

In addition, the simple past tense has inherited one of the functions of the subjunctive from older periods of English: indicating that the speaker is talking hypothetically or even contrary to fact. This hypothetical use of the past tense does not indicate past time. Its most common use is in if-clauses.

If I were you, I would be sure that I was finished on time.

The use of were rather than the expected was survives from an old subjunctive form. Notice also that the other two verbs in the sentence are in the past tense, even though the sentence does not refer to past time.
FUTURE TENSE
The simple future tense consists of the helping verb will followed by the base form of the main verb.

I will take a taxi to the airport.
They will be disappointed if you don't see them.

The helping verb will is one of the nine modal auxiliary verbs: can/could, may/might, will/would, shall/should, and must. Although will is used to form the future tense, any of the other eight modals can refer to future time.

I can take a cab to the airport.
I could take a cab to the airport.
I may take a cab to the airport.
I must take a cab to the airport.

Each of the nine modals has its own range of meanings, allowing English speakers to make a number of subtly different statements about the possibility, certainty, desirability, or necessity of a future action.

The Three Perfect Tenses
The three perfect tenses consist of a form of the helping verb have followed by the past participle of the main verb. The present tense form of have is used for the present perfect, the past tense form for the past perfect, and the future tense form for the future perfect.

PRESENT PERFECT TENSE
The present perfect tense consists of have or has followed by the past participle of the main verb. This tense is used to describe an action that began in the past and has continued up to the present time, with the implication that it will continue into the future. The best way to understand the present perfect tense is to compare it to the past tense.

John lived in Los Angeles for five years.
John has lived in Los Angeles for five years.

According to the past tense sentence, John no longer lives in Los Angeles; he has moved. According to the present perfect tense sentence, John still lives in Los Angeles and is expected to continue living there into the foreseeable future.

PAST PERFECT TENSE
The past perfect tense consists of had followed by the past participle of the main verb. The most common use of this tense is to emphasize that an event in the past was completed before a more recent event took place.

My parents had left for the airport before my plane landed.

This sentence describes two past-time events. The first event is the parents’ leaving for the airport, and the second event is the plane landing. The use of the past perfect tense makes it clear that the first event was completed before the second one occurred. Note that the events can also be stated in reverse order.

Before my plane landed, my parents had left for the airport.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE
The future perfect tense consists of will have followed by the past participle of the main verb. This tense, which is rarely used, describes a future action or event that must be completed before a second future action, event, or time. The following sentence uses the future perfect tense to describe an event completed before a second event.

The game will have started before we get to the stadium.
Note that the two events can also be stated in reverse order.

Before we get to the stadium, the game will have started.

The following sentence uses the future perfect tense to describe an action completed before a specific time in the future.

They will have finished by noon.

The Three Progressive Tenses

The progressive tenses consist of a form of the helping verb be followed by the present participle of the main verb. The present progressive uses the present tense of be, the past progressive uses the past tense of be, and the future progressive uses the future tense of be.

The progressive tenses are used to describe an action in progress (hence the name *progressive*) at some present, past, or future time.

Present Progressive Tense

The present progressive tense consists of *am, are,* or *is* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense can describe an action at the precise moment that the sentence is spoken.

Turn the TV down! I am talking on the phone.

The present progressive tense can also refer to a span of time that includes the present.

Global warming is causing climate change.

In addition, the tense is often used to describe future plans or events.

We are going to Paris this June.

Hurry, the taxi is coming in 10 minutes.

Past Progressive Tense

The past progressive tense consists of *was* or *were* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense refers to an action that took place at or during some time in the past, whether it occurred at a specific moment or during a span of time in the past.

I was working at my desk by 9 o’clock.

During the game, he was talking on his cell phone.

The time in the past can be defined by another event.

We were working in the garden when we heard the news.

The past progressive tense can also be used in an adverbial clause.

We heard the news while we were working in the garden.

Future Progressive Tense

The future progressive tense consists of *will be* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense describes an activity that will occur at some time in the future, whether it will occur at a specific moment or, more commonly, during a span of time in the future.

Their plane will be landing at 6:35.

During the school year, I will be living on campus.

Often, the future time is defined by a present tense adverbial clause.

We will be staying in a motel while they remodel the kitchen.
The Intensive Tenses
The so-called intensive tenses consist of a form of the helping verb *do* followed by the base form of the main verb. The present intensive tense is formed with *do* or *does*, and the past intensive tense is formed with *did*. There is no future intensive tense, nor is the intensive used in the progressive tenses.

The intensive tenses are used in three ways.
(1) They emphasize the fact that the action of the verb is or was actually performed.

   She *does like* going to the opera.
   I *did arrive* on time.

(2) The intensive tenses are used with *not* to form the negative of the simple present and past tenses.

   They *do not go* to the library anymore.
   We *did not see* Larry at the mall.

(3) The intensive tenses are used to ask simple yes/no questions.

   *Does* the teacher *color* her hair?
   *Did* all the children *finish* the assignment?

The Passive Voice
In traditional grammar, verbs have *voice*. Voice is determined by whether the subject is the performer of the action of the verb (active voice) or the receiver of the action (passive voice). Compare the following sentences.

**active voice** The dog *bit* the man.
**passive voice** The man *was bitten* by the dog.

In the active voice sentence, the subject (the dog) performs the action of biting. In the passive voice sentence, the subject (the man) does not perform the action of biting; instead, he is the receiver of the action. The *by* phrase is not necessary and is, in fact, usually not used.

The passive voice is easily recognized, because it uses a form of the helping verb *be* immediately followed by the past participle form of the main verb—a combination found only in passive voice sentences.

**present tense passive** Our flight *is canceled*.
**past tense passive** Our flight *was canceled*.
**future tense passive** Our flight *will be canceled*.

The progressive tenses may be used in the passive voice, although the future progressive tense usually sounds awkward.

**present progressive tense passive** Our car *is being washed*.
**past progressive tense passive** Our car *was being washed*.
**future progressive tense passive** Our car *will be being washed*.

The passive voice has two primary uses.
(1) It is used to switch attention from the subject of an active voice sentence to another part of the sentence (usually, but not always, the direct object).

   **active voice** The authors sent the manuscript to Marisa.
   **passive voice** The manuscript *was sent* to Marisa.
   **passive voice** Marisa *was sent* the manuscript.

(2) The passive voice is used when the performer of the verb’s action is not known.

   This beer was brewed in St. Louis, Missouri.
   The car was stolen yesterday afternoon.
### GUIDE TO CONJUGATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Base Form</th>
<th>Principal Parts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>sends · sent · have sent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Present Tense
- **I** send
- **we** send
- **you** send
- **he/she/it** sends

#### Past Tense
- **I** sent
- **we** sent
- **you** sent
- **he/she/it** sent

#### Present Progressive
- **I am sending**
- **you are sending**
- **he/she/it is sending**

#### Past Progressive
- **I was sending**
- **you were sending**
- **he/she/it was sending**

#### Present Perfect
- ... have | has sent

#### Past Perfect
- ... had sent

#### Future Tense
- ... will send

#### Future Progressive
- ... will be sending

#### Future Perfect
- ... will have sent

### Examples
- The firm sends letters by registered mail.
- They sent us a nice note.
- The letter was sent to the wrong address.

### Additional Information
1. This is the verb number.
2. This is the base form of the verb. If this were a Top 40 Verb, there would be an additional page for Complements, Phrasal Verbs, and Expressions, and both pages would have a Top 40 Verb icon at the bottom.
3. These are the principal parts of the verb: present | third-person singular present - past - past perfect (containing the past participle).
4. This indicates whether a verb forms its past and past participle regularly. Some verbs, like *shine* (No. 443), have both regular and irregular forms.
5. Five tense paradigms are shown in the table format familiar to most English learners, where row and column represent verb person and number, respectively. These five tenses were chosen because they are the most frequently used.
6. Some verbs are never used in the progressive tenses, like *belong* (No. 58); others are rarely used in these tenses, like *prefer* (No. 353). For these verbs, the progressive forms are not given. We only show forms that an English learner might be expected to use in ordinary conversation or writing.
7. An example sentence is supplied for each tense shown.
8. The forms for these five tenses are displayed in single lines with no pronouns. Thus, all nine simple, progressive, and perfect tenses in the active voice are shown (see pages 5–9), plus the most frequently used passive tense.
9. Some verbs are never used in the passive voice, like *amount* (No. 25); no forms are given for these. Other verbs cannot have a personal subject in the passive voice, like *achieve* (No. 8); only *it* and *they* forms are given for these. Some writers, of course, may use these personal passive forms in highly figurative or poetic senses. However, because an English learner might be led to use these forms incorrectly, we do not show them. Some verbs are only used in the passive voice when they are part of a phrasal verb, like *dream* (No. 163). Because this is a valid use of the passive, all forms are shown for these verbs.
**GUIDE TO COMPLEMENTS AND PHRASAL VERBS**

1. This meaning of *pour* requires no complement.

2. The blank line indicates that this meaning of *pour* requires a complement. Either the single complement **OBJECT** or the double complement **INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT** may be used.

3. The object in the example sentence is bold.

4. One element in a double complement is italicized to distinguish the two complements. The **INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT** construction may have a **FOR PARAPHRASE**, as shown below.

5. The direct object is bold, and the indirect object is bold italic (corresponding to the italic in the complement name).

6. An example sentence in the passive voice uses bold italic to indicate the second element of a double complement.

7. This use of *pour* as a phrasal verb requires no complement. Several phrasal verb particles are possible in this construction.

8. This use of *pour* as a phrasal verb requires a complement. The **SEP** on the blank line indicates that the phrasal verb is separable (see page 15).

9. This use of *pour* as a phrasal verb requires a complement. The blank line without **SEP** indicates that the phrasal verb is inseparable (see page 15).

Complement types are not identified in the Phrasal Verbs section, since virtually every complement of a phrasal verb functions as an object of the verb, whether it is an **OBJECT**, **REFLEXIVE PRONOUN**, or **PRESENT PARTICIPLE**. Bold and bold italic are not used in examples sentences in the Phrasal Verbs section.

The Expressions section (not shown here) includes a blank line for a required complement.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

1. **Pour** *fall/flow steadily* **[OF A LIQUID]**
   - It has been pouring all night.
   - The milk was pouring down the baby’s chin.

2. **Pour** *fill a glass/cup with* **[A LIQUID]**, **serve** **[A LIQUID]**
   - Please pour the wine, will you?
   - Don’t pour the coffee until the guests arrive.

3. **Pour** **OBJECT**
   - We poured the children some lemonade.
   - The hostess poured everyone a glass of wine.
   - We poured some lemonade for the children.
   - The hostess poured a glass of wine for everyone.

4. **Pour** **INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT** **FOR PARAPHRASE**
   - I poured the marinade over the meat.
   - He poured the water down the drain.
   - She carefully poured the medicine into the dispenser.
   - The unused olive oil was poured back into the bottle.

5. **Pour** **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**
   - The levee collapsed, and the floodwater poured in.
   - Pour the milk back into the jug.
   - Fans poured into the stadium.
   - After being laid off, he poured himself into finding a new job.

6. **Pour** **PASSIVE**
   - The milk is past its expiration date; we need to pour it out.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**
VERB COMPLEMENTS

We use the term complement as a collective word for all the different grammatical structures required by verbs to make a grammatical sentence. Complement is much broader than the term transitive. In traditional grammar, a transitive verb must be followed by a direct or indirect object. The term complement, however, includes not only objects, but predicate adjectives, predicate nouns, several types of infinitives and clauses, and several types of adverbs. A verb may require one complement or more than one complement to make a grammatical sentence. Many intransitive verbs require no complement at all, for example, the intransitive verb cried in John cried.

The verb put with the sense "place, set" takes the double complement object + adverb of place, illustrated by the following sentence.

I put my keys on the dresser.

If either complement is deleted, the sentence is ungrammatical.

I put on the dresser.
I put my keys.

When you use the verb put to mean "place, set," you must put something (an object) somewhere (an adverb of place).

Most English verbs may be used with more than one type of complement. The choice of complement type is determined by the particular meaning of a verb. If the meaning of the verb changes, the complement type(s) may change too, and vice versa: If the complement type changes, the verb's meaning often changes.

To illustrate the interconnection between verb meaning and complement type, consider the complements for the verb argue.

argue disagree, quarrel They argue all the time.
argue debate
OBJECT
The justices argued the issue.
argue assert, try to prove by giving reasons
OBJECT
Vince argued his case before the judge.
THAT-CLAUSE
Vince argued that he was innocent.

There are as many entries for a verb as there are distinct meanings, three in the case of argue. Each entry has its own group of complements that can be used with that particular meaning, including the possibility of no complement, as in the first entry for argue.

If a verb is followed by a blank line (____), the verb with that particular meaning requires an actual complement to make the sentence grammatical. The types of complements that the meaning requires are given in small capital letters as subentries. For example, the third meaning of argue (assert, try to prove by giving reasons) can take either of two different complements: an object or a that-clause (a noun clause beginning with that). To the right of the complement type are one or more sentences illustrating use of the complement. The words of the sentence that correspond to the complement are in bold.

Using the third entry for argue, his case is an example of an object complement and that he was innocent is an example of a that-clause complement. (See "Guide to Complements and Phrasal Verbs" on the previous page.)

If a verb is not followed by a blank line, it is intransitive, that is, it does not require an actual complement to make the sentence grammatical. In this book, the intransitive meanings of a verb are listed before the meanings that require actual complements. In the example of argue, the fact that the first meaning (disagree, quarrel) is not followed by a blank line means that the verb with this particular meaning is intransitive. In the example sentence They argue all the time, the adverbial expression all the time is not obligatory; the sentence would still be grammatical if we deleted it.
They argue.

Most of the complement types in this book will be familiar to you, but some may require further explanation. Following is a list of special terms that you will encounter in the description of complements.

**THAT-CLAUSE** This is a noun clause beginning with *that*.

I thought **that dinner was good, but a little too heavy**.

**BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE** The verb in the THAT-CLAUSE is in its uninflected base form and does not need to agree with the subject. For example, *be* in the following THAT-CLAUSE does not agree with its subject *defendant*.

The court ordered **that the defendant be kept in jail**.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE** This term includes both present participles and gerunds (present participles modified by a possessive noun or pronoun).

I hated **leaving so early**. (PRESENT PARTICIPLE)
I hated **John’s leaving so early**. (GERUND)

**WH-CLAUSE** This is a noun clause beginning with a *wh*-word (*who, whom, whose, what, which, when, where, why, and how (which does not actually begin with wh)*)

as well as compounds of these words (*whatever, whomever, whoever, etc.*)

Did you hear **who won the game**?
We will grow **what sells the best**.
They will hire **whoever is the most qualified**.

**WH-INFINITIVE** This is a noun clause beginning with a *wh*-word followed by an infinitive.

Raymond asked him **what to do next**.
I told them **where to go**.

## Complement Types

This book uses 18 basic, or single-element, complement types, which appear in bold in the example sentences. Many of these basic complement types can be combined and used together. If two complements are used, one complement (usually the first) is in bold and the other in bold italic.

### Single Grammatical Element Complements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complement Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adverb of Time</td>
<td>The presentation will last <strong>fifty minutes</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb of Place</td>
<td>He always stays <strong>in town</strong> during the week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb of Place To/From</td>
<td>The refugees fled <strong>into the woods</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb of Manner</td>
<td>The children behaved <strong>badly</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object</td>
<td>I hurt <strong>my elbow</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For/in/of/to/etc. Object</td>
<td>Haste always results <strong>in confusion</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The bill amounted <strong>to $137.50</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflexive Pronoun</td>
<td>I flung <strong>myself</strong> into jazz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predicate Noun</td>
<td>Her father was <strong>a famous artist</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predicate Adjective</td>
<td>The moon was <strong>bright</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td>We would like <strong>to meet your friends</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That-Clause</td>
<td>We soon discovered <strong>that we had made a mistake</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base-Form That-Clause</td>
<td>The doctor recommended <strong>that Mr. Smith be kept overnight for observation</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We will soon know who will get the job.

We will soon know where the new office will be.

The teacher explained where to get the information.

The teacher explained how to do it.

He asked if we were ready.

I hate (our) leaving in the middle of a meeting.

We felt overwhelmed by the experience.

“Good morning,” she said. “We’re glad you’re here.”

We left the children at home.

He drove us to the station.

A policeman directed the traffic onto a side street.

The driver gave us directions.

He did us a big favor.

The driver gave directions to us.

He did a big favor for us.

They called the idea a stroke of genius.

They called the idea silly.

They invited us to stay for dinner.

We helped them answer the phones.

He persuaded the jury that his client was innocent.

He urged John that he reconsider his decision.

I told my friends what they should expect.

I told my friends what to expect.

I hate him complaining about everything.

We need the filter changed in our furnace.

Business has picked up since Christmas.

Would you pick us up at seven?

I picked up Italian over the summer.

You must pick up your room before going out to play.

None of the ordinary meanings of pick and up indicate that these words used together would have the meanings above. That is why we call phrasal verbs idiomatic.

English abounds with phrasal verbs. In fact, there are many more phrasal verbs in English than nonphrasal verbs. Because they are idiomatic, phrasal verbs can be difficult for English learners.
Not all verb + particle combinations are phrasal verbs. In some cases, the particle is used as a preposition that doesn't change the basic meaning of the verb. _Arrange for_ is an example.

**arrange**  
_plan, cause something to happen_  
(for) **OBJECT**  
They will arrange (for) a celebration.

_for OBJECT + INFINITIVE_  
He arranged **for John to visit them in Chicago**.

In the first sentence above, _for_ is optional. In the second sentence, _for_ is obligatory, but it doesn't change the meaning of _arrange_. For this reason, _arrange for_ is not considered a phrasal verb, and it is included in the Complements section instead.

Some verbs must always be used with a particular preposition; for example, _amount_ is always used with _to_.

**amount**  
_add up_  
to **OBJECT**  
The bill amounted to $137.50.

to **WH-CLAUSE**  
It amounted to however much you could afford.

Since _amount_ must always be used with _to_, _amount to_ is included in the Complements section.

### Separable and Inseparable Phrasal Verbs

Many phrasal verbs take no object.

- **settle down**  
_establish a home_  
Our son eventually settled down in south St. Louis.

- **swim off**  
_swim in the opposite direction_  
After we fed the dolphins, they swam off.

For these phrasal verbs, the particle must be placed immediately after the verb.

Most phrasal verbs, however, take an object. For some of these, the particle can be placed after the object—away from the verb—and for others, the particle must be placed after the verb. There are no simple rules for determining whether the particle is placed after the verb or after the object.

Generally, if the particle is considered a preposition, it must be placed after the verb; this type of phrasal verb is called **inseparable**. However, if the particle is considered an adverb, it can, and sometimes must, be placed after the object; this type of phrasal verb is called **separable**. Most phrasal verbs are separable.

| **INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERB** | My brother _depended on_ his car. ("rely on") |
| **SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERB** | My brother _turned on_ his car. ("switch on") |

In the first example, _on_ is considered a preposition, and therefore it cannot be placed after the object _his car_.

_X_ My brother _depended_ his car _on_.

In the second example, _on_ is considered an adverb, and therefore it can be placed after the object _his car_.

My brother _turned_ his car _on_.

For separable phrasal verbs, the particle can be placed after the verb or after the object. There is an important exception, however: If the object is a pronoun, the particle _MUST_ be placed after the object.

| **SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERB** | My brother _turned it on_. |
| **SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERB** | _X_ My brother _turned on_ it. |

You can test whether a phrasal verb is separable or inseparable by using a pronoun as its object. If the particle _MUST_ be placed after the pronoun object, the phrasal verb is separable; otherwise, it is inseparable.
Note that if the object of a separable phrasal verb is a long noun phrase, it is better to place the particle after the verb.

Don't throw away the lamp that I spent four hours fixing.

Don't throw the lamp that I spent four hours fixing away.

You can often determine whether a phrasal verb is separable by knowing whether the particle is considered an adverb or a preposition. In the preceding examples, on is used both as a preposition (depend on) and as an adverb (turn on). However, some particles are almost always used as prepositions; these generally form inseparable phrasal verbs.

You can often determine whether a phrasal verb is separable by knowing whether the particle is considered an adverb or a preposition. In the preceding examples, on is used both as a preposition (depend on) and as an adverb (turn on). However, some particles are almost always used as prepositions; these generally form inseparable phrasal verbs.

You can often determine whether a phrasal verb is separable by knowing whether the particle is considered an adverb or a preposition. In the preceding examples, on is used both as a preposition (depend on) and as an adverb (turn on). However, some particles are almost always used as prepositions; these generally form inseparable phrasal verbs.

Some particles are almost always used as adverbs; these particles generally form separable phrasal verbs.

Some particles are almost always used as adverbs; these particles generally form separable phrasal verbs.

Some particles are almost always used as adverbs; these particles generally form separable phrasal verbs.

Other particles are separable with some verbs and inseparable with others.

Other particles are separable with some verbs and inseparable with others.

Other particles are separable with some verbs and inseparable with others.

See the examples with depend on and turn on on the previous page.

To indicate a separable phrasal verb, a blank line with sep is used for the complement (object).

An inseparable phrasal verb is indicated by a blank line (without sep) after the particle.

A phrasal verb may have more than one particle. If there are two or more particles, the last particle is almost always a preposition with its own object.
beat [**back** to] return to [a place]  
My sister beat her friend back to the station.

For phrasal verbs like this, the object is placed between the verb and its particle(s). In the sentence above, the object of the verb (her friend) is placed between beat and back, and the object of the preposition (the station) is placed after the preposition.

### The Most Common Phrasal Particles

Following is a list, with examples, of the particles most commonly used in phrasal verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particle</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>across</td>
<td>come across [<strong>find by accident</strong>]</td>
<td>She came across her high school yearbook.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after</td>
<td>keep after [<strong>nag, harass</strong>]</td>
<td>Mom keeps after us about our homework.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>along</td>
<td>pass [<strong>along</strong>] [<strong>transfer [a price change]</strong>]</td>
<td>The store passed along the price increase to its customers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around</td>
<td>get around [<strong>avoid</strong>]</td>
<td>He got around the problem by installing new software.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aside</td>
<td>lay [<strong>aside</strong>] [<strong>save</strong>]</td>
<td>She laid aside $100 a month for her son's college education.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>leap at [<strong>accept eagerly</strong>]</td>
<td>The class leaped at Hilary's offer to bake a cake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>away</td>
<td>pack [<strong>away</strong>] [<strong>store</strong>]</td>
<td>Gene and Jan packed the baby clothes away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>cut [<strong>back</strong>] [<strong>shorten</strong>]</td>
<td>We must cut the shrubs back after they flower.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behind</td>
<td>fall behind [<strong>lag behind</strong>]</td>
<td>They were falling behind on the rent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between</td>
<td>come between [<strong>cause trouble</strong>]</td>
<td>We can't let a silly quarrel come between us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down</td>
<td>knock [<strong>down</strong>] [<strong>demolish</strong>]</td>
<td>Workers knocked the vacant building down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>go for [<strong>be attracted by</strong>]</td>
<td>She goes for men with beards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forth</td>
<td>put [<strong>forth</strong>] [<strong>propose, suggest</strong>]</td>
<td>Johanna put forth her plan to save the black-footed ferret.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>hold [<strong>in</strong>] [<strong>suppress</strong>]</td>
<td>The candidate is good at holding his emotions in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in on</td>
<td>move in on [<strong>get closer to</strong>]</td>
<td>The FBI is moving in on the counterfeiter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>into</td>
<td>marry into [<strong>become a member of</strong>]</td>
<td>Diana married into royalty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXPRESSIONS

of
complain of ____ report the symptoms of

Rosemarie complains of arthritis and backache.

off
run SEP off print, make copies of

I ran several extra sets off for you.

on
improve on ____ make something better than

How could you improve on Post-it notes?

out
hand SEP out distribute

She handed out the schedule to reporters.

out of
change out of ____ replace [one set of clothing with another]

I’m all sweaty—I have to change out of these running clothes.

over
make SEP over change the appearance of

The programmer made over his cubicle with movie posters.

through
carry SEP through accomplish

She is determined to carry through her vision of a drug-free America.

to
look to ____ depend on

Students look to their teachers for help.

under
fall under ____ be influenced/controlled by

The princess fell under the power of the wicked queen.

up
mark SEP up raise the price of

The art dealer marks paintings up 200%.

up on
catch ____ on bring up-to-date about

The assistant will catch the actor up on the news.

upon
hit upon ____ discover

She hit upon the idea of extending Medicare to people 55 and over.

with
live with ____ endure, put up with

He lived with a limp for the rest of his life.

Note the double particles in on, out of, and up on in the list above.

Verbs of Motion

Verbs of motion typically form many phrasal verbs with particles considered to be adverbs. This is listed as the first entry in the Phrasal Verbs section.

pull away/back/down/in/out/over/up/etc. move in a specified direction

The van pulled away slowly.

We’re lost. Let’s pull over and look at a map.

pull SEP along/aside/away/over/under/up/etc. cause to move in a specified direction

Can you pull the kids away from the TV?

Sam pulled up a chair and sat down.

EXPRESSIONS

An Expressions section is included on verb pages where space permits. The entries are common idiomatic set phrases that are useful to the English learner.
TOP 40 VERBS

The following forty verbs have been selected because of their semantic and syntactic richness, both in their basic meanings and complements and in their phrasal verbs. A full page of example sentences provides guidance on correct usage and immediately precedes or follows the conjugation/complements page.

Verb no.
be 52
bear 53
blow 66
break 68
bring 69
call 75
carry 77
catch 79
come 95
cut 128
do 161
feel 201
find 206
get 226
give 227
go 228
have 239
hold 246
keep 273
lay 282
leave 287
look 300
make 304
move 316
pass 337
play 345
pull 370
put 374
read 381
run 421
see 428
set 436
show 446
slip 455
stand 470
strike 484
take 505
throw 515
turn 524
work 551
abandon | abandons  · abandoned · have abandoned

**PRESENT**
- I abandon 
- you abandon
- he/she/it abandons
- *He often abandons failing projects.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am abandoning 
- you are abandoning
- he/she/it is abandoning
- *We are abandoning our original plan.*

**PAST**
- I abandoned 
- you abandoned
- he/she/it abandoned
- *She abandoned any hope of succeeding.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was abandoning 
- you were abandoning
- he/she/it was abandoning
- *They were abandoning the search.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have abandoned

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had abandoned

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was abandoned 
- you were abandoned
- he/she/it was abandoned
- *That mine was abandoned years ago.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**abandon _____ give up completely**

- **OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)**
  - The soldiers have abandoned their attack.
  - Our neighbors abandoned the cats to the snowstorm.

- **WH-CLAUSE**
  - We abandoned what we were trying to do.
  - They abandoned trying to put out the fire.

**abandon _____ stop using, leave behind**

- **OBJECT**
  - The captain is abandoning the sinking ship.
  - The villagers abandoned their flooded houses.
  - The immigrants will eventually abandon their native language.

**abandon _____ give [oneself] over completely**

- **REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + to OBJECT**
  - John abandoned himself to his work.

- **REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + to WH-CLAUSE**
  - She abandoned herself to what she had always wanted to do.

- **REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + to PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
  - They abandoned themselves to eating everything in the refrigerator.
### **absorb**

**absorb | absorbs · absorbed · have absorbed**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I absorb we absorb</td>
<td>We are absorbing the new information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you absorb you absorb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it absorbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they absorb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Sand absorbs water rapidly.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I absorbed we absorbed</td>
<td>We absorbed severe financial losses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you absorbed you absorbed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it absorbed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they absorbed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* We absorbed severe financial losses.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has absorbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had absorbed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was absorbed we were absorbed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were absorbed you were absorbed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was absorbed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they were absorbed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The gas was absorbed by charcoal.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### COMPLEMENTS

**absorb _____ take in and make a part of oneself**

**OBJECT**

The paper towels absorbed the spilled milk.
Plants absorb nourishment through their roots.
China has always absorbed its invaders.
An acoustic ceiling will absorb most of the sound.
The largest union absorbed two others into its organization.
Alcohol is absorbed into the bloodstream quickly.
We absorbed what we needed to pass the course.
They absorbed whatever they were taught.

**PASSIVE**

**WH-CLAUSE**

We will absorb all the losses.
The company will absorb whatever costs are incurred.

#### PHRASAL VERBS

**absorb in/into _____ pass through**

Does lead absorb directly into the skin?

#### EXPRESSIONS

**absorbed engaged entirely**

Our professor is absorbed in thought—don’t disturb her.
### COMPLEMENTS

**accept**

- **receive willingly**
  - **OBJECT**
  - They accepted the peace offering.
  - She accepted my apology.
  - We should accept the newspaper's offer of free publicity.

- **take as payment**
  - **OBJECT**
  - The grocery store doesn't accept personal checks.

- **agree to, believe to be valid/true**
  - **OBJECT**
  - Everyone accepted the dimensions of the problem.
  - Why won't she accept my explanation?
  - The board accepted Tim as their spokesperson.
  - They will accept Cleveland as the regional headquarters.
  - Cleveland was accepted as the regional headquarters.
  - Should we accept the company's offer as final?
  - Experts accept the document as authentic.
  - The document was accepted as authentic.
  - I accepted that the situation was quite unusual.
  - Everyone has accepted what needs to be done.
  - He will accept Richard's naming his own successor.

### EXPRESSIONS

- **acceptable damage** damage that is tolerable
  - Fewer than 20 flooded homes is acceptable damage.

- **acceptable loss(es)** loss(es) that is/are tolerable
  - There is no acceptable loss of life in such a disaster.
  - The president believes 4,000 combat deaths to be in the range of acceptable losses.
### accompany

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>he/she/it</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>you all</th>
<th>he/she/it all</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>accompany</td>
<td>accompany</td>
<td>accompanies</td>
<td>accompanying</td>
<td>accompanying</td>
<td>accompanying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Progressive</strong></td>
<td>am accompanying</td>
<td>are accompanying</td>
<td>is accompanying</td>
<td>are accompanying</td>
<td>are accompanying</td>
<td>are accompanying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>accompanied</td>
<td>accompanied</td>
<td>accompanied</td>
<td>accompanied</td>
<td>accompanied</td>
<td>accompanied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>was accompanying</td>
<td>were accompanying</td>
<td>was accompanying</td>
<td>were accompanying</td>
<td>were accompanying</td>
<td>were accompanying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>have accompanied</td>
<td>has accompanied</td>
<td>has accompanied</td>
<td>have accompanied</td>
<td>have accompanied</td>
<td>have accompanied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>had accompanied</td>
<td>had accompanied</td>
<td>had accompanied</td>
<td>had accompanied</td>
<td>had accompanied</td>
<td>had accompanied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The dog accompanies us everywhere.
* Jane is accompanying us as far as Mexico City.
* My parents accompanied us on the trip.
* I was accompanying them around the site.
* The CEO was accompanied by the board.

### Complements

**accompany** ______ go with as a companion

**OBJECT**  Robert accompanied **the reporter**.

**PASSIVE**  All children must be accompanied by an adult.

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**  We accompanied **them to the showroom**.

**Future**  They will accompany **you back from the restaurant**.

**Hermione will be accompanying **Harry Potter on his next adventure**.

**accompany** ______ be associated/included with

**OBJECT**  Color photographs accompany **the text**.

**In the South, gravy often accompanies **biscuits**.

**A glass of wine accompanied **each course**.

**accompany** ______ play an instrument in support of the musical performance of

**OBJECT**  Jan will accompany **the singers** on the piano.
REGULAR

accomplish | accomplishes  accomplished  have accomplished

PRESENT
I accomplish  we accomplish
you accomplish  you accomplish
he/she/it accomplishes  they accomplish

• She accomplishes what she needs to.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am accomplishing  we are accomplishing
you are accomplishing  you are accomplishing
he/she/it is accomplishing  they are accomplishing

• I am accomplishing a lot here.

PAST
I accomplished  we accomplished
you accomplished  you accomplished
he/she/it accomplished  they accomplished

• I accomplished everything I set out to do.

PAST PROGRESSIVE
I was accomplishing  we were accomplishing
you were accomplishing  you were accomplishing
he/she/it was accomplishing  they were accomplishing

• We were accomplishing our goals.

PRESENT PERFECT  ... have | has accomplished
PAST PERFECT  ... had accomplished

PAST PASSIVE


• It was accomplished  they were accomplished
  • Our goal was accomplished by hard work.

COMPLEMENTS

accomplish  finish, complete successfully
OBJECT
I will accomplish my goal.
We accomplished a lot today.
We will accomplish our task soon.

WH-CLAUSE
They accomplished what they set out to do.
We will accomplish whatever we promised to do.

EXPRESSIONS

accomplished  skillful, expert

Peter is an accomplished pianist.
Jessica is quite accomplished on the harpsichord.
account | accounts · accounted · have accounted

**PRESENT**
I account  
you account  
he/she/it accounts  
*That accounts for everything!

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
Account is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

**PAST**
I accounted  
you accounted  
he/she/it accounted  
*Poor sales accounted for our losses.

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was accounted  
you were accounted  
he/she/it was accounted  
*All the keys were accounted for.

**PAST PERFECT**
... have | has accounted

**FUTURE**
... will account

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
—

**FUTURE PERFECT**
... will have accounted

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

account ______ consider

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN
I accounted myself *(to be) an honest person.*

I accounted Alex *(to be) a good friend.*

PASSIVE
Alex was accounted *(to be) a good friend.*

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
I accounted myself *(to be) lucky.*

I accounted Jan *(to be) reliable.*

PASSIVE
Jan was accounted *(to be) reliable.*

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

account for ______ explain

We still can’t account for what happened to the money.

Can you account for their missing the train?

account for ______ make sure of the whereabouts of

I had accounted for all the office computers.

account for ______ be the sole/primary factor for

Albert Pujols accounted for all the Cardinals’ runs.

Cars and trucks account for 18% of Germany’s exports.

The recession accounted for our doing so badly recently.

---

**EXPRESSIONS**

take ______ into account

take into consideration

Have you taken increased gas prices into account?

We took into account that most people are undecided.
**REGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>form</th>
<th>usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I accuse</td>
<td>you accuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am accusing</td>
<td>you are accusing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I accused</td>
<td>you accused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was accusing</td>
<td>you were accusing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>I have accused</td>
<td>you have accused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>I had accused</td>
<td>you had accused</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**accuse**

charge with [a fault/offense]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>object</th>
<th>usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>The inspector accused Frank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object + of object</td>
<td>He accused Frank of the crime.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passive</td>
<td>They accused the company of fraud.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object + of present participle</td>
<td>He accused Frank of doing it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passive</td>
<td>They accused the company of committing fraud.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXPRESSIONS**

the accused the defendant(s) in a criminal case

The accused has a long list of prior arrests.
###achieve

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I achieve</td>
<td>I am achieving</td>
<td>I achieved</td>
<td>I was achieving</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had achieved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you achieve</td>
<td>you are achieving</td>
<td>you achieved</td>
<td>you were achieving</td>
<td>has achieved</td>
<td>had achieved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it achieves</td>
<td>he/she/it is achieving</td>
<td>he/she/it achieved</td>
<td>he/she/it was achieving</td>
<td>was achieved</td>
<td>were achieved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **He usually achieves his goals.**

- **We are achieving a high level of success.**

- **They achieved a fine record of safety.**

- **They were achieving record sales.**

####COMPLEMENTS

**achieve**

- **attain, accomplish**

**OBJECT**

- We achieved **the results we had hoped for.**
- I have achieved **a high level of proficiency in French.**
- The company has achieved **a 10% increase in production.**
- The band achieved **overnight fame.**
- We will be achieving **a lot** this year.
- She achieved **what she set out to do.**
- They always achieve **whatever they say they will.**

**WH-CLAUSE**

**achiever**

- one who attains success

- Polly was a dreamer; Molly was an achiever.
acquire | acquires · acquired · have acquired

**PRESENT**
- I acquire
- you acquire
- he/she/it acquires

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am acquiring
- you are acquiring
- he/she/it is acquiring

* I acquire a few extra pounds every winter.
* They are acquiring an excellent reputation.

**PAST**
- I acquired
- you acquired
- he/she/it acquired

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was acquiring
- you were acquiring
- he/she/it was acquiring

* The band acquired a loyal following.
* She was acquiring a first-class education there.

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has acquired

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had acquired

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was acquired
- you were acquired
- he/she/it was acquired

* Success was acquired one step at a time.

**COMPLEMENTS**

acquire ___ get, obtain

acquire ___ take possession of

Students must acquire **proficiency in math.**
Pets help children acquire **immunity to allergies.**

acquired taste __ __appreciation developed after repeated experience

**EXPRESSIONS**

acquire a taste for ___ develop an appreciation for

- I acquired **100 shares of ABC Corporation.**
- The company will acquire a **new store in Brooklyn.**
- The museum acquired **an Albrecht Dürer watercolor.**
- He was acquired in a trade with the White Sox.
- I acquired **what I wanted** over the Internet.
- They acquired **whatever resources they needed.**

She will never acquire a taste for **coffee.**
They acquired a taste for visiting exotic islands.

Beer is an acquired taste, like coffee and tea.
### act

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Forms</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I act</td>
<td>we act</td>
<td>John always acts as if he were the boss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you act</td>
<td>you act</td>
<td>The kids are acting pretty silly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it acts</td>
<td>they act</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Forms</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I acted</td>
<td>we acted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you acted</td>
<td>you acted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it acted</td>
<td>they acted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Forms</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has acted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Forms</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... had acted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**act**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do something</th>
<th>Think before you act.</th>
<th>We must act now to stop global warming.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**act**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Have an effect</th>
<th>The sedative acted quickly.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**act _____ behave**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb of manner</th>
<th>He acted foolishly.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He acted like a fool.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They acted like they didn't have a care in the world.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Politicians always act in their own interests.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**act _____ behave like, pretend to be**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predicate noun</th>
<th>Please act your age!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He acted the fool.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He acted dumb.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She acted embarrassed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**act _____ play the role of**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Martin always acts the expert on international trade.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colin acted the part of a visiting Englishman in the play.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The part of a visiting Englishman was acted by Colin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PHRASAL VERBS

**act as _____ perform the duty/function of**

| She acted as club president for three years. |

**act for _____ represent the interests of**

| The realtor is acting for the homeowner. |

**act on _____ take action on**

| The police acted on the anonymous tip. |

**act out misbehave**

| Randy has been acting out in the classroom. |

**act out SEP out put into action**

| He's acting out his frustration. |
| She acted out her dream of being a ballerina. |

**act up misbehave**

| The children were acting up at the school picnic. |

**act up malfunction**

| My computer is acting up. |

**act up become troublesome**

| Grandpa's arthritis is acting up again. |
Present Present Progressive
I add we are adding
you add you are adding
he/she/it adds they are adding
* We add sales tax to every purchase.

Past Past Progressive
I added we were adding
you added you were adding
he/she/it added they were adding
* Poor weather added weeks to the job.

Present Perfect Future
Present Perfect ... have | has added
Future ... will add
Future Progressive ... will be adding
Future Perfect ... will have added

Past Passive
I was added we were added
you were added you were added
he/she/it was added they were added
* The dock was added on over the winter.

COMPLEMENTS
add perform addition
add _____ make an addition
to OBJECT
add _____ combine to form a sum
OBJECT
add _____ join so as to increase the size or quantity of something
OBJECT (+ to/into/onto OBJECT)

WH-CLAUSE
add _____ create as an improvement
OBJECT
add _____ say further
OBJECT
that-clause
that-clause
DIRECT QUOTATION

PHRASAL VERBS
add on build an addition
add _____ build [an addition] to an
existing structure
add _____ together combine to form a sum
add up make sense
add up to ____ amount to
**address** | addresses · addressed · have addressed

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>address</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>address</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>addresses</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He addresses current issues in his talks.*

**Present Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am addressing</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are addressing</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is addressing</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I am addressing envelopes right now.*

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>addressed</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>addressed</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>addressed</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We addressed this problem last summer.*

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was addressing</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were addressing</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was addressing</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He was addressing some visitors.*

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Present Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>have</td>
<td></td>
<td>addressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>have</td>
<td></td>
<td>addressed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was addressed</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were addressed</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was addressed</td>
<td>to address</td>
<td>addressed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*This concern was addressed in the proposal.*

**Notes:**
- The verb *address* is always stressed on the second syllable.
- The noun *address* is usually stressed on the first syllable when it refers to a location.

### Complements

- **address ____ speak to**
  - object
  - He addressed the waiting crowd.

- **address ____ speak to, using a title or in a particular manner**
  - object + as object
  - You should address the queen as “Your Majesty.”
  - The politicians addressed each other as equals.

- **address ____ speak about, discuss**
  - object
  - wh-clause
  - Senator Blather addressed the farm bill.
  - They addressed what they should do next.
  - He addressed how they could solve the problem.
  - He addressed his voting on the issue.

- **address ____ direct [one's words]**
  - object + to object
  - object + to wh-clause
  - Address your remarks to me, please.
  - You may address your complaints to whoever will listen.

- **address ____ direct one's attention/efforts to**
  - reflexive pronoun + to object
  - The CEO will address himself to workplace safety problems.

- **address ____ write directions for delivery on**
  - object
  - They addressed all the envelopes and packages.
adjust | adjusts · adjusted · have adjusted

**PRESENT**
- I adjust
- you adjust
- he/she/it adjusts

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am adjusting
- you are adjusting
- he/she/it is adjusting

**PAST**
- I adjusted
- you adjusted
- he/she/it adjusted

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was adjusting
- you were adjusting
- he/she/it was adjusting

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has adjusted

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had adjusted

**PAST PASSIVE**
- 
- it was adjusted

- they were adjusted

- She adjusts well to new situations.
- We adjusted our budget plans.
- The data were adjusted for inflation.

**COMPLEMENTS**
- adjust adapt, conform

- adjust _____ adapt, conform
  to object

- adjust _____ improve, make correct
  object

- adjustable rate mortgage a mortgage whose
  interest rate is periodically adjusted

**EXPRESSIONS**
- He adjusts easily in strange surroundings.
- The cougar adjusted well in captivity.
- The monitor adjusts in height from 3 to 12 inches.

- He didn't adjust well to early morning classes.
- I will eventually adjust to the change in schedule.

- We adjusted the projections for future income.
- Pat needs to adjust his attitude.
- I adjusted the car seat and the rearview mirror.
- The car seat and the rearview mirror were adjusted.
- I adjusted what we had previously forecast.
- They adjusted how they had previously measured growth.

- If you plan to keep your home for less than five years, get an adjustable rate mortgage.
present  |  present progressive  |  past  |  past progressive  |  present perfect  |  past perfect  |  past passive
--- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | ---
I admit  |  I am admitting  |  I admitted  |  I was admitting  |  I was admitted  |  I was admitting that he was wrong.
you admit  |  you are admitting  |  you admitted  |  you were admitting  |  you were admitted  |  you were admitting that he was wrong.
he/she/it admits  |  he/she/it is admitting  |  they admit  |  they were admitting  |  they were admitted  |  they were admitting that he was wrong.
* Harry admits doing it.
* Brad is finally admitting his mistake.
* They were admitting more international students.

| COMPLEMENTS |

**admit**

**acknowledge as true**

(to) **OBJECT**

* Allen admitted **(to) the mistake**.
* Allen admitted **the mistake** to the teacher.

**OBJECT + to be predicate adjective**

* Rodney admits **his claims to be false**.
* They admitted **that they had goofed**.

**that-clause**

* Sam admits **(to) his taking the money**.
* Sam admits **(to) taking the money**.
* Zack admits **(to) being inconsiderate sometimes**.

**admit**

**permit**

(of) **OBJECT**

* The poem admits **of two different interpretations**.

**admit**

**permit to enter**

**OBJECT**

* The guards admitted **us**.
* The school only admits **in-state applicants**.
* One ticket admits **four adults**.

**OBJECT + to/into OBJECT**

* UCLA admitted **Lou to its MBA program**.
* The judge admitted **the videotape into evidence**.
* The manager admitted **us into the secure area**.

**admit**

**have space/seating for**

**OBJECT**

* The concert hall admits **750 people**.

**admit**

**accept [into a hospital as a patient]**

**OBJECT**

**PASSIVE**

* The hospital admitted **17 new patients** yesterday.
* I was admitted to the hospital for surgery.
### adopt | adopts · adopted · have adopted

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I adopt</td>
<td>we adopt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you adopt</td>
<td>you adopt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it adopts</td>
<td>they adopt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The actor adopts the lifestyle of a monk.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am adopting</td>
<td>we are adopting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are adopting</td>
<td>you are adopting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is adopting</td>
<td>they are adopting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *They are adopting a child in July.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I adopted</td>
<td>we adopted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you adopted</td>
<td>you adopted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it adopted</td>
<td>they adopted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The company adopted a new logo.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was adopted</td>
<td>we were adopted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were adopted</td>
<td>you were adopted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was adopted</td>
<td>they were adopted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The messaging system was adopted recently.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has adopted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... had adopted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>FUTURE</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... will adopt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... will be adopting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... will have adopted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**Note:** *Adopt* is often confused with *adapt*, which means “to modify/adjust.”

Compare the following sentences.

We adopted the plan. (*took and used*)
We adapted the plan to fit within the budget. (*adjusted*)

- **adopt** legally take another person’s child as one’s own
  - Our neighbors hope to adopt.
  - They have adopted **three children**.

- **adopt** legally take [another person's child] as one's own
  - OBJECT

- **adopt** take and use [ideas, suggestions] as one’s own
  - OBJECT
  - We have adopted your approach to the problem.
  - They will adopt the format that you developed.
  - Plato adopted Socrates’ philosophy as his own.
  - The company will adopt whichever plan the committee recommends.

- **adopt** take and follow [a course of action]
  - OBJECT
  - After his setback, John adopted a very different tone.

- **adopt** approve, accept
  - OBJECT

- **WH-CLAUSE**
  - The committee adopted the amendment.
  - Professor Jones adopted the book as the required text.
  - The Senate adopted what the subcommittee recommended.
# advance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>advance</td>
<td>we advance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>advance</td>
<td>you advance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>advances</td>
<td>they advance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* He advances the interests of his company.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>advanced</td>
<td>we advanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>advanced</td>
<td>you advanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>advanced</td>
<td>they advanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* I advanced equal opportunity hiring.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>… have</td>
<td>advanced</td>
<td>has advanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>… had</td>
<td>advanced</td>
<td>had advanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>was advanced</td>
<td>we were advanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were advanced</td>
<td>you were advanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was advanced</td>
<td>they were advanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The timetable was advanced by two weeks.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I am advancing</td>
<td>advancing</td>
<td>we are advancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are advancing</td>
<td>advancing</td>
<td>you are advancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is advancing</td>
<td>advancing</td>
<td>they are advancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* They are advancing the date of the meeting.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I was advancing</td>
<td>advancing</td>
<td>we were advancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were advancing</td>
<td>advancing</td>
<td>you were advancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was advancing</td>
<td>advancing</td>
<td>they were advancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* We were advancing all along the front.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>… will advance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>… will have advanced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Progressive</strong></td>
<td>… will be advancing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## COMPLEMENTS

**advance** move forward in space/time, value/status
- The army is advancing on the town from the southeast.
- The hours were steadily advancing.
- The euro advanced against the dollar on the news of a slower economy.
- Ray slowly advanced from rank to rank.

**advance _____ bring forward in space/time**
- object
  - The Seahawks advanced the football six yards on first down.
  - The general advanced the infantry.
  - I advanced the time of the meeting.

**advance _____ advocate, propose**
- object
  - George is always advancing his own causes.
  - He advances whatever will do him the most good.

**advance _____ give a promotion to**
- object
  - WH-clause
  - We advanced Alice from clerk to assistant manager.
  - They will advance whoever they think is most qualified.

**advance _____ loan, pay ahead of time**
- indirect object + direct object
  - to paraphrase
  - I advanced him a week's salary.
  - I advanced a week's salary to him.
  - He was advanced a week's salary.

## EXPRESSIONS

**advanced** higher-level
- The professor assigned an advanced text in astronomy.

**advanced far along in time**
- My cousin was diagnosed with an advanced stage of cancer.
  - Ruth took up knitting at an advanced age.

**advanced progressive**
- The politician's advanced ideas met a lot of resistance.

**advanced degree** a university degree
- higher than a bachelor's
- Sam decided to pursue an advanced degree at Eastern State University.
**advertise | advertises**
**advertised · have advertised**

| **PRESENT** |
|------------------|------------------|
| I advertise | we advertise |
| you advertise | you advertise |
| he/she/it advertises | they advertise |
| * The company advertises only on the Web. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have advertised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **PAST** |
|------------------|------------------|
| I advertised | we advertised |
| you advertised | you advertised |
| he/she/it advertised | they advertised |
| * They advertised frequently in the Times. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... had advertised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was advertised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were advertised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was advertised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The job opening was widely advertised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>FUTURE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... will advertise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... will have advertised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>COMPLEMENTS</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>advertise</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solicit applicants in the media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chris doesn't advertise his lawnmowing business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wh-clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make publicly known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object + as predicate noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They advertised the school as the only totally green institution on the East Coast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object + as predicate adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that-clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The negotiators advertised that they were open to new proposals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present participle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>EXPRESSIONS</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>as advertised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This spyware performs as advertised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The job was not quite as advertised.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**advise**

advise | advises · advised · have advised

### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form 1</th>
<th>Form 2</th>
<th>Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I advise</td>
<td>we advise</td>
<td>you advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you advise</td>
<td>you advise</td>
<td>you advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they advise</td>
<td>they advise</td>
<td>they advise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The consultant advises us to reduce costs.*

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form 1</th>
<th>Form 2</th>
<th>Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I advised</td>
<td>we advised</td>
<td>you advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you advised</td>
<td>you advised</td>
<td>you advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they advised</td>
<td>they advised</td>
<td>they advised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*John advised us against renewing.*

### Present Perfect

- ... have | has advised

### Past Perfect

- ... had advised

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form 1</th>
<th>Form 2</th>
<th>Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I am advising</td>
<td>we are advising</td>
<td>you are advising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you are advising</td>
<td>you are advising</td>
<td>you are advising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they are advising</td>
<td>they are advising</td>
<td>they are advising</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The TV is advising us to stay off the roads.*

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form 1</th>
<th>Form 2</th>
<th>Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I was advising</td>
<td>we were advising</td>
<td>you were advising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were advising</td>
<td>you were advising</td>
<td>you were advising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they were advising</td>
<td>they were advising</td>
<td>they were advising</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I was advising my clients to sell.*

### Future

- ... will advise

### Future Progressive

- ... will be advising

### Future Perfect

- ... will have advised

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form 1</th>
<th>Form 2</th>
<th>Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I was advised</td>
<td>we were advised</td>
<td>you were advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were advised</td>
<td>you were advised</td>
<td>you were advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they were advised</td>
<td>they were advised</td>
<td>they were advised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We were advised to be very cautious.*

### Note:
The verb *advise* is spelled with an *s*, pronounced /z/.
The related noun *advice* is spelled with a *c*, pronounced /s/.

### Complements

- **advise** ~ counsel
  - This expert only advises on economic matters.

- **advise** _____ counsel
  - object
  - object + about/on object
  - object + against present participle
  - object + infinitive
  - passive
  - base-form that-clause

- **advise** _____ warn, suggest
  - object + that-clause

- **advise** _____ notify about
  - object + of object

- **advise** _____ caution
  - The company advises **large corporations**.
  - Rebecca will advise **Raymond on which computer to buy**.

- **advise** _____ **me against taking out a loan**
  - The accountant advised me against taking out a loan.
  - The company was advised to **diversify its product lines**.

- **advise** _____ **that you be careful driving in this weather**
  - We advise that you be careful driving in this weather.

- **advise** _____ **us that we might need to sell the stock**
  - He advised us that we might need to sell the stock.

- **advise** _____ **them of their rights**
  - The judge advised them of their rights.
  - The director advised them of the consequences of being late.
### affect | affects · affected · have affected

**PRESENT**
- I affect
- you affect
- he/she/it affects

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am affecting
- you are affecting
- he/she/it is affecting

- John affects an interest in opera.

**PAST**
- I affected
- you affected
- he/she/it affected

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was affecting
- you were affecting
- he/she/it was affecting

- The loss affected us greatly.

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- I have affected

**FUTURE**
- I will affect

**PAST PERFECT**
- I had affected

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- I will have affected

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was affected
- you were affected
- he/she/it was affected

- Everyone was affected by the tragedy.

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **affect _____ have an effect on**
  - John affected everyone he met for the better.
  - Exercise affects both blood pressure and pulse.
  - It really affected what we could do.
  - Exercise affects how well your brain functions.
  - The cutbacks affected our doing the job properly.

- **affect _____ put on a false/pretentious show of**
  - Cal was affecting an upper-class British accent.
  - Dick affected an air of superiority.
  - He affected whatever was fashionable at the moment.
  - He affected being a citizen of the world.

**NOTE:** The verb *affect* is often confused with the noun *effect*. (They are usually pronounced the same way.) Visualize the two *e*’s in the expression *the effect*: The word *the* is never used before the verb *affect.*
afford | affords · afforded · have afforded

**PRESENT**
I afford you afford he/she/it affords
you afford you afford they afford
- It affords you a wonderful opportunity.

**PAST**
I afforded you afforded he/she/it afforded
you afforded you afforded they afforded
- The vacation afforded us time to read.

**PRESENT PERFECT**
... have | has afforded
**PAST PERFECT**
... had afforded

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was afforded you were afforded he/she/it was afforded
you were afforded you were afforded they were afforded
- No opportunity to congregate was afforded the protesters.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am affording you are affording he/she/it is affording
you are affording you are affording they are affording
- We are affording you one last chance.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was affording you were affording he/she/it was affording
you were affording you were affording they were affording
- The salesperson was affording me a good deal.

**FUTURE**
... will afford
**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
... will be affording
**FUTURE PERFECT**
... will have afforded

**COMPLEMENTS**
afford ______ have enough money for
OBJECT
WH-CLAUSE
afford ______ bear without serious risk
OBJECT
INFINITIVE
PRESENT PARTICIPLE
afford ______ spare
OBJECT
afford ______ provide
OBJECT
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
for paraphrase

**EXPRESSIONS**
affordable housing dwelling units whose
total cost is within the means of a particular
group of people
Affordable housing is essential
to the health of a community.

They can afford a new car.
We couldn't afford what they were asking.

We can afford patience in the negotiations.
I can't afford to make the same mistake again.
We can't afford his making the same mistake again.

We can only afford half an hour for lunch.

The porch afforded a wonderful view of the valley.
The sun affords warmth and life.
It afforded me a wonderful opportunity.
It afforded a wonderful opportunity for me.
agree | agrees · agreed · have agreed

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>agree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>agree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>agrees</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* She agrees that we should do it.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am agreeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are agreeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is agreeing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* You are always agreeing with them!

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>agreed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>agreed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>agreed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* We agreed to a new contract.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was agreeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were agreeing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was agreeing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* They were agreeing with each other.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have agreed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have agreed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had agreed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>had agreed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it was agreed</td>
<td>they were agreed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The plan was finally agreed to.

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**agree**

* come to an understanding, be in accord

The two sides finally agreed.

* We agree in our choice for president.

* Our tastes in music agree.

**agree _____**

* be in accord, consent

They agreed **on the solution to the problem**.

The price was agreed upon at the last minute.

They agreed **to the plan**.

I'm sorry, but I don't agree **with you**.

They agreed **with us on all important points**.

They agreed **to cooperate on the project**.

I agree **that we should go ahead**.

They agreed **about what they should do**.

They agreed **to what the board had recommended**.

**agree with _____**

* be healthful for, be acceptable to

Garlic doesn't agree with me.

The dry climate agrees with us.

**agree with _____**

* be compatible with

Your shirt doesn't agree with your slacks.

Your copy doesn't agree with the original manuscript.

**agree with _____**

* correspond in grammatical features

The verb must agree with the subject in person and number.

---

### PHRASAL VERBS

**agree to disagree**

* conclude that the parties to a discussion don’t concur about something

We've argued for two hours; let's just agree to disagree.
aim

aim | aims · aimed · have aimed

PRESENT
I aim | we aim
you aim | you aim
he/she/it aims | they aim

* Our staff aims to please the customer.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am aiming | we are aiming
you are aiming | you are aiming
he/she/it is aiming | they are aiming

* We are aiming at setting a new record.

PAST
I aimed | we aimed
you aimed | you aimed
he/she/it aimed | they aimed

* We aimed to be the best in the field.

PAST PROGRESSIVE
I was aiming | we were aiming
you were aiming | you were aiming
he/she/it was aiming | they were aiming

* I was aiming for a new personal best.

PRESENT PERFECT
... have | has aimed
PAST PERFECT
... had aimed

FUTURE
... will aim
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE
... will be aiming
FUTURE PERFECT
... will have aimed

PAST PASSIVE

it was aimed | they were aimed

* The gun was aimed right at my head.

COMPLEMENTS

aim ____ direct/point [something at a target]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The boxer aimed his punch at his opponent's head.
I aimed the car away from oncoming traffic.
He aimed the boat back toward the dock.
The sheriff aimed his pistol at Black Bart.
We aimed all our efforts at the new goal.

aim ____ aspire, have as a goal

for OBJECT

I was aiming for a position on the team.
Now that she's turned 90, she's aiming for 100.

INFINITIVE

I aimed to do my best.
They are aiming to finish by 5 o'clock.

at PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I aimed at doing my best.
They aimed at finishing by 5 o'clock.
As a young girl, I aimed at playing Juliet on stage.

EXPRESSIONS

aim for the sky set one's goals

very high

If you aim for the sky, you'll land in a tree. If you aim for a tree, you'll land on the ground.
allow | allows · allowed · have allowed

**REGULAR**

### Present Progressive
- I am allowing
- you are allowing
- he/she/it is allowing
- They are allowing
  - *They are allowing us to board the aircraft.*

### Past Progressive
- I was allowing
- you were allowing
- he/she/it was allowing
- They were allowing
  - *We were allowing for some delays.*

### Present Perfect
- I have allowed
- you have allowed
- he/she/it has allowed
  - *He allows extra time when it rains.*

### Past Perfect
- I had allowed
- you had allowed
- he/she/it had allowed
  - *The board allowed the project to proceed.*

### Future Perfect
- I will have allowed
- you will have allowed
- he/she/it will have allowed

### Past Passive
- I was allowed
- you were allowed
- he/she/it was allowed
  - *Pets weren't allowed in the hotel.*

### COMPLEMENTS

allow _____ permit
- OBJECT
- PASSIVE
- OBJECT + INFINITIVE
- OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE
- INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
  - for PARAPHRASE
  - of OBJECT

allow _____ schedule
- OBJECT

allow _____ admit, concede
- OBJECT
- THAT-CLAUSE

They allow **left turns onto one-way streets**.
Smoking is not allowed in restaurants.
He allowed **us to start early**.
They allowed **them what they had requested**.
They allowed **Bob some extra time**.
They allowed **some extra time for Bob**.
This note allows **of interpretation**.

You must allow **plenty of time to get there**.

They allowed **his claim for $50 in damages**.
They allowed **that we were right after all**.

### PHRASAL VERBS

allow (_____ for) make provision for,
allocate for
allow _____ in/into permit to enter
allow _____ sep. up permit to rise

We must allow for traffic delays.
Allow $20 for taxes and fees.
They don't allow dogs in their home.
They pushed him down and wouldn't allow him up.

### Expressions

**Allow me. Please let me help you.**
Lucas opened the door, stepped back, and said, “Allow me.”
Present Progressive
I am altering
you are altering
he/she/it is altering
* He is altering the beginning of the report.

Past Progressive
I was altering
you were altering
he/she/it was altering
* They were altering the dress when I walked in.

Present Perfect
... have | has altered

Future
... will alter

Future Progressive
... will be altering

Future Perfect
... will have altered

Past Passive
I was altered
you were altered
he/she/it was altered
* His itinerary was altered at the last minute.

COMPLEMENTS

alter  become different
The situation has altered recently.
Jack had altered greatly over the years.
His expression altered.

alter       change
OBJECT
I altered my exercise routine.
The store altered the pants for me.
We must alter our plans.

WH-CLAUSE
They altered what they were originally doing.
We altered how we should approach the problem.
Present Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Tense</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>amounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>amounting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- It amounts to very little.

Past Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Tense</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>amounted</td>
<td>amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>amounted</td>
<td>amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>amounted</td>
<td>amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>amounted</td>
<td>amounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td>amounted</td>
<td>amounting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The dividends never amounted to much.

Present Perfect Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Tense</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>has amounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>has amounted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Tense</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>be amounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>have amounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>have amounted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: The verb *amount* is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

**amount _____ add up**

- The bill amounted to $137.50.
- The closing costs amounted to a small fortune.
- The bill amounted to less than I thought it would be.
- It amounted to little.
- The insurance amounted to more than it was worth.
- The rental amounts to whatever the contract calls for.
- It amounted to however much you could afford.

**amount _____ be equivalent**

- His actions amounted to treason.
- The decision amounted to a huge defeat.
- Being laid off or being fired—it amounts to the same thing.
- It amounted to what I would consider a failure.
- The case against him amounts to his being in the wrong place at the wrong time.

EXPRESSIONS

**amount to something become very good/important**

- We hope that Garrett amounts to something someday.
### announce

**announced · have announced**

**PRESENT**
- I announce
- you announce
- he/she/it announces

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am announcing
- you are announcing
- he/she/it is announcing

**PAST**
- I announced
- you announced
- he/she/it announced

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was announcing
- you were announcing
- he/she/it was announcing

**FUTURE**
- I will announce
- you will announce
- he/she/it will announce

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
- I will be announcing
- you will be announcing
- he/she/it will be announcing

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- I will have announced
- you will have announced
- he/she/it will have announced

*She usually announces the winners.
*We are announcing the new CEO soon.
*They announced the lineup this morning.
*He was announcing the finalists.
*The winner was announced afterward.

### COMPLEMENTS

**OBJECT**
- They just announced the winner.
- The judges announced her as the winner.
- CNN announced her to be the winner.

**OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN**
- We announced to the press that the company was going public.
- He announced what the prize would be.
- The teacher is announcing how the test will be scored.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
- The emcee announced the bride and groom.
- The hostess announced dinner.
- Shorter days announce the coming of winter.

**OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE**
- I will announce Jane's winning the contest.

**OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE**
- I used to announce baseball games.

### PHRASAL VERBS

**announce for **
- declare one's candidacy for
- declare one's support for

Three candidates have already announced for Congress.
He told reporters, “Today I’m announcing for Lynn Davis, our next senator.”
### Regular

**answer** | answers · answered · have answered

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Future Progressive</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I answer</td>
<td>I am answering</td>
<td>we answer</td>
<td>we are answering</td>
<td>I was answering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you answer</td>
<td>you are answering</td>
<td>you answer</td>
<td>you were answering</td>
<td>you were answered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it answers</td>
<td>he/she/it is answering</td>
<td>they answer</td>
<td>they were answering</td>
<td>he/she/it was answered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* An intern answers customer inquiries.

* Rob is answering the reporters' questions.

* All my questions were answered by the candidate.

### Complements

**answer** speak/write in reply

**answer** act in response

**answer** speak/write in reply [object]

**answer** act in response [that-clause]

**answer** speak/write in rebuttal [object]

**answer** fulfill [object]

---

**He** answered in a friendly manner...

**The visiting team** quickly answered with a three-pointer.

**I answered** the question as best I could.

**He will answer** his critics in an op-ed article.

**I answered** that I hadn’t decided yet.

**I answered**, “I haven’t decided yet.”

**The defendant** answered all of the prosecutor’s accusations.

**The country** answered the president’s call to arms.

**The microwave** answers our need for fast food.

### Phrasal Verbs

**answer sep back** reply to, usually rudely

**answer for** be accountable for

**answer to** be subordinate to

**answer to** match, correspond to

Ben’s mother became angry when he answered her back.

Teenagers must answer for their behavior.

I answer to the deputy prime minister.

My neighbor answers to the suspect’s description.
### Category: Verbs

**appear** | **appears** · **appeared** · **have appeared**

#### Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I appear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you appear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it appears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I am appearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are appearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is appearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I appeared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you appeared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it appeared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... had appeared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Passive</strong></td>
<td>It appears</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Passive Voice

*Appear* is never used in the passive voice.

#### Complements

- **appear** come into sight/existence
  - The sun appeared on the horizon.
  - Hamlet’s father’s ghost appears before him.
  - The ghost only appears in the first and third acts.
  - Dinosaurs first appeared in the Triassic period.

- **appear** come before the public
  - The candidates will appear together on TV this Sunday.
  - Harp’s magazine appears monthly.

- **appear** go before an official body
  - I must appear in traffic court on Tuesday.

- **appear** seem
  - Our train appears to be on time.
  - Our train appears to be on Track 9.
  - Jack appeared to be a complete fool.
  - Jack appears to be angry.
  - It appeared that we made a mistake.
  - It appears that it is going to rain this afternoon.
  - There appears to be a mistake on my bill.
  - There appeared to have been an error.

- **appear** go [before an official body]
  - I have to appear before Judge Perry next week.

#### Phrasal Verbs

- **appear as** play the role of
  - Jennifer Ehle appeared as Miss Elizabeth Bennet in the BBC’s 1995 production of *Pride and Prejudice*.

- **appear at** perform at
  - Cellist Yo-Yo Ma will appear at Carnegie Hall.

- **appear for** represent [someone who is absent]
  - Barry appeared for Matt at the council meeting.

- **appear in** perform in
  - Sean Connery appeared in seven James Bond movies.

- **appear out of nowhere** come into sight suddenly and without warning
  - The two robbers appeared out of nowhere and demanded our wallets.
  - A car appeared out of nowhere and struck a pedestrian.
**REGULAR**

**apply | applies - applied - have applied**

- **PRESENT**
  - I apply  
  - you apply  
  - he/she/it applies  
  - we apply  
  - you apply  
  - they apply  

- **PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
  - I am applying  
  - you are applying  
  - he/she/it is applying  
  - we are applying  
  - you are applying  
  - they are applying  

- **PAST**
  - I applied  
  - you applied  
  - he/she/it applied  
  - we applied  
  - you applied  
  - they applied  

- **PAST PROGRESSIVE**
  - I was applying  
  - you were applying  
  - he/she/it was applying  
  - we were applying  
  - you were applying  
  - they were applying  

- **PRESENT PERFECT**
  - ... have applied  

- **PAST PERFECT**
  - ... had applied  

- **FUTURE**
  - ... will apply  

- **FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
  - ... will be applying  

- **FUTURE PERFECT**
  - ... will have applied  

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **apply** be pertinent/relevant
  - He applied last fall.

- **apply** request admission
  - The usual conditions apply.

- **apply** have to do with
  - This law applies to all citizens.

- **apply** put into action, put to some practical use
  - I applied the brakes.
  - They must apply the rule of law.
  - We applied the money to the mortgage.
  - We applied the money to whichever bill was the most urgent.
  - He applied what he had learned.
  - We applied what we had saved to the mortgage.
  - We applied what we had saved to whatever needed paying first.

- **apply** request admission
  - He applied to UCLA last fall.
  - I will apply to whatever schools give full scholarships.

- **apply** request formally
  - I have applied for a tax exemption.
  - I am applying for the bookkeeping job.
  - I will apply for whatever grants are available.

- **apply** spread (on)
  - Apply two coats of varnish.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- **apply [oneself] to** devote oneself to
  - Let's apply ourselves to our English studies.

**EXPRESSIONS**

- **apply within** request [something] inside
  - Job seekers should apply within.
**appoint**

**appoints · appointed · have appointed**

*REGULAR*

- **Present**
  - I appoint
  - you appoint
  - he/she/it appoints

- **Present Progressive**
  - I am appointing
  - you are appointing
  - he/she/it is appointing

- **Past**
  - I appointed
  - you appointed
  - he/she/it appointed

- **Past Progressive**
  - I was appointing
  - you were appointing
  - he/she/it was appointing

- **Present Perfect**
  - ... have | has appointed

- **Past Perfect**
  - ... had appointed

- **Future**
  - ... will appoint

- **Future Progressive**
  - ... will be appointing

- **Future Perfect**
  - ... will have appointed

- **Passive**
  - I was appointed
  - you were appointed
  - he/she/it was appointed

- **Examples**
  - He only appoints people he knows.
  - Tanya appointed me to fill the position.
  - She was appointing new members to the committee.
  - I was appointed to the commission.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**appoint**

- designate for an office/position

  - OBJECT + (as) PREDICATE NOUN
    - He appointed her (as) attorney general.
    - They have appointed me (as) secretary.

  - OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN
    - He appointed her (to be) attorney general.
    - They have appointed me (to be) secretary.

  - OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)
    - The president appoints all cabinet heads.
    - He appointed himself.
    - She appointed six policemen to the task force.

  - OBJECT + INFINITIVE
    - She appointed me to serve out the term.
    - The court appointed Jason to serve as executor of the estate.

---

**EXPRESSIONS**

**appointed**

- nicely furnished

  - The condo is spacious and beautifully appointed.
  - The bedrooms are small but stylishly appointed.
### Approach

**Present**
- I approach
- you approach
- he/she/it approaches
- *He never approaches strangers.*
- The train is approaching the station.

**Past**
- I approached
- you approached
- he/she/it approached
- The boat never approached the bay.

**Present Perfect**
- I have approached
- you have approached
- he/she/it has approached
- I was approached several times by major universities.

**Past Passive**
- I was approached
- you were approached
- He was approaching middle age.

**Future**
- I will approach
- you will approach
- He will approach whoever he thinks will listen to him.

**Past Progressive**
- I was approaching
- you were approaching
- They were approaching
- The boat never approached the bay.

**Future Progressive**
- I will be approaching
- you will be approaching
- He will be approaching middle age.

**Future Perfect**
- I will have approached
- you will have approached
- His philosophical ideas approach mysticism.

### COMPLEMENTS

**approach**
- **come near(er)**
- Take cover. A storm is approaching.
- It is getting lighter—dawn must be approaching.

**approach**
- **come near(er) to**
- The train is approaching the station.
- The robber had approached his victim twice before.
- We are approaching our project deadline.

**approach**
- **make a proposal to**
- Larry approached a group of venture capitalists about investing.
- He will approach whoever he thinks will listen to him.

**approach**
- **be almost the same as**
- His philosophical ideas approach mysticism.
- Senator Blather’s speech approaches slander.
- Bobby’s golf swing approaches perfection.
- This shade of red approaches what we want.

**approach**
- **begin to deal with, begin to work on**
- Let’s approach the subject with an open mind.
- Our class is approaching the project with enthusiasm.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>forms</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>I approve</td>
<td>I approve your approach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you approve</td>
<td>I approve your loan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it approves</td>
<td>He approves of your approach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we approve</td>
<td>I am approving your loan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are approving</td>
<td>You are approving your loan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is approving</td>
<td>He is approving your loan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we are approving</td>
<td>We are approving your loan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are approving</td>
<td>You are approving your loan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is approving</td>
<td>He is approving your loan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we are approving</td>
<td>We are approving your loan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>I approved</td>
<td>They approved your recommendation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you approved</td>
<td>They approved your recommendation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it approved</td>
<td>They approved your recommendation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we approved</td>
<td>They approved your recommendation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were approving</td>
<td>They were approving most applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was approving</td>
<td>They were approving most applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we were approving</td>
<td>They were approving most applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were approving</td>
<td>They were approving most applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was approving</td>
<td>They were approving most applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we were approving</td>
<td>They were approving most applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has approved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past perfect</td>
<td>... had approved</td>
<td>They approved unanimously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past passive</td>
<td>I was approved</td>
<td>The plan was approved unanimously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were approved</td>
<td>They were approved unanimously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was approved</td>
<td>They were approved unanimously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we were approved</td>
<td>They were approved unanimously.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

approve _____ accept as satisfactory

**object**

- I can’t approve such careless work.
- Both of us approved our son’s choice.

**wh-clause**

- He won’t approve what he doesn’t like.
- They won’t approve whatever course of action you decide on.

**present participle**

- We can’t approve adding 15 more employees to the payroll.
- I couldn’t approve their taking such a risk.

approve _____ take a favorable view

**of object**

- They approved of his actions.
- You can’t approve of what they were doing.
- I don’t approve of their acting that way.

**of wh-clause**

- We can’t approve of what they were doing.
- I don’t approve of their acting that way.

**of present participle**

- They approved of his actions.
- You can’t approve of what they were doing.
- I don’t approve of their acting that way.

approve _____ give consent to

**object**

- The Senate finally approved the treaty.
- My boss has approved my application for a transfer.
- They will approve whomever we recommend.

**wh-clause**

- Will voters approve taking bids from private firms?
- The CEO approved our taking them to court.
argue | argues · argued · have argued

PRESENT
I argue
you argue
he/she/it argues

I argued
you argued
he/she/it argued

PRESENT PERFECT
... have | has argued

PAST
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am arguing
you are arguing
he/she/it is arguing

I was arguing
you were arguing
he/she/it was arguing

PAST PERFECT
... had argued

FUTURE
... will argue

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE
... will be arguing

FUTURE PERFECT
... will have argued

PAST PASSIVE
it was argued

... have | has argued
... had argued

COMPLEMENTS
argue disagree, quarrel
argue _____ debate
argue _____ assert, try to prove by giving reasons
argue about/over _____ quarrel about

argue back quarrel in rebuttal
argue ___ down defeat in a debate/discussion
argue for/against _____ give reasons in favor of / against

argue _____ into persuade to do
argue _____ out settle by full discussion
argue _____ out of dissuade [someone] from
argue with _____ quarrel with, challenge

They argue all the time.
The justices argued the issue.
Vince argued his case before the judge.
Vince argued that he was innocent.

They argued about what they should do.
We argued about their going to Chicago.
They have always argued over money.
We argued over going to Chicago.

They argued back every time I told them to do something.
She argued the manager down every time.
He argued the proposal down at the meeting.
He had argued for the proposal.
She argued for accepting the bid.
I argued against what they had proposed.
She argued against their accepting the bid.

I argued him into going with us.
Let's argue this out when we have more time.
I argued him out of his silly plan.
I argued him out of going ahead with his plan.
I don't want to argue with Audrey anymore.
Face it, you can't argue with the facts.
### arise

**arise | arises · arose · have arisen**

**PRESENT**
- I arise
- you arise
- he/she/it arises
- we arise
- you arise
- they arise

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am arising
- you are arising
- he/she/it is arising
- we are arising
- you are arising
- they are arising

*He arises every morning at the same time.*

**PAST**
- I arose
- you arose
- he/she/it arose
- we arose
- you arose
- they arose

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was arising
- you were arising
- he/she/it was arising
- we were arising
- you were arising
- they were arising

*I always arose before seven on school days.*

**FUTURE**
- ... will arise

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
- ... will be arising

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- ... will have arisen

**PAST PASSIVE**

*Arise* is never used in the passive voice.

**NOTE:** The verb *arise* is interchangeable with *rise* in most meanings and uses. See verb No. 418.

**arise** get out of bed
- I usually arise around six.
- Nobody arises early on weekends.

**arise** stand/spring up, move upward
- The audience always arises when the president enters the room.
- Rebecca arose from the sofa gracefully.
- The dolphins arose from the water.
- A cloud of dust arose from the ruins.
- He arose out of inner-city poverty to become mayor.

**arise** come into being
- The rumor arose when Rob had to appear in court.
- A new controversy about ethanol has arisen since the meeting.

**arise** originate
- The spring arises **behind our house**.
- These glaciers arise **in the Alps**.
- Birds arose **from small specialized dinosaurs**.
- Prejudice arises **from ignorance and unfamiliarity**.

**ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

---

**COMPLEMENTS**
Present Present Progressive
I arm we are arming
you arm you are arming
he/she/it arms they are arming
* We arm ourselves against violent crime.

Past Past Progressive
I armed we were arming
you armed you were arming
he/she/it armed they were arming
* They armed the civilian defense force.

Present Perfect Future
I have armed we will arm
you have armed you will arm
he/she/it has armed they will arm
* The submarine was armed with acoustic torpedoes.

Past Perfect Future Progressive
I had armed we will be arming
you had armed you will be arming
he/she/it had armed they will be arming

Future Future Perfect
I will arm we will have armed
you will arm you will have armed
he/she/it will arm they will have armed

Complements:
arm ____ equip with weapons
OBJECT
The police armed the guards.

PASSIVE
Be careful—the hijacker is armed.
The solders were all armed with rifles.

WH-ClaUSE
They armed whoever was capable of firing weapons.
We will arm whatever force we can scrape together.

arm ____ prepare for use, activate
OBJECT
The sailors armed the torpedoes.
We have armed the alarm system.

arm ____ with furnish [someone] with [weapons, some kind of protection]
I armed myself with a flashlight and extra batteries.
I armed myself with a stiff drink.
The courts armed citizens with the right of habeas corpus.

Expressions:
armed to the teeth very heavily armed
Captain Jack Sparrow was armed to the teeth.
### arrange

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I arrange</td>
<td><em>I arrange the books in alphabetical order.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you arrange</td>
<td><em>We arranged the flowers for the reception.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it arranges</td>
<td><em>They arranged the conference on China.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Susan arranges</td>
<td><em>They arranged for John to visit them in Chicago.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*</td>
<td><em>Frank arranged for my interviewing them.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I arranged</td>
<td><em>They arranged the conference on China.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you arranged</td>
<td><em>They will arrange (for) a celebration.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it arranged</td>
<td><em>He arranged for John to visit them in Chicago.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A meeting was arranged</td>
<td><em>He arranged (it) for him to tour the plant in Japan.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td><em>He arranged what you had asked for.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had arranged</td>
<td><em>She will arrange whatever they need.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>... will arrange</td>
<td><em>Frank arranged (for) my interviewing them.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... will have arranged</td>
<td><em>He arranged a Bach fugue for a modern orchestra.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **Object**
  - I arranged the books in alphabetical order.
  - We arranged the flowers for the reception.
  - They arranged the conference on China.
  - They will arrange (for) a celebration.
  - He arranged for John to visit them in Chicago.
  - He arranged (it) for him to tour the plant in Japan.
  - He arranged what you had asked for.
  - She will arrange whatever they need.
  - Frank arranged (for) my interviewing them.

- **Infinitive**
  - I arranged to visit them in Chicago.
  - He arranged to visit them in Chicago.

- **Wh-clause**
  - He arranged what you had asked for.
  - She will arrange whatever they need.

- **Present Participle**
  - Frank arranged (for) my interviewing them.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Object/Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I arrive</td>
<td>we arrive</td>
<td>* Our guests arrive on Tuesday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you arrive</td>
<td>you arrive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it arrives</td>
<td>they arrive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are arriving</td>
<td>you are arriving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is arriving</td>
<td>they are arriving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We are arriving</td>
<td>soon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I arrived</td>
<td>we arrived</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you arrived</td>
<td>you arrived</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it arrived</td>
<td>they arrived</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were arriving</td>
<td>you were arriving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was arriving</td>
<td>they were arriving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>She arrived at her destination late.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has arrived</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>... had arrived</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>it was arrived</td>
<td>they were arrived</td>
<td>* An agreement was arrived at.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

- **arrive** reach a destination
- **arrive** make an appearance
- **arrive** come finally
- **arrive** achieve success/fame
- **arrive at** reach by traveling
  - at object

### PHRASAL VERBS

- **arrive at** reach by effort/thought
  - We arrived at an agreement.
  - We will arrive at whatever agreement is possible.

###expressions

- **arrive at the scene (of ____)** reach the location of
  - The scene of the burglary.
- **arrive in force** reach a location in full strength
  - Winter arrived in force yesterday.
- **arrive in the (very) nick of time** reach a location just in time
  - The doctor arrived in the nick of time to save the child.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>I am asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>I was asking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>You already asked me that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>I was asked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**ask** ______ inquire about

- **OBJECT**
- **INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**
  - (OBJECT +) if **CLAUSE**
  - (OBJECT +) **WH-CLAUSE**

**ask** ______ request

- (OBJECT +) for **OBJECT**
- **OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
- **OBJECT + WH-INFINITIVE**
- **INFINITIVE**
- **BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE**

**ask** ______ invite

- **OBJECT + TO OBJECT**

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**ask after** ______ inquire about someone’s health/well-being

- She asked after my mother.

**ask around** request information from different sources

- She asked around about the missing necklace.

**ask** ______ back invite again to one’s home

- We will never ask the Smiths back.

**ask** ______ down/over/up invite to one’s home

- We asked Jim and Lara down for the weekend.

**ask** ______ in/into invite inside

- Let’s ask Bill and Fran over Friday night.

**ask** ______ of request/demand from

- Please ask the applicant in.

**ask** ______ out invite on a date

- They asked us into the house.

- You’ll have to ask that of your supervisor.

- I’d like to ask Gretchen out to dinner.
assist | assists · assisted · have assisted

**VERBS**

**Present**
- I assist
- you assist
- he/she/it assists
- We assist
- you assist
- they assist
- *He assists the vet with large animals.*

**Past**
- I assisted
- you assisted
- he/she/it assisted
- We assisted
- you assisted
- they assisted
- *She assisted at four operations yesterday.*

**Present Perfect**
- ... have | has assisted

**Past Perfect**
- ... had assisted

**Future**
- ... will assist

**Future Perfect**
- ... will have assisted

**Past Progressive**
- I am assisting
- you are assisting
- he/she/it is assisting
- We are assisting
- you are assisting
- they are assisting
- *He is assisting Bob right now.*

**Past Progressive**
- I was assisting
- you were assisting
- he/she/it was assisting
- We were assisting
- you were assisting
- they were assisting
- *They were assisting us onto the bus.*

**Future Perfect**
- ... will have assisted

**Past Passive**
- I was assisted
- you were assisted
- he/she/it was assisted
- We were assisted
- you were assisted
- they were assisted
- *I was assisted by Mrs. Laurent.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**assist**
- help out

**assist _____ provide support/aid to**
- object
- object + with object
- object + (in) present participle
- object + (with) present participle

**EXPRESSIONS**

**assisted living**
- housing and care for senior citizens who need limited assistance in day-to-day living

**I am assisting at the information desk.**
**They will assist wherever they are needed.**

**The new coach assists the junior basketball team.**
**He assists the drivers when they unload the trucks.**
**The makeup artist assisted the actor with his costume.**
**They assisted him (in) painting the deck.**
**Emily will assist Matt (with) tying down the kayak.**

**Assisted living is the perfect solution for your dad.**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Present** | I associate we associate you associate you associate he/she/it associates they associate

- *He associates with some strange people.*

- *I associate we associate.*

- *I am associating we are associating.*

- *He associates with some strange people.*

- *They are associating with the wrong people.*

- *I always associated Greece with sunshine.*

- *I was associating we were associating.*

- *I was mistakenly associating Jack with Ernest.*

| **Past** | I associated we associated you associated you associated he/she/it associated they associated

- *I always associated Greece with sunshine.*

- *I associated we associated.*

- *I associated with some strange people.*

- *I was associating we were associating.*

- *They are associating with the wrong people.*

- *They are associating with some strange people.*

- *I associated with some strange people.*

- *I associated with some strange people.*

- *I always associated Greece with sunshine.*

- *I was mistaken associating Jack with Ernest.*

| **Present Perfect** | … have | has associated

- *I have associated we have associated.*

- *I have associated.*

- *I have associated.*

| **Past Perfect** | … had associated

- *I had associated we had associated.*

- *I had associated.*

- *I had associated.*

- *I had associated.*

- *I had associated.*

| **Future** | … will associate

- *I will associate we will associate.*

- *I will associate.*

- *I will associate.*

| **Future Perfect** | … will have associated

- *I will have associated we will have associated.*

- *I will have associated.*

- *I will have associated.*

| **Past Passive** | I was associated we were associated you were associated you were associated he/she/it was associated they were associated

- *I was associated.*

- *We were associated.*

- *You were associated.*

- *You were associated.*

- *They were associated.*

- *They were associated.*

- *Stratford was always associated with Shakespeare.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **associate ____ be friendly, spend time**
  
  **with object**
  
  He only associates with other lawyers.

  Donald is associating with drug users and gang members.

  I will associate with whomever I want to.

  with WH-clause

- **associate ____ form an alliance**
  
  *(REFLEXIVE PRONOUN +) with object**
  
  They are associating with a new advertising agency.

  They are associating themselves with a new advertising agency.

  **associate ____ make a connection between**
  
  **OBJECT + with OBJECT**
  
  We associate robins with spring.

  Everyone associates pineapple with Hawaii.

  President Theodore Roosevelt was associated with the conservation movement in the United States.

  The swelling was associated with chills and fever.

- **be associated ____ be caused by [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]**
  
  **with OBJECT**
  
  Memory loss is associated with vitamin B-12 deficiency.
assume | assumes · assumed · have assumed

**assume** | take [responsibility for]

**OBJECT**
- He assumed **responsibility** for the mortgage.
- The new captain assumed **control of the ship**.
- She will assume **her new husband’s debt**.

**assume** | pretend to have

**OBJECT**
- He assumed **an air of total confidence**.
- They assumed **a level of knowledge he did not have**.

**assume** | suppose [something] to be true, take for granted

**OBJECT**
- We assumed **the worst**.
- You’re assuming **too much**.

**OBJECT + to be ADVERB OF TIME**
- We assumed **the plane to be on time**.

**OBJECT + to be PREDICATE NOUN**
- We assumed **the plane to be a jet**.

**OBJECT + to be PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**
- We assumed **the plane to be ready**.

**THAT-CLAUSE**
- We assumed **that the worst had happened**.

**assumed name** | an adopted name, often to deceive others

The holding company transacts business under several assumed names.
Samuel Clemens wrote under the assumed name of Mark Twain.
She uses an assumed name when she posts a comment to a blog.
assure | assuring · assured · have assured

**PRESENT**
- I assure
- you assure
- he/she/it assures
  - *He assures us that it will be done on time.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am assuring
- you are assuring
- he/she/it is assuring
  - *They are assuring us that it will be okay.*

**PAST**
- I assured
- you assured
- he/she/it assured
  - *The inspection assured 100% compliance.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was assuring
- you were assuring
- he/she/it was assuring
  - *We were assuring complete satisfaction.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has assured

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had assured

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was assured
- you were assured
- he/she/it was assured
  - *I was assured that it would be ready.*

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**assure**

**OBJECT**
- guarantee

**OBJECT + of OBJECT**
- Double-checking assures accuracy.
- Mutual interest assures cooperation.

**OBJECT + that-clause**
- I assured him of our continuing support.
- They assured us of his full recovery.
- I assured him that the plane was on time.
- He assured us that he could do it.
- Sam assured them that no one was watching.
- I looked in the rearview mirror to assure myself that I wasn’t being followed.

---

### EXPRESSIONS

**self-assured**

- showing confidence
- It is important to act in a professional and (self-)assured manner.
### Present

- I attach
- you attach
- he/she/it attaches
- We attach

- He attaches himself to losing causes.

### Past

- I attached
- you attached
- he/she/it attached
- We attached

- I attached comments to the essay.

### Present Perfect

- ... have | has attached
- ... had attached

### Past Perfect

- I was attached
- you were attached
- he/she/it was attached
- We were attached

- She was attached to her family.

### Expressions

- **be attached to**
  - be fond of
  - Greg was really attached to his dad.
  - Little Lisa has gotten attached to her blanket.
**attack | attacks · attacked · have attacked**

**PRESENT**
- I attack
- you attack
- he/she/it attacks

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am attacking
- you are attacking
- he/she/it is attacking

**PAST**
- I attacked
- you attacked
- he/she/it attacked

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was attacking
- you were attacking
- he/she/it was attacking

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- I have attacked
- you have attacked

**FUTURE**
- I will attack

**PAST PERFECT**
- I had attacked

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- I will have attacked

**Past Passive**
- I was attacked
- you were attacked
- he/she/it was attacked

* A cobra attacks when it is surprised.
* We are attacking with all our might.
* They attacked the enemy fleet.
* They were attacking all of their opponents.
* His ideas were attacked by his co-workers.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**attack**
- make an assault
- assault physically/verbally

**OBJECT**

**WH-CLAUSE**

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

**attack**
- begin to work vigorously

**OBJECT**

**WH-CLAUSE**

Mosquitoes attack at dusk.

The soldiers attacked the guard post.
Aphids were attacking the roses.
They bitterly attacked the new plan.

He attacks whatever I propose to do.
I attacked John's doing nothing about the situation.

Our team will attack the problem with gusto.
They attacked whatever problems we had to solve.

**EXPRESSIONS**

**attack in force | attack in full strength**

After massing troops for weeks,
the general attacked in force.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I attempt we attempt you attempt you attempt he/she/it attempts they attempt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Jim always attempts to do too much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I attempted we attempted you attempted you attempted he/she/it attempted they attempted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* They attempted everything without success.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had attempted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td>... will attempt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>... will be attempting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... will have attempted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>it was attempted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they were attempted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* A prison break was attempted several times.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**OBJECT**

- They attempted **the impossible**.
- The climbers attempted **the north side**.
- Let’s attempt **the crossword puzzle** and see how far we get.

**INFINITIVE**

- They will attempt **to finish the job on time**.
- He will attempt **to run the Boston Marathon**.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- We attempted **what had never been done before**.
- I attempted **whatever was asked of me**.
PRESENT | attend | attends · attended · have attended

**PRESENT**

I attend 
you attend
he/she/it attends

you attend
you are attending
he/she/it is attending

* She attends City College.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am attending
you are attending
he/she/it is attending

* Dr. Maret is attending to the new patients.

**PAST**

I attended
you attended
he/she/it attended

you attended
you were attending
he/she/it was attending

* I attended to the situation promptly.

**PAST PERFECT**

... have | has attended

**PAST PERFECT**

... had attended

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was attended
you were attended
he/she/it was attended

we were attended
you were attended
they were attended

* The problem was attended to.

**COMPLEMENTS**

attend | be present at a meeting/program

- I hope we can attend.
- Will both parents be able to attend?

attend ______ | be present at [a meeting, program]

**OBJECT**

- I attended all those PowerPoint presentations.
- They always attend their children's recitals.
- Everyone has attended the required safety class.

attend ______ | be present as an enrollee at [a school, program]

**OBJECT**

- She attended the University of Denver.
- We attended the American Red Cross CPR classes.
- Bart will attend whatever college he can get into.

attend ______ | assist, care for

**OBJECT**

- She attended old Mrs. Moore.
- This department attends only emergency patients.

attend ______ | take care of, apply oneself

**OBJECT**

- Attend to your own problems first.
- Is anyone attending to you?
- I’ll attend to that as soon as I can.

**TO WH-CLAUSE**

- I will attend to whoever needs care.
- They attend to whatever has to be done.
- Please attend to finishing your job.
- I attended to filling out the paperwork.

attend ______ | pay attention

**OBJECT**

- Children should attend to the teacher's presentation.

attend ______ | accompany as a result

**OBJECT**

**PASSIVE**

- Enthusiastic applause attended the candidate's speech.
- The candidate's speech was attended by enthusiastic applause.
### Regular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>(Present)</th>
<th>(Present Progressive)</th>
<th>(Past)</th>
<th>(Past Progressive)</th>
<th>(Present Perfect)</th>
<th>(Past Perfect)</th>
<th>(Future)</th>
<th>(Future Progressive)</th>
<th>(Future Perfect)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I attract</td>
<td>we attract</td>
<td>I am attracting</td>
<td>we are attracting</td>
<td></td>
<td>I have attracted</td>
<td>I was attracted</td>
<td>we were attracted</td>
<td>I will attract</td>
<td>I will have attracted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you attract</td>
<td>you attract</td>
<td>you are attracting</td>
<td>you are attracting</td>
<td></td>
<td>you have attracted</td>
<td>you were attracted</td>
<td>you were attracting</td>
<td>you will attract</td>
<td>you will have attracted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>attracts</td>
<td>he/she/it is attracting</td>
<td>they are attracting</td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it has attracted</td>
<td>he/she/it was attracted</td>
<td>they were attracted</td>
<td>he/she/it will attract</td>
<td>he/she/it will have attracted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **John always attracts a crowd.**
- **The teens are attracting unwanted attention.**
- **The sale attracted a lot of attention.**
- **We were attracting new investors.**
- **I was attracted by the bright lights.**

### Complements

**attract**

**cause to come nearer**

- **OBJECT**

- **to OBJECT [used only in the passive]**

- **WH-clause**

  - I was really attracted to Jack.
  - People are attracted to his philosophy.
  - Everyone is attracted to effortless diet programs.
  - His crazy schemes attract whoever wants to get rich quick.

**attract**

**arouse by appeal to interest/emotion**

- **OBJECT**

  - Their ideas attract a great deal of attention.
  - Advertising attracts interest in the product.

- **Magnets attract iron filings.**
- **The flowers are attracting a lot of bees.**
- **Her presentations always attract a large audience.**
### Present

- I avoid
- you avoid
- he/she/it avoids
- we avoid
- you are avoiding
- they are avoiding

> *Nathan avoids crowds.*

### Past

- I avoided
- you avoided
- he/she/it avoided
- we avoided
- you were avoiding
- they were avoiding

> *We avoided the morning rush.*

### Present Perfect

- ... have avoided
- ... has avoided

### Past Perfect

- ... had avoided

### Future

- ... will avoid

### Future Perfect

### Past Progressive

- I am avoiding
- you are avoiding
- he/she/it is avoiding
- we are avoiding
- you are avoiding
- they are avoiding

> *She is avoiding me.*

### Past Progressive

- I was avoiding
- you were avoiding
- he/she/it was avoiding
- we were avoiding
- you were avoiding
- they were avoiding

> *They were avoiding the topic.*

### Present Participle

- I avoid
- you avoid
- he/she/it avoids
- we avoid

### Complements

- **avoid** keep away from
  - object
  
    - I am avoiding **my boss**.
    - Everyone avoids **crowds** during flu season.
    - You are just avoiding **the problem**.
    - A politician avoids **whatever gets voters upset**.
    - I avoid **overeating at holidays**.
    - He avoids **flying through Chicago**.
    - He is avoiding **finishing his thesis**.
    - I avoided **making a big mistake**.

- **avoid** like the plague stay away from
  - completely
  
    - He is obnoxious, and everyone avoids him like the plague.
## Present Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I awake</td>
<td>we awake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you awake</td>
<td>you awake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it awakes</td>
<td>they awake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>I am awaking</td>
<td>we are awaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are awaking</td>
<td>you are awaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is awaking</td>
<td>they are awaking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

- *He awakes every morning at seven.*
- *He is awaking to the danger.*

## Past Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I awoke</td>
<td>we awoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you awoke</td>
<td>you awoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it awoke</td>
<td>they awoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>I was awaking</td>
<td>we were awaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were awaking</td>
<td>you were awaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was awaking</td>
<td>they were awaking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

- *It awoke bad memories for me.*
- *They were awaking to a hot morning.*

## Present Perfect Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has awoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>... had awoken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

- We were awoken by the storm.

## Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>I was awoken</td>
<td>we were awoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were awoken</td>
<td>you were awoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was awoken</td>
<td>they were awoken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples

- *We were awoken by the storm.*

## Complements

**Note:** *Awake* and *awaken* have the same meanings and uses. They are similar to *wake/waken* (verb No. 536), with this difference: *Wake* is used with *up* (*Jane woke up at 7 o'clock*), but *awake, awaken, and waken* are not.

### Breakdown

- **awake**
  - quit sleeping
  - become aroused

### Examples

- The children awoke early.
- Excitement awoke in everyone.
- The storm awoke the children early.
- He will awake everybody in the house with his snoring.

### awak____ arouse from sleeping

#### OBJECT

- The storm awoke the children early.
- He will awake everybody in the house with his snoring.

#### WH-CLAUSE

- The commotion awoke whoever was still asleep.

### awak____ stir up

#### OBJECT

- The crisis has awoken memories of the 1960s.
- Sam awoke Stella's interest in China.

#### WH-CLAUSE

- It awoke what had been long forgotten.
- I awoke whatever concern he had felt.

### Phrasal Verbs

- **awake from ____ wake up out of**
  - Ned awoke from a sound sleep.

- **awake to ____ wake up to**
  - Patsy awoke to the aroma of freshly brewed coffee.
  - The corporal awoke to the sound and fury of battle.

- **awake to ____ become aware of**
  - She awoke to the possibilities that technology offered.
  - Dad awoke to the reality of the moment.
Present
I back  we back
you back  you back
he/she/it backs  they back
* He always backs into parking places.

Past
I backed  we backed
you backed  you backed
he/she/it backed  they backed
* I backed the car out of the garage.

Present Progressive
I am backing  we are backing
you are backing  you are backing
he/she/it is backing  they are backing
* He is backing the desk against the wall.

Past Progressive
I was backing  we were backing
you were backing  you were backing
he/she/it was backing  they were backing
* The newspapers were backing the incumbent.

Future
... will back
Future Progressive  ... will be backing
Future Perfect  ... will have backed

Past Passive
I was backed  we were backed
you were backed  you were backed
he/she/it was backed  they were backed
* The candidate was backed by her party.

Complements
back  go backward
back _____ cause something to go backward
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

back _____ support
OBJECT

Passive
WH-clause
Present Participle
back _____ put [something] on the back of
OBJECT + WITH OBJECT
back _____ bet on
OBJECT

Phrasal Verbs
back away/down/in/out/up/etc.
go backward in a specified direction
back _sep_ away/down/in/out/up/etc.
caused to go backward in a specified direction
back away/down/off (from _____)
withdraw (from [a position, commitment])
back onto _____ have one’s back facing
back out (of _____) withdraw (from
[a commitment, contest])
back up  accumulate in a clogged state
back _sep_ up  support
back _sep_ up  make a copy of [COMPUTER]

Jeff backed down the ladder slowly.
We backed up when we saw the snarling dog.
Back the riding mower off the driveway.
Can you back the car into this narrow parking space?

I will back your proposal.
We are backing John for the Senate.
They back the product with a one-year warranty.
The product is backed with a one-year warranty.
I will back whatever proposal you make.
He backs John's running for the Senate.

The car backed into the street.
Back the riding mower off the driveway.
Can you back the car into this narrow parking space?

The car backed into the street.
Back the riding mower off the driveway.
Can you back the car into this narrow parking space?

I will back your proposal.
We are backing John for the Senate.
They back the product with a one-year warranty.
The product is backed with a one-year warranty.
I will back whatever proposal you make.
He backs John's running for the Senate.

The car backed into the street.
Back the riding mower off the driveway.
Can you back the car into this narrow parking space?

I will back your proposal.
We are backing John for the Senate.
They back the product with a one-year warranty.
The product is backed with a one-year warranty.
I will back whatever proposal you make.
He backs John's running for the Senate.

The car backed into the street.
Back the riding mower off the driveway.
Can you back the car into this narrow parking space?

I will back your proposal.
We are backing John for the Senate.
They back the product with a one-year warranty.
The product is backed with a one-year warranty.
I will back whatever proposal you make.
He backs John's running for the Senate.

The car backed into the street.
Back the riding mower off the driveway.
Can you back the car into this narrow parking space?

I will back your proposal.
We are backing John for the Senate.
They back the product with a one-year warranty.
The product is backed with a one-year warranty.
I will back whatever proposal you make.
He backs John's running for the Senate.

The car backed into the street.
Back the riding mower off the driveway.
Can you back the car into this narrow parking space?

I will back your proposal.
We are backing John for the Senate.
They back the product with a one-year warranty.
The product is backed with a one-year warranty.
I will back whatever proposal you make.
He backs John's running for the Senate.

The car backed into the street.
Back the riding mower off the driveway.
Can you back the car into this narrow parking space?

I will back your proposal.
We are backing John for the Senate.
They back the product with a one-year warranty.
The product is backed with a one-year warranty.
I will back whatever proposal you make.
He backs John's running for the Senate.

The car backed into the street.
Back the riding mower off the driveway.
Can you back the car into this narrow parking space?

I will back your proposal.
We are backing John for the Senate.
They back the product with a one-year warranty.
The product is backed with a one-year warranty.
I will back whatever proposal you make.
He backs John's running for the Senate.

The car backed into the street.
Back the riding mower off the driveway.
Can you back the car into this narrow parking space?

I will back your proposal.
We are backing John for the Senate.
They back the product with a one-year warranty.
The product is backed with a one-year warranty.
I will back whatever proposal you make.
He backs John's running for the Senate.

The car backed into the street.
Back the riding mower off the driveway.
Can you back the car into this narrow parking space?
Present

I base
you base
he/she/it bases

- He bases his plans on economic models.

Past

I based
you based
he/she/it based

- They based their tactics on polling data.

Present Perfect

... have | has based

Past Perfect

... had based

Past Passive

I was based
you were based
he/she/it was based

- His decisions were based on misinformation.

Future

... will base

Future Progressive

... will be basing

Future Perfect

... will have based

base

establish [a decision/course of action/opinion]

OBJECT + ON OBJECT

I based my decision on your recommendation.
We based our plan on the information we had.
They based their love on mutual respect.

OBJECT + OR WH-CLAUSE

Their love was based on mutual respect.

WH-CLAUSE + ON OBJECT

I based my decision on what you recommended to me.
We based it on what information we had.

WH-CLAUSE + OR WH-CLAUSE

I based what I decided to do on your recommendation.
We based what we did on your information.
I based what I did on what you told me to do.
We based what we did on what information we had.

base

locate the headquarters of

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The board based the new company in Albuquerque.

base

station [MILITARY]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The army based three regiments in Spain.

PASSIVE

Three regiments were based in Spain.
Note: Many of the following phrasal verbs are used informally.

**be down** be depressed
**be down on** be angry with
**be down with** be sick due to
**be for** support

**be in** be in one's home/office
**be in** be in fashion
**be in on** share in
**be into** be interested/involved in
**be off** not be at work
**be off** not be operating
**be off** be less
**be off** be wrong
**be off** not be taking place
**be on** be operating
**be on** be in effect
**be onto** be aware of
**be onto** be about to discover

**be out** not be inside
**be out** be made public
**be out** be out of fashion
**be out** be asleep/unconscious
**be out** not be permitted
**be out and about** travel around
**be out of** no longer possess
**be out (with ___)** be absent (due to [an illness])
**be out (with ___)** be unable to play/work (due to [an injury, illness])
**be over** be finished
**be through (with ___)** be finished (with [something])
**be up** be finished
**be up** be more/greater
**be up** be risen, be put up

**be up and about/around** be out of bed and moving around
**be up for** be a candidate for

**be up for** be available for
**be up for** be ready and willing for
**be up for** be on trial for [a crime]
**be up on** be knowledgeable about
**be up to** be able to
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am being</td>
<td>I was being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are being</td>
<td>you were being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is being</td>
<td>he/she/it was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are being very</td>
<td>They were being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficult.</td>
<td>They were being</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Perfect** ... have | has been

**Past Perfect** ... had been

**Past Passive**

Be is never used in the passive voice.

**Note:** Be is also used as a helping verb
- to form the progressive tenses
  - be + present participle
  - They were driving down the wrong street.
- to form the passive voice
  - exist
  - You will be arrested if you drive drunk.

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **exist**
  - "I think, therefore I am." [Rene Descartes]
  - Oh, let it be.

- **there + be + predicate noun**
  - There was a policeman on the corner.

- **be + have | has been**
  - The meeting is at ten.
  - My birthday is in September.
  - The time is now.
  - The principal is out of the office.
  - My parents have never been to Singapore.
  - Greg is a bachelor.
  - It is a streetcar.
  - It is I, Mother. [Formal] / It's me, Mom. [Informal]
  - Everett is handsome and rich.
  - The school is excellent.

- **be + must**
  - You are to report to the office.
  - Gary is to be ready at seven.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- Many of the following phrasal verbs are used informally.

- **be against** _____ oppose
- The group is against gun control.

- **be along** arrive [used only in the future tense]
- Fred will be along any minute now.

- **be around** exist
- Dinosaurs were around for 150 million years.

- **be around** _____ be located
- The keys are around here somewhere.

- **be away** be absent
- The sales clerk is away for a moment.

- **be behind** lag
- He's behind in his studies.

- **be down** not be operating
- The server is down, and I can't get my files.
bear _____ give birth to
OBJECT
PASSIVE
bear _____ have as a characteristic
OBJECT
bear _____ have as an identification
OBJECT
bear _____ behave
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + ADVERB OF MANNER
bear _____ take care of, pay for
OBJECT
bear _____ call for, require
OBJECT
She bore a son in 1982.
Lois has borne three children.
Three children have been born to Lois.
Rory bears a scar on his left arm.
Sasha bears a strong resemblance to her mother.
All three wills bore Uncle Leland's signature.
He's bearing himself with dignity.
My parents bore all the expenses of my college education.
The committee bears watching.

If you bear down, you'll get an “A” in the course.
Bear down on the pen—you're making four copies.
Bear off the gravel road when you see a large barn.
These observations don't bear on the matter at all.
The testimony will bear this out.
Lila bore up well in spite of the criticism.
The bridge couldn't bear up under such heavy traffic.
Please bear with us while we discuss the matter.

A citizen may bear arms to protect himself.
The discussions will hopefully bear fruit soon.
Our representatives should bear in mind that their decisions affect millions of people.
The cancer took its toll, but Nick bore his cross bravely.
The walnut trees bore the brunt of the storm.
We got laid off, and all we can do is grin and bear it.
### Irregular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bear</td>
<td>borne/born</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* **Born** is the past participle in the sense “give birth to” in the passive voice. **Borne** is used in all other senses.

### Complements

- **bear** produce fruit
- **bear** object
- **bear** go
  - **object**
  - **adverb of place to/from**
- **bear** object
- **bear** object
- **bear** object
- **bear** support
  - **object**
- **bear** be accountable for
  - **object**
- **bear** endure
  - **object**
  - **for object + infinitive**
  - **infinitive**
  - **(it) that-clause**
  - **present participle**
- **bear** carry in one’s mind
  - **object**
  - **indirect object + direct object**
  - **against paraphrase**

#### Example Sentences

- In Ecuador, apple trees bear twice a year.
- These apple trees won’t bear fruit for three years.
- This road bears to the left.
- Bear right at the next stoplight.
- “Beware of Greeks who bear gifts.” [Vergil]
- A strong current bore the ship out to sea.
- The pillars bear the weight of the roof.
- The engineers bear a heavy responsibility for the disaster.
- He can’t bear the pain.
- He will bear a substantial financial loss.
- I can’t bear for you to leave so soon.
- I can’t bear to hear such a sad story.
- I can’t bear (it) that you have to leave so soon.
- I can’t bear hearing such a sad story.
- He bears a real grudge against them.
- I bear no hard feelings toward them.
- I bear him no malice.
- I bear no malice against him.
Present Present Progressive
I beat you beat he/she/it beats they beat
you are beating you are beating they are beating
he/she/it is beating
* In the long run, you never beat the odds.

Past Past Progressive
I beat you beat he/she/it beat they beat
you were beating you were beating they were beating
he/she/it was beating
* He beat the rugs outside.

Present Perfect Future
... have | has beaten ... will beat
... had beaten ... will be beating ...

Past Perfect Future Progressive
... will have beaten

Future Perfect

Past Passive
I was beaten you were beaten he/she/it was beaten they were beaten
* The record was beaten by three of the swimmers.

COMPLEMENTS
beat pulsate, throb
My pulse was beating rapidly.
The drums were beating again.

beat _____ strike repeatedly
OBJECT
I beat the drum in time to the music.
The jockeys beat their horses in the final lap.
The blacksmith beat the iron into swords.
The sergeant beat the recruits into submission.

beat _____ mix by stirring
OBJECT
Beat the batter with a wooden spoon.

beat _____ defeat, win
OBJECT
The Phillies have beaten the Red Sox.
You beat the record easily.

beat _____ be better than
OBJECT
WH-CLAUSE
PRESENT PARTICIPLE
Good home cooking always beats restaurant food.
Your idea beats what I was trying to do.
Nothing beats having lots of money in your wallet.
That beats my trying to do it myself.

beat _____ confuse, puzzle
OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE
It beats me how anyone can understand these instructions.

beat _____ flap
OBJECT
A hummingbird beats its wings up to 70 times per second.

PHRASAL VERBS
beat _____ back/down/up/in/out/etc.
arrive at a specified location sooner than

beat see back drive back
My sister beat me back to the station.
They raced to the top of the hill, and Ben beat the others up.
Our platoon beat back the enemy’s attack.

beat see down cause to collapse
The warriors beat the doors down with clubs.
A driving rain beat down on the stadium crowd.
A blazing sun beat down on the spectators.

beat see off drive away
She beat the would-be robbers off with pepper spray.

beat see up attack savagely
Gang members beat the man up and took his car.
become | becomes · became · have become

become ______ grow/come to be

**PREDICATE NOUN**

The recording became a huge success.
Alice became chair of the department.

**PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**

Robert became quite friendly.
The weather became stormy.

**WH-CLAUSE**

It became what we feared the most.
He will become whoever he needs to be.

become ______ enhance the appearance of, look good on

**OBJECT**

Moonlight becomes her.
His sneering attitude really doesn't become him.

become of ______ happen to

Whatever became of your plan to start your own business?
I don't know what has become of Mary.

be becoming on ______ look good on

becoming attractive

This shade of blue is very becoming on you.
Your dress is very becoming.
That is a most becoming dress you are wearing.

becoming suitable to

She gave a eulogy becoming the occasion of her father's funeral.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>begins</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He always begins breakfast with coffee.*

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *We were beginning to get worried.*

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have/has begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have/has begun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will have begun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>was begun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Therapy was begun immediately.*

### Complements

- **begin**: start
- **begin by/with**: start [an activity, event, process]
  - **object**: The chairperson began the meeting promptly at 2 o'clock.
  - **infinitive**: I began to fall asleep during the long lecture.
  - **wh-clause**: We only began what absolutely had to be finished.
  - **present participle**: I began falling asleep during the long lecture.

### Phrasal Verbs

- **begin by/with**: start a sequence/process with
  - The new owners began by firing all the managers.
- **begin by/with**: start a process, event by [doing something first]
  - Let's begin the meeting with a big thank-you to the organizers.

### Expressions

- **beginner**: one who is starting to learn something
- **beginner's luck**: luck of an inexperienced person
- **to begin with**: first of all

- He's a beginner when it comes to woodworking.
- Winning my very first case was just beginner's luck.
- To begin with, there were no eyewitnesses.
believe | believes · believed · have believed

PRESENT
I believe
you believe
he/she/it believes
* I believe that you are right.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
Believe is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

PAST
I believed
you believed
he/she/it believed
* I believed her side of the story.

PAST PASSIVE
I was believed
you were believed
he/she/it was believed
* His story was believed by everyone.

FUTURE
... will believe

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE
—

FUTURE PERFECT
... will have believed

COMPLEMENTS
believe have religious faith
Do you believe?
They have believed for years.

believe _____ accept as true/real/truthful
OBJECT
The police believe George's story.
They believe George.

believe _____ have an opinion, guess
OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN
We believe what they have told us.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
I believed him (to be) a complete fool.
We believe the project (to be) a done deal.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE
I believed the proposal (to be) dead.
We believed the will (to be) valid.

that-clause
We believe that it is going to rain.
You won't believe whom we met.

WH-clause
We believe that the dollar will strengthen.

PHRASAL VERBS
believe in _____ accept the existence of
They believe in ghosts.

believe in _____ be convinced of the merits of
I believe in hard work.
We believe in exercise.

EXPRESSIONS
believe it of _____ accept as true a statement about
Vera stole the money? I can't believe it of her.

believe it or not it may be unlikely, but it's true
Believe it or not, Margaret won the spelling bee.

believe you me! take my word for it!
I'm going to sue those scoundrels, believe you me!

not believe [one's] ears/eyes not trust what one has heard/seen
He used lots of profanity—I couldn't believe my ears.
When I got the electric bill, I couldn't believe my eyes.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I belong</th>
<th>we belong</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you belong</td>
<td>you belong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it belongs</td>
<td>they belong</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* All these CDs belong to me.

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I belonged</th>
<th>we belonged</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you belonged</td>
<td>you belonged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it belonged</td>
<td>they belonged</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The house belonged to my family once.

### Present Perfect

| ... have | has belonged |

### Past Perfect

| ... had belonged |

### Future

| ... will belong |

### Future Progressive

### Future Perfect

| ... will have belonged |

### Past Passive

*Belong is never used in the passive voice.*

---

#### Complements

**belong _____ be properly placed**  
**Adverb of Place**  
- The lamp belongs **here**.
- The recycle bin belongs **under the stairs**.
- The Dreyfus documents belong **under the letter “D.”**

**belong _____ be suitable [in an occupation/activity]**  
**Adverb of Place**  
- Tim belongs **in engineering**.
- Ralph belongs **at the FBI**.

---

#### Phrasal Verbs

**belong to _____ be the property of**  
- The book belongs to Alice.
- That dog belongs to me.

**belong to _____ be a member of**  
- We have belonged to a book club for 19 years.
- They belong to the Republican Party.

**belong to _____ be a part/component of**  
- Those wheels belong to the lawn mower.
- Guam belongs to the United States.
- Tomatoes belong to the nightshade family.
### bend | bends · bent · have bent

**PRESENT**
- *I bend* we bend
- *you bend* you bend
- *he/she/it bends* they bend

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- *I am bending* we are bending
- *you are bending* you are bending
- *he/she/it is bending* they are bending

- *He always bends the rules.*

**PAST**
- *I bent* we bent
- *you bent* you bent
- *he/she/it bent* they bent

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- *I was bending* we were bending
- *you were bending* you were bending
- *he/she/it was bending* they were bending

- *I bent my fishhook.*

**PRESENT PERFECT** ... have | has bent
**PAST PERFECT** ... had bent

**PAST PASSIVE**
- *I was bent* we were bent
- *you were bent* you were bent
- *he/she/it was bent* they were bent

- *The minister's head was bent in sorrow.*

---

### COMPLEMENTS

- **bend** become curved/crooked
  - The road bends to the right.
  - The trees bent in the wind.
- **bend** stoop, dip
  - I bent to pick up the cat's water bowl.
  - The rod bent under the heavy load.
- **bend** distort
  - His smile bent into an ugly leer.
- **bend** cause to curve, change the shape of
  - *OBJECT*
  - The archers bent their bows.
  - The wind was bending the trees.
  - I bent the wire into a hook.
  - The magnets bend the beam of electrons.
  - The wind was bending the trees.
  - The rocks bend the stream to the far bank.
- **bend** distort, cheat
  - *OBJECT*
  - The storm bent the windmill out of shape.
  - Politicians bend the rules to suit themselves.
  - They bent the truth in the run-up to war.

---

### PHRASAL VERBS

- **bend backward/down/forward/etc.**
  - *lean in a specified direction*
    - Brad bent backward to dodge the ball.
    - She bent down to pet the dog.
    - The girl bent forward to get a better look.
  - *lean down at the waist*
    - Norvel bent the pins back into place.
    - Adrian bent the corner of the page over.
    - The class bent over to touch their toes.
  - **bend over backward** do more than required
  - The store bends over backward to please its customers.
  - After a break, Jasper bent to his studies.
  - He bent to the will of the voters and endorsed the plan.
  - Cleopatra bent Antony to her will.
  - Helen was bent on going to law school.

---

### EXPRESSIONS

- **bend [someone's] ear** talk excessively to
  - The stranger bent my ear for 45 minutes.
bet | bets • bet • have bet

**PRESENT**
I bet  
you bet  
he/she/it bets

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am betting  
you are betting  
he/she/it is betting

* Floyd always bets on the Yankees.

**PAST**
I bet  
you bet  
he/she/it bet

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was betting  
you were betting  
he/she/it was betting

* She bet $20 on Breezy Summit to win.

**PRESENT PERFECT**  … have | has bet
**PAST PERFECT**  … had bet

**PAST PASSIVE**

* A fortune was bet by professional gamblers.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**bet**  make a wager

**bet**  place as a wager

**OBJECT**

**bet**  wager [something] with [someone]

**OBJECT + OBJECT**

**OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE**

**WH-CLAUSE**

**bet**  assert [that something will/won’t happen]

**THAT-CLAUSE**

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**bet on**  place a wager on [a contestant]

**EXPRESSIONS**

You bet!  Certainly! [INFORMAL]

“Can you help me move this sofa?”

“You bet!”
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>bid</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>bid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>bid</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>bid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>bids</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>bid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He always bids the limit.*

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>bade/bid</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>bade/bid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>bade/bid</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>bade/bid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>bade/bid</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>bade/bid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### Present Perfect

- have | has bidden/bid

### Past Perfect

- have | has bidden/bid

### Future

- will bid

### Future Progressive

- will be bidding

### Future Perfect

- will have bidden/bid

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was bidden/bid</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>were bidden/bid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were bidden/bid</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were bidden/bid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was bidden/bid</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>were bidden/bid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Twenty-five dollars was just bid.*

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**bid** | offer to pay a particular price

- I never bid at auctions.
- John will bid when it comes on the market.

**bid _____ offer [a price] for**

- *object (+ for object)
- *on object
- *wh-clause

**NOTE:** Only *bid* (not *bade* or *bidden*) is used as the past form in the sense “offer as a price.”

**bid _____ declare one's intention to take [tricks in a card game]**

- *object

**NOTE:** Only *bid* (not *bade* or *bidden*) is used as the past form in the sense “declare one's intention to take.”

**bid _____ tell [a greeting]**

- *indirect object + direct object
to paraphrase

**bid _____ urge/ask**

- *object + infinitive

**PASSIVE**

- We bade *them* farewell.
- We bade *farewell* to *them*.
- The butler bid *the guests* to enter.
- He bid *them* to be careful.
- The guests were bidden to enter.

---

### PHRASAL VERBS

**bid SEP out** | offer [work] for bids from outside contractors

- The army bid out the construction of four new barracks.
- The ad agency bids out the production of TV commercials.

**bid SEP up** | raise [an auction price] by offering more and more money

- Luana bid the price up on the antique lamp.

---

### Expressions

**outbid _____ offer more than**

- Laura outbid four other people for the rug.

**underbid _____ offer to do something for less than**

- The new firm underbid the others by $5,000.
### bind | binds · bound · have bound

**PRESENT**
- I bind
- you bind
- he/she/it binds

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am binding
- you are binding
- he/she/it is binding

**PAST**
- I bound
- you bound
- he/she/it bound

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was binding
- you were binding
- he/she/it was binding

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- I have bound
- you have bound
- he/she/it has bound

**PAST PERFECT**
- I had bound
- you had bound
- he/she/it had bound

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was bound
- you were bound
- he/she/it was bound

- We are binding the reports with staples and tape.
- The gears were binding against each other.

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **bind** stick, become stuck
  - The pulley was binding.
- **bind** be uncomfortably tight
  - This dress is binding.

**Note:** The verb *bind*, when it takes an object, is often used with *together.*

bind _____ wrap, cover, bandage

- OBJECT
  - We bound the package with tape.
  - The printer bound the books in red leather.
  - The doctor bound my ankle.

bind _____ fasten together

- OBJECT
  - The secretary bound the pages with a clip.

bind _____ cause to stick together

- OBJECT
  - The glue binds the fibers together.
  - The enzyme binds the calcium ions.

bind _____ put an edge/border on

- OBJECT
  - He bound the rug with cotton tape to keep the edges from raveling.

bind _____ legally/morally obligate

- OBJECT
  - My promise binds me.
  - His father’s will binds the use of the property.

bind _____ cause to have an emotional attachment

- OBJECT
  - Duty and honor bound the company of soldiers together.

bind **SEP** off cast off [knitting]

- Be sure to bind off the scarf loosely.

bind **SEP** over hold on bail

- The judge will bind the suspect over for trial.

bind **SEP** up tie up

- The medics bound up the soldiers’ wounds.
  - The old issues were bound up with twine.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**EXPRESSIONS**

be bound to _____ be certain to [do something]

- It’s bound to snow this afternoon.
- Erin is bound to be a great lawyer someday.
- East Junior High is bound to win the math contest.
## IRREGULAR

### bite | bites - bit - have bitten

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>bite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>bite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>bite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am biting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are biting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is biting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>bit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was biting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were biting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PRESENT PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have bitten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were bitten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were bitten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### COMPLEMENTS

- **bite** cut with the teeth
  - Does your dog bite?
- **bite** sting
  - The mosquitoes are biting tonight.
  - Ouch, that ointment bites.
- **bite** be annoying/objectionable
  - His criticisms really bite!
- **bite** take the bait, be tricked/cheated
  - The fish are biting in Big Moose Lake.
  - Do you think the customers will bite?
- **bite** seize/wound with the teeth
  - I just bit my tongue.
  - The neighbor’s dog bit Thomas.
  - The puppy was biting whatever it could reach.

#### PHRASAL VERBS

- **bite into** sink one’s teeth into
  - Sammy bit into the orange and got juice all over his face.
- **bite (into)** hurt in a stinging way
  - The icy wind was biting into my face.
- **bite off** remove with the teeth
  - Susan bit off only a morsel.
  - Wade bit on his lip as he decided what to do.
- **bite on** be tricked by
  - Did Dennis bite on your latest ruse?

#### EXPRESSIONS

- **be bitten by the ______ bug** be obsessed with
  - Jayne was bitten by the tennis bug. She spent $400 on a racket.
- **bite off more than [one] can chew** undertake more than one can handle
  - By opening five stores last year, the owners bit off more than they could chew.
- **bite [one’s] tongue** hold back from saying something offensive
  - Sheila had to bite her tongue to keep from calling her boyfriend a stupid idiot.
- **bite [someone’s] head off** speak very angrily to someone
  - I broke the copier, and my boss bit my head off.
- **bite the bullet** be brave in a painful situation
  - I bit the bullet and attended my ex-girlfriend’s wedding.
- **bite the dust** die, be defeated
  - How old was the cowboy when he bit the dust?
  - My first laptop finally bit the dust.
Present Present Progressive
I bleed you bleed he/she/it bleeds
you are bleeding you are bleeding they are bleeding
* His nose bleeds at high altitudes.

Past Past Progressive
I bled you bled he/she/it bled
you were bleeding you were bleeding they were bleeding
* His wound bled for quite some time.

Present Perfect... have | has bled
Past Perfect... had bled

Future Future Perfect
I was bled you were bled he/she/it was bled
you were bled you were bled they were bled
* He was bled dry by the blackmailers.

COMPLEMENTS
bleed lose blood
Her hands and knees were bleeding.
bleed seep, ooze
The cut plants bled onto the rug.
bleed lose money
The automobile industry is bleeding at an unsustainable rate.
bleed feel sympathy
My heart bleeds for the widow.
bleed _____ draw blood/fluid from object
Doctors used to bleed their patients regularly.
bleed _____ extort money from over time object
Blackmailers bleed their victims of all their money.
bleed _____ lose rapidly object
Newspapers are bleeding money at an amazing rate.

PHRASAL VERBS
bleed off _____ be printed so the image goes off the edge of [a page, sheet]
The photo of the wolf bleeds off the page.
bleed off _____ remove the contents of Irene bled off the air compressor.
bleed through _____ show through [a layer]
The dark blue is bleeding through the coat of white paint.

EXPRESSIONS
bleed _____ dry/white drain of resources
Legal fees will bleed you dry.
bleed money lose money rapidly
The rock star’s entourage bled him white.
bleed to death die from loss of blood
The entire industry is bleeding money.
bleeding heart one who is exceptionally sympathetic toward the underprivileged
If the doctors can’t stop the bleeding, the boy will bleed to death.
George is a bleeding heart for the homeless.
**PRESENT**
I blend  we blend  
you blend  you blend  
he/she/it blends  they blend

- *The repainted section blends in well.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am blending  we are blending  
you are blending  you are blending  
he/she/it is blending  they are blending

- *We are blending red and white to make pink.*

**PAST**
I blended  we blended  
you blended  you blended  
he/she/it blended  they blended

- *The two families blended perfectly.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was blending  we were blending  
you were blending  you were blending  
he/she/it was blending  they were blending

- *They were blending in as best they could.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**  … have | has blended  
**PAST PERFECT**  … had blended

**PAST PASSIVE**

- it was blended  they were blended

- *Their voices were blended in song.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**NOTE:** The verb blend is often used with together.

**blend** mingle socially

- The participants blended nicely with each other.
- He never blends well in a crowd.

**blend** go well together

- Her odd clothing choices actually blended rather well.
- The food and wine blended beautifully.

**blend** _____  mix together

**OBJECT**

- Blend the sugar and butter until smooth.
- We deliberately blended the freshmen and seniors together.
- Blend the ingredients together and pour the batter into an 8-inch square baking pan.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**blend in (with ____)**  mix well (with)

- Darin doesn’t blend in with his co-workers.
- The gray color blends in with the concrete sidewalk.

---

**EXPRESSIONS**

**blended family** family that includes children of a previous marriage of one or both spouses

- The blended family will soon be the most common type of family unit in the country.
**phrasal verbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrasal verb</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow away/off/out/etc.</td>
<td>be carried by a current of air in a specified direction</td>
<td>Janet’s hat blew off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow <strong>sep</strong> away</td>
<td>defeat soundly</td>
<td>The visitors blew the home team away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow <strong>sep</strong> away</td>
<td>affect intensely</td>
<td>This new poem of yours blows me away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow <strong>sep</strong> away</td>
<td>kill with a gun</td>
<td>The gangsters blew the guard away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow down</td>
<td>collapse due to a strong current of air</td>
<td>The shed blew down in the storm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow <strong>sep</strong> down</td>
<td>cause to collapse due to a strong current of air</td>
<td>The storm blew the shed down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow in / (into ____</td>
<td>arrive unexpectedly (at)</td>
<td>Well, look who just blew in! Three strangers blew into town on Saturday night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow <strong>sep</strong> off</td>
<td>ignore, choose not to deal with</td>
<td>Lanny blew off the assignment. Ramona blew off her friends and left town.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow out</td>
<td>be extinguished</td>
<td>The candle blew out because of the open windows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow out</td>
<td>burst suddenly</td>
<td>The tire blew out, sounding like a gunshot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow <strong>sep</strong> out</td>
<td>extinguish with a gust of air</td>
<td>Blow the candle out and go to sleep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow <strong>sep</strong> out</td>
<td>defeat soundly</td>
<td>Chuck blew out his knee in the first game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow <strong>sep</strong> out</td>
<td>defeat soundly</td>
<td>The Cougars blew the Tigers out in an exhibition game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow [oneself] out</td>
<td>subside</td>
<td>The storm blew over almost as quickly as it arrived. This crisis will blow over soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow over</td>
<td>subside</td>
<td>The storm blew out almost as quickly as it arrived. This crisis will blow over soon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow up</td>
<td>arrive with wind</td>
<td>A storm blew up out of the southwest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow up</td>
<td>lose one’s temper</td>
<td>The teacher will blow up if you don’t be quiet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow <strong>sep</strong> up</td>
<td>fill with air</td>
<td>The clown blew up 20 balloons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow <strong>sep</strong> up</td>
<td>cause to explode</td>
<td>The soldiers blew the headquarters up with mortars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow <strong>sep</strong> up</td>
<td>enlarge</td>
<td>Let’s blow the map up to 400%.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**expressions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>expression</th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow a fuse/gasket</td>
<td>become extremely angry</td>
<td>Natalie blew a fuse when her secretary lost the files.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow off (some) steam</td>
<td>release a pent-up emotion</td>
<td>The players went to a bar to blow off some steam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow [one’s] cool</td>
<td>lose one’s composure</td>
<td>I know you’re frustrated, but don’t blow your cool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow [someone’s] mind</td>
<td>affect intensely</td>
<td>The revelation really blows my mind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow [one’s] (own) horn</td>
<td>praise oneself</td>
<td>Rebecca is talented, but she never blows her own horn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow [one’s] top/stack</td>
<td>speak/act very angrily</td>
<td>The candidate blew his top at the nosy reporter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow ____ out of the water</td>
<td>destroy completely</td>
<td>The new motorcycle will blow its competition out of the water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow [someone] a kiss</td>
<td>indicate a kiss by pantomime</td>
<td>Renni blew him a kiss from the platform.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>top 40 verb</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow the whistle (on ____</td>
<td>report wrongdoing to authorities (about)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow ____ to bits/pieces/smithereens</td>
<td>blow completely apart</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### blow | blows · blew · have blown

#### IRREGULAR

**Present**
- I blow
- you blow
- he/she/it blows

**Present Progressive**
- I am blowing
- you are blowing
- he/she/it is blowing

**Past**
- I blew
- you blew
- he/she/it blew

**Past Progressive**
- I was blowing
- you were blowing
- he/she/it was blowing

**Present Perfect**
- I have blown

**Past Perfect**
- I was blown

**Future**
- I will blow

**Future Progressive**
- I will be blowing

**Future Perfect**
- I will have blown

#### Complements

- **blow** move with force
  - The wind was blowing softly.
- **blow** force air out
  - The fans were blowing at low speed.
- **blow** produce a sound by having air forced through it
  - The horns were all blowing.
- **blow** explode, erupt
  - The volcano blew with a huge roar.
- **blow** abruptly fail
  - The tire blew when we were going 55 miles an hour.
  - The fuse blew when I turned on the iron.

- **blow _____ move/carry away with a current of air**
  - **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
    - The fans were blowing **the stale air outside**.
    - The wind was blowing **dirt in my eyes**.
    - The breeze blew **the boat onto the rocks**.

- **blow _____ force air at/into/through, fill with air**
  - **OBJECT**
    - John blew **his nose**.
    - The kids were blowing **bubbles** all afternoon.
  - **OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**
    - Compressed air blew **the pipes clear**.
    - She blew **her hair dry**.

- **blow _____ produce a sound by forcing air through**
  - **OBJECT**
    - The jazzman blew **the trumpet** with all his might.
    - The referee blew **his whistle** before the ball was thrown.

- **blow _____ cause to explode**
  - **OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**
    - He blew **the safe open**.

- **blow _____ botch, fail to keep**
  - **OBJECT**
    - I blew **the exam**.
    - The actors blew **their lines** repeatedly.
    - The Giants blew **a 14-point lead**.

- **blow _____ waste [money]**
  - **OBJECT**
    - Zack blew **his money** on gambling.

- **blow _____ leave hurriedly**
  - **OBJECT**
    - I'm bored—let's blow **this joint**.
Present Present Progressive
I bother we are bothering
you bother you are bothering
he/she/it bothers they are bothering
→ He rarely bothers to answer his phone.

Past Past Progressive
I bothered we were bothering
you bothered you were bothering
he/she/it bothered they were bothering
→ The loud music isn't bothering me.

Future Future Progressive
I will bother we will be bothering
you will bother you will be bothering
he/she/it will bother they will be bothering

Future Perfect
I will have bothered
you will have bothered
he/she/it will have bothered

Past Perfect
I was bothered we were bothered
you were bothered you were bothered
he/she/it was bothered they were bothered
→ He never bothered my family.

COMPLEMENTS
bother _____ annoy, pester
OBJECT
His negative attitude really bothers me.
Paul's little sister is always bothering him.

bother _____ cause pain/anxiety/concern for
OBJECT
My knee is bothering me.
His proposal bothers all of us.
This analysis bothers me.

bother _____ make an effort
INFINITIVE
He never bothers to knock.
He won't bother to do the job correctly.
Will they bother to reply?

NOTE: In conversation, the infinitive is often understood: "Don't bother (to get it). I'll get it."

PHRASAL VERBS
bother about/with _____ concern
oneself with
Don't bother about the misspellings—the computer will fix them.
Dixie never bothers with details.

bother _____ about/with annoy with
Don't bother yourself about the missing money—I'll replace it.
Charlene was always bothering Otto with jokes she had read.

EXPRESSIONS
bother [one's] (pretty little) head about/with _____ worry about
Don't bother your pretty little head about the cost of the dress.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I break we break</td>
<td>I am breaking we are breaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you break you break</td>
<td>you are breaking you are breaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it breaks they break</td>
<td>he/she/it is breaking they are breaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He never breaks his word.</td>
<td>* We are breaking for lunch now.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I broke we broke</td>
<td>I was breaking we were breaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you broke you broke</td>
<td>you were breaking you were breaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it broke they broke</td>
<td>he/she/it was breaking they were breaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* They broke every single agreement.</td>
<td>* The company was just breaking even.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has broken ... will break</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... had broken</td>
<td>... will be breaking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was broken we were broken</td>
<td>... will have broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were broken you were broken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was broken they were broken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The window was already broken.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

- **break** fragment, shatter
  - The delicate cup broke into pieces.
  - The waves were breaking close to the shore.

- **break** fail in strength/resolve/control/usability
  - His health broke.
  - His voice broke with emotion.
  - The criminals broke under questioning.
  - The replacement parts broke too.

- **break** begin/appear suddenly
  - When the storm broke, I was on my bicycle.
  - Dawn is breaking.

- **break** become publicly known
  - The news broke this morning.

- **break** end suddenly
  - Jasmine's fever broke last night.

- **break** become clear
  - I hope the weather breaks soon.

- **break** fracture, render inoperable
  - OBJECT
  - He broke his left wrist.
  - They broke my cell phone.

- **break** violate [a rule, agreement]
  - OBJECT
  - They broke the rules.
  - We broke our promise to them.

- **break** exceed, surpass
  - OBJECT
  - He was arrested because he broke the speed limit.
  - They broke the old record by four seconds.

- **break** make publicly known
  - OBJECT
  - The reporters broke the news this morning.

- **break** disrupt, make ineffective
  - OBJECT
  - The soldiers broke formation.
  - The noise broke my concentration.
  - She broke the spell.

- **break** stop, interrupt
  - OBJECT
  - The net broke the trapeze artist's fall.
  - Esther broke the silence with a scream.
  - The deadlock was broken at 3 A.M.

- **passive**
  - The deadlock was broken at 3 A.M.
The police broke the case.  
The scientists broke the code.

Can you break a twenty-dollar bill?

One more financial setback will break the company.

The cownboys broke the wild horses.

Helene broke away from the rest of the sprinters.

My car broke down at Sixth and Pine.  
Negotiations broke down after three days.

Seth broke down and cried at the news.

Lonnie broke down and bought an MP3 player.

Let's break the sentence down into subject and predicate.

Let's break for lunch at 12 o'clock.

Has Marilyn broken Mary in yet?

I have to break in a new pair of shoes.

Thieves broke into the pharmacy.

When she's really happy, Gretchen breaks into song.

Bert broke into show business at the age of four.

I'm sorry to break in on your conversation, but I must go.

We should break the project into individual tasks.

Aaron's voice broke off in mid-sentence.

The two nations have broken off diplomatic relations.

Dave broke out in a sweat.

The prisoners broke out of jail in the early morning.

The partnership broke up on amicable terms.

The crowd broke up after the speech.

Every time I hear this monologue, I break up.

Have you heard? Alison broke up with Todd.

This monologue just breaks me up.

The FBI tried to break up the drug cartel.

Two students broke the fight up.

The firm broke even in 2008.

The president broke the ice with a couple of jokes.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Verb</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subject</strong></th>
<th><strong>Verb</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subject</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I bring</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>he/she/it brings</td>
<td>I bring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we bring</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>they bring</td>
<td>we bring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you bring</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>they bring</td>
<td>you bring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it brings</td>
<td>they bring</td>
<td>he/she/it brings</td>
<td>they bring</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* April showers bring May flowers.

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Verb</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subject</strong></th>
<th><strong>Verb</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subject</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I brought</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>he/she/it brought</td>
<td>I brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we brought</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>they brought</td>
<td>we brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you brought</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>they brought</td>
<td>you brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it brought</td>
<td>they brought</td>
<td>he/she/it was brought</td>
<td>they were brought</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* They brought us some good news.

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Verb</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subject</strong></th>
<th><strong>Verb</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subject</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>has brought</td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... had</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>had brought</td>
<td>... had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Verb</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subject</strong></th>
<th><strong>Verb</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subject</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was brought</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>were brought</td>
<td>I was brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were brought</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were brought</td>
<td>you were brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was brought</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>were brought</td>
<td>they were brought</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* This message was brought to you by our sponsor.

---

**NOTE:** The verb *bring* generally indicates movement toward the speaker or toward the focus of attention; compare with *take* (verb No. 505).

**bring**  
*carry, lead*

**OBJECT** (+ **ADVERBS OF PLACE TO/FROM**)

Who will bring **dessert**?

Bring the book here, please.

I brought the **visitors** to **their hotel**.

The coupons really brought a **crowd to the store**.

You should bring them back.

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

He brought me **dinner**.

She brought us **the new account**.

The sale brought them a **small fortune**.

He brought my dinner to me.

She brought the **new account** to us.

The sale brought a **small fortune** to them.

She brought us whatever she could.

Bring whomever you want.

Bring whatever you can to the picnic.

**OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE**

**WH-CLAUSE** (+ **ADVERBS OF PLACE TO/FROM**)

Bring whatever you can to the picnic.

**OBJECT + TO OBJECT**

I brought the water to a boil.

They brought the meeting to a conclusion.

**bring**  
*bear as an attribute*

**OBJECT**

He brought lots of experience to the table.

**bring**  
*result in*

**OBJECT**

The storm brought ten inches of rain.

The drug will bring nearly immediate relief.

**bring**  
*cause*

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

What brought you to apply to 13 colleges?

**bring**  
*sell for*

**OBJECT**

Our old used car brought $350.

The sale will bring a lot of money.

**bring**  
*file in court*

**OBJECT**

He brought charges against the owners.
**bring**  verb | brings · brought · have brought  ☑ IRREGULAR

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- **bring SEP about**  cause to happen  How can we bring about change?
- **bring SEP along**  have [someone] come along  Be sure to bring a friend along on the tour.
- **bring SEP around**  cause to regain consciousness  The medic brought the injured man around.
- **bring SEP around**  persuade  They brought Andy around on going to Cancun.
- **bring SEP away**  come away with [information]  We bring valuable insights away from the meeting.
- **bring SEP back**  recall  These photographs bring back lots of memories.
- **bring _____ before**  cause to appear before [an authority]  The guards brought the defendant before Judge Flynn.
- **bring SEP down**  cause to fall  I brought the zoning issue before the city council.
- **bring SEP forth**  give birth to, produce  His own mistakes brought him down.
- **bring SEP forth**  make known  Amy expects to bring forth a healthy son.
- **bring SEP in**  produce, earn  Reinforcements brought forth the historic victory.
- **bring _____ in on**  include [someone] in [an activity]  The accountant brought forth two good arguments.
- **bring SEP off**  make happen, accomplish  The subsidiary brought in $30 million last year.
- **bring SEP on**  cause to appear  The president brought them in on the decision.
- **bring SEP on**  cause to emerge  He brought off one of the biggest upsets in history.
- **bring SEP on**  make known  It’s time to bring on the clowns.
- **bring SEP over**  persuade  A police siren will bring people out into the street.
- **bring _____ over**  cause to gather  My sister brought her husband through.
- **bring SEP through**  help to endure  We brought Anne to before the medics arrived.
- **bring SEP to**  cause to regain consciousness  We brought her to before the medics arrived.
- **bring SEP together**  cause to gather  The company will bring 30 wind farms into service.
- **bring SEP up**  mention  We brought the class together for one last party.
- **bring SEP up**  raise [a child]  Jackie brought up the idea of having more parties.
- **bring _____ up on**  provide in [someone’s] childhood  It’s not easy to bring up twins.
- **bring _____ up on / up-to-date on / up to speed on**  inform [someone] about  Camelia’s parents brought her up to be nice.
- **bring SEP into play**  cause to be a factor  Mom brought us up on the Beatles.
- **bring _____ into question**  cause to be doubted  Would you like to bring us up on the latest developments?
- **bring _____ into service**  begin to use  The campaign is bringing Internet strategies into play.
- **bring _____ into view**  cause to be seen  Reports have brought his character into question.
- **bring _____ to a head**  cause to reach a crisis  The company will bring 30 wind farms into service.
- **bring _____ to an end / a close / a climax**  end  The viewfinder brought the mountain into view.
- **bring _____ to life**  give vitality to  The theft brought the question of security to a head.
- **bring _____ to light**  reveal  My new book will bring the case to a close.
- **bring _____ to mind**  recall  The children want to bring the puppet to life.
- **bring _____ to [someone’s] attention**  make aware of  The journalist brought the corruption to light.
- **bring _____ to terms**  force to agree  The reunion brought to mind all the good times we had.
- **bring _____ on**  introduce for consideration by  Citizens have brought the issue to our attention.
- **bring _____ over**  persuade  Her persuasiveness brought the opposing sides to terms.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th><strong>Present Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>I am broadcasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>we are broadcasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>you are broadcasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>broadcasts</td>
<td>he/she/it is broadcasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>they are broadcasting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He broadcasts all of their games.

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th><strong>Past Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>I was broadcasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>we were broadcasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>you were broadcasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>he/she/it was broadcasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>they were broadcasting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The station broadcast the show for 50 years.
- We were broadcasting from Los Angeles then.

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present Perfect Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>have broadcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>has broadcast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Past Perfect Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>had broadcast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Past Passive Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>was broadcast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>were broadcast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The news was broadcast in high definition.

### Complements

- **broadcast** transmit programming via radio/TV
  - They broadcast in Latin America.
  - They broadcast in Spanish.
  - We broadcast on the FM dial in stereo.
  - Shhh! They’re broadcasting.

- **broadcast** participate in a broadcast program
  - She broadcasts live from Rockefeller Center.

- **broadcast** ______ transmit via radio/TV
  - They broadcast news about Asia.
  - We broadcast college football games.

- **broadcast** ______ communicate via radio/TV
  - The police broadcast a description of the suspect.
  - The weather bureau broadcast a storm warning for the region.
  - The networks broadcast that Senator Blather was the likely winner.
  - The radio broadcast that all the major downtown freeways were closed.
  - The stations only broadcast what they think the public wants to hear.

- **broadcast** ______ make widely known
  - I’ll broadcast my marriage proposal on the stadium scoreboard.
  - Please don’t broadcast the rumor to everyone you see.
  - I model part-time. But I don’t go broadcasting that I do.
  - Don’t go broadcasting why we split up.
**build**

**IRREGULAR**

**Present**

I build
you build
he/she/it builds

- *He builds custom-made furniture.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am building
you are building
he/she/it is building

- *They are building a new house.*

**Past**

I built
you built
he/she/it built

- *They just built a house near us.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was building
you were building
he/she/it was building

- *They were building passenger cars on truck frames.*

**Present Perfect**

... have | has built

**Past Perfect**

... had built

**Future**

... will build

**Future Perfect**

... will have built

**Past Passive**

it was built
they were built

- *Our house was built in 1996.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**build**

increase in size/intensity

- The waves were building ever higher.
- Our debt was building to scary levels.
- Excitement is building over who will be elected.

**build_____**

**OBJECT**

construct

- Tommy built the wagon out of parts he found in the garage.
- We built a deck this summer.
- They are building a communications network.
- We have built a good plan.
- The prosecutor built a strong case against the suspect.

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

They built us a two-car garage.
We built them a new investment package.

**for PARAPHRASE**

They built a two-car garage for us.
We built a new investment package for them.

**WH-CLAUSE**

We can only build what we can afford.
They will build whatever the marketplace wants.

**build______**

**OBJECT**

increase

- The campaign built support by offering free T-shirts.
- The company is building their business one store at a time.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**build_____**

**in/into**

make [something]
an integral part of

- We will build cabinets into the laundry room.
- The programmers built security into the server software.

**build_____**

**on/onto**

construct

- We built a deck onto the house this summer.

**build_____**

**SEP up**

increase

- The politicians built up hope among poor people.
- Steven is building up leg strength by running five miles a day.

**build_____**

**SEP up**

promote

- The agency built Eileen up as a pop singer.

**EXPRESSIONS**

**build_____**

**to order**

construct to individual specifications

- The woodworker builds bookcases to order.
- Every computer is built to order.
### burn | burns · burned · have burned

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am burning</td>
<td>I burn</td>
<td>you burn</td>
<td>you burnt</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>has burned/burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are burning</td>
<td>you burn</td>
<td>you burn</td>
<td>you burnt</td>
<td>you were</td>
<td>you were burned/burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are burning</td>
<td>he/she/it is burning</td>
<td>they burn</td>
<td>they burnt</td>
<td>you were</td>
<td>you were burned/burnt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She is burning</td>
<td>He really burns me up.</td>
<td>She is burning</td>
<td>she/he/it was burning</td>
<td>they were</td>
<td>they were burned/burnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **burn** be on fire
- **burn** be destroyed by fire
- **burn** give off light
- **burn** be/feel hot/painful
- **burn** become sunburned
- **burn** set fire to, destroy by fire
- **burn** damage/injure by heat/fire
- **burn** use as fuel/energy
- **burn** cause to feel hot
- **burn** record data on
- **burn** defeat, trick, cheat

### Phrasal Verbs

- **burn down** burn smaller and smaller
- **burn** **sep** up make very angry

---

Get out—the building is burning! A small fire was burning in the fireplace.
Our apartment building burned last night. The paper and kindling burned quickly.
Every lamp in the house was burning. Her forehead was burning. My ears were burning from the cold. With her fair complexion, she burns easily.

We burned the trash in the fireplace.
A spark burned a hole in my pants. I burned my fingers. I burned myself on the stove.
Most cars can burn regular gas. Soccer players burn more calories than golfers. We burned whatever we could get our hands on.

The salsa burned my mouth.
We burned some new CDs.
The quarterback burned the defense on that play. I got burned by the dot-com crash in 2000. We were burned in the commodities market.
### burst

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject 1</th>
<th>Subject 2</th>
<th>Subject 3</th>
<th>Subject 4</th>
<th>Subject 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I burst</td>
<td>you burst</td>
<td>he/she/it bursts</td>
<td>burst all</td>
<td>I burst into tears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I am bursting</td>
<td>you are bursting</td>
<td>he/she/it is bursting</td>
<td>I’m bursting</td>
<td>I’m bursting to tell you what happened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I burst</td>
<td>you burst</td>
<td>he/she/it burst</td>
<td>burst all</td>
<td>Hurst all of our hopes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I was bursting</td>
<td>you were bursting</td>
<td>he/she/it was bursting</td>
<td>We just bursting after Thanksgiving dinner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>have burst</td>
<td>has burst</td>
<td>will burst</td>
<td>have burst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>had burst</td>
<td>they burst</td>
<td>were bursting</td>
<td>had burst</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **burst** break, rupture
  - The balloons all burst.
  - I was afraid that my eardrums would burst from the sudden pressure change.

- **burst** be filled to the breaking point
  - The auditorium was bursting with students.
  - The rocket burst above the spectators’ heads.
  - The bushes are just bursting with blossoms.
  - I felt like my heart would burst.
  - I was bursting with pride.

- **burst** explode
  - The explosion burst the windows.
  - The older kids burst all the balloons.
  - The hurricane burst the retaining walls.

- **burst** give way to sudden emotion
  - I felt like my heart would burst.
  - I was bursting with pride.

- **burst** cause to break/explode **OBJECT**
  - The explosion burst the windows.
  - The older kids burst all the balloons.
  - The hurricane burst the retaining walls.

- **burst** be very eager **FOR OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
  - We are bursting for him to tell us.
  - I am bursting for Mary to see what we have done.
  - I’m bursting to know what happened.
  - The kids are bursting to open their presents.

### Phrasal Verbs

- **burst in on** interrupt suddenly
  - The secretary burst in on the private meeting.

- **burst in/into** enter suddenly
  - The children burst into the room.
  - The singer burst onto the stage.

- **burst onto** emerge suddenly in a location
  - The children burst into the room.
  - The singer burst onto the stage.

- **burst out** explode outward
  - When the glass burst out, I was cut by flying shards.

- **burst out** begin suddenly [to do]
  - We all burst out laughing at the joke.

- **burst (out) into** begin [an activity] suddenly
  - After the accident, Kathleen burst into tears.
  - When I hear bongo drums, I burst out into song.

- **burst out of** be too big for
  - She was embarrassed to be bursting out of her dress.

- **burst out of** leave quickly
  - At midnight, the partygoers burst out of the hall.

- **burst through** break through with force
  - The troops burst through the enemy line.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I buy</td>
<td>I am buying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you buy</td>
<td>you are buying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it buys</td>
<td>they are buying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He always buys locally.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I bought</td>
<td>I was buying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you bought</td>
<td>you were buying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it bought</td>
<td>they were buying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* We bought a new car last week.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></th>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has bought</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had bought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The house was bought in 1982.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**buy** _____ purchase

**OBJECT**

I bought *take-out* for dinner.

*We will buy 500 shares of Apex Corporation.*

A dollar buys *less* than a euro does.

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

I bought *the kids some new toys.*

They bought *us dinner.*

**WH-CLAUSE**

I bought *some new toys for the kids.*

They bought *dinner for us.*

Mom buys *whichever brand is cheapest.*

**buy** _____ accept, believe, agree to/with

**OBJECT**

They bought *our proposal.*

Will the students buy *the idea?*

I don’t buy *that* at all.

### PHRASAL VERBS

**buy into _____ purchase shares of**

Our investment club bought into the Triangle Corporation.

**buy into _____ agree with, believe in**

I don’t buy into his money-making scheme.

**buy **SEPARATE** off bribe**

The candidate changed positions; lobbyists bought him off.

**buy **SEPARATE** out purchase all assets/interests of [a business]**

We bought out our competitors.

**buy **SEPARATE** up purchase all of**

We bought up every copy of the *Times* that had Tim’s crossword puzzle in it.

### EXPRESSIONS

**buy _____ for a song purchase cheaply**

She bought this new rocking chair for a song.

**buy _____ on credit/time purchase now and pay later for**

Can we buy this refrigerator on credit?

**buy _____ sight unseen purchase without looking at first**

My parents bought a condo in Florida sight unseen.

**buy (some) time delay an action/decision in hopes that a situation will improve**

The owner wants to buy some time while he considers all his options.
call | calls · called · have called

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**call around** telephone several people about something
She called around to find out where her son was.

**call back** telephone someone who telephoned earlier
I hope that the doctor calls back soon.

**call back** telephone [someone who telephoned earlier]
No message—I’ll call her back later.

**call for** arrive to pick up
Hello, Mrs. Smith. I’m calling for Emily. Good morning, sir. I’m calling for the package.

**call back** telephone [someone who telephoned earlier]
The crowd is calling for the prisoner.

**call for** demand, require
The protesters are calling for lower taxes.

**call for** arrive to pick up
He called the student forward to receive an award.

**call SEP. off** cancel [an event]
The organizers called off the concert.

**call on** make a brief visit to
I will call on my grandmother tomorrow morning.

**call on** ask to speak
The teacher called on Jamie for the answer.

**call on** challenge about
The speaker told a lie, and Randy called him on it.

**call out** shout
Betty called out to Jody from across the street.

**call SEP. up** telephone
Let’s call Mom up and ask her to bake brownies.

**call SEP. up** recall
This postcard calls up memories of the Depression.

**call upon/on** summon to active military duty
They called up 100 guardsmen in the first month.

**call upon/on** order, require
The mayor called upon the citizens to remain calm.

---

**EXPRESSIONS**

**call a spade a spade** speak frankly
In her speeches, the candidate calls a spade a spade.

**call a halt to** stop
The general called a halt to the bombing.

**call (all) the shots** be in charge
Everyone knows that his wife calls the shots.

**call by [a name]** address by [a particular name]
The teacher calls us by our first names.

**call in sick** telephone one’s place of work to report that one is sick and cannot come to work
I woke up with the flu and called in sick.

**call into question** cast doubt on
The new data call our conclusions into question.

**call it a day, call it quits** stop what one has been doing
I’m worn out! Let’s call it a day.

**call names** speak insultingly to
Jimmy’s classmates called him names.

**call on the carpet** reprimand
Because Ira arrived late, the boss called him on the carpet.

**call [(someone)’s] attention to** cause to be noticed (by someone)
Alyssa likes to call attention to herself.

**call [(someone)’s] bluff** challenge a false claim by [someone]
May I call your attention to the latest report?

**call on** ready when summoned
The teacher said he would quit, but the school board called his bluff.

The resident doctor is on call 24/7.
### Regular verb: call | calls · called · have called

**PRESENT**
- I call
- you call
- he/she/it calls

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am calling
- you are calling
- he/she/it is calling

**PAST**
- I called
- you called
- he/she/it called

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was calling
- you were calling
- he/she/it was calling

**PRESENT PERFECT** ... have | has called
**PAST PERFECT** ... had called

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was called
- you were called
- he/she/it was called

- She always calls at dinnertime.
- I’m calling everyone on the list.
- * We were just calling to say hello.
- The meeting was called for tomorrow.

### Complements

| call | telephone          | Did he call? |
|      |                    | Please call when you get a chance. |
|      | shout              | Someone was calling in the darkness. |
|      | ____ telephone     | I called **my sister** last night. |
|      | ____ announce, read loudly | Call the **doctor**! |
|      | ____ address as, name, label | The teacher called **the roll**. |
|      | ____ summon | They called **their best friends**. |
|      | ____ stop | She called **him a fool**. |
|      | ____ predict | They called **us lucky**. |
|      |                  | The chairman called **a meeting**. |
|      |                  | The union called **a strike**. |
|      |                  | She called **him a taxi**. |
|      |                  | She called **a taxi for him**. |
|      |                  | The umpire called **the game** because of rain. |
|      |                  | William called **the election** for the TV network. |
Present Present Progressive
I care | you care | he/she/it cares | we care | you are caring | you are caring | he/she/it is caring | we are caring | One nurse is caring for the whole ward.

Past Past Progressive
I cared | you cared | he/she/it cared | we cared | you were caring | you were caring | he/she/it was caring | we were caring | He was caring for his disabled wife.

Present Perfect
... have | has cared
Past Perfect
... had cared

Past Passive
I was cared | you were cared | he/she/it was cared | we were cared | you were cared | they were cared
The children were cared for by their grandparents.

COMPLEMENTS

care feel concern/interest
I don't care.
They act like they don't care.

that-clause
I care that we are going to be late.
Don't you care that we missed the train?
They won't care that we left early.

wh-clause
He doesn't care who will be there.
I don't care what people think.
Do they care how late we stay out?

Would you care to dance?
I don't care to do it.
You wouldn't care to say that again, would you?

PHRASAL VERBS

care about cherish, value
Joanne cares very much about her invalid sister.
Lori only cares about animals.

care for be responsible for, watch over
A nurse cared for Mom after her stroke.
Hilary cared for Ashley's cats when she was gone.

care for like, want
George doesn't care for broccoli.
Would you care for another cup of coffee?

EXPRESSIONS

care nothing about have no interest in
I care nothing about your CD collection.

care nothing for not like
I care nothing for horror films.

could care less, couldn't care less have no interest at all
She could care less about the prom.
She couldn't care less about the prom.

NOTE: These seemingly contradictory expressions mean the same thing.
### Regular

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>carry</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>carry</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>carries</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I carry a heavy burden.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am carrying</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are carrying</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is carrying</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I am already carrying too many credit hours.*

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>carried</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>carried</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>carried</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*They carried their own weight.*

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have carried</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have carried</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was carrying</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I was carrying.*

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was carried</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were carried</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was carried</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The kitten was carried to its mother.*

### Complements

- **carry** reach over a distance, travel far
  - Voices carry well over water.
  - The balls didn’t carry very far against the wind.

- **carry** win adoption
  - The resolution carried unanimously.

- **carry** transport, hold while moving
  - The fireman carried the child to safety.
  - That pipe carries water.

- **carry** bear, support
  - Those beams carry the main load of the house.
  - The pillars carry the weight of the arch.

- **carry** bear responsibility for
  - I am carrying 20 credit hours this fall.
  - We carry 150 people on the payroll.
  - The firm carries five full-time and three part-time employees.

- **carry** have on one’s person
  - Are you carrying much cash?

- **carry** have space for
  - Our car only carries four people.

- **carry** have for sale
  - Do you carry straw hats?

- **carry** make available to the public
  - Most newspapers carry a listing of TV programs.
  - Channel 28 is carrying the game.

- **carry** win
  - Senator Blather has carried Ohio.
  - They carried the election.

- **carry** be pregnant with
  - She is carrying her second child.

- **carry** sing on key
  - None of my brothers can carry a tune.
carry ______ involve, imply
OBJECT
The crime carried a sentence of 10 years in prison.

carry ______ transfer a figure from one column to the next [MATHEMATICS]
OBJECT
Add 6 and 7, write 3, and carry the 1.

carry ______ sit/stand/walk in a particular way
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN
The First Lady carries herself with dignity.

PHRASAL VERBS

carry _SEP_ along/around/in/out/etc. transport / hold while moving in a specified direction
Be sure to carry along extra batteries.
It's not easy to carry the baby around with you.

carry _SEP_ away cause to lose emotional control
The speaker carried the audience away with her forcefulness.

carry ______ back remind of an earlier time
This song carries me back to my childhood.

carry ______ forward advance [USUALLY PASSIVE]
She was carried forward on a wave of popular support.

carry _SEP_ off kill
The 1918 flu epidemic carried off 20 million people worldwide.
Grandma was carried off by a heart attack.

carry on (_____) continue
Let's carry on as if nothing has happened.
Darren carried on a long conversation with his teacher.
We hope our children carry on the family business.

carry on (about _____) behave in a silly manner, talk at length, make a fuss (about [someone/something])
Watch how those two boys carry on when their parents are gone.
The comic carried on about his next-door neighbors.

carry on (with _____) flirt, have a love affair (with [someone])
Jamal and Brittany have been carrying on for six months.

carry _SEP_ out/through accomplish
The biologist carried out a series of experiments.
Will the candidate carry out his economic plan?
She is determined to carry through her vision of a drug-free America.

carry over continue (to a later time/location)
Will their enthusiasm carry over to next week?
Their great hitting should carry over into the postseason.
The article carries over onto page 18.

carry ______ through help survive
These pills will carry you through the week.

EXPRESSIONS

be/get carried away lose control of one’s emotions
I got carried away and forgot what I was doing.

carry (a lot of) weight (with _____) be influential (with [someone])
Your opinion carries a lot of weight with my family.

carry it off manage something successfully
I hope they can carry it off at tomorrow’s meeting.

carry [one’s] own weight do one’s share
We'll win first place if all the students carry their own weight.

carry the ball be primarily responsible
Volunteers carried the ball to get the candidate elected.

carry-on luggage allowed
to be taken aboard an aircraft
The game was hard fought, but our team carried the day.
Passengers are limited to two carry-ons.
Present | Present Progressive
---|---
I cast | I am casting
you cast | you are casting
he/she/it casts | he/she/it is casting
* The statue casts a long shadow.

Past | Past Progressive
---|---
I cast | I was casting
you cast | you were casting
he/she/it cast | he/she/it was casting
* He cast me in the role of the duke.

Present Perfect | Future | Future Perfect
---|---|---
... have | ... will cast
... has cast | ... will be casting
... had cast | ... will have cast

Past Passive
---
I was cast | we were cast
you were cast | you were cast
he/she/it was cast | they were cast
* The dice were cast.

COMPLEMENTS

cast | throw a fishing line/net into the water
---|---
OBJECT | He cast wherever he could see fish.

OBJECT | The fishermen cast their nets off their boats.
I cast a line to the children in the boat.
The boys cast stones into the pond.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE | The fireplace cast a cheerful light into the room.
He cast a quick glance at his audience.
The moon cast its light on the shimmering lake.

OBJECT + CONVERB OF PLACE | Recent events cast doubt on our decision.
His actions cast suspicion on his motives.

OBJECT | Roberta has already cast the play.

OBJECT + AS OBJECT | We cast him as the hero's father.
Senator Blather cast his opponent as a reckless spender.
He cast her in the leading role.
Sally cast Harry in the role of best friend.

OBJECT | The foundry casts brass bells.
We cast wax candles with the children.

OBJECT | Samuel cast his ballot for the liberal candidate.

PHRASAL VERBS

cast | cast aside/away/off discard, throw away
SEP | Lisa cast aside her winter clothes.

SEP | The boss cast off all his doubts about the new salesperson.

SEP | The retired teacher cast his thoughts back to happier times.

SEP | The cruise ship cast off at 0900 hours.

SEP | The club cast Ollie out for failure to pay dues.
catch | catches · caught · have caught

catch ______ draw even with, overtake
OBJECT

Their Gross Domestic Product is catching Spain’s.
I tried to catch him on the last lap.

catch ______ take/get quickly
OBJECT

Norvel caught a glimpse of himself in the mirror.
I caught sight of Cary on the subway platform.
Try to catch some sleep before you leave.

catch ______ attract and hold
OBJECT

Lori’s poster will catch everybody’s attention.
The new employee caught her eye.

catch from get [a disease] from
[someone/something]

The whole class caught the flu from Jimmy.
The Beatles caught on after The Ed Sullivan Show.

catch on become popular

Dexter finally caught on to what Delia had meant.
Cal is new at the job, but he’s catching on quickly.

catch on (to _____) figure out, learn

I caught her eye from across the room.
Her husband caught her up in his latest scheme.
The assistant will catch the actor up on the news.

catch [someone’s] eye get [someone’s] attention

Dexter finally caught on to what Delia had meant.
Norvel caught a glimpse of himself in the mirror.

catch SEP up in interest/involve [someone] in

The world class caught up with the flu from Jimmy.

catch up (on) bring up-to-date about

The Beatles caught on after The Ed Sullivan Show.

catch up (to/with _____) get even (with
[someone/something])

Will supply ever catch up to demand?
The taxi caught up with the bus at Skinker Blvd.

be caught short be without money when one needs it

Bill was caught short today and couldn’t pay for his lunch.

catch a whiff of ____ smell

I caught a whiff of sweet perfume.

catch ______ at it discover [someone doing something wrong]

They were sneaking cookies, and Mother caught them at it.

catch ______ dead see at any time
[USUALLY NEGATIVE]

You wouldn’t catch me dead in that place.
I wouldn’t be caught dead in that place.

catch ______ napping surprise [someone who is unprepared]

The enemy caught our platoon napping.

catch ______ off balance/guard surprise

The question caught Senator Blather off balance.

catch (on) fire become ignited

The kindling finally caught fire.

catch [one’s] breath rest after intense activity

I just ran four miles—let me catch my breath!

catch [one’s] death of cold become sick with a severe cold

Put on a sweater or you’ll catch your death of cold.

catch ______ red-handed discover [someone] doing something wrong

The police caught the thief red-handed.

catch ______ with [someone’s] pants down discover [someone] in an embarrassing situation

They were taking bribes, and investigators caught them with their pants down.

catch wind of _____ hear about

We just caught wind of the new energy proposal.
catch | catches · caught · have caught

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>catch</td>
<td>we catch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>catch</td>
<td>you catch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>catches</td>
<td>they catch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The basin catches rainwater.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>catching</td>
<td>we are catching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are</td>
<td>catching</td>
<td>you are catching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is</td>
<td>catching</td>
<td>they are catching</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I am catching the last train.

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>we caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>you caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>they caught</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I caught a cold over the weekend.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was</td>
<td>catching</td>
<td>we were catching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were</td>
<td>catching</td>
<td>you were catching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was</td>
<td>catching</td>
<td>they were catching</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The kids were catching minnows in the pond.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>... have caught</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... had</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>... had caught</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>we were caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>you were caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>they were caught</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The burglar was finally caught by the police.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**catch**

begin to burn/operate

The leaves and twigs finally caught.
The engine coughed twice and caught.

become entangled

My sleeve caught on a hook.

act as a catcher [BASEBALL]

Molina caught in all four games of the series.

grasp and hold onto (physically)

I caught the ball.

understand, comprehend

I caught the joke.

Sorry, I didn't catch your name.

discover [someone doing something wrong]

I caught them sleeping on the job.

We caught the kids smoking in the garage.

Zack was caught breaking into a car.

board [a vehicle]

I have to catch a plane.

I'll catch a taxi at the hotel.

become sick with

Everyone caught a cold.

go to see

We caught the last performance of the night.

watch, listen to

Did you catch the game on TV?

meet with

I'll catch you later.

We will catch him at the meeting tomorrow.
## cause

### Present Progressive
- I am causing
- you are causing
- he/she/it is causing
- we are causing
- they are causing

*Their presence is causing difficulties.*

### Past Progressive
- I was causing
- you were causing
- he/she/it was causing
- we were causing
- they were causing

*The situation was causing me to lose sleep.*

### Future
- ... will cause
- ... will be causing
- ... will have caused

### Future Perfect
- ... had caused

### Present Perfect
- ... have | has caused

### Past
- I caused
- you caused
- he/she/it caused
- we caused
- they caused

*He always causes trouble.*

### Present Perfect Passive
- it was caused
- they were caused

*The fire was caused by faulty wiring.*

### Complements

**cause**

**Object**

- He caused **an accident**.
- The short circuit caused **a fire**.

**Wh-clause**

- His carelessness caused **what happened**.
- It must have caused **whatever went wrong**.

**cause**

**Object + Infinitive**

- The scandal caused **him to resign**.
- The rain caused **the river to flood**.

**Wh-clause + Infinitive**

- They caused **whoever came next to miss their turn**.
- Hearing the fax tone caused **whoever it was to hang up**.

### Expressions

**cause (a lot of) hard feelings**

- Greta’s remarriage caused a lot of hard feelings.

**cause (some) eyebrows to raise**

- Her short skirt caused some eyebrows to raise.

**cause (some) tongues to wag**

- His outrageous behavior at the reception caused tongues to wag.
Present Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I change</td>
<td>I am changing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you change</td>
<td>you are changing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it changes</td>
<td>he/she/it is changing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m changing Internet service providers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I changed</td>
<td>I was changing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you changed</td>
<td>you were changing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it changed</td>
<td>he/she/it was changing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I changed my mind about the candidates.</td>
<td>The weather was changing rapidly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Present Perfect Future Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I changed</td>
<td>I was changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you changed</td>
<td>you were changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it changed</td>
<td>they were changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The contract was changed by mutual consent.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Passive</th>
<th>Past Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was changed</td>
<td>we were changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were changed</td>
<td>you were changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was changed</td>
<td>they were changed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**change**

- **become different**
  - The weather changed overnight.
  - The mood of the party changed abruptly.

- **put on different clothes**
  - Please change before dinner.
  - We changed in the locker room at school.

- **trade places**
  - Will you change with me?

- **make different, alter**
  - We changed all of our plans.
  - He's always changing his mind.
  - I changed what I was going to do.
  - We changed where the meeting was going to be.

- **switch [one thing with another]**
  - Let's change the subject.
  - We need to change rooms.
  - The union has changed its position.
  - We change to daylight saving time in the spring.
  - The sleet changed to snow at noon.

- **transfer [from one bus/plane/train to another]**
  - Passengers will change trains at Union Station.
  - We change planes in Hong Kong.

- **replace [old with new]**
  - We need to change the sheets today.
  - It's your turn to change the baby's diaper.

- **give the equivalent of in smaller monetary units**
  - Can you change a twenty-dollar bill?

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**change back (in/into ____)**

- **return to one's original form/state**
  - The werewolves changed back into humans at dawn.

**change into ____**

- **put on [clothing]**
  - Feel free to change into something more comfortable.

**change into ____**

- **transform oneself into**
  - The frog changed into a handsome prince.

**change out of ____**

- **replace [one set of clothing with another]**
  - I'm all sweaty—I have to change out of these running clothes.
### charge

#### Present
- **I** charge
- **you** charge
- **he/she/it** charges

*The psychiatrist charges by the hour.*

#### Present Progressive
- **I** am charging
- **you** are charging
- **he/she/it** is charging

*I’m charging the suit to my credit card.*

#### Past
- **I** charged
- **you** charged
- **he/she/it** charged

*I charged it to my business account.*

#### Past Progressive
- **I** was charging
- **you** were charging
- **he/she/it** was charging

*They were charging him with reckless driving.*

#### Future
- **I** will charge
- **you** will charge
- **he/she/it** will charge

#### Future Progressive
- **I** will be charging
- **you** will be charging
- **he/she/it** will be charging

#### Future Perfect
- **I** will have charged
- **you** will have charged
- **he/she/it** will have charged

#### Past Passive
- **I** was charged
- **you** were charged
- **he/she/it** was charged

*The battery was charged two days ago.*

### Complements

- **charge** rush, attack
- **charge** bill
- **charge** rush at, attack
- **charge** set as a price, bill
- **charge** pay for by credit
- **charge** power [an electric device]
- **charge** claim, accuse
- **charge** make responsible for
- **charge** excite
- **charge** attribute
- **charge** give instructions to [LEGAL]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complement</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rush, attack</td>
<td>The crowd was charging forward.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bill</td>
<td>The store doesn't charge for gift wrapping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rush at, attack</td>
<td>The soldiers suddenly charged the enemy lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set as a price, bill</td>
<td>He charges 45 dollars an hour for design work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay for by credit</td>
<td>I charged all my purchases. Will you pay cash or charge it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>power [an electric device]</td>
<td>I need to charge my cell phone. You must charge your electric drill every night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claim, accuse</td>
<td>The police charged the suspect. They charged him with foul play.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make responsible for</td>
<td>The boss charged Edmund with inventory control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excite</td>
<td>The violinist charged the concert hall with excitement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute</td>
<td>Kimberly charged her election loss to bad publicity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give instructions to [LEGAL]</td>
<td>The circuit court judge charged the jury.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**PRESENT**
I check
you check
he/she/it checks

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am checking
you are checking
he/she/it is checking

**PAST**
I checked
you checked
he/she/it checked

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was checking
you were checking
he/she/it was checking

**PRESENT PERFECT**
I have checked
you have checked
he/she/it has checked

**FUTURE**
I will check
you will check
he/she/it will check

**PAST PERFECT**
I had checked
you had checked
he/she/it had checked

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was checked
you were checked
he/she/it was checked

**FUTURE PERFECT**
I will have checked
you will have checked
he/she/it will have checked

*He checks his e-mail all the time.
*I'm checking on it now.
*The police were checking his alibi.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**check**
agree point by point

**check ______** examine in order to confirm/verify

**OBJECT**
We checked all the information.

**THAT-CLAUSE**
I checked the ropes.

**WH-CLAUSE**
He checked that the luggage was securely tied down.
We checked what they told us.

**check ______** deposit/consign for temporary safekeeping

**OBJECT**
She checked her coat in the lobby.
I need to check two bags.

**WH-CLAUSE**
The hotel will check whatever you need to leave here.

**check ______** restrain, block, stop

**OBJECT**
The fallen branch checked the flow of the little stream.
I had to check the impulse to go too fast.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**check back (with ______)** inquire (of) again

**check in** register at a hotel/conference

**check ______** register at [a hotel, etc.]

**check ______** investigate

**check ______** register at [a hotel, etc.]

**check ** off mark as completed / accounted for

**check out** appear to be true

**check out** settle one's bill [at a hotel, store]

**check ______** record the withdrawal of

**check ______** record the withdrawal of

**check ______** evaluate

I’ll check back with you later.
Let’s check in before we go sightseeing.
Did Leon check the book in before it was due?
The clerk checked the order in.
The police will check into the suspect’s past.
Brian and Allison checked into a hotel near Philadelphia.
Hal checked the last four items off.
Someone needs to check off the people as they register.
The suspect’s story checks out.

We need to check out by 10 A.M.
The Andersons filled two grocery carts and checked out.
Tim checked out six books on astronomy.
Hey! Check out the guy in the tweed sweater!
Check the apartment over before you sign the lease.
Would you check up on Jody’s performance?
The nurse checked on the patient in Room 325.
choose | chooses · chose · have chosen

**PRESENT**

I choose | we choose
you choose | you choose
he/she/it chooses | they choose

*He always chooses to take Amtrak.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am choosing | we are choosing
you are choosing | you are choosing
he/she/it is choosing | they are choosing

*They are choosing someone right now.*

**PAST**

I chose | we chose
you chose | you chose
he/she/it chose | they chose

*They chose a new president.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was choosing | we were choosing
you were choosing | you were choosing
he/she/it was choosing | they were choosing

*They were choosing a new secretary.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has chosen

**PAST PERFECT**

... had chosen

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was chosen | we were chosen
you were chosen | you were chosen
he/she/it was chosen | they were chosen

*My candidate was chosen.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**choose**

**make a selection**

You need to choose.
They are still choosing.
You may choose between lemon and cherry Danish.

**choose _____**

**select, opt for, prefer**

object

Giuseppe chose the toasted ravioli.
The delegates chose Senator Blather.
The residents chose pumpkin pie over cheesecake.
The bride chose satin for her wedding dress.

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

I chose myself a new computer.
My son chose his mother a present.
My son chose a present for his mother.

**FOR PARAPHRASE**

I chose a new computer for myself.

**OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN**

He chose Ralph as his partner.
They chose Sue as captain.

**OBJECT + FOR PREDICATE NOUN**

We will choose Meg for treasurer.
She chose Sarah for her maid of honor.

**OBJECT + to BE PREDICATE NOUN**

They chose her to give the keynote address.
He chose Larry to be his best man.
You should choose Kay to design your book.

**OBJECT + INFinitive**

They chose her to give the keynote address.
He chose Larry to be his best man.
You should choose Kay to design your book.

**INFINITIVE**

We chose to fly to Denver.

**WH-CLAUSE**

He is choosing what to take.
We chose where we would go on vacation.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

We chose flying to Denver over driving there.

### EXPRESSIOnS

**choose (up) sides**

**form opposing teams**

by having captains alternately select players

Once they chose up sides, they had to decide which team would bat first.

**pick and choose**

**select carefully**

Shoppers can pick and choose from a wide variety of produce.
Present | Present Progressive | Past | Past Progressive | Present Perfect | Future | Future Progressive | Future Perfect
--- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | ---
I cite | I am citing | we cite | we are citing | I am citing | I am citing | I am citing | I'm citing all my sources.
you cite | you are citing | you cite | you are citing | you are citing | you are citing | you are citing | you are citing
he/she/it cites | he/she/it is citing | they cite | they are citing | he/she/it is citing | they are citing | they are citing | they are citing
* He always cites The New York Times.

Past | Past Progressive
--- | ---
I cited | I was citing
you cited | you were citing
he/she/it cited | he/she/it was citing
* The police cited them several times.

Present Perfect | ... have | has cited
--- | ---
Past Perfect | ... had cited

Past Passive
---
I was cited | we were cited
you were cited | you were cited
he/she/it was cited | they were cited
* He was cited for contempt.

Cite _____ quote as an authority

Always cite your sources.
The lawyers cited the Constitution.

Cite _____ object

The company cited bad weather for its decreased sales.
The general cited the entire unit.
The committee cited Jayne for her volunteer work.

Cite _____ wh-clause

I cited what I considered reliable sources.
He cited whoever would help his cause.

Cite _____ mention as support/proof

The judge cited the entire group of belligerents.

Cite _____ formally honor

The policeman cited Sam for parking illegally.

Cite _____ charge [with breaking the law]

The lawyer cited the Constitution.
The committee cited Jayne for her volunteer work.

Cite _____ formal honor

The police cited the entire group of belligerents.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I claim</td>
<td>we claim</td>
<td>I am claiming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you claim</td>
<td>you claim</td>
<td>you are claiming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it claims</td>
<td>they claim</td>
<td>he/she/it is claiming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He claims that he was interfered with.</td>
<td></td>
<td>* They are claiming that they didn't do anything.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I claimed</td>
<td>we claimed</td>
<td>I was claiming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you claimed</td>
<td>you claimed</td>
<td>you were claiming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it claimed</td>
<td>they claimed</td>
<td>he/she/it was claiming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* She claimed five victories in a row.</td>
<td></td>
<td>* We were claiming compensation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **PRESENT PERFECT** | ... have | has claimed |
| **PAST PERFECT** | ... had claimed |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was claimed</td>
<td>we were claimed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were claimed</td>
<td>you were claimed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was claimed</td>
<td>they were claimed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The title was claimed by his evil twin brother.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

- **claim _____ assert as true**
  - OBJECT
  - THAT-CLAUSE
  - The company claimed a **spotless environmental record**.
  - He claimed **that his team would win**.
  - She claims **that polar bears are not endangered**.

- **claim _____ profess**
  - INFINITIVE
  - He claimed **to be the first one to climb to the top**.
  - They claimed **to be the original owners**.

- **claim _____ achieve, win**
  - OBJECT
  - He claimed **three gold medals** at the meet.

- **claim _____ destroy, kill**
  - OBJECT
  - The fire claimed **four houses**.
  - The accident claimed **three victims**.
  - The tornado claimed **the lives of six residents**.

- **claim _____ call for, require**
  - OBJECT
  - The report claimed **my full attention**.
  - The situation claimed **our utmost efforts**.

- **claim _____ ask for, take as one’s own/right**
  - OBJECT
  - Has anyone claimed **the necklace in the lost and found**?
  - The children claimed **their inheritance** immediately.
  - Each tribe claims **the territory** for itself.
### Present

**Present**

I clean we clean he/she/it cleans

you clean you clean you clean

he/she/it cleans they clean

- The janitor cleans the offices every night.

**Past**

I cleaned we cleaned he/she/it cleaned

you cleaned you cleaned they cleaned

- I cleaned out my locker.

**Present Perfect**

... have | has cleaned

**Past Perfect**

... had cleaned

**Past Passive**

I was cleaned we were cleaned he/she/it was cleaned

you were cleaned you were cleaned they were cleaned

- The rugs were cleaned by a carpet specialist.

### Complements

**clean** 

*get rid of dirt/trash/impurities*

The new brush cleans well.

The boys clean rather carelessly.

**clean _____** 

*rid [something] of dirt/trash/impurities*

**OBJECT**

I will clean the oven.

We cleaned the house thoroughly.

The nurse cleaned the wound with peroxide.

We cleaned the bathroom before our guests arrived.

They cleaned the basement in a single day.

He only cleaned what was going to be sold.

They cleaned whatever needed it.

**WH-CLAUSE**

The kids need to clean their plates.

**clean _____** 

*eat all the food on*

**OBJECT**

We cleaned the fish.

**clean _____** 

*remove the innards of [fish, fowl]*

**OBJECT**

**Phrasal Verbs**

**clean SEP off** 

*get rid of, remove*

Rory cleaned the graffiti off.

The ushers cleaned the auditorium out.

She needs to clean out her desk.

His roommates cleaned him out in a poker game.

It's time to clean up for the party.

Langdon really cleaned up on the stock transactions.

The candidate promised he would clean up City Hall.

**clean SEP out** 

*remove the occupants/contents of*

**clean SEP out** 

*deprive of money/possessions [INFORMAL]*

**clean up** 

*make oneself presentable*

**clean up** 

*make a lot of money*

**clean SEP up** 

*rid [something] of dirt/trash*

**clean SEP up** 

*rid [something] of corruption*

**Expressions**

**clean house** 

*get rid of what is undesirable*

When I’m president, I’m going to clean house: No one’s job will be safe.

**clean up [one’s] act / clean [one’s] act up**

*begin to behave better*

The boss gave Darrell one last chance to clean up his act.
### clear

**clear** | clears · cleared · have cleared

---

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I clear</th>
<th>you clear</th>
<th>he/she/it clears</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we clear</td>
<td>you clear</td>
<td>they clear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He clears his throat before he speaks.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I am clearing</th>
<th>you are clearing</th>
<th>he/she/it is clearing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- *He is clearing the kitchen drain.*

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I cleared</th>
<th>you cleared</th>
<th>he/she/it cleared</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we cleared</td>
<td>you cleared</td>
<td>they cleared</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The check cleared this morning.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I was clearing</th>
<th>you were clearing</th>
<th>he/she/it was clearing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- *We were clearing some brush in the backyard.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has cleared</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>... had cleared</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I was cleared</th>
<th>you were cleared</th>
<th>he/she/it was cleared</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- *The channel was cleared by the Coast Guard.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

- clear be credited to a bank account
- clear become transparent
- clear become free of clouds
- clear become free of objects/obstructions
  
  **OBJECT**
  
  clear make free of objects/obstructions

- clear remove
  
  **OBJECT**

- clear pass over/under/by without touching
  
  **OBJECT**

- clear remove the occupants of
  
  **OBJECT**

- clear free from accusation/blame
  
  **OBJECT**

- clear be approved by
  
  **OBJECT**

- clear make as a profit
  
  **OBJECT**

- clear submit for approval
  
  **OBJECT**

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- clear out go away

- clear up become cured, disappear

- clear **SEP** up cure, make disappear

- clear **SEP** up explain, solve

- clear **SEP** out explain, solve

---

*Your check will clear tomorrow.*

*The air in the shop cleared.*

*The sky cleared before sunset.*

*The drain finally cleared by itself.*

*I cleared the driveway after the storm.*

*The boys will clear the mine field.*

*The soldiers cleared the hall because of the bomb threat.*

*DNA evidence cleared the suspect of the crime.*

*The shipment cleared customs.*

*We cleared the budget with me beforehand.*

*When do you think the crowd will clear out?*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGULAR</th>
<th>climb</th>
<th>climbs · climbed · have climbed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I climb</td>
<td>we climb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you climb</td>
<td>you climb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it climbs</td>
<td>they climb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He always climbs alone.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I climbed</td>
<td>we climbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you climbed</td>
<td>you climbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it climbed</td>
<td>they climbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The plane climbed to 30,000 feet.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>… have</td>
<td>has climbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>… had climbed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>it was climbed</td>
<td>they were climbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Mera Peak was first climbed in 1953.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

| I am climbing | we are climbing |
| you are climbing | you are climbing |
| he/she/it is climbing | they are climbing |
| * I’m climbing Mt. Hood this summer. |

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

| I was climbing | we were climbing |
| you were climbing | you were climbing |
| he/she/it was climbing | they were climbing |
| * Vines were climbing up the porch railing. |

| FUTURE | … will climb |
| FUTURE PROGRESSIVE | … will be climbing |
| FUTURE PERFECT | … will have climbed |

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **climb**
  - go upward, rise
  - The plane was climbing.
  - Interest rates are climbing.
  - His approval rate climbed steadily in September.

- **climb**
  - go upward on
  - **OBJECT**
  - The kids were climbing the apple tree.
  - Can you climb the stairs?
  - He climbed whatever he could get access to.

- **climb**
  - grow up/over
  - **OBJECT**
  - Ivy was climbing the walls of the cottage.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- **climb up/down/through/etc.**
  - climb in a specified direction
  - He climbed up two steps at a time.
  - The fireman climbed down holding the kitten.
  - Open the window and let me climb through.

**EXPRESSIONS**

- **climb all over**
  - reprimand, scold
  - The boss climbed all over me for the missing reports.

- **climb on the bandwagon**
  - join the popular side of an issue
  - Once recycling became popular, everyone climbed on the bandwagon.

- **climb the wall(s)**
  - be very anxious
  - Before the verdict was returned, Tammy was climbing the walls.
### Present Cling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>cling</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>cling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>clings</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>clinging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *We cling to our beliefs as long as we can.*

### Past Cling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>clung</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>clung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>clung</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>clung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He clung to them throughout the ordeal.*

### Present Perfect Cling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect Cling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Progressive Cling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am clinging</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>are clinging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is clinging</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>are clinging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He is clingng to life by a thread.*

### Past Progressive Cling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was clinging</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were clinging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was clinging</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>were clinging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The passengers were clinging to the handrails.*

### Future Cling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>will cling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Progressive Cling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>will be clinging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect Cling

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>will have clung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive Cling

- *The story was clung to desperately.*

### Complements

**cling**

- **hold on tightly to each other**
  - The twins clung together under the umbrella.
  - The socks were clinging together when I removed them from the dryer.

- **adhere, hold on tightly**
  - to **object**
  - He clung **to the ledge** until he was rescued.
  - The climbers were clinging **to the rope**.
  - The girl clung **to her father’s hand**.
  - The ivy was clinging **to the wall**.
  - The price stickers always cling **to the fruit**.
  - The molecules cling **to each other**.
  - The office was clinging **to outdated software**.

- **have a strong emotional attachment**
  - to **object**
  - Believers cling **to their faith**.
  - Elvis’s fans always clung **to him** no matter what.
  - They will cling **to whoever their prophet is**.
  - They clung **to whatever their leader told them**.

**note:** The verb *cling*, when not used with an object, is always followed by *together.*
close | closes · closed · have closed  close  91

**PRESENT**
I close  we close
you close  you close
he/she/it closes  they close
* He closes his shop at six every day.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am closing  we are closing
you are closing  you are closing
he/she/it is closing  they are closing
* I’m closing the door now.

**PAST**
I closed  we closed
you closed  you closed
he/she/it closed  they closed
* The auctioneer closed the bidding at $30.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was closing  we were closing
you were closing  you were closing
he/she/it was closing  they were closing
* We were closing in on the solution.

**PRESENT PERFECT**  … have | has closed
**PAST PERFECT**  … had closed

**PAST PASSIVE**
—
—
—
—
it was closed  they were closed
* The gates were closed at dusk.

**NOTE:** The verb close is pronounced with a /z/, rhyming with nose. The adjective close is pronounced with an /s/, rhyming with dose.

**COMPLEMENTS**

- close  become shut
- close  come to an end
- close  cease operation temporarily/permanently
- close  end the day’s business
- close  **** shut, block
  OBJECT
- close  **** bring to an end
  OBJECT
- close  **** settle, come to terms on
  OBJECT
- close  **** make [an electrical circuit] continuous
  OBJECT

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- close  sep  down/up  shut/stop permanently/completely
- close in (on _____)  draw near (to [someone/something]) to attack/arrest/overwhelm
- close  sep  off  block
- close  sep  out  sell cheaply in order to dispose of the stock of

The door closed slowly.
The play will close next week.
The store will close in 15 minutes.
The plant will close next month.
The markets closed lower today.

Please close the windows.
They closed the street for repairs.
We closed the plant in Singapore.

She closed her savings account.
Her solo closed the performance.
He closed the letter with “XXOO.”
The college closed registration to out-of-state students.

We finally closed the deal.
The lever closed the circuit.

The health department closed the restaurant down last week.
Our platoon closed in on the enemy’s ammunition dump.
The police are closing in on the killer.
Mary’s financial problems are closing in on her.
Construction crews closed the area off to tourists.
The department store is closing out its entire line of designer shoes.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>collect</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>collect</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>collects</td>
<td>they collect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **He collects foreign stamps.**

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am collecting</td>
<td>you are collecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are collecting</td>
<td>he/she/it is collecting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **I am collecting for Special Olympics.**

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>collected</td>
<td>you collected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>collected</td>
<td>he/she/it collected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **I collected all the dirty dishes.**

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was collecting</td>
<td>you were collecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were collecting</td>
<td>he/she/it was collecting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **He was collecting a sizable pension.**

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have collected</td>
<td>you have collected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have collected</td>
<td>he/she/it has collected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was collected</td>
<td>you were collected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were collected</td>
<td>he/she/it was collected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Taxes were collected by the local governments.**

### Complements

**collect**

- **accumulate, gather**
- **ADverb of Place**
  - Dust always collects **on the bookshelves**.
  - Rain collects **on the window ledges**.
  - A crowd was collecting **outside the station**.
  - The students collected **around the professor** after class.

- **gather as a hobby**
  - He collects **books about the Civil War**.
  - They collect **classical LPs**.
  - I collect **whatever World War Two items I can find**.

- **gather together, pick up**
  - Please collect **the ballots**.
  - I collected **all the used paper plates and cups**.
  - They collect **the trash** on Tuesday.
  - Dark clothes really collect **lint**.
  - He collects **whatever refuse gets left behind**.

- **call for and receive [money, contributions]**
  - The IRS collects **taxes** quarterly.
  - We are collecting **canned goods** for the food bank.

- **seek and bring back**
  - The kids were collecting **eggs** in the barn.
  - I will collect **the passengers** at the station.

- **regain control of [one’s thoughts, emotions]**
  - He took a minute to collect **himself**.
  - I need to collect **my thoughts** before speaking.

### Phrasal Verbs

- **collect on**
  - take as payment on
  - His agency collects on overdue accounts.

### Expressions

**cool, calm, and collected**

- **relaxed and self-assured**
  - My opponent ranted and raved, and
  - I just sat there cool, calm, and collected.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>color</td>
<td>we color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>color</td>
<td>you color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>colors</td>
<td>they color</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He always colors his skies dark gray.*

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am coloring</td>
<td>we are coloring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are coloring</td>
<td>you are coloring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is coloring</td>
<td>they are coloring</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I’m coloring it yellow.*

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>colored</td>
<td>we colored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>colored</td>
<td>you colored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>colored</td>
<td>they colored</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*She colored in all the background.*

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was coloring</td>
<td>we were coloring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were coloring</td>
<td>you were coloring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was coloring</td>
<td>they were coloring</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The kids were coloring in their workbooks.*

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>has colored</td>
<td>have colored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>has colored</td>
<td>have colored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has colored</td>
<td>have colored</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was colored</td>
<td>were colored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>was colored</td>
<td>were colored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was colored</td>
<td>were colored</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*His story was colored by personal experience.*

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>colored</td>
<td>we colored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>colored</td>
<td>you colored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>colored</td>
<td>they colored</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**color** engage in coloring

He always colors outside the lines.

**color** blush

The little girl colored as she talked.

**color** ___ apply color to, change the color of

**OBJECT**

Do you want to color the cards?
She is coloring her hair now.
The kids love to color Easter eggs.

**OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**

We colored the porch ceiling light blue.
I colored my egg purple.

**WH-CLAUSE**

We colored whatever we could reach.

**color** ___ influence, affect, distort

**OBJECT**

His unhappy childhood colored his adult life.
Your hostile attitude colored the judge's decision.
The years since the accident have colored the facts.

**WH-CLAUSE**

The criticism colored what he did later.
His controversial topics colored how his audience viewed his paintings.

**color** sep.in fill in the outline of [something] with color

Why don’t you color in the man’s coat?
| TENSE | FIRST PERSON | SECOND PERSON | THIRD PERSON | NOUN COMBINED WITH
|-------|-------------|---------------|-------------|------------------|
| PRESENT | I combine | you combine | he/she/it combines | The two gases readily combine.
|        | we combine | you combine | they combine | Iron and oxygen combine to form rust.
|        | you combine | you combine | you are combining | The chocolate and peanut butter combined nicely.
| PAST   | I combined | we combined | we were combined | The two armies combined to produce a powerful force.
|        | you combined | you combined | you were combined | The liberal and moderate members combined to form a new party.
|        | he/she/it combined | they combined | they were combined |
| * I combined the first two ingredients. | * They were combining red and white to make pink. |
| PRESENT PERFECT | ... have | has combined | | The two proposals were combined into a single plan. |
| PAST PERFECT | ... had combined | | | |
| PAST PASSIVE | I was combined | we were combined | | |
|        | you were combined | you were combined | |
|        | he/she/it was combined | they were combined | |
| FUTURE | ... will combine | | | |
| FUTURE PERFECT | ... will have combined | | | |

**COMPLEMENTS**

**combine** **mix, act together**
- The two gases readily combine.
- Iron and oxygen combine to form rust.
- The chocolate and peanut butter combined nicely.

**combine** **merge**
- The two armies combined to produce a powerful force.
- The liberal and moderate members combined to form a new party.

**NOTE**: *Combine* is often used with and or with.

**combine** **______** **join [two or more elements] together**
- **OBJECT**
  - The recipe combines *several ingredients*.
  - The recipe combines *peppers and tomatoes*.
  - The recipe combines *peppers with tomatoes*.

**combine** **______** **possess in combination**
- **OBJECT**
  - He combines *many good qualities*.
  - He combines *speed and strength*.
  - He combines *speed with strength*. 

**NOTE**: The verb *combine* is stressed on the second syllable, like *refine*. The noun *combine* is stressed on the first syllable.
### IRREGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I am coming</td>
<td>I was coming</td>
<td>I have come</td>
<td>I will have come</td>
<td>I was coming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Progressive</strong></td>
<td>we are coming</td>
<td>we were coming</td>
<td>they have come</td>
<td>they will have come</td>
<td>they were coming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>He comes here on weekends.</td>
<td>They came to see you.</td>
<td>He comes home once a week.</td>
<td>The two sides came to an understanding.</td>
<td>They came eager for the show to begin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>He was coming</td>
<td>They were coming</td>
<td>They had come</td>
<td>They will be coming</td>
<td>They had come</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

Come is never used in the passive voice.

### COMPLEMENTS

- **come** move toward the speaker
  - Please come here.
  - Don’t come too close—I have a cold.

- **come** fare, get along
  - How’s Harry coming in his new job?

- **come** arrive/appear in space/time
  - The deadline has come all too soon.
  - The ship came over the hill at 60 miles an hour.
  - The class came to the chapter on ancient Rome.
  - They come home once a week.

  **ADVERB OF TIME**
  - The new model comes in three colors.
  - The DVD player comes ready to use.
  - The computer comes without a keyboard.

  **ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
  - The steering wheel came loose and he lost control of the car.

  **ADVERB OF MANNER**
  - Stella’s dream of becoming an astronaut came true.
come away/forward/in/out/up/etc.
approach in a specified direction
come about happen
come across/upon ______ find/meet
by accident
come along appear
come along make progress
come (along) with ______ accompany

come around recover
come around (to _____) agree finally (to)
come at _____ attack
come back be popular again
come between _____ cause trouble between
come down decrease [or prices]
come down be demolished
come down be handed down by tradition
come down to _____ be a matter of
come down with _____ become sick with
come from _____ be caused by
come in become available, arrive

come in _____ finish a contest
come of _____ result from
come off _____ become separated from
come off happen
come on be illuminated
come on begin to be broadcast
come out be made public
come out declare oneself
come out turn out, end up, do
come (out) to _____ amount to

come out with _____ introduce [a product]
come through ______ survive
come to regain consciousness
come to _____ be a matter of
come up increase [or prices]
come up appear for consideration

come up against ______ encounter, confront
come up for _____ be in line for
come up with _____ find, produce

Marcy came up from the basement.
Melinda came in through the back door.
How did the agreement come about?
She came across her high school yearbook.

We’ll ask the first person who comes along.
The project is coming along fairly well.
Jayne may come along with us to the grocery.
These instructions came with the new monitor.
He was knocked unconscious, but he soon came around.
He eventually came around to my point of view.
Rudy came at the burglar with his fists flying.
Smaller cars are coming back.
We can't let a silly quarrel come between us.
Gasoline prices are coming down.
The historic inn will come down for urban renewal.
Western philosophy came down to us from the Greeks.
The debate comes down to money.
A third of my classmates came down with a cold.
John's problems come from his lack of control.
The election results are coming in now.
The new encyclopedias will come in tomorrow.
Carrie came in second in the 100-meter dash.
Nothing came of my complaint to the board.
A fender came off my bike today.
The dinner party came off just as we expected.
The streetlights come on at dusk.
When does Countdown come on tonight?
The facts came out at the afternoon meeting.
Senator Blather came out in favor of wind farms.
Everything came out fine in the end.
Your repair bill comes out to $227.46.
All of Ellery’s efforts came to nothing.
The company came out with three new workstations.
Randall came through the ordeal of boot camp.
Gertie came to before the medics arrived.
When it comes to idioms, we are the experts.
Stock prices have come up over the past week.
The issue comes up every few months.
Did the issue of slavery come up in history class?
The activists came up against a lot of opposition.

These antique lamps don’t come up for sale very often.
The position comes up for election every four years.
Alicia came up with two quarters for the parking meter.
Has the detective come up with a motive yet?
### command | commands

- **command** · **commands** · **commanded** · **have commanded**

#### PRESENT
- I command
- you command
- he/she/it commands
  - I command the Third Infantry Division.
- we command
- you are commanding
- he/she/it is commanding
  - They are commanding us to leave.
- he/she/it commands
- they command

#### PAST
- I commanded
- you commanded
- he/she/it commanded
  - He commanded them to stop.
- we commanded
- you were commanding
- he/she/it was commanding
  - He was commanding three regiments at the time.
- they commanded

#### PRESENT PERFECT
- I have commanded
- you have commanded
- he/she/it has commanded
  - The ships were commanded to return to port.
- we have commanded
- you were commanding
- he/she/it was commanding
- they have commanded

#### PAST PERFECT
- I had commanded
- you had commanded
- he/she/it had commanded
- they had commanded

#### PAST PASSIVE
- I was commanded
- you were commanded
- he/she/it was commanded
- they were commanded
  - The ships were commanded to return to port.
- we were commanded
- you were commanding
- he/she/it was commanding
- they were commanding

#### COMPLEMENTS

**command** | **be in authority**
---|---
General Brown is commanding.
You have commanded with great effectiveness.

**command** | **have control of**
---|---
OBJECT
She commands a large fortune.
He commands a Navy battle group.
They no longer command many resources.

**command** | **order**
---|---
OBJECT + INFINITIVE
The teacher commanded the class to be silent.
The sergeant commanded his men to attack.
She commanded the dog to sit.
The dog was commanded to sit.

**command** | **demand/receive as one's due**
---|---
OBJECT
The law firm commands huge fees.
The professor commands a great deal of respect.
Their leader commanded instant obedience.

**command** | **dominate, overlook**
---|---
OBJECT
The guns command the entrance to the port.
The fortress commands the entire valley.
commit | commits · committed · have committed

**PRESENT**
- I commit
- you commit
- he/she/it commits

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am committing
- you are committing
- he/she/it is committing

*He commits himself to do too much.*

**PAST**
- I committed
- you committed
- he/she/it committed

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was committing
- you were committing
- he/she/it was committing

*They committed the suicide attacks.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have committed

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had committed

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was committed
- you were committed
- he/she/it was committed

*A crime was committed in my neighborhood.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**commit**

- obligate, devote
  
  **OBJECT + to OBJECT**
  
  He committed the reserves to the attack.
  We must commit more resources to the problem.

- John committed himself to public service.

**PASSIVE**

- **OBJECT + infinitive**
  
  More resources were committed to the project.
  Our group is committing itself to buy toys for needy children.

**commit**

- place in a prison / mental institution
  
  **OBJECT**
  
  The court committed Harry for three years.
  The state cannot commit people without a hearing.

- reveal one’s views/plans
  
  **REFLEXIVE PRONOUN**
  
  The senator never committed himself.
  You shouldn’t commit yourself too early.

- perform [an illegal/wrong action]
  
  **OBJECT**
  
  They had committed a crime.
  The accountant had committed forgery.

- set apart [for a particular purpose]
  
  **OBJECT + to OBJECT**
  
  Tasha commits much of her time to volunteer work.

- refer for consideration
  
  **OBJECT + to OBJECT**
  
  They committed the bill to the Foreign Relations Committee.

**EXPRESSIONS**

- **commit** to memory
  
  **memorize**

  Telford committed the entire poem to memory.
### Verbs: compare | compares | compared | have compared

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>compare</td>
<td>we</td>
<td><strong>be evaluated against others</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>compare</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>The new phone compares pretty well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>compares</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>The trainees compare favorably.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>comparing</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>They always compare themselves to us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are</td>
<td>comparing</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>We are comparing results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is</td>
<td>comparing</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I compared</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>They always compare themselves to us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you compared</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>We are comparing results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have/has</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you have/has</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>They always compare themselves to us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>We are comparing results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I will</td>
<td>compare</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>The new phone compares pretty well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you will</td>
<td>compare</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>The trainees compare favorably.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it will</td>
<td>compare</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Complement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I will have</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>They always compare themselves to us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you will have</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>We are comparing results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it will</td>
<td>compared</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Complements

- **Compare** be evaluated against others
  - The new phone compares pretty well.
  - The trainees compare favorably.
  
- **Compare** be equal/alike
  - Nothing compares with you.
  - He can't compare with the others.
  
- **Compare** examine in order to find similarities and differences in
  - object + to/and/with object
    - She compared the carnivores to herbivores.
    - I compared this year's results and last year's.
    - He compared Christian and Enlightenment ideas of marriage.
    - We compared job losses with job creation.
  
- **Compare** consider as alike
  - They compared how the Jets played with how the Giants played.

#### Expressions

- **Compare notes on** share
  - The students compared notes on their teachers.
  
- **Compare** to a summer's day
  - “Shall I compare thee to a summer's day?” [Shakespeare]
  
- **Compare** the United States to imperial Rome.
### complain

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>complain</strong></th>
<th>express dissatisfaction/annoyance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td>complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>he/she/it</strong></td>
<td>complains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>we</strong></td>
<td>complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>they</strong></td>
<td>complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>he/she/it</strong></td>
<td>is complaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>we</strong></td>
<td>are complaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>are complaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>they</strong></td>
<td>are complaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td>am complaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>we</strong></td>
<td>are complaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>are complaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>they</strong></td>
<td>are complaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td>I’m complaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>we</strong></td>
<td>we are complaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>you are complaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>they</strong></td>
<td>they are complaining</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### COMPLEMENTS

- **complain** express dissatisfaction/annoyance
  - **to object (+ about object)**
  - **(to object +) that-clause**
  - **about object**
  - **about wh-clause**

#### PHRASAL VERBS

- **complain of** report the symptoms of
  - Rosemarie complains of arthritis and backache.
complete | completes  
completed | have completed

**PRESENT**

I complete  
you complete  
he/she/it completes

I am completing  
you are completing  
he/she/it is completing

- He always completes what he starts.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am completing  
you are completing  
he/she/it is completing

- I’m just completing the inventory now.

**PAST**

I completed  
you completed  
he/she/it completed

I completed the form in 10 minutes.

**PAST PERFECT**

… have | has completed

**PAST PASSIVE**

it was completed  
they were completed

- The job was completed by the entire team.

**FUTURE**

… will complete

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**

… will be completing

**FUTURE PERFECT**

… will have completed

**COMPLEMENTS**

**complete** _______ **finish**

**OBJECT**

The painters completed **the living room**.

The orchestra completed **the piece** with a flourish.

You must complete **what you begin**.

They will complete **whatever needs to be done**.

They will complete **sanding the floors** today.

I have completed **sending out all the invitations**.

**OBJECT**

This number completes **our program** tonight.

The film completes **his epic trilogy**.

**complete** _______ **mark the end of**

**OBJECT**

A plaid vest completes **the outfit**.

This shipment completes **your order**.
### conceive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I conceive you conceive We conceive he/she/it conceives He conceives a quite different approach.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We are conceiving an ambitious marketing plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I conceived you conceived We conceived he/she/it conceived They conceived their third child.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>During the war, women were conceiving less.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>… have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>… had conceived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was conceived we were conceived you were conceived he/she/it was conceived The project was conceived by the CEO.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

- **conceive** become pregnant
  - She hopes to conceive soon.
  - Jane has finally conceived after two years of trying.

- **conceive** become pregnant with **OBJECT**
  - Jane has conceived a child.
  - She has conceived twins.

- **conceive** understand **OBJECT**
  - Ray cannot conceive their reasoning.
  - I can't conceive the appeal of his approach.
  - We can easily conceive how to improve the situation.

- **conceive** think of, imagine **(of) OBJECT**
  - I conceived (of) the idea this morning.
  - They conceived (of) a whole new approach to the problem.
  - They couldn't conceive (of) me as a college professor.
  - I can conceive (of) this abandoned church as a microbrewery.

- **conceive** consider **OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
  - They conceived Jackson to be at fault.
  - I conceived it to be a hopeless situation.

- **conceive** believe **THAT-CLAUSE**
  - I can conceive that he might be right.
  - He can't conceive that they did it intentionally.
### concentrate | concentrates  
- concentrated · have concentrated

#### REGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
<th>1st Person Plural</th>
<th>2nd Person Plural</th>
<th>3rd Person Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I concentrate</td>
<td>you concentrate</td>
<td>he/she/it concentrates</td>
<td>I am concentrating</td>
<td>we are concentrating</td>
<td>you are concentrating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you concentrate</td>
<td>you concentrate</td>
<td>they concentrate</td>
<td>you are concentrating</td>
<td>you are concentrating</td>
<td>they are concentrating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* He only concentrates on one thing at a time.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I concentrated</td>
<td>we concentrated</td>
<td>you concentrated</td>
<td>I was concentrating</td>
<td>we were concentrating</td>
<td>you were concentrating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it concentrated</td>
<td>they concentrated</td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was concentrating</td>
<td>they were concentrating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* We concentrated the solution of cells.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has concentrated</td>
<td></td>
<td>... will concentrate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had concentrated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>... will be concentrating</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was concentrated</td>
<td>we were concentrated</td>
<td>you were concentrated</td>
<td>they were concentrated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were concentrated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was concentrated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Wealth was concentrated in only a few hands.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### COMPLEMENTS

- **concentrate** *draw together, become denser*
  - Dust always seems to concentrate in the corners.
  - Birds concentrate before they migrate in the fall.
  - Mercury concentrates higher up the food chain.
  - Fluid is concentrating in the lungs.

- **concentrate** *bring together in a single body*
  - The general concentrated his forces in the capital.
  - We will concentrate our IT services in Chicago.
  - The government has concentrated more and more power in the executive branch.

- **concentrate** *make denser/thicker*
  - We concentrated the solution in a beaker.
  - They concentrate the sugar syrup into a semisolid mass.

- **concentrate** *focus [one's thoughts/efforts]*
  - You must concentrate your thinking on the problem at hand.
  - We concentrated our efforts on new product development.
  - I concentrated my energy on solving the problem.
  - Holmes was concentrating on the puzzle when Watson walked in.
  - The boys were concentrating on getting the lawn mower running.
**concern**

**PRESENT**
- I concern
- you concern
- he/she/it concerns
- *He only concerns himself with philosophy.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am concerning
- you are concerning
- he/she/it is concerning
- *I am concerning myself with developing alternatives.*

**PAST**
- I concerned
- you concerned
- he/she/it concerned
- *They concerned themselves in these issues.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was concerning
- you were concerning
- he/she/it was concerning
- *We were concerning ourselves with homeless people.*

**PRESENT PERFECT** ... have | has concerned
**PAST PERFECT** ... had concerned

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was concerned
- you were concerned
- he/she/it was concerned
- *We were concerned by the test results.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**concern _____ be about**

**OBJECT**
- The movie concerns the cold war.
- The memo concerns next year's budget.

**WH-CLAUSE**
- The speech concerns what we should do next year.
- The report concerns where we should locate the new plant.

**concern _____ be important to, involve**

**OBJECT**
- This discussion concerns you.
- The election concerns everyone.

**concern _____ make anxious**

**OBJECT**
- Her poor health concerns us all.
- Don't let the grammatical errors concern you.

**concern _____ concentrate on**

**REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + in/with OBJECT**
- The king concerns himself in the welfare of his subjects.
- His daughter concerns herself with every aspect of the business.

---

**EXPRESSIONS**

**be concerned about/for _____ be worried/anxious about**

- We were concerned about Dad's health.
- The pilot was concerned for the passengers' safety.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>conclude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>conclude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>concludes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *My run always concludes with stretching.*

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am concluding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are concluding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is concluding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I am concluding with an appeal for support.*

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>concluded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>concluded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>concluded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I concluded that we should switch plans.*

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was concluding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were concluding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was concluding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The team was concluding its final home series.*

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have concluded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>has concluded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had concluded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>was concluded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The session was concluded at 9:30.*

### Complements

**conclude | concludes | concluded | have concluded**

**conclude**

---

**come to an end**

**Adverb of Time**

- I am concluding promptly **at noon**.
- The series concludes **Tuesday**.

**Adverb of Manner**

- The seminar will conclude **with a party at the professor’s home**.

**bring to an end**

**Object**

- An argument concluded **the roundtable discussion**.
- Scheduling next week’s meeting concluded **the meeting for this week**.
- The president concluded **his speech** with a call for unity.
- We concluded **what we had planned to cover**.
- They concluded **whatever discussion they were having**.

**decide on the basis of reason/evidence**

**That-Clause**

- I concluded **that we should not go ahead**.
- We concluded **that their offer was acceptable**.
- They concluded **that they could wait three more days**.

**settle, arrange**

**Object**

- We finally concluded **the sale**.
### conduct

**Present**
- I conduct
- you conduct
- he/she/it conducts
- we conduct
- you conduct
- they conduct

* Water conducts electricity.

**Past**
- I conducted
- you conducted
- he/she/it conducted
- we conducted
- you conducted
- they conducted

* He conducted many of the sessions.

**Present Progressive**
- I am conducting
- you are conducting
- he/she/it is conducting
- we are conducting
- you are conducting
- they are conducting

* The drain is conducting the water away.

**Past Progressive**
- I was conducting
- you were conducting
- he/she/it was conducting
- we were conducting
- you were conducting
- they were conducting

* We were conducting an experiment.

**Present Perfect**
- I have conducted
- you have conducted
- he/she/it has conducted
- we have conducted
- you have conducted
- they have conducted

**Past Perfect**
- I had conducted
- you had conducted
- he/she/it had conducted
- we had conducted
- you had conducted
- they had conducted

**Future**
- I will conduct
- you will conduct
- he/she/it will conduct
- we will conduct
- you will conduct
- they will conduct

**Future Progressive**
- I will be conducting
- you will be conducting
- he/she/it will be conducting
- we will be conducting
- you will be conducting
- they will be conducting

**Future Perfect**
- I will have conducted
- you will have conducted
- he/she/it will have conducted
- we will have conducted
- you will have conducted
- they will have conducted

**Past Passive**
- I was conducted
- you were conducted
- he/she/it was conducted
- we were conducted
- you were conducted
- they were conducted

* The class was conducted by a visiting professor.

**Complements**

*conduct* lead a musical group

*conduct* transmit electricity/heat/light/sound

*conduct* lead, direct

*conduct* manage, carry out

*conduct* guide, convey

*conduct* transmit

*conduct* behave

---

**Note:**
The verb *conduct* is stressed on the second syllable.
The noun *conduct* is stressed on the first syllable.
**confirm | confirms**
- confirmed · have confirmed

### REGULAR

#### PRESENT
- I confirm
- you confirm
- he/she/it confirms

* They confirm each nominee separately.

#### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
- I am confirming
- you are confirming
- he/she/it is confirming

* Her secretary is confirming the reservation.

#### PAST
- I confirmed
- you confirmed
- he/she/it confirmed

* She confirmed the rumor.

#### PAST PERFECT
- ... have confirmed
- ... had confirmed

#### PAST PASSIVE
- I was confirmed
- you were confirmed
- he/she/it was confirmed

* The information was confirmed by two sources.

### COMPLEMENTS

**confirm _____ formally approve, ratify**
- OBJECT

  - The board will confirm my nomination soon.
  - The Senate must confirm all cabinet appointees.

- PASSIVE

  - OBJECT + as predicate noun

  - All cabinet appointees must be confirmed by the Senate.
  - The panel confirmed her as acting chair.

- PASSIVE

  - OBJECT + to be predicate noun

  - They are confirming him as company treasurer.
  - He was confirmed as secretary of state.

**confirm _____ prove to be true, verify**
- OBJECT

  - The new research confirms the original findings.
  - Can anyone confirm these rumors?
  - The police are trying to confirm his alibi.

- OBJECT + to be predicate noun

  - The coroner confirmed the death to be an accident.
  - The judge confirmed the election to be valid.
  - I can't confirm the statement to be either true or false.

- OBJECT + to be predicate adjective

  - I confirmed that the meeting was still on.
  - Can we confirm that the government has fallen?
  - The X-rays confirmed that the bone was cracked.

- THAT-CLAUSE

  - It only confirmed what we had expected.
  - The candidate confirmed what had been leaked to the press.
  - The report confirmed why the accident had happened.

**confirm _____ strengthen**
- OBJECT

  - The setback only confirmed our resolve to succeed.
  - The project’s failure confirmed our doubts about it.
  - Her win confirmed our confidence in her ability.
**confront | confronts · confronted · have confronted**

### Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>confront</td>
<td>we confront</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>confront</td>
<td>you confront</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>confront</td>
<td>they confront</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* He never confronts his opponents.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I am confronting</td>
<td>we are confronting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are confronting</td>
<td>you are confronting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is confronting</td>
<td>they are confronting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* I'm confronting my fear of flying.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I confronted</td>
<td>we confronted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you confronted</td>
<td>you confronted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it confronted</td>
<td>they confronted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* I confronted my worst fears.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I was confronting</td>
<td>we were confronting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were confronting</td>
<td>you were confronting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was confronting</td>
<td>they were confronting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* We were confronting them at every turn.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has confronted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had confronted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>... will confront</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... will have confronted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td>I was confronted</td>
<td>we were confronted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were confronted</td>
<td>you were confronted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was confronted</td>
<td>they were confronted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* I was confronted with a terrible choice.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **confront _____ oppose, challenge**
  - **object**
  - The ships confronted each other with guns blazing.
  - Marcos confronted their absurd claims.
- **confront _____ meet face to face**
  - **object**
  - You must confront your problems.
  - He confronted his children’s bad behavior.
  - I confronted what I most feared.
  - He confronted why he kept gaining weight.
  - **wh-clause**
  - They confronted whomever the defense tried to use as an expert witness.
- **confront _____ bring face to face**
  - **object** + with **object**
  - Nate confronted the pundits with lots of statistics.
  - Police confronted the suspect with his partner’s confession.
  - The suspect was confronted with his partner’s confession.
confuse | confuses · confused · have confused

**REGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I confuse we confuse you confuse he/she/it confuses he always confuses his audiences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I am confusing we are confusing you are confusing he/she/it is confusing they are confusing I'm sorry, I'm only confusing you more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I confused we confused you confused he/she/it confused you confused he/she/it confused they confused You confused me with your new proposal. We were confusing each other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was confused we were confused you were confused he/she/it was confused they were confused I was confused by what he said.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **confuse _____ perplex, bewilder**
  - OBJECT
  - WH-CLAUSE
  - Stop! You're confusing us.
  - The governor’s speech totally confused her audience.
  - Bonnie confused me with her weird behavior.
  - The sign in the window will confuse whoever walks by.

- **confuse _____ make unclear, make a mess of**
  - OBJECT
  - WH-CLAUSE
  - You're trying to confuse the issue.
  - Her amendments confused what I was proposing.
  - The discussion confused what was being recommended.

- **confuse _____ fail to distinguish between**
  - OBJECT + with/and OBJECT
  - I'm sorry. I confused you with your sister.
  - He confuses money with wealth.
  - You are confusing Alice and Mary.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronouns</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject Pronouns</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject Pronouns</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I am connecting</td>
<td>you are connecting</td>
<td>he/she/it is</td>
<td>they are connecting</td>
<td>* I'm connecting you now.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>connecting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I was connecting</td>
<td>you were connecting</td>
<td>he/she/it was</td>
<td>they were connecting</td>
<td>* We were connecting to a flight in Detroit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>connecting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has connected</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>connected</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td>I was connected</td>
<td>we were connected</td>
<td>you were connected</td>
<td>you were connected</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was connected</td>
<td>they were connected</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Finally, I was connected to the Internet.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**connect** be joined/linked
- Our two hotel rooms connected.
- Most computer peripherals easily connect.
- The proposals all connect with each other.
- Your flights connect in Chicago.

**connect** link to the Internet
- Are you connected?
- I'll connect once I'm in my hotel room.
- I'm not connected when I travel.

**connect** establish rapport
- Fortunately, our families connected well.
- Harry and Sally really connected.
- The speaker failed to connect with the audience.

**connect** hit a baseball [INFORMAL]
- Albert connected for a three-run homer.

**connect** associate, consider related
- A skyway connected the two towers.
- We connected the people requesting information.
- Would you please connect me with the customer service department?

**connect** join together, unite
- A skyway connected the two towers.
- We connected all the pieces of the puzzle.
- The detective connected all the clues.

**connect** link physically
- Did you connect Bing's silence with Frank's arrival?
- We can connect the server now.
- Connect the monitor into the surge protector.
- The nurse connected her to a heart monitor.
- How can I connect my computer to the Internet?
- Can my computer be connected to the Internet?

**connect up with** meet with
- I hope to connect up with my cousins in Atlanta.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Regular Tense</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Future Progressive</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I consider</td>
<td>we consider</td>
<td>I am considering</td>
<td>I considered</td>
<td>I was considering</td>
<td>... have considered</td>
<td>... will consider</td>
<td>we were considered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you consider</td>
<td>you consider</td>
<td>you are considering</td>
<td>you considered</td>
<td>you were considering</td>
<td>... has considered</td>
<td>... will be considering</td>
<td>you were considered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it considers</td>
<td>they consider</td>
<td>he/she/it is considering</td>
<td>they considered</td>
<td>he/she/it was considering</td>
<td>... had considered</td>
<td>... will have considered</td>
<td>they were considered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**He considers John a good friend.**

**I'm considering quitting my job.**

**I considered all the options.**

**We were considering what we should do.**

**Every possibility was considered.**

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**consider** 
think carefully
- Stop and consider before you do something you will regret.
- Take a moment to consider.

**consider _____** 
think about before making a decision / taking action, contemplate

- **OBJECT**
  - The judge considered the defendant's motion for acquittal.
  - You must consider your options.
  - He should consider the family's reaction.
  - They considered him for the job.
  - He considered himself in the mirror.
  - They considered the appalling scene in front of them.

- **WH-CLAUSE**
  - I considered what my next move should be.
  - We considered how much it would cost.

- **WH-INFINITIVE**
  - The boys considered what to charge for the lemonade.
  - The teacher considered how to make the students behave.

- **PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
  - I considered taking out a new loan.
  - We considered moving to Colorado.

**consider _____** 
regard as

- **OBJECT + (to be) predicate noun**
  - We considered the movie (to be) a great success.
  - They considered Allen (to be) a natural leader.

- **PASSIVE**
  - The movie was considered (to be) a great success.
  - Everyone considered George (to be) strange.

- **OBJECT + (to be) predicate adjective**
  - They considered the plan (to be) badly flawed.
  - George was considered (to be) strange.

**consider _____** 
take into account

- Grandpa is fairly active, considering his age.

**consider _____** 
treat kindly/attentively

- The students should consider the teacher's feelings.
**PRESENT**

I consist  
we consist

you consist  
you consist

he/she/it consists  
they consist

* His breakfast consists of a sweet roll.

**PAST**

I consisted  
we consisted

you consisted  
you consisted

he/she/it consisted  
they consisted

* The plan consisted of wishful thinking.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has consisted

**PAST PERFECT**

... had consisted

**FUTURE**

... will consist

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**

—

**FUTURE PERFECT**

... will have consisted

**PAST PASSIVE**

Consist is never used in the passive voice.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

NOTE: The verb consist is always used with of or in.

**consist _____ be made up**

of object

The book consists of three parts.
The city consists of ten districts.
The plan mainly consists of a series of budget recommendations.
I consist of ten trillion cells organized into tissue and organs.
We consist of eight distribution centers and 200 retail outlets worldwide.

**consist _____ have a basis**

in object

The beauty of the plan consists in its simplicity.
A citizen's rights consist in individual responsibility.
The prosecutor's reputation consists in always being honest.
constitute | constitutes | have constituted

**PRESENT**
- I constitute
- you constitute
- he/she/it constitutes

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am constituting
- you are constituting
- he/she/it is constituting

- His actions constitute fraud.

**PAST**
- I constituted
- you constituted
- he/she/it constituted

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was constituting
- you were constituting
- he/she/it was constituting

- We constituted a new policy last month.

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have
- ... has constituted

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had constituted

**FUTURE**
- ... will constitute

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
- ... will be constituting

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- ... will have constituted

**PAST PASSIVE**
- it was constituted
- they were constituted

* The court was constituted in 1982.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

constitute ____ establish legally

- OBJECT
  - The law duly constitutes a new division within
    the department.
  - The board constituted a review process.

constitute ____ make up, be the equivalent of

- OBJECT
  - Sixteen ounces constitutes an American pint.
  - Eight board members constitute a quorum.
  - What he did constitutes treason.
  - Any illegal action constitutes a crime.

- WH-CLAUSE
  - That area constitutes what I would call a slum.
  - His words constitute what could be called slander.
### construct\(\text{\textcopyright{regular}}\)

**Present**
- I construct
- you construct
- he/she/it constructs
- we construct
- you are constructing
- you are constructing
- he/she/it is constructing
- they are constructing

- *He constructs architectural models.*

**Past**
- I constructed
- you constructed
- he/she/it constructed
- we constructed
- you were constructing
- you were constructing
- he/she/it was constructing
- they were constructing

- *They constructed a clever argument.*

**Present Perfect**
- ... have | has constructed
**Past Perfect**
- ... had constructed

**Past Passive**
- it was constructed
- they were constructed

- *Our house was constructed in 1888.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**construct**
- **build physically**
  - **OBJECT**
  - **WH-CLAUSE**

- I constructed a **birdhouse** when I was in seventh grade.
- The engineers constructed a **new transformer**.
- We will only construct **what we can guarantee**.
- They will construct **whatever the customer asks for**.

**construct**
- **create by arranging ideas**
  - **OBJECT**
  - **WH-CLAUSE**

- They constructed an **elaborate theory**.
- He constructed **intricate plots** for all his movies.
- I constructed a **convincing case against the development**.
### REGULAR

**consult | consults | consulted | have consulted**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I consult</td>
<td>I am consulting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you consult</td>
<td>you are consulting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it consults</td>
<td>he/she/it is consulting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- She consults with me on a regular basis.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>PAST PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I consulted</td>
<td>I was consulting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you consulted</td>
<td>you were consulting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it consulted</td>
<td>he/she/it was consulting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I consulted a specialist.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT PERFECT</th>
<th>PAST PERFECT</th>
<th>COMPLEMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... has consulted</td>
<td>consult provide professional advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... had consulted</td>
<td></td>
<td>I consult for the state of New Jersey.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE</th>
<th>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... will consult</td>
<td>... will be consulting</td>
<td>... will have consulted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST PASSIVE</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was consulted</td>
<td>we were consulted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were consulted</td>
<td>you were consulted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was consulted</td>
<td>they were consulted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- All the usual experts were consulted.

#### COMPLEMENTS

**consult**

- confer

**consult _____ seek advice/information from**

- OBJECT

  - We consulted every doctor in town.
  - I consulted the dictionary.
  - You must consult your own conscience.

- WH-CLAUSE

  - I will consult whoever can offer the best advice.
  - He will consult whichever specialist his doctor recommends.

**consult _____ confer**

- (with) OBJECT

  - I will consult (with) my colleagues about your recommendation.
  - We must consult (with) the president before we make a decision.
**contain**

**Present**

I contain
you contain
he/she/it contains

**Present Progressive**

I am containing
you are containing
he/she/it is containing

*The book contains a lot of new data.*

**Past**

I contained
you contained
he/she/it contained

**Past Progressive**

I was containing
you were containing
he/she/it was containing

*He barely contained himself.*

**Present Perfect**

... have | has contained
**Past Perfect**

... had contained

**Future**

... will contain
**Future Progressive**

... will be containing
**Future Perfect**

... will have contained

**Past Passive**

I was contained
you were contained
he/she/it was contained

*The epidemic was finally contained.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**contain**  hold, include

**OBJECT**

This beaker contains hydrochloric acid.
The legislation contains some surprises.
The movie contains some pretty amusing scenes.
The book contained a reference to Darwin.

**WH-CLAUSE**

His speeches contain what you would expect from a conservative.
The fall fashion show contained whatever was hot at the moment.

**contain**  hold back, restrain

**OBJECT**

The police contained the rioters.
The firewalls contained the spread of the blaze.
I couldn’t contain myself from laughing.
Please contain your dogs.
Their policy was to contain communism.
continue | continues
· continued · have continued

PRESENT
I continue we continue
you continue you continue
he/she/it continues they continue
· The schedule continues as originally set.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am continuing we are continuing
you are continuing you are continuing
he/she/it is continuing they are continuing
· I'm continuing on to Paris.

PAST
I continued we continued
you continued you continued
he/she/it continued they continued
· He continued to oppose the plan.

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has continued
PAST PERFECT ... had continued

PAST PASSIVE
it was continued they were continued
· The trial was continued by the judge.

COMPLEMENTS
continue persist, last, stay
The rain continued all afternoon.
Our New Year's Eve tradition continues unbroken.
The play continues until next Sunday.
We will continue here for a while longer.
The treasurer will continue in office for six months.

continue resume [after an interruption]
We will continue after lunch.
The session continues at four.

continue extend
The highway continues all the way to Springfield.

continue _____ extend, persist in
OBJECT
They continued their discussion during dinner.
They continued the presentation despite the interruptions.
I will continue to support the plan.
He continued to snore loudly.
I will continue supporting the plan.
He continued snoring loudly.

continue _____ postpone formally
OBJECT
PASSIVE
The defendant's lawyer asked to continue the deposition.
The judge continued the trial until January 15.
The trial was continued until January 15 by the judge.

continue _____ keep on [doing]
(with) OBJECT
May I continue (with) my piano playing while you read
the newspaper?
Please continue (with) the rest of the tutorial.
contribute | contributes · contributed · have contributed

PRESENT
I contribute we contribute you contribute you contribute he/she/it contributes they contribute
* He always contributes to appeals.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am contributing we are contributing you are contributing you are contributing he/she/it is contributing they are contributing
* I’m already contributing to that charity.

PAST
I contributed we contributed you contributed you contributed he/she/it contributed they contributed
* I contributed twenty-five dollars.

PAST PROGRESSIVE
I was contributing we were contributing you were contributing you were contributing he/she/it was contributing they were contributing
* We were contributing what we could afford.

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has contributed
PAST PERFECT ... had contributed

FUTURE
... will contribute
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be contributing
FUTURE PERFECT ... will have contributed

PAST PASSIVE
— — — —
— — — —
it was contributed they were contributed
* The money was contributed by an anonymous donor.

contributegive along with others, donate

contribute _____ help to bring about
to OBJECT
We all contribute in our own ways. I’m sorry, but I can’t contribute any longer.

contribute _____ help to bring about
to OBJECT
She really contributed to our success. The employees have contributed to our reputation.

contribute _____ give along with others, donate
OBJECT
I usually contribute a hundred dollars. They contributed a great deal of time. I contributed to Senator Blather’s campaign. I always contribute to the Boy Scouts. I contributed ten dollars to the office collection. They will contribute something to the fund drive. I contribute what I can. We will contribute whatever we can afford. We contribute to whoever is most in need. People contribute to whatever causes they feel most strongly about.

contribute _____ give along with others, donate
OBJECT
She regularly contributes feature stories. I contribute local news items.

contribute _____ provide for publication
OBJECT

control | controls · controlled · have controlled

PRESENT
I control we control
you control you control
he/she/it controls they control
* She controls a large number of shares.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am controlling we are controlling
you are controlling you are controlling
he/she/it is controlling they are controlling
* I’m controlling for all the variables.

PAST
I controlled we controlled
you controlled you controlled
he/she/it controlled they controlled
* I controlled for gender and age.

PAST PERFECT ...

PAST PASSIVE
I was controlled we were controlled
you were controlled you were controlled
he/she/it was controlled they were controlled
* The robot was controlled by a computer.

COMPLEMENTS
control ___ regulate, direct, have power over
OBJECT

This lever controls the speed.
The hormone controls the level of calcium in the blood.
He controls the entire operation.
The president controls Supreme Court nominations.

WH-CLAUSE

The dictator controls what citizens say and do.
They control whoever reports to this office.
He controls whatever resources they still have.

control ___ hold back, restrain
OBJECT

Brandy doesn’t control her temper very well.
The new owner couldn’t control the dog.

control ___ prevent the spread of
OBJECT

Health workers controlled the smallpox epidemic
by quarantine and vaccination.
The herbicide controls leaf mold.

PHRASAL VERBS

control for ___ test for [variables]
in a scientific experiment
You must control for nutrition and lifestyle.
**Present**

I convince we convince
you convince you convince
he/she/it convinces they convince

- He always convinces his audiences.

**Past**

I convinced we convinced
you convinced you convinced
he/she/it convinced they convinced

- She convinced me to read the book.

**Present Perfect**

... have | has convinced

**Past Perfect**

... had convinced

**Future**

... will convince

**Future Progressive**

... will be convincing

**Future Perfect**

... will have convinced

**Past Passive**

I was convinced we were convinced
you were convinced you were convinced
he/she/it was convinced they were convinced

- I was convinced by the critic's argument.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**convince | persuade**

**OBJECT**

He even convinces himself.
His job is to convince the jury.
I finally convinced my boss.

**OBJECT + of OBJECT**

They convinced the mayor of the need for a new sewer plant.
You can't convince the owner of the importance of decent wages.
They convinced themselves of the righteousness of their cause.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

I convinced him to do something about the situation.
We convinced them to leave.
The failure convinced us to change course.

**OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE**

He convinced us that we should reconsider the project.
We convinced them that they were wrong.
His behavior convinces us that he is crazy.
She convinced herself that she would win the lottery.

**WH-CLAUSE**

He convinces whomever he talks to.
They will convince whomever they need to.

---

**EXPRESSIONS**

**convincing | believable**

The spy wore a convincing disguise.
“The dog ate my homework” is not a convincing excuse.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>cook</td>
<td>we cook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>cook</td>
<td>you cook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>cooks</td>
<td>they cook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am cooking</td>
<td>we are cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are cooking</td>
<td>you are cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is cooking</td>
<td>they are cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>cooks over 60 meals a day.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>cooked</td>
<td>we cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>cooked</td>
<td>you cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>cooked</td>
<td>they cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>cooked for years before my marriage.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>has cooked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>were cooked</td>
<td>we were cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>were cooked</td>
<td>you were cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>were cooked</td>
<td>he/she/it were cooked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dinner</td>
<td>was cooked</td>
<td>Dinner was cooked by Donna.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **cook** prepare food by heating
- **cook** undergo the process of food preparation
- **cook** happen [INFORMAL]
- **cook** perform very well [INFORMAL]
- **cook** cause to be overheated
- **cook** falsify [INFORMAL]

### Phrasal Verbs

- **cook out** prepare food out of doors
- **cook sep. up** prepare a batch of [food] by heating
- **cook sep. up** devise, plan

### Expressions

- **cook [someone’s] goose** cause damage to [someone]
- **cook the books** falsify financial records
- **cook to perfection** cook perfectly
- **cook up a storm** prepare a lot of food

- My father is cooking tonight.
- Dinner is cooking right now.
- The oatmeal is cooking at too high a temperature.
- What’s cooking in technology stocks today?
- “What’s cooking?” “Nothing.”
- That band really cooks.
- I cook Chinese and Italian food.
- They cooked steaks for everyone.
- Cook only what you can eat.
- Anita will cook whatever you would like.
- The sun really cooked us this afternoon.
- We were really cooked out there.
- Did the analysts cook the data?
- We cook out almost every night in the summer.
- We’ll cook up some spaghetti for our guests.
- Lenny and Mike cooked up a scheme to raise money for their new business.
- Let’s cook up an excuse for skipping the exam.
- Sending obscene e-mails from work really cooked Paul’s goose.
- The department had cooked the books for years.
- My 13-year-old son cooked the lasagna to perfection.
- On Saturdays, Dad always cooked up a storm.
### cost

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>we cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>you cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>costs</td>
<td>they cost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The scarves cost more than 50 dollars.

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>we cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>you cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>they cost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* That mistake cost us dearly.

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have cost</td>
<td>I have cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>use have cost</td>
<td>you have cost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had cost</td>
<td>I had cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>use had cost</td>
<td>you had cost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will cost</td>
<td>I will cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>use will cost</td>
<td>you will cost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have cost</td>
<td>I will have cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>use will have cost</td>
<td>you will have cost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

Cost is rarely used in the passive voice.

### Complements

**cost** be expensive

- Going to college really costs.
- Hybrid cars cost, but so does gasoline.
- Lack of training costs dearly.
- Cheap mattresses cost in the long run.

**cost _____ have a price of**

**OBJECT**

- The new house cost **half a million dollars**.
- My books cost **$200 a semester**.

**cost _____ cause the loss of**

**OBJECT**

- Starvation costs **25,000 lives** a day.
- It cost **my job**.
- It cost **his self-respect**.

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

- The battle cost **the army a lot of good soldiers**.
- The accident cost **me a fortune**.
- The mistake cost **us the contract**.

**cost _____ cause suffering/loss to**

**OBJECT**

- My hesitation certainly cost **me**.

### Phrasal Verbs

**cost SEP out** estimate, set a value on/for

- I will cost the entire project out.
- We were costing out the Johnston contract.

**Expressions**

**cost a fortune** be very expensive

- It would cost a fortune to move that printing press.

**cost a pretty penny** be very expensive

- I’ll bet that car cost a pretty penny.

**cost an arm and a leg** be very expensive

- This watch cost me an arm and a leg.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td>I count you count he/she/it counts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Neatness counts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am counting you are counting he/she/it is counting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* I’m counting to ten.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>I counted you counted he/she/it counted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* I counted a dozen trucks in two minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was counting you were counting he/she/it was counting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* We were counting all the birds on the wire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PERFECT</td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PAST PERFECT ... had counted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PASSIVE</td>
<td>I was counted you were counted he/she/it was counted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Some people were counted twice.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**count**
- name numbers in a sequence
  - I counted we counted you counted he/she/it counted
  - Neatness counts.
- be valuable/significant
  - Her opinions count.
- add to get a total, tally
  - He counted the crew members in a loud voice.
- consider, regard
  - I count David among my best friends.
- take into account
  - Did you count Ovid in your list of poets?

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**count for**
- have a value of
  - A touchdown counts for six points.

**count in**
- include
  - “Who wants to play soccer?” “Count me in.”

**count on**
- depend on
  - I counted on Mom and Dad to pay for my college education.

**count out**
- exclude, disregard
  - “Who wants to shovel the snow?” “Count me out.”
  - Tanya wasn't interested, so we counted her out.
### cover

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I cover</th>
<th>you cover</th>
<th>he/she/it covers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we cover</td>
<td>you cover</td>
<td>they cover</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
* His area covers northern California.

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I covered</th>
<th>you covered</th>
<th>he/she/it covered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we covered</td>
<td>you covered</td>
<td>they covered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
* She covered many important stories.

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have</th>
<th>... have covered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... had</th>
<th>... had covered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will</th>
<th>... will cover</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will be</th>
<th>... will be covering</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will have</th>
<th>... will have covered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was covering</th>
<th>we were covering</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were covering</td>
<td>you were covering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was covering</td>
<td>they were covering</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
* We were covering the furniture with plastic.

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was covered</th>
<th>we were covered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were covered</td>
<td>you were covered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was covered</td>
<td>they were covered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
* His back was covered in red spots.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**cover**

**place/spread something over**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I covered the pan with aluminum foil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We covered the floors before we started painting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**cover**

**spread over [a surface]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Snow covered the fields.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water covered the road for miles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lakes cover the whole region.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**cover**

**lay over, conceal**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The towel covered my bare legs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A scarf covered her face.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**cover**

**deal with, discuss**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>That about covers everything.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We will cover the budget in today’s meeting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**cover**

**be responsible for**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My job covers retail sales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We will cover any damage that results.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The department only covers incorporated areas of the city.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**cover**

**have sufficient funds for**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Your balance doesn’t cover this check.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you cover the restaurant bill?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**cover**

**protect from harm/loss, insure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Does the insurance cover your husband too?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The policy even covers cosmetic surgery.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**cover**

**report news about**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The television stations covered the traffic accident.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**cover**

**travel [a certain distance]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We covered 15 miles today.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**cover for**

**be a replacement for**

| Hilary covered for Candi when she was sick. |

**cover up**

**hide**

| The politicians tried to cover up the scandal. |

**cover up for**

**make excuses for**

| Rich was always covering up for his cubicle mate. |
**PRESENT**
I create
you create
he/she/it creates

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am creating
you are creating
he/she/it is creating

- *Prosperity creates new markets.*

**PAST**
I created
you created
he/she/it created

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was creating
you were creating
he/she/it was creating

- *She created a masterpiece.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
... have | has created

**PAST PERFECT**
... had created

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was created
you were created
he/she/it was created

- *Seventy new jobs were created this month.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

create _____ bring into being, produce, cause

**OBJECT**
The cyclotron created new elements.
Computer technology has created thousands of new jobs.
The artist created a limited edition of silkscreen prints.
The kids created a terrible mess in the kitchen.
Their behavior created a huge scandal.
Scarcity creates shortages.
They created what can only be called a disaster.
We will create whatever you need.

**WH-CLAUSE**
Her assistants created a new line of clothing.

**EXPRESSIONS**

create a scene cause a public disturbance

**OBJECT**
Tom created a scene when his fiancée kissed her ex-boyfriend.

create a stink about/over _____
complain strongly about

**OBJECT**
My wife created a stink about our guests’ untidy habits.
### creep

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I creep, you creep, he/she/it creeps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Time creeps by when you're bored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I crept, you crept, he/she/it crept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Old age crept up on us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had crept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Creep is never used in the passive voice.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### COMPLEMENTS

- **creep** move along close to the ground
  - Bob crept away from his pursuers.
  - The lion crept toward the antelope.
- **creep** move cautiously/stealthily
  - We crept down the stairs.
  - I crept into the kids’ room, trying not to wake them.
- **creep** grow along a surface
  - Weeds were creeping into the flower beds.
- **creep** shiver from fear/dread
  - The scream made my flesh creep.
- **creep** advance slowly
  - ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
  - Daylight crept in through the windows.
  - Water from the clogged drain crept across the floor.
- **creep** appear gradually
  - ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
  - A sense of urgency crept through the crowd.

#### PHRASAL VERBS

- **creep by** pass slowly
  - The years crept by when Lawrence was in prison.
- **creep in/into** enter inconspicuously
  - A note of resentment crept into his voice.
  - Negativity crept into his later writing.
- **creep up on** advance slowly and imperceptibly toward
  - The cat crept up on the mouse.

#### Expressions

- **creep out of the woodwork** appear after being gone for a long time
  - Well, look who's crept out of the woodwork—it's Percy!
Present  
I cross you cross he/she/it crosses  
we cross you cross they cross  
Past  
I crossed you crossed he/she/it crossed  
we crossed you crossed they crossed  
Present Progressive  
I am crossing you are crossing he/she/it is crossing  
we are crossing you are crossing they are crossing  
Past Progressive  
I was crossing you were crossing he/she/it was crossing  
we were crossing you were crossing they were crossing  
Present Perfect  
... have | has crossed  
Past Perfect  
... had crossed  
Past Passive  
I was crossed you were crossed he/she/it was crossed  
we were crossed you were crossed they were crossed  

The trails cross in that valley.
He crossed his legs and began to whistle.
His name was crossed out.

Parallel lines never cross.
Eventually Highways 120 and 337 cross.
We must have crossed on the highway.
Our letters must have crossed in the mail.

The road crosses the river at Glenwood.
I-94 crosses the entire width of North Dakota.
We crossed the Mississippi at Hannibal.
I finally crossed the finish line.
Blacks crossed the color line after World War II.

He crossed his arms.
I crossed my fingers for luck.
The gardener crossed two varieties of daylilies.
If you cross a donkey with a horse, you get a mule.
The movie crosses horror with mystery.
Dot your i's and cross your t's.
Never cross your boss.
You deliberately crossed me!

Cross off [from a list]
Don't cross my name off the list of volunteers.
Don't cross me off the list of volunteers.
You can cross the first three items out.
They crossed us up by going home early.
cry|cries·cried·have cried

**PRESENT**
- I cry
- you cry
- he/she/it cries

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am crying
- you are crying
- he/she/it is crying

- The baby always cries when he is hungry.
- I’m crying because I am upset.

**PAST**
- I cried
- you cried
- he/she/it cried

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was crying
- you were crying
- he/she/it was crying

- I cried my eyes out.
- They were crying about nothing.

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has cried

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had cried

**PAST PASSIVE**
- it was cried
- they were cried

- The alarm was cried out up and down the street.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**cry**
- sob, weep
  - All the children were crying.
  - Please don’t cry.
- shout, call loudly
  - The news vendors were crying as loudly as they could.
  - The frightened animals were all crying.

**cry**
- utter loudly
  - I cried a warning to them.
  - The soldier cried a challenge as I came closer.

**OBJECT**
  - I cried a warning to them.
  - The soldier cried a challenge as I came closer.

**THAT-CLAUSE**
  - He cried that he had been robbed.
  - A sailor cried that he could see land.

**DIRECT QUOTATION**
  - The wounded man cried, “Help! Help!”

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**cry out**
- scream, shout
  - The victim cried out in pain.

**cry out for**
- demand/require [an immediate solution]
  - This economic recession cries out for government intervention.

**cry over**
- weep because of
  - She’s still crying over losing her job.

**EXPRESSIONS**

**cry in [one’s] beer**
- be sorry for oneself
  - After he lost the election, Jack spent several days crying in his beer.

**cry on [someone’s] shoulder**
- tell one’s problems to [someone] to be comforted
  - My parakeet died. Can I cry on your shoulder?
  - Her boyfriend left, and she needed a shoulder to cry on.

**cry [one’s] eyes out**
- weep inconsolably
  - When Ed broke off the engagement, she cried her eyes out.

**cry [oneself] to sleep**
- weep until one falls asleep
  - After watching the movie, Cynthia cried herself to sleep.
  - Bruno cried himself to sleep every night.

**cry over spilled milk**
- regret something that cannot be undone
  - Life is too short; don’t cry over spilled milk.

**cry wolf**
- give a false alarm
  - Billy Joe cried wolf once too often, and no one believed him after that.
**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Personal Pronouns</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>I cut</td>
<td>I was cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>you cut</td>
<td>you were cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>cuts</td>
<td>he/she/it cuts</td>
<td>he/she/it was cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He cuts the lawn every weekend.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Personal Pronouns</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>am cutting</td>
<td>I am cutting</td>
<td>I'm cutting class today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>are cutting</td>
<td>you are cutting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is cutting</td>
<td>he/she/it is cutting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Personal Pronouns</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>I cut</td>
<td>I cut myself shaving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>you cut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>they cut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Personal Pronouns</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>was cutting</td>
<td>I was cutting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were cutting</td>
<td>you were cutting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was cutting</td>
<td>they were cutting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Our budget was cut substantially.*

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Personal Pronouns</th>
<th>Past Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>was cut</td>
<td>I was cut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were cut</td>
<td>you were cut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was cut</td>
<td>they were cut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**cut** hurt someone's feelings

- His criticisms really cut.
- He really knows how to cut.

**cut** make an incision, separate

- A sharp knife cuts **safely**.
- His ax cuts **like a razor**.

**cut** undergo an incision/separation

- The dried wood cuts **easily**.
- Jill cuts **her finger** on a knife.

**cut** penetrate with a sharp object

- I cut **the cake**.
- My husband cut **the grass** this morning.
- I need to cut **my fingernails**.
- The new barber cut **my hair**.
- The backhoe cut a **trench** for a new waterline.

**cut** sever, separate into pieces (slice, mow, pare, trim, dig, etc.)

- We cut **a path** through the dense woods.
- They will cut **my hours** after Christmas.
- We have to cut **the budget**.
- The authors had to cut **the manuscript** by a third.

**cut** make by chopping/hacking

- They will cut **my hours** after Christmas.
- We have to cut **the budget**.
- The authors had to cut **the manuscript** by a third.

**cut** reduce the size/number of

- They will cut **my hours** after Christmas.
- We have to cut **the budget**.
- The authors had to cut **the manuscript** by a third.

**cut** remove [from a group]

- The coach cut **three players** from the squad.
- The director cut **five scenes** from the movie.

**cut** change direction suddenly

- Cut **to the right** just before the railroad tracks.
- We can cut **across Mr. Applegate's property**.
- The highway cuts **through a national park**.
- The seniors cut **to the front of the line**.

**cut** go directly, take a shortcut

- That bartender cuts **whiskey** with tap water.
cut _____ break, stop
   OBJECT

The storm cut the telephone lines.
Please cut all the noise.
He cut the engine.

cut _____ skip without permission
   OBJECT

We cut class to watch the inauguration.

cut _____ record
   OBJECT

She is cutting a new album.

cut _____ fill out and issue
   OBJECT

The secretary cut a check for $50.23.

cut _____ handle [USUALLY NEGATIVE]
   OBJECT
   PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I can’t cut the 45-minute drive to work anymore.
Tom can’t cut being a police officer anymore.

PHRASAL VERBS

The president’s economic proposal cuts across party lines.

The receiver cut back to the middle of the field.
We must cut back the shrubs after they flower.
The department cut back spending in April.
Our neighbors cut two elm trees down.
The doctor told Ed to cut down on caffeine.
The motorist cut in just before his lane ended.
Cut in the shortening with a pastry blender.
The actress cut in on the director.
The reporter cut me off in mid-sentence.
A driver cut me off at the curve.
The policeman cut the robbers off at the bridge.
Gerry cut off the knotty end of the board.
When his car overheated, the driver cut off the engine.
The water heater cuts off at 120 degrees.
This party is boring; let’s cut out.
I will cut out afternoon snacks for two weeks.
Ken always cuts up when the teacher leaves the room.
Cut the mushrooms up, and then we’ll add them to the sauce.

EXPRESSIONS

His opponent cut him down to size.
He wasn’t feeling well, so the boss cut him some slack.
Your nasty remarks cut me to the quick.

The journalist cut her teeth on writing obituaries.

The president cut the press conference short.
### Regular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>form</th>
<th>example 1</th>
<th>example 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I dance</td>
<td>He dances with the Royal Ballet.</td>
<td>Look at me! I'm dancing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you dance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it dances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I danced</td>
<td>He danced with both Lizzy and Jane.</td>
<td>We were dancing on air after winning the award.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you danced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it danced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have danced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had danced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **dance**
  - move the body and legs rhythmically, usually to music
  - I dance every chance I get.
  - She dances really well.
  - Can you dance?

- **dance**
  - bob up and down in a lively manner
  - The rain was dancing on the pavement.
  - The kids were dancing with excitement.
  - The furniture danced across the floor during the earthquake.

- **dance**
  - perform as a dancer
  - I have danced that role many times.
  - Can you dance the tango?
  - The company will dance Romeo and Juliet this season.

- **dance**
  - cause to dance
  - The groom danced his mother-in-law across the ballroom.

### Expressions

- **be dancing on air**
  - be very happy
  - Since her promotion, Deborah has been dancing on air.

- **dance to _____**
  - respond to [music] by dancing [often figurative]
  - We love to dance to the pop music of the 1980s.
  - European leaders refused to dance to the president's tune.
dare  be brave enough

dare _____ challenge to do something bold

OBJECT

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

dare _____ be bold/brave enough

INFINITIVE

BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

dare _____ face boldly/bravely, defy

OBJECT

Try the durian roll if you dare.

Ralph dared his sister.

They have all dared me.

I dared him to stop me.

He dared us to cross the stream on a log.

Would you dare to be different?

I didn't dare to ask her out.

He dared not fail his team.

He dared not be late for the meeting.

I wouldn't dare asking her out.

He didn't dare making the trip alone.

He dared public criticism throughout his career.

The captain dared the roaring waves.
### Deal | deals · dealt · have dealt

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>deal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>deal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>deals</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am dealing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are dealing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is dealing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>dealt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>dealt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>dealt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was dealing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were dealing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was dealing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have dealt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have dealt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has dealt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was dealt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were dealt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was dealt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**Deal**

- **distribute cards in a game**
  - Who's dealing?
  - I will deal as soon as everyone sits down.
- **engage in bargaining/negotiation**
  - The union will never deal.
  - He only deals if the price is right.
- **distribute [cards]**
  - Object
  - I will deal **five cards** to each player.
  - He deals **the cards** until none are left.
  - You deal **me an awful hand**.
  - He dealt **her three aces**.
  - You dealt **a bad hand to me**.
  - He dealt **three aces to her**.
- **sell [illegal drugs]**
  - Object
  - He deals **marijuana** to teenagers.
  - The gang deals **stolen prescription drugs**.
- **deliver, administer**
  - **INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**
  - Spike dealt **the intruder a blow to the head**.
  - Fate dealt **him a terrible blow**.
  - Life has dealt **them some bad times**.
  - Fate dealt **a terrible blow to him**.
  - Life has dealt **some bad times to them**.

### Phrasal Verbs

**Deal in**

- **buy and sell**
  - The real estate broker deals only in commercial properties.

**Deal Sep**

- **in**
  - allow to take part
  - Maurice has free time; let's deal him in.
- **out**
  - distribute piece by piece
  - Agnes dealt the cards out three at a time.
- **with**
  - behave toward, treat in a particular way
  - The coach dealt fairly with his players.
  - handle, take care of
  - The board agreed to deal with financial matters later.
  - have to do with, concern
  - The article deals with early French-American customs.
  - try to accept/reconcile
  - Meg dealt with three deaths in her family last year.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>decide</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>decide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>decides</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>decide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* He always decides at the last minute.

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am deciding</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>are deciding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is deciding</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>are deciding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I’m deciding what to wear.

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>decided</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>decided</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>decided</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>decided</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I finally decided to eat out.

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was deciding</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were deciding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was deciding</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were deciding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* We were deciding what to have for dinner.

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has decided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... had decided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Complements

**decide**

* make a choice/judgment
  * You decide.
  * Have you decided yet?
  * Tamara couldn’t decide between Joseph and Milton.

**decide _____**

* make a final choice/judgment about
  * object
    * The court decided the issue.
    * The election will decide the matter.
  * passive
    * The case was decided by a 5–4 vote.
  * in favor of object
    * The jury decided in favor of the defendant.
  * wh-clause
    * I can’t decide what we should do.
    * We decided when we had to leave.
    * The boss will decide how the employees will dress.
  * wh-infinitive
    * I can’t decide what to do.
    * We decided when to leave.
    * The aldermen will decide how to vote.

**decide _____**

* choose
  * on object
    * I’ve decided on a yellow cake with chocolate frosting.
    * The museum owner decided on the painting by Picasso.
    * The judge decided on leniency for the young defendant.

* infinitive
  * We decided to stay at home.
  * Charles decided to take the offer.

**decide _____**

* conclude
  * that-clause
    * We decided that we are going to sell the house.
    * Albert has decided that he will major in English.

**decide _____**

* determine the outcome of
  * object
    * A goal in overtime decided the game.
    * The voters in Ohio will decide the election.
    * His key testimony decided the trial.

**decided**

* unquestionable, definite
  * The taller man had a decided advantage.
declare | declares · declared · have declared

**宣誓**
- **present**
  - I declare
  - you declare
  - he/she/it declares
  - Jason declares that he will enter the race.
- **present progressive**
  - I am declaring
  - you are declaring
  - he/she/it is declaring
  - I am declaring all my income.
- **past**
  - I declared
  - you declared
  - he/she/it declared
  - The company declared a dividend.
- **past perfect**
  - I had declared
  - you had declared
  - he/she/it had declared
  - War was declared in 1939.

**预告**
- **past**
  - I declared
  - you declared
  - he/she/it declared
  - The company declared a dividend.
- **past progressive**
  - I was declaring
  - you were declaring
  - he/she/it was declaring
  - We were just declaring how nice your garden looks.
- **future**
  - I will declare
  - you will declare
  - he/she/it will declare
  - We will declare how nice your garden looks.
- **future perfect**
  - I will have declared
  - you will have declared
  - he/she/it will have declared
  - We will have declared how nice your garden looks.
- **future perfect**
  - I will be declaring
  - you will be declaring
  - he/she/it will be declaring
  - We will be declaring how nice your garden looks.

**complements**
- **declare**
  - announce one's intention to run
  - Jackson declared for sheriff today.
  - When will the senator declare for re-election?
  - state formally/publicly/officially, proclaim
  - The president declared war on poverty.
  - The company declared victory in its patent suit.
  - The accused declares his innocence.
  - The company had to declare bankruptcy today.
  - The governor declared a day of mourning.
  - Ralph declared John (to be) the best friend he ever had.
  - The court declared Uncle Henry (to be) incompetent.
  - The lawyer declared his client (to be) innocent.
  - The author declared that she would donate her royalties to charity.
  - The chairperson declared that the meeting was in session.
  - My father loudly declared what a lucky man his son-in-law was.
  - The guests all declared how tall Sally was getting.
  - “We are in a recession,” George declared.
  - make a complete statement of [goods one is bringing into / sending out of the country]
  - We declared the bottles of wine we bought in Italy.
defend | defends · defended · have defended

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>defend</td>
<td>we defend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>defend</td>
<td>you defend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>defends</td>
<td>they defend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>defended</td>
<td>we defended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>defended</td>
<td>you defended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>defended</td>
<td>they defended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Perfect**

... have | has defended

**Past Perfect**

... had defended

**Present Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am defending</td>
<td>we are defending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are defending</td>
<td>you are defending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is defending</td>
<td>they are defending</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was defending</td>
<td>we were defending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were defending</td>
<td>you were defending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was defending</td>
<td>they were defending</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

... will defend

**Future Progressive**

... will be defending

**Future Perfect**

... will have defended

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was defended</td>
<td>we were defended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were defended</td>
<td>you were defended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was defended</td>
<td>they were defended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* We defend your right to free speech.

* I’m defending two juveniles accused of burglary.

* He defended some pretty odd clients.

* They were defending the whole coastline.

* The fort was strongly defended.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**defend**

engage in defense, play the role of defender

I am defending.

Their team defends well against the run.

**defend ____**

protect from attack/danger/criticism/challenge

OBJECT

The soldiers defended the village against armed attack.

Stanford is defending the north goal.

Huxley defended Darwin’s ideas.

The press vigorously defends the right of free speech.

WH-CLAUSE

You must defend what you hold dear.

Alice defended what she had written.

The elite units defended wherever the threat was the greatest.

**defend ____**

act as attorney for

OBJECT

Clarence Darrow defended John Scopes.

**defend ____**

uphold the validity of [an academic thesis]

OBJECT

Ruth is defending her M.A. thesis at noon.

**defend ____**

seek to retain [a title, position]

OBJECT

The Giants are defending their title.

He will defend his championship this fall.

I have to defend my job at every board meeting.

**defend ____**

make an excuse for, justify

OBJECT

How do you defend your outrageous behavior at the party?
**PRESENT**
- I define
- you define
- he/she/it defines

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am defining
- you are defining
- he/she/it is defining

*His work defines what is stylish.*

**PAST**
- I defined
- you defined
- he/she/it defined

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was defining
- you were defining
- he/she/it was defining

*The military defined lines of authority.*

**FUTURE**
... will define

**FUTURE PERFECT**
... will have defined

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was defined
- you were defined
- he/she/it was defined

*The concept was defined by the ancient Greeks.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**define _____ state the meaning of**
- **OBJECT**
  - Who can define justice?
  - The coach tried to define the offside rule.
- **OBJECT + as OBJECT**
  - I defined justice as a sense of fair play.
  - The dictionary defines “persnickety” as “fussy about small details.”

**define _____ describe in detail, make clear**
- **OBJECT**
  - Please define the duties of the secretary.
  - The candidates tried to define the important campaign issues.
  - The advertisement defined the new features of the operating system.
  - Can you define what a barouche is?
  - I defined what duty means to me.
- **WH-CLAUSE**
  - Can you define what a barouche is?

**define _____ characterize**
- **OBJECT**
  - People define themselves by their choices.
  - Politicians always try to define their opponents.
- **OBJECT + as OBJECT**
  - The president defined Simpson’s behavior as outrageous and uncalled-for.
  - Language defines us as human.

**define _____ mark/fix the limits/outline of**
- **OBJECT**
  - The row of trees defines our property line.
  - Rivers often define state boundaries.
- **WH-CLAUSE**
  - The speed of light defines how fast things can move.
  - Usury laws define how much interest can be charged on a loan.
### deliver

**Present**
- I deliver
- you deliver
- he/she/it delivers

**Present Progressive**
- I am delivering
- you are delivering
- he/she/it is delivering

**Past**
- I delivered
- you delivered
- he/she/it delivered

**Past Progressive**
- I was delivering
- you were delivering
- he/she/it was delivering

**Present Perfect**
- I have delivered

**Future**
- I will deliver

**Future Perfect**
- I will have delivered

**Past Passive**
- The company only delivers on weekdays.
- Someone just delivered the pizza.
- The package was delivered this morning.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**deliver**
- engage in delivery
- fulfill promises/expectations
- give birth
- transport [to the proper person or location]
- provide [something desirable]
- hand over, surrender
- set free, rescue
- speak/sing in a performance
- give birth to
- help in giving birth to

**EXPRESSIONS**

**deliver a blow**
- strike [someone/something] in a certain way
- [often figurative]
**demand**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>1st person singular</th>
<th>2nd person singular</th>
<th>3rd person singular</th>
<th>Subject + Verb</th>
<th>Full Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td>I demand</td>
<td>you demand</td>
<td>he/she/it demands</td>
<td>demand something</td>
<td>He demands to see a lawyer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we demand</td>
<td>you demand</td>
<td>they demand</td>
<td></td>
<td>I'm demanding that they be punished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>I am demanding</td>
<td>you are demanding</td>
<td>he/she/it is demanding</td>
<td></td>
<td>They were demanding equal rights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we are demanding</td>
<td>you are demanding</td>
<td>they are demanding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>I demanded</td>
<td>you demanded</td>
<td>he/she/it demanded</td>
<td>demanded</td>
<td>She demanded a refund.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we demanded</td>
<td>you demanded</td>
<td>they demanded</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PASSIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>it was demanded</td>
<td>An apology was demanded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they were demanded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**demand**

**call for forcefully, often as a right or with authority**

**OBJECT**

- The customer demanded a **refund**.
- I demanded an **apology**.
- The crowd demanded **justice**.
- The boss demanded too much of his employees.
- The robber demanded **money** from the bank teller.

**INFINITIVE**

- I demand **to be heard**.
- The owner demanded **to be paid for the damages**.
- The senator demanded **that he be given equal time**.
- The chair demanded **that the meeting be called to order**.
- We demand **that we be permitted to leave**.
- I'm only demanding **what is owed to me**.
- The robber demanded **whatever valuables we had**.

**EXPRESSIONS**

- **demanding** requiring much attention/effort/time
- This secretarial job is very demanding.
  - One cannot please the most demanding customers.
**demonstrate**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Present Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I demonstrate</td>
<td>I am demonstrating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you demonstrate</td>
<td>you are demonstrating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it demonstrates</td>
<td>he/she/it is demonstrating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* He always demonstrates a desire to help.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I demonstrated</td>
<td>I was demonstrating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you demonstrated</td>
<td>you were demonstrating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it demonstrated</td>
<td>he/she/it was demonstrating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* They demonstrated their trustworthiness.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... was having</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has demonstrated</td>
<td>had demonstrated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

- it was demonstrated
- they were demonstrated

* The procedure was demonstrated to the other doctors.

**Complements**

- **demonstrate** illustrate a process/
  procedure

  Professor, will you demonstrate?
  I will demonstrate to the audience.

- **demonstrate** participate in a public
  display of opinion

  The students seem to demonstrate every week against
  the university’s involvement in war research.
  The workers are demonstrating for higher wages.

- **demonstrate** show clearly, illustrate, explain, prove [with examples, experiments]
  object

  Dr. Brown demonstrated the **procedure**.
  The girls demonstrated their **science project**.
  The salespeople demonstrated the **computers** to the customers.
  I will demonstrate what I had in mind.
  The expert demonstrated why the **validity of the photograph was in question**.
  The police demonstrated how the accident had happened.

  He demonstrated what to do in case of fire.
  The nurse demonstrated how to put on a **bandage**.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>principal parts</th>
<th>examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>deny</td>
<td>I deny, we deny, you deny, he/she/it denies</td>
<td>He totally denies doing anything wrong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Progressive</strong></td>
<td>are denying</td>
<td>I am denying, you are denying, he/she/it is denying</td>
<td>The suspect is denying everything.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>denied</td>
<td>I denied, we denied, you denied, he/she/it denied</td>
<td>He totally denies doing anything wrong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>were denying</td>
<td>I was denying, you were denying, he/she/it was denying</td>
<td>He was denying them the right of free speech.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>has denied</td>
<td>I have denied, we have denied, you have denied, he/she/it has denied</td>
<td><em>The story was denied by the senator.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>had denied</td>
<td>I had denied, we had denied, you had denied, he/she/it had denied</td>
<td><em>The story was denied by the senator.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**deny**

- **Declare to be false**
  - **OBJECT**
    - He denies any claim that he was involved.
  - **WH-Clause**
    - I deny the allegation.
- **Refuse to believe**
  - **OBJECT**
    - Some groups deny the theory of evolution.
    - The police denied Mike’s story.
- **Refuse to admit/acknowledge**
  - **OBJECT**
    - He denied any responsibility for the accident.
    - I denied Jerry’s crazy accusations.
  - ** THAT-CLAUSE**
    - We denied that we were even at the party.
  - **Present Participle**
    - Drivers always deny that they were speeding.
    - The kids denied breaking the window.
    - The salesman denied promising a 90-day warranty on the car.
- **Reject, refuse to grant**
  - **OBJECT**
    - The governor denied the petition.
    - The CEO denied my request for a meeting.
  - **Indirect Object + Direct Object**
    - Would you deny a hungry child food?
    - Would you deny food to a hungry child?
**Present**

I depend
you depend
he/she/it depends
* John depends on his staff.

**Past**

I depended
you depended
he/she/it depended
* I depended on outside consultants.

**Present Perfect**

... have | has depended

**Past Perfect**

... had depended

**Past Passive**

I was depended
you were depended
he/she/it was depended
* His advice was greatly depended on.

**Present Progressive**

I am depending
you are depending
he/she/it is depending
* I’m depending on you.

**Past Progressive**

I was depending
you were depending
he/she/it was depending
* We were depending on getting a larger budget.

**Future**

... will depend

**Future Progressive**

... will be depending

**Future Perfect**

... will have depended

---

**Note:** The verb *depend* is usually used with *on*. However, *on* is optional with *wh-clause* complements, especially in conversation.

**depend**

be contingent on something  “Will you go to the party?” “That depends.”

**depend ______**

be based/contingent on, be determined by

* on object*

Plant life depends on water and oxygen.
Our department depends on government grants.
Where we go on vacation depends on the value of the dollar.
Crowd size depends on the weather and available parking.

* on wh-clause*

My job depends (on) who wins the election.
It depends (on) what you mean.
The price depends (on) where you want to go.
It depends (on) how much it costs.

**depend ______**

rely on, trust

* on object*

You can depend on me.
Stella depended on the kindness of strangers.
We are going to win. Depend on it!

* on object + infinitive*

I depended on him to give us good advice.
They depended on the shelter to protect them from the storm.
People depend too much on milk to provide their calcium.

* on present participle*

The village depends on getting safe drinking water from their wells.
They are depending on your getting them home.
My parents depend on my helping them with their computer problems.
### Regular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Derive</th>
<th>Derives</th>
<th>Derived</th>
<th>Have Derived</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I derive</td>
<td>we derive</td>
<td>you derive</td>
<td>he/she/it derives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are deriving</td>
<td>you are deriving</td>
<td>they are deriving</td>
<td>they are deriving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>He derives his income from investments.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I derived</td>
<td>we derived</td>
<td>you derived</td>
<td>he/she/it derived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were deriving</td>
<td>you were deriving</td>
<td>they were deriving</td>
<td>they were deriving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>I derived a solution within five minutes.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... has derived</td>
<td>... derived</td>
<td>... have derived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... had derived</td>
<td>... had derived</td>
<td>... had derived</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**Derive _____ originate**

- from object

- My optimism derives from the robust economy.
- “Duke” derives from the Latin word “dux.”
- Western philosophy derives from the ancient Greeks.

**Derive _____ get, obtain**

- object (+ from object)

- We derive the chemical organically.
- We derive gas from coal.
- He derives his information from the foreign press.
- I derive much satisfaction from my work.
- Popular culture derives many expressions from sports.
- Many English words are derived from the Vikings.
- We derive what we need synthetically.
- They derive whatever energy they need from water power.

**Derive _____ arrive at by reasoning**

- object

- She derived that equation from the definitions given in class.
- They derived a completely different conclusion.
- Holmes derived the killer’s identity through reasoning alone.
**describe** **describe** | **describes** · **described** · **have described**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>FORMS</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>describe</td>
<td>I describe the book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>describe</td>
<td>you describe the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>describes</td>
<td>he/she/it describes the city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Melville accurately describes whaling.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am describing</td>
<td>I am describing the book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are describing</td>
<td>you are describing the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is describing</td>
<td>he/she/it is describing the city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* I’m not describing it very well, I’m afraid.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>described</td>
<td>I described the book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>described</td>
<td>you described the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>described</td>
<td>he/she/it described the city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* She described what he looks like.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was describing</td>
<td>I was describing the book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were describing</td>
<td>you were describing the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was describing</td>
<td>he/she/it was describing the city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The students were describing their summer vacations.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will describe</td>
<td>I will describe the book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will describe</td>
<td>you will describe the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will describe</td>
<td>he/she/it will describe the city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have described</td>
<td>I will have described the book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will have described</td>
<td>you will have described the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will have described</td>
<td>he/she/it will have described the city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was described</td>
<td>I was described the book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were described</td>
<td>you were described the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was described</td>
<td>he/she/it was described the city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The pre-war situation was described in the last lecture.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**describe** ______ portrayal, represent, explain

**OBJECT**

Can you describe your attacker?
Please describe your living room to me.
His articles describe the consequences of global warming.
The dance describes the nature of conflict.

**OBJECT + as OBJECT**

He described the operation as a complete success.
The press described the verdict as a travesty of justice.
The verdict was described as a travesty of justice.

**PASSIVE**

The book describes what you should do to protect yourself from inflation.
The presentation described how we can improve our job skills.

**WH-CLAUSE**

The guide described what to look for.
The article described how to make money in real estate.

**WH-INFINITIVE**

He described living in London during the war.
The doctor described having a heart attack.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

He described a circle with a compass.
Figure skaters must describe elaborate shapes on the ice.
Present Present Progressive
I deserve we deserve
you deserve you deserve
he/she/it deserves they deserve
He deserves a medal.

Past Past Progressive
I deserved we deserved
you deserved you deserved
he/she/it deserved they deserved
He deserved everything he got.

Present Perfect Future
... have | has deserved
Future ... will deserve
Future Progressive —
Future Perfect ... will have deserved

Past Passive
—
—
it was deserved they were deserved
Marion's reward was well deserved.

COMPLEMENTS

deserve _____ be worthy of, should get

OBJECT
They deserve a second chance.
She certainly deserves our admiration.
This problem deserves our full attention.
The term paper deserves an “A.”

INFINITIVE
He didn’t deserve to be treated that way.
I deserve to be heard.
Her restaurant deserves to have three stars.

WH-CLAUSE
He deserves what he has coming to him.
They really deserve whatever tips they earn.
People usually deserve whatever reputation they have.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE
He didn’t deserve being treated that way.
I didn’t deserve being ignored.
No restaurant deserves losing its license that way.

EXPRESSIONS

deserve credit for _____ should be recognized for
Rebecca deserves credit for keeping the construction project on schedule.

deserve blame for _____ should be held responsible for
Congress deserves much of the blame for the financial crisis.

be deserving of _____ be worthy of [praise, help]
Zack is deserving of the award.
Mrs. Nichols is deserving of energy assistance.
### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I am designing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you are designing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it is designing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *She designs dresses in Milan.*

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I was designing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were designing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it was designing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Our team was designing accounting software.*

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I have designed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you have designed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it has designed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I was designed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were designed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it was designed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The school was designed by architect William B. Ittner.*

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I will have designed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you will have designed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it will have designed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I will be designing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you will be designing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it will be designing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I will design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you will design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it will design</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I designed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you designed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it designed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I designed a wonderful waterfall.*

### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it designs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *She designs dresses in Milan.*

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I will design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you will design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it will design</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I had designed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you had designed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it had designed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I was designing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were designing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it was designing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I am designing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you are designing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it is designing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I’m designing something new.*

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it was designed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **design**
  - conceive and develop (plans for)
  - **object**
    - He designed the new mall.
    - They design artwork for CD covers.
    - My boss designed a perfect scheme for betting on horse races.
  - **wh-clause**
    - We only design what we can build in six months.
    - They will design whatever you need.
    - They will design whatever kind of advertising campaign the company wants.

- **design**
  - conceive and develop [for a specific purpose]
  - **object + as object**
    - The firm designed the external drive as a USB device.
    - The publisher designed the book as an aid to language learners.
    - He designed his blog as an alternative to the mainstream media.
  - **object + to be object**
    - The firm designed the external drive to be a USB device.
    - The publisher designed the book to be an aid to language learners.
    - He designed his blog to be an alternative to the mainstream media.
  - **object + infinitive**
    - He designed a new device to record messages.
    - We design cars to go faster and faster.
    - Nate designed a statistical model to predict elections better.
    - We designed the operating system to be more robust.

### Expressions

- **be designed for**
  - be intended for
  - This bread machine was not designed for daily use.
**REGULAR**

### desire | desires · desired · have desired

**PRESENT**
- I desire
- you desire
- he/she/it desires

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- Desire is rarely used in the progressive tenses.
- He desires to be introduced.

**PAST**
- I desired
- you desired
- he/she/it desired

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was desired
- you were desired
- he/she/it was desired

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- Desire is rarely used in the progressive tenses.
- We desired too much too soon.

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has desired

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had desired

**FUTURE**
- ... will desire

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
- —

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- ... will have desired

**COMPLEMENTS**

desire _____ wish for, request

**OBJECT**
- We all desire a good job with benefits.
- The kids desired more computer time.
- The world desires peace.

**(for) OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
- The company desired (for) the CEO to be a member of the board.
- We desired (for) the party to be a complete surprise.

**INFINITIVE**
- He desires to see them one last time.
- Ingrid desired to be left alone.
- The manager desired to be kept informed.

**WH-CLAUSE**
- We all seem to desire what we can't get.
- The kids all desire whatever they see on TV.
PRESENT
I destroy we destroy you destroy they destroy
he/she/it destroys they destroy
- *A tornado destroys everything in its path.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am destroying we are destroying you are destroying they are destroying
he/she/it is destroying they are destroying
- *I’m destroying my old bank statements.*

PAST
I destroyed we destroyed you destroyed they destroyed
he/she/it destroyed they destroyed
- *They destroyed all the records.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE
I was destroying we were destroying you were destroying they were destroying
he/she/it was destroying they were destroying
- *Forest roads were destroying the stream beds.*

PAST PASSIVE
I was destroyed we were destroyed you were destroyed they were destroyed
he/she/it was destroyed they were destroyed
- *The army was destroyed.*

FUTURE
... will destroy

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE
... will be destroying

FUTURE PERFECT
... will have destroyed

COMPLEMENTS

**destroy**

ruin, demolish, crush

**OBJECT**
The storm destroyed the old barn.
The noise from the TV destroyed my concentration.
Their stupid argument totally destroyed our dinner party.

**WH-CLAUSE**
Critics destroy what they don't understand.
The advancing army destroyed whatever was in its path.

**destroy**

kill [an animal]

**OBJECT**
The vet had to destroy the injured horse.

**PASSIVE**
Abandoned pets are often destroyed.
### REGULAR

| TENSE          |  |  |  |  
|----------------|---|---|---|---|
| **PRESENT**    | I detail | you detail | he/she/it details |  
|                | we detail | you detail | they detail |  
|                | * He details even the smallest expenses. |  |  |  
| **PRESENT PROGRESSIVE** | I am detailing | you are detailing | he/she/it is detailing |  
|                | we are detailing | you are detailing | they are detailing |  
|                | * I’m detailing everything you need to know. |  |  |  
| **PAST**       | I detailed | you detailed | he/she/it detailed |  
|                | we detailed | you detailed | they detailed |  
|                | * He detailed the recruits to the mess hall. |  |  |  
| **PAST PASSIVE** | I was detailed | you were detailed | he/she/it was detailed |  
|                | we were detailed | you were detailed | they were detailed |  
|                | * His complaints were detailed in the company log. |  |  |  
| **PAST PERFECT** | … have | … has detailed |  |  
| **PAST PERFECT** | … had | … had detailed |  |  
| **FUTURE**     | … will | … will |  |  
| **FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** | … will be detailing |  |  |  
| **FUTURE PERFECT** | … will | … will have |  |  
|                | have detailed | have detailed |  |  
|                | detailed | detailed |  |  

#### COMPLEMENTS

- **detail** report/list even the smallest things about
  - **OBJECT**
    - **report/list**
    - **the events that led to the accident.**
    - **all of your expenses.**
  - **WH-CLAUSE**
    - **what happened that night.**
    - **how often the operating system failed.**
    - **wherever we stopped on our trip.**

- **detail** assign [to/for a task]
  - **OBJECT**
    - **assign**
    - **the men**
  - **PASSIVE**
    - **The captain detailed**
    - **we were detailed**

- **detail** wash, wax, and restore to pristine condition [a vehicle]
  - **OBJECT**
    - **wash, wax, and restore**
    - **your car.**
    - **their antique cars**
  - **Owners often detail**
  - **to an incredible degree.**
**determine**

**determine | determines ·
determined · have determined**

**PRESENT**

| I determine | we determine |
| you determine | you determine |
| he/she/it determines | they determine |
- Economic conditions determine the result.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

| I am determining | we are determining |
| you are determining | you are determining |
| he/she/it is determining | they are determining |
- We are still determining what is the best thing to do.

**PAST**

| I determined | we determined |
| you determined | you determined |
| he/she/it determined | they determined |
- We determined to continue the expansion.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

| I was determining | we were determining |
| you were determining | you were determining |
| he/she/it was determining | they were determining |
- I was determining where I could have lost my wallet.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has determined

**PAST PERFECT**

... had determined

**PAST PASSIVE**

| I was determined | we were determined |
| you were determined | you were determined |
| he/she/it was determined | they were determined |
- Our policies were determined by pure self-interest.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**determine ____ decide, figure out**

**OBJECT**

The board determines all company policies.

**INFINITIVE**

They determined to try again.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

George determined to mind his own business in the future.

**WH-CLAUSE**

I haven't determined what I should major in.

**WH-INFINITIVE**

I never determined what to do.

**determine ____ be the cause of, control**

**OBJECT**

Our team's superior physical condition determined the outcome of the game.

**WH-CLAUSE**

National interest always determines national policy.

**EXPRESSIONS**

be determined be resolved, have one's mind set

determine the root of a problem figure out the causes of a problem

| My spouse is determined to get a Ph.D. |
| The owner was determined to turn a profit last year. |
| You must determine the root of a problem before you can solve it. |
**develop** grow and mature

A human develops from a single fertilized egg.
Infants develop at an amazing rate.
Nicole is developing into a fine golfer.
Our reunion plans are developing nicely.

**develop** come into being gradually

The situation is developing as we expected.

**develop** turn out, happen

It developed that three senators were also involved in the scandal.

**develop** elaborate

He needs to develop his ideas further.
Mozart develops two new themes in the second movement.

**develop** utilize, exploit

The company is developing its land in Idaho.
We must develop our advantage in skilled labor.
You can only develop what resources you have.

**develop** promote the growth of, expand

Only exercise can develop muscles.
The warm weather is developing the wheat rapidly.
He developed his tiny restaurant into a national chain.

**develop** acquire gradually

I have developed an interest in opera.

**develop** bring into being and evolve

The company leads the industry in developing new products.
We develop video games for the entertainment industry.
Arnold is developing a new television show.
The website was developed by our engineers and designers.
The company only develops what it can sell.
Our team will develop whatever plug-ins you want.

**develop** get [a disease]

Annie developed a rash on her arms and legs.
Bart developed measles at summer camp.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I devote</td>
<td>I am devoting</td>
<td>I devoted</td>
<td>I was devoting</td>
<td>I have devoted</td>
<td>I had devoted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you devote</td>
<td>you are devoting</td>
<td>you devoted</td>
<td>you were devoting</td>
<td>you have devoted</td>
<td>you had devoted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they devote</td>
<td>he/she/it is devoting</td>
<td>they devoted</td>
<td>they were devoting</td>
<td>they have devoted</td>
<td>they had devoted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* He devotes his weekends to restoring cars.
* I'm devoting a lot of time to it.

* I devoted 10% of my tax refund to charity.
* We were devoting our resources to staff development.

### Possible Expressions

#### Complements

- **devote (commit, apply [to a specific purpose])**
  - **Object + to Object**
    - I devote **my free time to charity work**.
    - Our company devotes **itself to research**.
    - We devote **ourselves to our children**.
    - I devoted **fully half of the basement to a print shop**.
    - We devote **our resources to whoever needs them the most**.
    - They devote **their restoration efforts to whatever buildings are most at risk**.
    - Sally devotes **her time to saving the environment**.
    - They devote **whatever they can afford to their church**.
    - I devote **what I can to what needs doing**.
    - We devote **whatever profits we make to building a stronger community**.

- **devote (consecrate)**
  - The Romans devoted **their greatest temple to Jupiter**.
  - The greatest Roman temple was devoted **to Jupiter**.

**EXPRESSIONS**

- **devoted (loyal, dedicated)**
  - Amber was a truly devoted daughter.
Present

I die  
you die  
he/she/it dies

Past

I died  
you died  
he/she/it died

Present Perfect

... have | has died

Past Perfect

... had died

Present Progressive

I am dying  
you are dying  
he/she/it is dying

Past Progressive

I was dying  
you were dying  
he/she/it was dying

Future

... will die

Future Progressive

... will be dying

Future Perfect

... will have died

Present Progressive

The engine dies whenever I brake.

Past Progressive

The tomato plants are dying.

Future Perfect

We were dying of thirst.

Past Passive

The rumors finally died.

We were dying of thirst.

Die is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

die  stop living

His aunt died of cancer.

In Hamlet, nearly everyone dies at the end.

My grandfather died before I was born.

The criminal was sentenced to die by hanging.

“It is sweet and fitting to die for one's country.” [HORACE]

die  stop functioning

My iPod just died.

The chain saw kept dying.

die  go out of existence

The committee dies at the end of the session.

My anger died when I learned what had really happened.

The storm finally died during the night.

die  fail, lose force

All of his early plays died after a few performances.

The bill died before it came to a vote.

The crowd's laughter slowly died.

die  suffer greatly, agonize [FIGURATIVE]

I'm dying here in all this heat.

My mother was dying of curiosity.

Our son was dying of boredom at Grandma's house.

die  desire greatly [FIGURATIVE]

The kids were dying for ice cream.

That chocolate cake is to die for!

I'm dying to find out what happened.

The kids are dying to open their presents.

Thelma is dying to see Louise.

PHRASAL VERBS

die away/down/out disappear gradually

The echo of her footsteps died away.

The wind died down after midnight.

The noise from the bar finally died down.

The fire will eventually die out.

die back die from the tips toward the roots, become dormant [OF PLANTS]

Perennials die back in the fall or winter.

die off/out become extinct, die one by one until all are gone

Mammals thrived after the dinosaurs died off.

When did the Neanderthals die out?

My cell phone died on me again.

die on stop functioning while being operated by
**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I dig</th>
<th>we dig</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you dig</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it digs</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He really digs in at suppertime.

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I dug</th>
<th>we dug</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you dug</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>dug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it dug</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>dug</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- They dug up a lot of information.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has dug</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... had</th>
<th>dug</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

- it was dug
- they were dug

- The foundation was dug last week.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

dig turn up / remove soil by hand, tool, or machine

dig search [for something]

- I have been digging all afternoon.
- We will dig tomorrow.

- Nicole dug in her suitcase for the shampoo.
- I am digging everywhere I can think of.
- The accountants are really digging.

- The road crew was digging a trench.
- The dog dug a hole in our front lawn.
- They have dug the foundation.

- The farmer dug potatoes in the field.
- Miners can dig coal from the slopes.

- Did you dig that crazy shirt?
- I couldn't dig all that technical talk.
- Kids don't dig classical music.

- Did you dig what he was saying?
- I can't dig what the teacher is saying.
- Did you dig who was in that movie?

**PHRASAL VERBS**

dig at _____ criticize

dig down/deep be generous

dig in start to work intensively

dig in start eating

dig into _____ investigate thoroughly

dig into _____ start eating

dig SEP out uncover by digging

dig SEP out obtain by searching

dig SEP up uncover by digging

dig SEP up obtain by searching

- He's always digging at me for my conservatism.
- We all must dig down to feed the poor.
- There were 23 court cases to study, and the lawyers dug in.
- Supper's on the table. Dig in!
- The detectives dig into the suspect's background.
- The workmen dig into the stew and biscuits.
- Tim dug his car out with a snow shovel.
- Let's dig out the family photo albums.
- We dug 23 arrowheads up in one afternoon.
- Reporters dig up a lot of information about the mayor.
### direct | directs · directed · have directed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I direct</td>
<td>I am directing we are directing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you direct</td>
<td>you are directing you are directing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it directs</td>
<td>he/she/it is directing they are directing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He directs the emergency response team. *</td>
<td>* He is directing a play. *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>PAST PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I directed</td>
<td>I was directing we were directing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you directed</td>
<td>you were directing you were directing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it directed</td>
<td>he/she/it was directing they were directing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* She directed a number of movies. *</td>
<td>* The police were directing traffic on Elm Street. *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST PERFECT</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
<th>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</th>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>… have</td>
<td>… will</td>
<td>… will be</td>
<td>… will have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>… has</td>
<td>directed</td>
<td>directed</td>
<td>directed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST PASSIVE</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was directed</td>
<td>we were directed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were directed</td>
<td>you were directed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was directed</td>
<td>they were directed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The archaeological dig was directed by Dr. Brown. *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**direct** lead people in a performance  
Henry Smith will be directing.  
He has never directed before.

**direct _____ be in charge of, manage**

**OBJECT**

I am directing the new project.  
She will direct the program.  
He will direct all fund-raising activities.  
She is directing the installation of the new piece of sculpture.

**direct _____ supervise performers in [an artistic production]**

**OBJECT**

He directed one of the Harry Potter films.  
The brothers have directed a number of movies.  
I have directed four Broadway plays.

**direct _____ point/channel to a specified person/place**

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

The signs directed us down a side street.  
The ships directed their guns on the fort.  
Direct your questions to my press secretary.  
The tourists directed their attention to the statue of Venus.  
We directed the floodwater away from the house.  
Our attention was directed to the inscription on the monument.

**direct _____ order**

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

The judge directed the jury to ignore the last statement.  
The police directed him to put up his hands.  
He was directed to put up his hands.
disappear | disappears · disappeared · have disappeared

**PRESENT**

I disappear we disappear
you disappear you disappear
he/she/it disappears they disappear

- He disappears right after dinner.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am disappearing we are disappearing
you are disappearing you are disappearing
he/she/it is disappearing they are disappearing

- Wild mushrooms are disappearing from the forests.

**PAST**

I disappeared we disappeared
you disappeared you disappeared
he/she/it disappeared they disappeared

- The money disappeared last night.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was disappearing we were disappearing
you were disappearing you were disappearing
he/she/it was disappearing they were disappearing

- The T-shirts were disappearing fast.

**PRESENT PERFECT** … have | has disappeared
**PAST PERFECT** … had disappeared

**FUTURE** … will disappear
**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** … will be disappearing
**FUTURE PERFECT** … will have disappeared

**PAST PASSIVE**

Disappear is rarely used in the passive voice.

### COMPLEMENTS

**disappear** vanish from view
The mountains disappeared in the fog.
Alice stared as the Cheshire cat disappeared.
The man disappeared around the corner.
The suspects disappeared into the crowd.

**disappear** go out of existence
The fog disappeared as the sun rose.
Many species of frogs have disappeared over the last decade.
All of the investors' money has just disappeared.
When the ship passed us by, our last hope disappeared.
discover | discovers | discovered | have discovered

**REGULAR**

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>discover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>discover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>discovers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Holmes always discovers the murderer.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am discovering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are discovering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is discovering</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’m discovering how much I need to learn.

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I discovered an important letter.

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was discovered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The spy’s identity was never discovered.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will discover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will discover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will discover</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will be discovering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will be discovering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will be discovering</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will have discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will have discovered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**discover** be the first to see / learn about

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>William Herschel</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marie and Pierre Curie</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Francis Crick and James Watson</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edwin Hubble</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**discover** see / become aware of for the first time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The doctor</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>was discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The police</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>was discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jasper</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The kids</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**discover** reveal, make known

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Our investigation</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The investigation</td>
<td>discovered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**discuss**

**discuss** | *discusses· discussed· have discussed*  

**PRESENT**
- I discuss  
- you discuss  
- he/she/it discusses

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am discussing  
- you are discussing  
- he/she/it is discussing

*He discusses politics on the radio.*

**PAST**
- I discussed  
- you discussed  
- he/she/it discussed

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was discussed  
- you were discussed  
- he/she/it was discussed

*We discussed this problem yesterday.*

**PRESENT PERFECT** … have | has discussed

**FUTURE** … will discuss

**FUTURE PERFECT** … will have discussed

**COMPLEMENTS**

**discuss** ______ talk about, consider in writing/speech

**OBJECT**

- We were discussing the latest rumor.  
- They discussed Tim’s behavior at the party.  
- The board discussed a possible merger.  
- Last week we discussed the causes of World War I.  
- The article discusses Albert Einstein’s theory of relativity.  
- The Gettysburg Address discussed the principles of human equality.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- The committee discussed who would receive bonuses this year.  
- They discussed what they had seen on Oprah.  
- The book discusses how electricity is generated by wind turbines.  
- We discussed how much we were all paying for gas.

**WH-INFINITIVE**

- The lawyers discussed whom to bill.  
- They discussed where to go on vacation.  
- My report discusses how to save electricity.  
- My wife and I discussed how much to pay the babysitter.
### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>am displaying</td>
<td>we are displaying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>are displaying</td>
<td>you are displaying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is displaying</td>
<td>they are displaying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* He displays his work at art fairs.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>have displayed</td>
<td>has displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>... have displayed</td>
<td>... has displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I displayed</td>
<td>I was displaying</td>
<td>I was displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you displayed</td>
<td>you were displayed</td>
<td>you were displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it displayed</td>
<td>he/she/it was displayed</td>
<td>they were displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* She displayed fine motor skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Progressive</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>will display</td>
<td>will display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>will have displayed</td>
<td>will have displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>will display</td>
<td>will display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>will be displaying</td>
<td>will be displaying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>I was displayed</td>
<td>I was displayed</td>
<td>I was displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we were displayed</td>
<td>we were displayed</td>
<td>we were displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were displayed</td>
<td>you were displayed</td>
<td>you were displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was displayed</td>
<td>they were displayed</td>
<td>they were displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The soldiers were displaying great bravery.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>... have displayed</td>
<td>... has displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was displayed</td>
<td>I was displayed</td>
<td>I was displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were displayed</td>
<td>you were displayed</td>
<td>you were displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was displayed</td>
<td>they were displayed</td>
<td>they were displayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* His paintings were displayed at a museum in New York.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**display**

**display** exhibit artwork

I am displaying in Miami this fall.
Will you be able to display soon?
Have you ever displayed in a gallery?

**display** engage in a breeding ritual

Most birds display during mating season.
Many male mammals display both to attract females and to discourage male rivals.

**display**

exhibit, place into view

OBJECT

They display the flag on every holiday.
Merchants displayed their wares in booths.
Mary Ann displayed her new winter coat.
Their son proudly displayed his missing tooth.

WH-CLAUSE

They displayed what they had to sell.
The shops displayed whatever goods they had left after the flood.

**display**

demonstrate, reveal

OBJECT

The unit displayed great courage under fire.
His behavior displayed great consideration for others.
The senator's proposal displayed a total disregard for his constituents.

WH-CLAUSE

They displayed what they were made of.
The inventor displayed how his device worked.

**display**

show off

OBJECT

Richard likes to display his knowledge of Latin.
He is always displaying his erudition.

WH-CLAUSE

They display how rich they are.
He displays how much everything costs.
**distinguish**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>FORM (in present tense)</th>
<th>FORM (in past tense)</th>
<th>FORM (in future tense)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td>I distinguish</td>
<td>you distinguish</td>
<td>he/she/it distinguishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we distinguish</td>
<td>you distinguish</td>
<td>they distinguish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am distinguishing</td>
<td>you are distinguishing</td>
<td>he/she/it is distinguishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we are distinguishing</td>
<td>you are distinguishing</td>
<td>they are distinguishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>I distinguished</td>
<td>we distinguished</td>
<td>you distinguished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you distinguished</td>
<td>they distinguished</td>
<td>he/she/it was distinguishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was distinguishing</td>
<td>we were distinguishing</td>
<td>you were distinguishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were distinguishing</td>
<td>they were distinguishing</td>
<td>he/she/it was distinguishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PERFECT</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... has</td>
<td>... had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>distinguished</td>
<td>distinguished</td>
<td>distinguished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PASSIVE</td>
<td>I was distinguished</td>
<td>we were distinguished</td>
<td>you were distinguished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was distinguished</td>
<td>they were distinguished</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**distinguish** — notice as different, tell apart

- **OBJECT**
  - We need to distinguish the difference.
- **OBJECT + and OBJECT**
  - Can you distinguish the twins?
- **OBJECT + from OBJECT**
  - Any farmer can distinguish wheat and barley.
- **WH-CLAUSE + from WH-CLAUSE**
  - You must distinguish what people say from what they actually do.

**distinguish** — make special, set apart

- **OBJECT**
  - Teamwork and camaraderie distinguish the Cardinals.
- **OBJECT + from OBJECT**
  - His enthusiasm distinguishes him from his co-workers.

**distinguish** — recognize

- **OBJECT**
  - It is always easy to distinguish Beethoven’s music.
- **PASSIVE**
  - Everybody can distinguish the skyline of Manhattan.
  - His paintings are easily distinguished.

**distinguish** — make [oneself] famous

- **REFLEXIVE PRONOUN**
  - My neighbor distinguished himself in the field of molecular biology.
- **REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + AS PREDICATE NOUN**
  - Grace distinguished herself as a pioneer in pediatric health care.

**distinguished** — famous, outstanding

- We heard the distinguished cellist Yo-Yo Ma play.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>dive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>dive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>dive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The market dives after bad economic news.

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am diving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are diving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is diving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I'm diving into the bond market.

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>dived/dove</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>dived/dove</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>dived/dove</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I never dived from the highest board.

### Past Perfect

- I have dived

### Future

- I will dive

### Future Perfect

- I will have dived

### Past Passive

Dive is never used in the passive voice.

### Complements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dive</td>
<td>plunge into water headfirst</td>
<td>She dived into the pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I dived from the 10-meter board.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I dove with my eyes closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Michael has been diving since he was four years old.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dive</td>
<td>go/swim underwater</td>
<td>The submarine dove to 75 meters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The ducks were diving in the pond.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The whale dove as soon as the boat approached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>We were diving in wet suits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dive</td>
<td>fall sharply and quickly</td>
<td>The plane dived under the clouds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The temperature dives at nightfall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The market dived on the news.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dive</td>
<td>plunge quickly, lunge for object</td>
<td>The soldiers dove for cover.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The shortstop dove for the ball.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Phrasal Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dive</td>
<td>start doing something energetically</td>
<td>We put the craft materials on the table and told the kids to dive right in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dive</td>
<td>into ___ start doing energetically</td>
<td>Becky dove into the new design project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>New arrivals are diving right into the discussion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Present Present Progressive
I divide we divide I am dividing we are dividing
you divide you divide you are dividing you are dividing
he/she/it divides they divide he/she/it is dividing they are dividing
* He divides his clients into two groups.
* I’m dividing the room into two sections.
Past Past Progressive
I divided we divided I was dividing we were dividing
you divided you divided you were dividing you were dividing
he/she/it divided they divided he/she/it was dividing they were dividing
* I divided the assignment into three parts.
* The cells were dividing rapidly.
Present Perfect Future
Present Perfect ... have | has divided
Past Perfect ... had divided
Future ... will divide
Future Perfect ... will have divided

PAST PASSIVE
I was divided we were divided
you were divided you were divided
he/she/it was divided they were divided
* The money was divided evenly.

COMPLEMENTS
divide replicate
Bacteria divide rapidly in a favorable environment.
Cancer cells divide more frequently than normal cells.
divide branch out, become separated
The branches are dividing close to the trunk of the tree.
Voters usually divide along party lines.
divide ______ separate [into parts/groups]
OBJECT
A stone fence divides the farmers’ fields from each other.
OBJECT + into OBJECT
Researchers divided the participants into three groups.
The Civil War divides American history into two distinct periods.

PASSIVE
All Gaul is divided into three parts.
divide ______ separate into opposing sides
OBJECT
The issue divided the country.
divide ______ distribute, portion out
OBJECT
Ruby divided her daylilies.
OBJECT + between/among OBJECT
Grandmother divides her time between reading and working crossword puzzles.

PASSIVE
We will divide the cookies among us.
The estate was divided among the heirs.

WH-CLAUSE
We will divide whatever we get equally.
They divided what they had earned.
divide ______ separate arithmetically [into equal parts]
OBJECT
Please divide 84 by 6.
Can you divide 356 into 4 equal shares?

PHRASAL VERBS
divide up separate
The class should divide up into three teams.
divide SEP up apportion
The four brothers divided the acreage up among themselves.

EXPRESSIONS
divide and conquer / divide and rule
cause a group of people to fight each other, then defeat them all
The boss knows how to divide and conquer his managers.
### IRREGULAR

#### do | does · did · have done
do 161

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PRES. PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I do</td>
<td>I am doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you do</td>
<td>you are doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/sh/it does</td>
<td>he/sh/it is doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→ He always does his best.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>PAST PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I did</td>
<td>I was doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you did</td>
<td>you were doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/sh/it did</td>
<td>he/sh/it was doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→ I did everything you asked.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT PERFECT</th>
<th>PAST PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>… have</td>
<td>… have done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>… has done</td>
<td>… had done</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/sh/it was done</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The job was done in record time.

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**note:** Do is also used with the base form of a verb

- to ask questions in the simple present and past tenses
  
  Do you want some candy?

- to form negative statements with *not* in the simple present and past tenses
  
  I do not think we will win.

- to emphasize what one is saying
  
  I do wish Mary would attend.

**do** manage, get along

“How is your son doing in school?” “He's doing well, thanks.”

**do** be adequate/right

A couple of hours will do.

Ten dollars will do.

Your blue suit will do for the party.

**do** perform, finish working on

**object**

I did some errands after lunch.

I was just doing my job.

We always do the crossword puzzle together.

The kids should do their homework soon.

I did what needed to be done.

We will do whatever job we are assigned.

**do** perform [for someone’s benefit]

**indirect object + direct object**

Do *me a favor.*

He did *them a good deed.*

They did *the company a real service.*

Do *a favor for me.*

He did *a good deed for them.*

They did *a real service for the company.*

**do** prepare, clean, decorate, arrange

**object**

We did *the table* before the guests came.

I did *a nice roast* for dinner.

I did *the dishes* afterwards.

My husband does *the laundry.*

We did *the living room* in pale blue.

She does *my hair.*

---

**top 40 verb**

---

04 Big Verbs pp 181-231.indd   191

17-6-2009   2:51:18 AM
**do** do | does · did · have done

**IRREGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Object + Indirect Object + Direct Object</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do _____</td>
<td>travel [a distance] / visit [a place] / spend [time]</td>
<td>Hikers can do 20 miles a day. His car can do 100 miles an hour. We will do several museums this afternoon. I did three years in the Navy.</td>
<td>do _____</td>
<td>be right/proper [USUALLY NEGATIVE]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PHRASAL VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do away with _____ eliminate</td>
<td>I did away with my landline phone at home. The company did away with employee bonuses.</td>
<td>do away with _____ murder</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXPRESSIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>could do with _____ want, need</td>
<td>I could do with some ice cream right now.</td>
<td>do a job/number on _____ damage, harm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**draw** | draws · drew · have drawn

---

**PRESENT**

I draw  
you draw  
he/she/it draws

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am drawing  
you are drawing  
he/she/it is drawing

*He draws a grim picture of the economy.*

**PAST**

I drew  
you drew  
he/she/it drew

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was drawing  
you were drawing  
he/she/it was drawing

*Her presentation drew a large audience.*

**PRESENT PERFECT** … have | has drawn  
**PAST PERFECT** … had drawn

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was drawn  
you were drawn  
he/she/it was drawn

*The sketches were drawn by Leonardo da Vinci.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**draw** create a picture

She draws beautifully.  
Art students must draw every day.

**draw** attract an audience

Costume dramas rarely draw well.

**draw** show a handgun

Policemen are trained to draw and aim but hold their fire.

**draw** create [a picture]  
OBJECT

The children drew pictures of their families.  
The architects have drawn a floor plan.

**draw** create a picture of  
OBJECT

The children drew them pictures.  
The economist drew us a scary picture of the future.

**draw** attract  
OBJECT

The children drew pictures for them.  
The economists drew a scary picture of the future for us.

**draw** move steadily  
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The child drew the children away from the window.  
I drew the curtains across the windows.

**draw** drag, pull, extract  
OBJECT

The archers drew their bows.  
The nurse needs to draw a blood sample.  
He drew the winning number.

**draw** move steadily  
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The robber drew closer to his victim.  
My business day was drawing to a close.

**draw** attract  
OBJECT

Water always draws mosquitoes.  
He usually draws a big crowd.

**draw** form  
OBJECT

Voters must draw their own conclusions from the debate.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**draw** SEP. up write, formulate

A young attorney drew up my will.  
Our family drew up an evacuation plan.
Present Present Progressive
I dream | dreams | dreamed | have dreamed
you dream | you dream | you are dreaming | you are dreaming
he/she/it dreams | they dream | he/she/it is dreaming | they are dreaming
  * He dreams of getting rich.

Past Past Progressive
I dreamed | we dreamed | I was dreaming | we were dreaming
you dreamed | you dreamed | you were dreaming | you were dreaming
he/she/it dreamed | they dreamed | he/she/it was dreaming | they were dreaming
  * I dreamed that I ate a giant marshmallow.

Present Perfect
... have | has dreamed
Past Perfect
... had dreamed

Past Passive
I was dreamed | we were dreamed
you were dreamed | you were dreamed
he/she/it was dreamed | they were dreamed
  * It was never even dreamed of 50 years ago.

COMPLEMENTS

dream have thoughts and images while one sleeps
I think I was dreaming.
We can all dream, can’t we?
I must have been dreaming.
dream pass time idly
Sorry, I was just dreaming.
dream _____ have [thoughts and images] while one sleeps

about OBJECT
Last night I dreamed about my grandmother.
Do rabbits dream about carrots?
She dreamt about Cassie and Pookie.
I never dream about my childhood.

THAT-CLAUSE
I dreamed that I had gotten lost in the woods.
Cinderella dreamt that she had met her prince.

about PRESENT PARTICIPLE
I dreamt about losing my job.
He dreamed about their moving back home.

dream _____ imagine, wish
of OBJECT
We all dream of a better future for our children.
Everyone dreams of world peace.

THAT-CLAUSE
Everyone dreams that they will be rich and famous.
People always dream that tomorrow will be better than today.

of PRESENT PARTICIPLE
Cubs fans could only dream of winning the World Series.
Actors always dream of getting the big break.

dream _____ consider possible/proper [ALWAYS NEGATIVE]
of PRESENT PARTICIPLE
We wouldn’t dream of going to the party without you.
He would never dream of eating meat.

PHRASAL VERBS

dream sep away spend [time] idly
Let’s sit on the riverbank and dream away the day.
dream sep up invent, concoct
Our board dreamed up a plan to avoid bankruptcy.
My brother and I dream up all kinds of wacky ideas.
**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I dress</th>
<th>we dress</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you dress</td>
<td>you dress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it dresses</td>
<td>they dress</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- She dresses very stylishly.

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I dressed</th>
<th>we dressed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you dressed</td>
<td>you dressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it dressed</td>
<td>they dressed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I dressed the children in hats and coats.

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has dressed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... had</th>
<th>dressed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- The salad was dressed before we served it.

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was dressed</th>
<th>we were dressed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were dressed</td>
<td>you were dressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was dressed</td>
<td>they were dressed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will</th>
<th>dress</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will be</th>
<th>dressing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will have</th>
<th>dressed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**dress**

- put on / wear clothes

I had to dress at my friend's house.
We dressed as quickly as we could.
We need to dress carefully for the reception.
You must learn to dress for success.

**dress _____ put [clothes] on [someone]**

**OBJECT**

You need to dress the children before breakfast.
I dressed them in their snow jackets.
We dressed ourselves in our Sunday best.
The babies were dressed by their grandmother.

**dress _____ provide with clothes**

**OBJECT**

It is expensive to dress a family.
We need to feed and dress all the refugees.

**dress _____ decorate**

**OBJECT**

The committee will dress the speaker's platform.
We always dress the church for Easter.

**dress _____ apply medicine and bandages to [a wound]**

**OBJECT**

The corpsmen dressed all the open wounds.
I dressed Harry's scraped knee.

**dress _____ prepare [food] for cooking/serve**

**OBJECT**

Carl dressed the deer that he had shot.
I will dress the salad at the table.

**dress _____ arrange [hair]**

**OBJECT**

She dresses my hair for me.
I need to dress Alice's hair before she leaves.

### PHRASAL VERBS

**dress down**

wear casual clothes

On Casual Friday, we all dress down.

**dress up**

wear formal clothes

We have to dress up for the gala opening.

**dress up**

wear a costume

My daughter is dressing up as Princess Leia for Halloween.

**dress up put formal clothes on**

**dress up put a costume on**

We have to dress the children up for the birthday party.

We dressed our daughter up as Princess Leia.
### drink (drinks · drank · have drunk)

**Present**
- I drink
- you drink
- he/she/it drinks

**Present Progressive**
- I am drinking
- you are drinking
- he/she/it is drinking

**Past**
- I drank
- you drank
- he/she/it drank

**Past Progressive**
- I was drinking
- you were drinking
- he/she/it was drinking

**Present Perfect**
- I have drunk

**Past Perfect**
- I had drunk

**Future**
- I will drink

**Future Progressive**
- I will be drinking

**Future Perfect**
- I will have drunk

**Past Passive**
- it was drunk

**Participle**
- drunk

### COMPLEMENTS

**drink**
- take a liquid in one’s mouth and swallow it
  - Is the patient able to drink?
  - He is drinking without any trouble now.
  - Don’t try to drink too soon.

**drink**
- consume alcoholic beverages
  - Jack is drinking again.
  - They never drink.
  - We drink only on special occasions.

**drink**
- consume [a liquid]
  - OBJECT
  - I like to drink sparkling water.
  - He only drinks imported beer.
  - Their kids never drink soda pop.
  - We will drink what is already open.
  - I’ll drink whatever is on tap.

**drink**
- cause [oneself] to be in a particular state as a result of excessive alcohol consumption
  - REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + into OBJECT
  - He drank himself into oblivion.
  - The college students drank themselves into a stupor.
  - REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + to OBJECT
  - He drank himself stupid.
  - They drank themselves blind.
  - REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + predicate adjective
  - I drank myself senseless.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**drink SEp away**
- consume alcohol to relieve oneself of
- The lonely widower drank his troubles away.

**drink SEp down**
- swallow [a liquid] completely
- Mother told me to drink the syrup down in one gulp.

**drink SEp in**
- absorb with the mind/senses
- He drinks in knowledge like a sponge.

**drink to**
- make a toast to
- Let’s drink to the couple’s health and happiness.

**Drink up!**
- Start/keep drinking!
- I’ll drink to that!

**drink SEp up**
- consume all of [a liquid]
- There’s more wine in the cellar. Drink up!

- My teenage sons drank up all the milk.
Present Progressive

I am driving
you are driving
he/she/it is driving

Past Progressive

I was driving
you were driving
he/she/it was driving

Future Progressive

... will drive
... will be driving
... will have driven

Past Passive

I was driven
you were driven
he/she/it was driven

Future Perfect

... will have driven

Future Perfect Progressive

... will be driving
... will have driven

Future Perfect

... will have driven

Present

I drive
you drive
he/she/it drives

Past

I drove
you drove
he/she/it drove

Past Perfect

I had driven
you had driven
he/she/it had driven

Past Progressive

I was driving
you were driving
he/she/it was driving

Past Perfect

I had driven
you had driven
he/she/it had driven

Past Perfect Progressive

... will have driven
... will have driven

Future

I will drive
you will drive
he/she/it will drive

Future Perfect

I will have driven
you will have driven
he/she/it will have driven

Future Perfect Progressive

... will have driven
... will have driven

Future Perfect

... will have driven
... will have driven

Present Perfect

I have driven
you have driven
he/she/it has driven

Past Perfect

I had driven
you had driven
he/she/it had driven

Past Perfect Progressive

... will have driven
... will have driven

Passive

I am driven
you are driven
he/she/it is driven

Passive Perfect

I have been driven
you have been driven
he/she/it has been driven

Passive Perfect Progressive

... will have been driven
... will have been driven

Passive Perfect

... will have been driven
... will have been driven

Irregular

drive

drives · drove · have driven

drive

operate a vehicle
Who can drive?
My grandmother never drives at night.

drive move with great force/speed
The rain was driving across the road.
The army drove forward relentlessly.

drive object + predicate adjective
Reading Dr. King's speeches drove him to a life of service.

drive object + infinitive
Opposition to slavery drove public opinion in the North.

drive object + to object
Reading Dr. King's speeches drove him to a life of service.

drive object + adjective
His behavior drove his parents mad.

drive object + complement
National interest always drives foreign policy.

drive sepa.
down cause to decrease
Foreclosures are driving down home prices.

drive sepa.
up cause to increase
Limiting oil production will drive prices up.

drive on cause to move forward to success
It is the memory of my mother that drives me on.
Present Progressive
I am dropping  
you are dropping  
he/she/it is dropping  
* I’m dropping a package off for you.

Past Progressive
I was dropping  
you were dropping  
he/she/it was dropping  
* The kids were dropping coins in the fountain.

Future
... will drop  
... will be dropping  
... will have dropped

Past Perfect
I had dropped  
you had dropped  
he/she/it had dropped

Future Perfect
... will have dropped

Past
I dropped  
you dropped  
he/she/it dropped  
* Our team dropped three games in a row.

Present
I drop  
you drop  
he/she/it drops  
* He always drops by at the wrong time.

Past
I dropped  
you dropped  
he/she/it dropped  
* Our team dropped three games in a row.

Present Perfect
... have | has dropped
Past Perfect
... had dropped

Past Passive
I was dropped  
you were dropped  
he/she/it was dropped

* The plan was dropped for lack of support.

COMPLEMENTS

drop fall
The ginkgo leaves dropped in a single day.
Our spirits dropped when we heard the news.

drop fall / lie down due to exhaustion
She worked so hard in the yard that she just dropped.
The temperature dropped last night.
Production of new cars has dropped significantly.

drop decrease
I dropped the letter into the mailbox.
Startled by the sudden noise, I dropped my glass.

drop _____ let fall
OBJECT
I dropped the letter into the mailbox.
Startled by the sudden noise, I dropped my glass.

drop _____ lower
OBJECT
The actor dropped his voice at the end of every line.

drop _____ abandon, give up on
OBJECT
The union dropped its lawsuit against the company.
I had to drop the course.
Drop what you are doing and help me.

drop _____ omit
OBJECT
Jackie always drops the “g” in “doing.”
He dropped these names from the membership list.

drop _____ lose
OBJECT
Our team dropped another close game last night.
Sara has dropped 15 pounds this year.

drop _____ say/send casually
OBJECT
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT to PARAPHRASE
He drops hints that you need to pay attention to.
She dropped her mother a brief note.
She dropped a brief note to her mother.

drop _____ end a relationship with [INFORMAL]
OBJECT
After six months of dating, Gwen dropped Ben.

PHRASAL VERBS

drop by/in (on _____) make an informal/unexpected visit (to [someone])
Drop by anytime!
We dropped in on Grandpa yesterday.

drop SEP off take to a specific place and leave
Please drop me off at the mall.
**REGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB FORM</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I dry</td>
<td>This paint dries in four hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you dry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it dries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we dry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you dry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they dry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it dries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>I am drying</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are drying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is drying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we are drying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are drying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they are drying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it died</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>I dried off the table so we could eat.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we were dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they were dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was dried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>The sample was dried by evaporation.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **dry** become moisture-free
  
The herbs were drying in the sun.  
  My new shirt dries in just a couple of hours.  
  My hair will never dry in this humidity.

- **dry** remove all the moisture from
  
  **OBJECT**
  Can you dry the children when they get out of the pool?  
  This wind dries my skin terribly.  
  I waved the documents in the air to dry the ink on the signatures.

- **dry** passive
  
  **PASSIVE**
  The children were dried when they got out of the pool.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- **dry off** make oneself dry
  
  I dry off before stepping out of the shower.

- **dry sep off** make dry
  
  Linda dried the kids off before they ran into the house.  
  Dry yourself off before you come into the kitchen.  
  Dry off the table before you stack books on it.

- **dry out** undergo withdrawal from
  
  **alcohol/drugs**
  Luke dried out at Hope Center.

- **dry sep out** cause [someone] to become sober
  
  The police dried him out before releasing him from jail.

- **dry up** become completely dry
  
  The farmer’s well dried up in November.

- **dry up** disappear
  
  Our source for Italian soda has dried up.

- **dry sep up** cut off the supply of
  
  The weak housing market has dried up opportunities for construction managers.
### eat  
**eat | eats · ate · have eaten**  

#### PRESENT
- I eat
- you eat
- he/she/it eats

- we eat
- you eat
- they eat

* He only eats cereal for breakfast.

#### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
- I am eating
- you are eating
- he/she/it is eating

- we are eating
- you are eating
- they are eating

* We are eating out tonight.

#### PAST
- I ate
- you ate
- he/she/it ate

- we ate
- you ate
- they ate

* I ate breakfast early this morning.

#### PAST PERFECT
- ... have | has eaten

- ... had eaten

#### PAST PASSIVE
- ... was eaten

- ... were eaten

* Only a third of the cat food was eaten.

---

#### COMPLEMENTS

**eat** take food in one's mouth and swallow it

- The children usually eat around noon.
- I eat too much when I get stressed.
- I'll call you back, we're eating now.
- Let's eat!

**eat ... consume [food]**

- OBJECT
- The kids love to eat pizza.
- My wife will never eat liver.

- WH-CLAUSE
- Can we eat what was left over from last night?
- The dog eats whatever the children drop on the floor.

**eat ... bear the expense of**

- OBJECT
- We will have to eat the cost overrun.
- They are just going to eat the overhead costs.
- You will have to eat the rest of the contract.

**eat ... make as if by eating**

- OBJECT
- The paint remover ate a hole in my glove.

**eat ... make as if by eating**

- sep
- up
- bite all over

- Mosquitoes are eating the campers up.
- The boss's lavish lifestyle ate up the company's profit.
- The singer told awful jokes, but the audience ate it up.

**eat (at) ... bother, annoy**

- His criticisms have been eating at me all day.

**eat at / away at / into ... wear away, corrode**

- Rust was eating away at the exterior of my car.
- Acid was eating into the countertop.

**eat in ... have a meal at home**

- The weather is awful. Let's eat in.

**eat out ... have a meal in a restaurant**

- I don't feel like cooking. Let's eat out.

**Eat up! Start/keep eating!**

- Dinner is getting cold. Eat up!

**eat ... up**

- bite all over
- use up, consume, waste
- enjoy greatly
- believe [something]

- Mosquitoes are eating the campers up.
- The singer told awful jokes, but the audience ate it up.

**eat ____ out of house and home**

- Our three sons are eating us out of house and home.

---

**IRREGULAR**
### Regular

#### eliminate | eliminates

- **Present**
  - I eliminate
  - you eliminate
  - he/she/it eliminates

- **Present Progressive**
  - I am eliminating
  - you are eliminating
  - he/she/it is eliminating

- **Past**
  - I eliminated
  - you eliminated
  - he/she/it eliminated

- **Past Progressive**
  - I was eliminating
  - you were eliminating
  - he/she/it was eliminating

- **Present Perfect**
  - I have eliminated
  - you have eliminated
  - he/she/it has eliminated

- **Past Perfect**
  - I had eliminated
  - you had eliminated
  - he/she/it had eliminated

### Complements

**eliminate expel bodily waste**

- You need to eliminate on a regular basis.
- Some desert rats never eliminate.

**eliminate _____ put an end to, eradicate**

- **Object**
  - President Johnson tried to eliminate poverty in America.
  - She wanted to eliminate bribery as a political way of life.

**eliminate _____ remove from competition**

- **Object**
  - We have eliminated all of the candidates.
  - The Cardinals eliminated the Panthers in the semifinal round.

**eliminate _____ remove from consideration**

- **Object**
  - The board eliminated the option of bankruptcy.
  - Detectives have eliminated two of the suspects.
  - The police eliminated whoever was not at the crime scene.
  - The designer eliminated whatever was distracting.

**eliminate _____ get rid of, dispose of**

- **Object**
  - We have tried to eliminate all unnecessary expenses.
  - They've eliminated any trace of having been there.
  - We eliminated what we didn't need to carry with us.
  - They eliminated whichever flights were nonstop.

- **Wh-clause**
  - We eliminated whatever flights were nonstop.
emerge | emerges · emerged · have emerged

**PRESENT**
- I emerge
- you emerge
- he/she/it emerges

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am emerging
- you are emerging
- he/she/it is emerging

*A great leader often emerges in a crisis.*

**PAST**
- I emerged
- you emerged
- he/she/it emerged

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was emerging
- you were emerging
- he/she/it was emerging

*A new problem emerged the next day.*

**FUTURE**
- ... will emerge

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- ... will have emerged

**PAST PASSIVE**
*Emerge* is never used in the passive voice.

**COMPLEMENTS**

emerge  appear, come into view
- A plane emerged from the clouds.
- A dark shape suddenly emerged from the mist.
- A school of fish emerged from the shadow of the dock.
- The manager finally emerged from his office just before 5 o'clock.

emerge  come into existence
- Most mammal lines emerged before the dinosaurs became extinct.

emerge  become known
- Yet another problem with the program emerged today.
- New allegations are emerging almost daily.
- The extent of his injuries only emerged when the doctors saw the X-rays.
- Jones has emerged as a first-rate player.

emerge  finish a contest/event in a specific condition/state
- The Democrats emerged victorious in the elections.
- Rick emerged unhurt from the collision.
### Emphasize

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I emphasize</td>
<td>He always emphasizes safety.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you emphasize</td>
<td>He is emphasizing the need for donors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it emphasizes</td>
<td>My first boss emphasized punctuality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we emphasize</td>
<td>We were emphasizing our reduced prices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I emphasized</td>
<td>Accuracy was emphasized over speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you emphasized</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it emphasized</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we emphasized</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>The real estate agent emphasized the remodeled kitchen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... had emphasized</td>
<td>The guide emphasized the importance of wearing a life vest at all times.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>The pilot emphasized that we should have our seat belts fastened while we are seated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td>it was</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they were emphasized</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**Object**
- The real estate agent emphasized the remodeled kitchen.
- Emphasize the second syllable in the verb “record.”
- The guide emphasized the importance of wearing a life vest at all times.

**That-Clause**
- The pilot emphasized that we should have our seat belts fastened while we are seated.
- Let me emphasize that we need to hurry.
- I can't emphasize enough that the key to success is higher education.

**Wh-Clause**
- He emphasized what we had to watch out for.
- They emphasized why everyone should vote.
- The teacher emphasized how we could improve our test scores.

**Wh-Infinitive**
- The fireman emphasized what to do in case of fire.
- I emphasized where to go for help.
- The teacher emphasized how to improve our test scores.
employ | employs · employed · have employed

**PRESENT**
- I employ
- you employ
- he/she/it employs

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am employing
- you are employing
- he/she/it is employing

- The company employs over 500 workers.
- I'm employing all of our resources.

**PAST**
- I employed
- you employed
- he/she/it employed

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was employing
- you were employing
- he/she/it was employing

- We employed a new secretary last week.
- They were only employing college graduates.

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has employed

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had employed

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was employed
- you were employed
- he/she/it was employed

- I was first employed in 2002.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**employ** hire workers

- Are they employing?
  The company might be employing.
  They are not employing now.

**employ _____ hire**

**OBJECT**

- They just employed a new driver.
  We haven't employed anyone for that position yet.

**PASSIVE**

- The corporation employed Kathryn as sales manager.

**employ _____ have working for oneself**

**OBJECT**

- The company employs 15,000 people in 23 countries.
  Our firm employs three full-time accountants.

**PASSIVE**

- John has been employed here for 20 years.
  Evelyn has been employed as a legal secretary for 13 years.
  Helen is employed in customer service.

**employ _____ make use of**

**OBJECT**

- You must employ all of your talents.
  I employed my newly acquired C++ programming skills.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- General Gage had to employ his last reserve unit.
  The sergeant employed whomever the captain sent him.

**employ _____ use for a particular purpose**

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

- We will employ whatever manpower we have.
  I employed whatever tools were at hand.

- I employed an air compressor to clean the keyboards.
  They employed me to fill in for Harry.

**employ _____ use for a particular purpose**

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

- She employed the shop vac to clean the leaves off the deck.
  We employed a lawn service to mow the grass.
## Enable

### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *This code enables the alarm system.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The grant is enabling me to finish graduate school.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The Internet enabled me to work at home.*

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The technicians were enabling the device.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The feature was enabled in the latest software release.*

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**Enable ____ make possible/feasible**

**Object**

The law enabled the creation of a new agency.

The bipartisan agreement enabled passage of the bill.

Excellent planning enabled the success of the program.

**Enable ____ make it possible for [someone/something to do]**

**Object + Infinitive**

His help enabled me to succeed.

Its success enabled the company to provide health benefits.

The tow truck enabled us to get out of the snow bank.

The loan enabled Susan to finish school.

**Enable ____ activate, cause to operate**

**Object**

Batteries enable the panel if the electricity fails.

You have to enable the alarm every night.

A computer program enables the entire plant.
**encounter**

**encounter** | encounter · encountered · have encountered  
--- | ---  
**Present**  
I encounter  
you encounter  
he/she/it encounters  
* Our proposals always encounter resistance.  
**Present Progressive**  
I am encountering  
you are encountering  
he/she/it is encountering  
**Past**  
I encountered  
you encountered  
he/she/it encountered  
* I encountered an ugly scene at the mall.  
**Past Progressive**  
I was encountering  
you were encountering  
he/she/it was encountering  
* The bill was encountering a lot of opposition.  
**Present Perfect**  
I have encountered  
you have encountered  
he/she/it has encountered  
**Past Perfect**  
I had encountered  
you had encountered  
he/she/it had encountered  
* Strong winds were encountered by the boats.  
**Future**  
I will encounter  
you will encounter  
he/she/it will encounter  
**Future Perfect**  
I will have encountered  
you will have encountered  
he/she/it will have encountered  

**COMPLEMENTS**  
encounter ____ meet/face, often by chance  
**Object**  
Harriet encountered her opponent at the grocery store.  
Our little boat encountered a terrible storm.  
You encounter all sorts of people at the zoo.  
**encounter ____ experience, come up against  
**Object**  
The proposal has encountered total indifference.  
Her idea will encounter opposition.  
The shuttle program has encountered one delay after another.  
We encountered problems getting the interest rate we had hoped for.  
Our forces are only encountering light resistance.  
The senator has encountered some pretty hostile interviewers lately.
### REGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB FORMS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I encourage we encourage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you encourage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it encourages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* He encourages everyone to finish school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I encouraged we encouraged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you encouraged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it encouraged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* They encouraged me to read a lot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had encouraged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was encouraged we were encouraged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were encouraged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was encouraged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* We were encouraged to go ahead with our plan.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### COMPLEMENTS

- **encourage** — give hope/confidence to
  - **OBJECT**
    - His sermons encouraged the entire congregation.
    - The crowd’s applause encouraged the shy third graders.
    - We encouraged Alex in his baseball career.

- **encourage** — advise, urge
  - **OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
    - Karen encouraged us to begin a reading program.
    - My mom encouraged me to become a doctor.

- **encourage** — promote
  - **OBJECT**
    - The fertilizer encouraged a new round of plant growth.
    - Run-off fertilizer has greatly encouraged algae growth in the lakes.
    - The program was designed to encourage greater fuel efficiency.

- **encourage** — make likely to
  - **OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
    - The tax cut encouraged companies to expand.
    - The sight of cannon encouraged the crowds to disperse.
end | ends · ended · have ended

PRESENT
I end we end
you end you end
he/she/it ends they end
* The play ends with a merry dance.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am ending we are ending
you are ending you are ending
he/she/it is ending they are ending
* They are ending their relationship.

PAST
I ended we ended
you ended you ended
he/she/it ended they ended
* The game ended before dinnertime.

PAST PROGRESSIVE
I was ending we were ending
you were ending you were ending
he/she/it was ending they were ending
* The long stalemate was finally ending.

PRESENT PERFECT... have | has ended
PAST PERFECT... had ended

FUTURE... will end
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE... will be ending
FUTURE PERFECT... will have ended

PAST PASSIVE
it was ended they were ended
* The ugly scene was ended when Jim stormed out.

COMPLEMENTS

end stop, cease
Will this night never end?
The morning sessions end promptly at noon.
The symphony ended on a triumphant chord.
The game ended in a tie.

end finish, stop
 OBJECT
Wilma ended their engagement.
The sudden storm abruptly ended our picnic.
Macbeth ends the summer season.
The senator ended his speech with a promise to cut taxes.
The vote ended all hope of a compromise.
You must end what you begin.
They need to end whatever mischief they are up to.

WH-CLAUSE

PHRASAL VERBS

end up ______
Our neighbor was a gambler and ended up broke.
Uncle Austin ended up as a lieutenant.
We had an accident and ended up at the hospital.
The scholar ended up at the University of Wyoming.
We were so tired, we ended up by sleeping at Ned's house.
Jim ended up going to Memphis for the weekend.
The argument ended up in a fistfight.
The meeting ended with the treasurer's report.
The movie ended up with the boy and girl getting married.

NOTE: The following six constructions with up mean
“be in [a condition/position/situation/location] at the end.”

end up as ______
end up at ______
end up (by) ______
end (up) in ______
end (up) with ______

EXPRESSIONS

end it all commit suicide
The pain became so severe that he ended it all.
That was the cruise to end all cruises.

_____ to end all ______ the best/greatest
In the divorce settlement, Sonny ended up with the short end of the stick.
Bonnie ended up with the short end of the stick when the company handed out bonuses.

end up with the short end of the stick
get less than others
### Engage | Engages · Engaged · Have Engaged

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I engage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you engage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it engages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Danny’s play totally engages the audience.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I engaged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you engaged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it engaged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I engaged a lawyer yesterday.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... had engaged</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past Passive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was engaged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were engaged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was engaged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The battle was engaged at 5:30 this morning.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**engage** start fighting

The ships were engaging at long range.  
The opposing attorneys engaged as soon as the trial started.  
He never engages unless he has a decided advantage.

**engage** fit/lock together, be in gear

Are the gears engaged?  
The gears never did engage properly.  
The clutch engaged with a loud grinding noise.

**be/get engaged** be pledged to marry

[SUSED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

Sally got engaged last night.  
They will not be engaged very long.  
Are they engaged?  
He has never been engaged before.

**engage _____ start fighting against**  
The army engaged the enemy at 0500 hours.

**engage _____ hire, contract the services of**  
 OBJECT (+ for object)

We will need to engage a lawyer.  
They engaged a bus and a driver.  
Six seniors engaged a limousine for prom night.  
We engaged a contractor for our remodeling project.  
They engaged the band for the wedding.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

We engaged Mr. Smith to evaluate the estate.  
We engaged a consultant to help us launch the new product.  
Mr. Smith was engaged to evaluate the estate.

**engage _____ attract and hold, keep busy**  
 OBJECT

That painting really engaged my attention.  
Computer games totally engage my daughter’s interest.  
Gardening engages all my spare time.  
Stevie is completely engaged by her new job.

**Passive**

**engage in _____ participate in**

Will Penelope engage in sports when she gets to college?

**engage _____ in cause to participate in**

Tamara engaged William in conversation.  
The boss engaged Mike in an exciting new project.
enjoy | enjoys · enjoyed · have enjoyed □ REGULAR

PRESENT
I enjoy we enjoy
you enjoy you enjoy
he/she/it enjoys they enjoy
• He enjoys gardening.

PAST
I enjoyed we enjoyed
you enjoyed you enjoyed
he/she/it enjoyed they enjoyed
• I enjoyed meeting your friends.

PRESENT PERFECT
... have | has enjoyed

PAST PERFECT
... had enjoyed

PAST PASSIVE
— —
— —
• The picnic was enjoyed by everyone.

COMPLEMENTS
enjoy _____ get pleasure/satisfaction from
OBJECT

PRESENT PARTICIPLE
I really enjoyed the movie.
We have always enjoyed their friendship.
The kids really enjoy picnics.
Everyone enjoys success.
I enjoy living in London.
No one enjoys commuting such long distances.
We always enjoy seeing our high school classmates.
We enjoy visiting with Harry and Rosie on their farm.
I enjoy eating out once in awhile.

enjoy _____ have/experience [something good]
OBJECT

enjoy _____ have fun
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN
I hope you enjoyed yourself at the picnic.

EXPRESSIONS
enjoy the best of both worlds benefit from
two opportunities that usually exclude each other

We enjoy the best of both worlds:
- living out in the country and having high-speed Internet service.
**PRESENT**

- **I** enter
- **you** enter
- **he/she/it** enters

* Our son enters kindergarten this year.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

- **I am entering**
- **you are entering**
- **he/she/it is entering**

* I’m entering the building now.

**PAST**

- **I entered**
- **you entered**
- **he/she/it entered**

* We entered into a new agreement.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

- **I was entering**
- **you were entering**
- **he/she/it was entering**

* They were entering a new era in broadcasting.

**PRESENT PERFECT** ...

- **I have entered**
- **you have entered**
- **he/she/it has entered**

**PAST PERFECT** ...

- **I had entered**
- **you had entered**
- **he/she/it had entered**

* All the new data was entered last night.

**PAST PASSIVE**

- **it was entered**
- **they were entered**

**COMPLEMENTS**

**enter** come in

- Please enter.
- I will enter as soon as I can.
- They will be entering in just a minute.
- Hamlet enters from stage left.
- Tourists enter through the east gate.

**enter _____ come/go into**

**OBJECT**

- Elvis has entered the building.
- The Allies entered Paris on August 19, 1944.
- We entered the dark room cautiously.
- They entered the United States at LaGuardia Airport.
- The bullet entered his shoulder.

**enter _____ participate/enroll in**

**OBJECT**

- I entered the drawing.
- Harry entered the hotdog eating contest.
- I will enter the university this fall.
- She will enter the race for the open Senate seat.

**enter _____ register/enter [data]**

**OBJECT**

- They entered their names for the drawing.
- Please enter your names on the guest list.
- I entered all the data in the proper fields.

**enter _____ make a new beginning in**

**OBJECT**

- The insects will soon enter a new developmental stage.
- I would be entering a totally new career.
- He decided to enter politics.
- Our sons are just entering puberty.

**enter into _____ take part in, become a part of**

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- The president entered into a dialog with our enemies.
- Our firm entered into an agreement with the mayor’s office.
- They will enter Jenny in the contest.
- I am entering a painting in the school’s art fair.
- Lucas entered on a career in accounting.
## entitle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>form</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>present</strong></td>
<td>I entitle</td>
<td>I entitled the poem “Lost Rainbows.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you entitle</td>
<td>It entitled them to apply for citizenship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it entitles</td>
<td>He was entitled to request payment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>present progressive</strong></td>
<td>I am entitling</td>
<td>I am entitling the poem “Lost Rainbows.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are entitling</td>
<td>He was entitling the book Lost Memories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is entitling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>future</strong></td>
<td>will entitle</td>
<td>The laws in Texas entitle people to carry concealed firearms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>future progressive</strong></td>
<td>will be entitling</td>
<td>What entitles you to complain?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>future perfect</strong></td>
<td>will have entitled</td>
<td>We are entitled to attend three seminars of our choosing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>past</strong></td>
<td>I entitled</td>
<td>The ranchers were entitled to a water allotment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you entitled</td>
<td>The law entitles him to call his lawyer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it entitled</td>
<td>It entitles the injured party to sue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>past progressive</strong></td>
<td>I was entitling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were entitling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was entitling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>past perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>They entitled their last album Broken Dreams.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>Coward entitled his most famous play Blithe Spirit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>past passive</strong></td>
<td>I was entitled</td>
<td>The book is entitled Happy Days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were entitled</td>
<td>The CD is entitled Mexico Sunset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was entitled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**entitle** ______ give the right

**object + to object**

- The coupon entitles you to a free pass.
- The ranchers were entitled to a water allotment.
- The law entitles him to call his lawyer.

**passive**

- It entitles the injured party to sue.
- The laws in Texas entitle people to carry concealed firearms.
- What entitles you to complain?

**object + infinitive**

- We are entitled to attend three seminars of our choosing.

**entitle** ______ give a name to

**object + predicate noun**

- They entitled their last album Broken Dreams.
- Coward entitled his most famous play Blithe Spirit.

**passive**

- The book is entitled Happy Days.
- The CD is entitled Mexico Sunset.
**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>escape</td>
<td>we escape</td>
<td>you escape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>escape</td>
<td>you escape</td>
<td>he/she/it escapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>escape</td>
<td>they escape</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *His name escapes me.*

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>escaped</td>
<td>we escaped</td>
<td>you escaped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>escaped</td>
<td>you escaped</td>
<td>he/she/it escaped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>escaped</td>
<td>they escaped</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Dillinger escaped from prison again.*

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has escaped</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... had escaped</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am escaping</th>
<th>we are escaping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- *I'm escaping the staff meeting.*

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>will escape</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>will be escaping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>will have escaped</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Passive**

- it was escaped
- they were escaped

- *The danger was narrowly escaped.*

---

### Complements

**escape** get free [from confinement/restriction], leak

- My pet turtle escaped yesterday.
- The balloons escaped from the party tent.
- Three prisoners escaped from the county jail.
- Fortunately, all of the crew escaped.
- The news quickly escaped to the public.
- The gas was escaping at a dangerous rate.

**escape** break free [from confinement/an unpleasant or difficult situation/event]

- No one ever escaped (from) Alcatraz alive.
- Three convicts escaped (from) the county jail last night.
- He escaped (from) a life of drudgery.
- I escaped (from) Senator Blather's talk.
- You can never escape who you are.
- I escaped whoever was following me.
- We escaped whatever task we would have been given.

**escape** come from unintentionally

- A tiny smile escaped her.

**escape** avoid

- I escaped having to do the dishes.
- We will escape working all night.
- The driver barely escaped running off the road.
- We escaped having to listen to his boasting.
- They escaped being punished for it.

**escape** be forgotten by

- The nurse's name escapes me.

---

### Expressions

**escape [someone's] notice** be unnoticed by someone

- Nothing escapes the boss's notice.
- The darkening sky escaped his notice.

**escape the ax** avoid being eliminated

- Four co-workers were laid off, but I escaped the ax.
**establish**

**establish | establishes · established · have established**

**PRESENT**
I establish  you establish  he/she/it establishes
you are establishing  you are establishing  he/she/it is establishing

- It establishes an important precedent.

**PAST**
I established  you established  he/she/it established
you were establishing  you were establishing  he/she/it was establishing

- We established our case before the court.

**PRESENT PERFECT**  ... have | has established
**PAST PERFECT**  ... had established

**FUTURE**  ... will establish
**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**  ... will be establishing
**FUTURE PERFECT**  ... will have established

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was established  we were established
you were established  you were established  he/she/it was established

- The company was established in 1983.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**establish ____ bring about, create**

**OBJECT**
The Constitution established **three separate branches of government**.
The legislature established **the commission**.
Uncle Henry established **a trust fund for his children**.
He originally established **the company** in Delaware.
The United States was established in 1787.

**PASIVE**

**establish ____ prove beyond doubt**

**OBJECT**
The evidence will establish **my client's innocence**.
Astronomers have established **the existence of a black hole at the center of our galaxy**.
The facts establish **the validity of his complaint**.
The police cannot establish **the identity of the victim**.
We will establish **that the will is invalid**.
New research has established **that people have been in the New World for 20,000 years**.
The geologists established **that there was oil in the region**.
The police have established **who broke into the house**.
This report will establish **what we have been saying all along**.
We need to establish **when the accident occurred**.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

**WH-CLAUSE**

**establish ____ put on a firm basis**

**OBJECT**
We need to establish **a good working relationship** with them.
They managed to establish **a level of mutual trust**.
All couples want to establish **a solid relationship**.
He established **his son** in business.

**establish ____ cause to be recognized/accepted**

**OBJECT**
The album established **her reputation**.

**OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN**
The album established **her reputation as a star**.
Edgar established **himself as an economic guru**.
It established **him as someone to be reckoned with**.
The upset established **our team as a legitimate contender**.
estimate | estimates
---|---
· estimated · have estimated

**REGULAR**

**PRESENT**
- I estimate
- you estimate
- he/she/it estimates
- *I estimate that the job will take a week.*

**PAST**
- I estimated
- you estimated
- he/she/it estimated
- *They estimated the price at $250.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has estimated

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had estimated

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was estimated
- you were estimated
- he/she/it was estimated
- *The cost was estimated to be over a million dollars.*

**FUTURE**
- ... will estimate

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- ... will have estimated

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
- ... will be estimating

**COMPLEMENTS**

*make a general guess about the worth/extent/size of*

**OBJECT**
- They will estimate the entire estate.
- The Coast Guard was trying to estimate the extent of the flooding.
- I estimated the number of square feet in the house.
- We estimated the rough cost of the project.

**OBJECT + at OBJECT**
- He estimated Kyle at six feet tall.
- The police estimated the crowd at two million people.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
- We estimated the cost to be around $25,000.
- They estimated the land to be about 5.5 acres.
- I estimated the driving time to be four hours.
- The police estimated the crowd to be two million people.

**THAT-CLAUSE**
- The engineer estimated that the project would require four years to complete.
- Our analysts estimate that the Democratic candidate will win in a landslide victory.
**PRESENT**
I examine  
you examine  
he/she/it examines  
* The committee examines all candidates.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am examining  
you are examining  
he/she/it is examining  
* The doctor is examining him now.

**PAST**
I examined  
you examined  
he/she/it examined  
* The police examined the crime scene.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was examining  
you were examining  
he/she/it was examining  
* We were examining every alternative.

**PRESENT PERFECT**  ... have | has examined
**PAST PERFECT**  ... had examined

**FUTURE**  ... will examine
**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**  ... will be examining
**FUTURE PERFECT**  ... will have examined

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was examined  
you were examined  
he/she/it was examined  
* The bridge supports were carefully examined.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**examine**

**OBJECT**
inspect, investigate, analyze

- The vet examined the injured parrot.
- The pilot examined the plane carefully.
- The police examined the victim's car.
- The lieutenant examined every rifle.
- The doctor will examine her for signs of malnutrition.
- The committee examined the issue of drunk driving.
- We examined what had fallen from the ceiling.
- The police examined where the car had gone off the road.
- The accountant always examines whatever charges we make.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- The committee examined me for nearly an hour.
- I examined him myself.
- The professor examined us on the causes of the Civil War.
- You will be examined at the end of the course.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>FORMS</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I exercise, you exercise, he/she/it exercises</td>
<td>perform physical activities to make oneself healthier/stronger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we exercise, you exercise, they exercise</td>
<td>use repeatedly to strengthen / to make more flexible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am exercising, we are exercising</td>
<td>train, give a physical workout to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are exercising, they are exercising</td>
<td>put into use/action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is exercising</td>
<td>get the attention of, cause alarm to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I exercised, you exercised, he/she/it exercised</td>
<td>I need to exercise more.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we exercised, you exercised, they exercised</td>
<td>I was exercising when you called.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was exercising, we were exercising</td>
<td>I can only exercise on weekends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were exercising, they were exercising</td>
<td>You must exercise the animals every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was exercising</td>
<td>The guards exercised the prisoners.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The trainers exercised their horses according to a rigid schedule.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The captain exercised the oarsmen regularly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>… have</td>
<td>have exercised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>… has</td>
<td>. exercised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>… had</td>
<td>. exercised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>… had</td>
<td>. exercised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>… been</td>
<td>. exercised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>it was</td>
<td>. exercised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they were</td>
<td>. exercised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **exercise** perform physical activities
- **to** make oneself healthier/stronger
- **object** use repeatedly to strengthen / to make more flexible
- **object** train, give a physical workout to
- **object** put into use/action
- **object** get the attention of, cause alarm to

* He exercises every day.
* He exercises as we talk.
* Mom always exercised good judgment.
* They were exercising their constitutional right.
* The horses were exercised this morning.
### exist

**exist | exists · existed · have existed**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I exist</td>
<td>I am existing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you exist</td>
<td>you are existing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it exists</td>
<td>he/she/it is existing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Dragons only exist in fiction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I existed</td>
<td>I was existing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you existed</td>
<td>you were existing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it existed</td>
<td>he/she/it was existing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The problem existed for years.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>exist</td>
<td>... will exist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... has existed</td>
<td></td>
<td>... will be existing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... had existed</td>
<td></td>
<td>... will have existed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

*Exist* is never used in the passive voice.

### Complements

**exist**

*be real*

- Dark matter actually exists in outer space.
- No matter what you say, the problem still exists.
- A golden age never existed.
- The problem only exists in his imagination.

**exist**

*continue to live / to be active*

- I can’t exist without you.
- We cannot exist without food and water.
- The colony managed to exist for many more years.
- Racism has always existed in American politics.
- Hope exists even when things look bad.

**exist**

*occur, be found*

- Tigers don’t exist in Africa.
### REGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I expand</td>
<td>I am expanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you expand</td>
<td>you are expanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it expands</td>
<td>he/she/it is expanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We are expanding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- It expands if you need more space.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I expanded</td>
<td>I was expanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you expanded</td>
<td>you were expanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it expanded</td>
<td>he/she/it was expanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The business was expanding rapidly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We expanded our operations in Asia.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>… have</td>
<td>… will expand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has expanded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>… had expanded</td>
<td>… will have expanded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

- **expand enlarge, become bigger**
  - The umbrella expanded with a pop.
  - The table expands to seat eight people.
  - The foam expands and seals all the leaks.
  - Our business is expanding all the time.
  - His influence has expanded greatly.
  - The company is expanding into New England and Canada.
  - We are expanding into home appliances.

- **expand ____ make bigger**
  - OBJECT
  - They have expanded their empire.
  - We needed to expand the committee.
  - You must expand your thinking.
  - The army was rapidly expanded.

  - PASSIVE
  - express in full
  - OBJECT
  - The senator expanded his remarks on immigration reform.
  - The professor expanded his ideas on economic recovery.
  - Please expand all abbreviations.

- **expand on ____ give more details about**
  - The reporters asked Senator Blather to expand on his statement about global warming.
expect | expects · expected · have expected

**PRESENT**
- I expect
- you expect
- he/she/it expects
  - *He expects that his team will win.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am expecting
- you are expecting
- he/she/it is expecting
  - *She is expecting a baby in June.*

**PAST**
- I expected
- you expected
- he/she/it expected
  - *I never expected special treatment.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was expecting
- you were expecting
- he/she/it was expecting
  - *We were expecting them at any moment.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- I have expected
- you have expected
- he/she/it has expected

**PAST PERFECT**
- I had expected
- you had expected
- he/she/it had expected
  - *The sad news was expected.*

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was expected
- you were expected
- he/she/it was expected

**COMPLEMENTS**
- **expect** be pregnant / due for delivery
  - Sally is expecting.
  - She is expecting in early September.
- **expect _____** think that [something] will happen
  - OBJECT
    - Roberta is expecting twins.
    - She is expecting a phone call.
    - We expect high tide around nine.
    - I had expected better results.
    - He expected the worst.
    - I expected to win.
    - The CEO expected to close the deal today.
    - They expect to stay in Detroit overnight.
  - THAT-CLAUSE
    - Everyone expected that Senator Blather would lose.
    - Who could have expected that we could get so lost?
    - John expected that he and Susan would get married this fall.
  - WH-CLAUSE
    - I never expected what happened.
    - They never expected what was coming.
    - Who could have expected how much it would cost?
- **expect _____** think that [something] should happen
  - OBJECT
    - The boy expected a reward for finding my wallet.
    - The principal expects better behavior from the students.
  - OBJECT + INFINITIVE
    - I expect you to do your homework.
    - The president expects all citizens to do their share.
  - INFINITIVE
    - The weatherman expects it to rain tomorrow.
    - We all expect to be treated with respect.
- **expect _____** suppose, think
  - THAT-CLAUSE
    - I expect that you are right.
    - I expect that it is true.
    - I expect that you believed everything he told you.

**PHRASAL VERBS**
- **expect [someone] for _____** think that [someone] will attend [an event]
  - The family expected you for lunch today.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular Verbs</th>
<th>experience</th>
<th>experiences</th>
<th>have experienced</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I experience</td>
<td>we experience</td>
<td>you experience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you experience</td>
<td>you experience</td>
<td>he/she/it experiences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I experience</td>
<td>we experience</td>
<td>you experience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you experience</td>
<td>you experience</td>
<td>he/she/it experiences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* He experiences severe headaches.</td>
<td>* We are experiencing a brief technical delay.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I experienced</td>
<td>we experienced</td>
<td>you experienced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you experienced</td>
<td>you experienced</td>
<td>he/she/it experienced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I experienced</td>
<td>we experienced</td>
<td>you experienced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you experienced</td>
<td>you experienced</td>
<td>he/she/it experienced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* She experienced a few disappointments.</td>
<td>* I was experiencing a total meltdown.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has experienced</td>
<td>I have experienced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had experienced</td>
<td>I experienced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>... will experience</td>
<td>I will experience</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Progressive</strong></td>
<td>... will be experiencing</td>
<td>They will soon experience</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... will have experienced</td>
<td>The island experienced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

| ... it was experienced | they were experienced |
| * Some setbacks were experienced during the project. |

**Complements**

**Experience** ___ undergo, encounter

**Object**

| I have experienced a few bad days. |
| He experienced many hardships growing up. |
| I’ve experienced good days and bad days. |
| I had never experienced such a disappointment before. |
| The market is experiencing some bad news. |
| I can't imagine experiencing such a thing. |

**Wh-Clause**

| I have never experienced what he has gone through. |
| They will soon experience what it is like. |
| The island experienced what a Category 5 hurricane could do. |
**explain**  

**explain** engage in giving reasons/justifications  
They tried to explain.  
I'm sorry, I can't explain.  

**explain _____** give the cause of / reason for  
**OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)**  
He explained his mistake.  
The CEO explained the secret of our success.  
The coach tried to explain their defeat.  
The technician explained the malfunction to his boss.  

**explain _____** make clear, give details about  
**OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)**  
He explained his new approach.  
The economist explained the complicated math behind his model.  
We need to explain our proposal.  
The attorney explained the law to his client.  

**THAT-CLAUSE**  
He explained that he wasn't feeling well.  
They explained that their flight had been delayed.  
Mary explained that she had to make a call.  

**WH-CLAUSE**  
Can you explain what went wrong?  
I explained what we needed to do.  
He explained where we had made our mistake.  
I will explain where we are going to meet.  
The administrator explained why it was a really bad idea.  
The repairman explained how we could have prevented the problem.  

**WH-INFINITIVE**  
The manager explained what to do in case of fire.  
I will explain where to park your cars.  
The consultant explained how to increase our sales.  

**explain _____** give a reason for one's behavior  
**REFLEXIVE PRONOUN**  
The wine bottle is empty. Explain yourself, son.  

**explain ** _sep_ away justify with credible reasons/excuses  
The student tried to explain away her absences.  
Janice explained away her bruises as the result of clumsiness.  

**PRESENT**  
I explain  
you explain  
he/she/it explains  
* She explains things very well.  

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**  
I am explaining  
you are explaining  
he/she/it is explaining  
* I'm explaining where they should go.  

**PAST**  
I explained  
you explained  
he/she/it explained  
* I explained to the police what happened.  

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**  
I was explaining  
you were explaining  
he/she/it was explaining  
* He was explaining that he missed his train.  

**PRESENT PERFECT**  
... have | has explained  

**PAST PERFECT**  
... had explained  

**PAST PASSIVE**  
... was explained  

**FUTURE**  
... will explain  

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**  
... will be explaining  

**FUTURE PERFECT**  
... will have explained  

- The mystery was explained later.  

---  

**COMPLEMENTS**  

**explanation** engage in giving reasons/justifications  
They tried to explain.  
I'm sorry, I can't explain.  

**explain _____** give the cause of / reason for  
**OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)**  
He explained his mistake.  
The CEO explained the secret of our success.  
The coach tried to explain their defeat.  
The technician explained the malfunction to his boss.  

**explain _____** make clear, give details about  
**OBJECT (+ to OBJECT)**  
He explained his new approach.  
The economist explained the complicated math behind his model.  
We need to explain our proposal.  
The attorney explained the law to his client.  

**THAT-CLAUSE**  
He explained that he wasn't feeling well.  
They explained that their flight had been delayed.  
Mary explained that she had to make a call.  

**WH-CLAUSE**  
Can you explain what went wrong?  
I explained what we needed to do.  
He explained where we had made our mistake.  
I will explain where we are going to meet.  
The administrator explained why it was a really bad idea.  
The repairman explained how we could have prevented the problem.  

**WH-INFINITIVE**  
The manager explained what to do in case of fire.  
I will explain where to park your cars.  
The consultant explained how to increase our sales.  

**explain _____** give a reason for one's behavior  
**REFLEXIVE PRONOUN**  
The wine bottle is empty. Explain yourself, son.  

---  

**PHRASAL VERBS**  

**explain ** _sep_ away justify with credible reasons/excuses  
The student tried to explain away her absences.  
Janice explained away her bruises as the result of clumsiness.
### Regular

**expose** | exposes · exposed · have exposed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I expose</td>
<td>I am exposing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you expose</td>
<td>you are exposing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it exposes</td>
<td>he/she/it is exposing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He exposes himself to a lot of criticism.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I exposed</td>
<td>I was exposing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you exposed</td>
<td>you were exposing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it exposed</td>
<td>he/she/it was exposing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The paper exposed the crooked politician.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I am exposing everything that happened there.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was exposed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were exposed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was exposed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He was exposing his family to unnecessary risk.

### Complements

**expose** leave unprotected from

- **Object + to Object**
  - The company exposed **us** to toxic chemicals.
  - The hikers were exposed to the thunderstorm.
  - The troops were needlessly exposed to enemy fire.
  - I was exposed to typhoid on my trip.

**expose** cause to be affected/influenced by

- **Object + to Object**
  - I exposed **my legs** to the warm sun.
  - You should expose **your children** to good music.
  - The photographer exposed the film to the light.
  - In Berkeley, I was exposed to a wide variety of food.

**expose** display, make visible, reveal

- **Object**
  - The suspect exposed **his gang tattoos**.
  - I didn’t want to expose **my total ignorance**.
  - Who wants to expose **their mistakes** in public?

- **Object + as Predicate Noun**
  - The journalist exposed the governor as a fraud.

- **Wh-Clause**
  - The reporter exposed who was involved in the scandal.
  - I will expose what you have been doing.
  - I only exposed what everyone already knew.

- **Present Participle**
  - Mike exposed the mayor’s taking a bribe.

**expose** display one’s genitals

- **Reflexive Pronoun**
  - He was arrested because he exposed himself in public.

**expose** subject oneself

- **Reflexive Pronoun + to Object**
  - Public officials expose themselves to the risk of investigation.
**express**

**express | expresses · expressed · have expressed**

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>express</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>express</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>express</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am expressing</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are expressing</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is expressing</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>expressed</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>expressed</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>expressed</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was expressing</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were expressing</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was expressing</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have expressed</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>expressed</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>have expressed</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had expressed</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>expressed</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>had expressed</td>
<td>state, convey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**express**  **send [something] by rapid delivery**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will express</td>
<td>product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>expressed</td>
<td>document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>expressed</td>
<td>package</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**express**  **state/show one’s thoughts/feelings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reflexive Pronoun</th>
<th>Adverb of Manner</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delia</td>
<td>herself poorly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norman</td>
<td>himself best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonnie</td>
<td>herself through music</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
extend | extends · extended · have extended

**Present**
- I extend
- you extend
- he/she/it extends

**Past**
- I extended
- you extended
- he/she/it extended

**Present Perfect**
- I have extended
- you have extended
- he/she/it has extended

**Past Perfect**
- I had extended
- you had extended
- he/she/it had extended

**Present Progressive**
- I am extending
- you are extending
- he/she/it is extending

**Past Progressive**
- I was extending
- you were extending
- he/she/it was extending

**Future**
- I will extend
- you will extend
- he/she/it will extend

**Future Perfect**
- I will have extended

**Past Passive**
- I was extended
- you were extended
- he/she/it was extended

Examples:
- The lake extends 15 miles to the east.
- We are extending our trip.
- They extended the offer to all employees.
- They were extending their deck.
- The deadline was extended to next Saturday.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**extend** stretch, continue, include

**ADVERB OF TIME**
- The conference extends through the weekend.
- The battle extended through the night.
- The Ming Dynasty extended from 1368 to 1644.

**ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
- The damage extended for miles.
- The city extends all the way to the ocean.
- His influence extends throughout the state.
- The Rocky Mountains extend from Canada to New Mexico.
- His business interests extend to oil drilling and casinos.

**extend** stretch, lengthen, enlarge, prolong

**OBJECT**
- He extended both his arms to catch the kitten.
- We are extending the kitchen.
- We need to extend the dining room table.
- Senator Blather extended his control of the Appropriations Committee.
- They are extending the deadline for applications.
- Regular oil changes extend the life of a car.
- We are extending our vacation by a couple of days.
- The company extended itself too far.

**extend** offer, give

**OBJECT + to OBJECT**
- The government will extend emergency aid to the flood victims.
- They will extend additional credit to their customers.
- We extend best wishes to the participants.
- The club extends membership to all senior citizens.

**extend** work very hard

**REFLEXIVE PRONOUN**
- Esther is extending herself too far by joining so many clubs.
### face

#### Present

- **I** face
- **you** face
- **he/she/it** faces

*Our house faces a lovely park.*

#### Present Progressive

- **I am facing**
- **you are facing**
- **he/she/it is facing**

*We are facing a serious problem.*

#### Past

- **I faced**
- **you faced**
- **he/she/it faced**

*We faced overwhelming odds.*

#### Past Progressive

- **I was facing**
- **you were facing**
- **he/she/it was facing**

*They were facing certain defeat.*

#### Present Perfect

- **I have faced**
- **you have faced**
- **he/she/it has faced**

#### Past Perfect

- **I had faced**
- **you had faced**
- **he/she/it had faced**

#### Future

- **I will face**
- **you will face**
- **he/she/it will face**

#### Future Progressive

- **I will be facing**
- **you will be facing**
- **he/she/it will be facing**

#### Future Perfect

- **I will have faced**
- **you will have faced**
- **he/she/it will have faced**

#### Past Passive

- **I was faced**
- **you were faced**
- **he/she/it was faced**

*The apartment building was faced with brick.*

---

### COMPLEMENTS

#### face

- **turn / be oriented in a certain direction**
- **ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

  The porch faces **north**.
  
  Our hotel room faced **toward the ocean**.
  
  Birds face **into the wind** to retain body heat.
  
  Her apartment faced **onto Main Street**.

- **turn / be oriented toward**
- **OBJECT**

  Please face **the front of the hall**.
  
  Our hotel room faced **the ocean**.
  
  The armies faced **each other**.
  
  The ships faced **the oncoming waves**.
  
  The people on the beach all faced **the sun**.

- **confront / deal with [something difficult/unpleasant]**
- **OBJECT**

  You must face **the facts**!
  
  The market was facing a **big sell-off of assets**.
  
  The Cubs face **their old rivals** this weekend.
  
  He was faced with financial ruin.
  
  We were facing **what we feared the most**.
  
  They will face **whatever problems come up**.
  
  He must face **whatever punishment he is given**.

- **cover the surface of**
- **OBJECT + with object**

  They faced **the walls with marble**.
  
  We faced **our kitchen counter with blue slate**.
  
  The bathroom surfaces are faced **with white tile**.

---

### PHRASAL VERBS

- **face away/forward/in/out/etc.**
  
  **turn / be oriented in a specified direction**

  The actor faced away from the audience.
  
  Stand in a straight line and face forward!
  
  The statue in the foyer faces in.
  
  The statue in the portico faces out.

- **face head-on**
  
  **confront directly**

  Cindy faced her drug addiction head-on.
  
  Greg finally faced up to his alcohol problem.
  
  You have to face up to the fact that you can’t climb stairs anymore.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>I fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>you fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>fails</td>
<td>he/she/it fails</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>we fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>you fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they fail</td>
<td>he/she/it is failing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He never fails to answer his e-mail.*

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>failed</td>
<td>I failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>failed</td>
<td>you failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>failed</td>
<td>he/she/it was failing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>failed</td>
<td>we failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>failed</td>
<td>you failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they failed</td>
<td>they were failing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The air conditioning failed again.*

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>have</td>
<td>failed</td>
<td>have failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>have</td>
<td>failed</td>
<td>have failed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>I will fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>you will fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>he/she/it will fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>we will fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>you will fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>fail</td>
<td>he/she/it will fail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He is failing to keep up with the assignments.*

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>was failing</td>
<td>I was failing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>was failing</td>
<td>you were failing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was failing</td>
<td>he/she/it was failing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>were failing</td>
<td>we were failing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were failing</td>
<td>you were failing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>were failing</td>
<td>they were failing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*His health was failing.*

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>was failed</td>
<td>I was failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were failed</td>
<td>you were failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was failed</td>
<td>he/she/it was failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>were failed</td>
<td>we were failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were failed</td>
<td>you were failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they failed</td>
<td>they were failed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The class was failed by half the students.*

### COMPLEMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complement</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fail weakening, decline</td>
<td>My grandmother’s eyesight is failing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail be unsuccessful</td>
<td>The surprise attack failed miserably. I’m afraid that John is failing this semester.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail stop working, break down</td>
<td>The old compressor finally failed. Their marriage eventually failed. His heart failed at the end. Most start-up companies fail in their first year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail ___ not earn a passing grade in/on</td>
<td>Bryan failed algebra last semester. I failed the test the first time I took it. Thirty percent of applicants fail the bar exam. You cannot fail the orals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail ___ disappoint, be of no help to</td>
<td>He would never fail the team. Mary’s friends failed her. My courage failed me at the end. He never failed his duty. I was failed by several of my office mates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail ___ not [do something]</td>
<td>Don’t fail to lock the door when you leave. I fail to see the point. The team failed to score in the first half. The new program can’t fail to save you money. Did he fail to understand the instructions?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it falls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I am falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td>I have fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you have fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it has fallen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples
- Night falls early this time of year.
- Look out! It's falling.

## Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I fell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you fell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it fell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I was falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td>I had fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you had fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it had fallen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples
- The market fell like a rock yesterday.
- The snow was falling heavily.

## Present Perfect

### Examples
- I have fallen.
- You have fallen.
- He/she/it has fallen.

## Past Perfect

### Examples
- I had fallen.
- You had fallen.
- He/she/it had fallen.

## Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>I will fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you will fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it will fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I will be falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you will be falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it will be falling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td>I will have fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you will have fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it will have fallen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examples
- I will fall.
- You will fall.
- He/she/it will fall.

## Past Passive

- Fall is never used in the passive voice.

## Complements

### Examples
- Dad falls asleep in front of the news.
- Ursula fell sick after eating potato salad at the picnic.
- The crowd fell silent as she approached the podium.

## Phrasal Verbs

### Examples
- The castle walls are falling down.
- Our party plans fell through at the last minute.
- The Dickersons fell back on their savings.
- The doctor fell further behind as the day went on.
- Patrick fell for Tammy on their first date.
- We won't fall for the politician's lies anymore.
- Our son fell in with computer nerds at school.
- Attendance at our church has fallen off dramatically.
- The meeting falls on my day off.
- Nick fell out with the project director.
- The princess fell under the power of the wicked queen.
- Organization of the meeting fell to the secretary.
### Regular

**Present Progressive**
- I am favoring
- you are favoring
- he/she/it is favoring

**Past Progressive**
- I was favoring
- you were favoring
- he/she/it was favoring

**Future Progressive**
- I will be favoring
- you will be favoring
- he/she/it will be favoring

**Future Perfect**
- I will have favored
- you will have favored
- he/she/it will have favored

### Complements

**favor**
- **prefer, like**
  - Object: I generally favor Chinese food.
  - Wh-clause: Audiences always favor what they are already familiar with.
  - Politicians always favor whatever is popular.
  - I would favor whichever restaurant we can get a reservation at.

- **consider most likely to win**
  - Object: The sports bloggers favor the Giants.
  - Wh-clause: The odds will favor whoever wins the primary.

- **help, facilitate**
  - Object: Lax security favored the prisoners’ escape.
  - Sunshine favored the first game of the baseball season.

- **treat gently**
  - Object: He favors his sore ankle.
  - The horse is favoring his left front hoof.
  - Handicapped children have to be favored.

- **look like**
  - Object: Both twins favor their father.

**favor [someone] with**
- **give**
  - [something] to [someone]: The singer favored us with an encore.
Present Present Progressive
I fear we fear
you fear you fear
he/she/it fears they fear
* Everyone fears public embarrassment.

Past Past Progressive
I feared we feared
you feared you feared
he/she/it feared they feared
* I feared his violent temper.

Present Perfect Future
… have | has feared … will fear

Past Perfect Future Progressive
… had feared —

Future Perfect Future Perfect
… will fear … will have feared

Past Passive
I was feared we were feared
you were feared you were feared
he/she/it was feared they were feared
* A dawn attack was feared by the general.

COMPLEMENTS

fear____ be afraid of, worry about

OBJECT
“Fear no more the heat o’ the sun.” [SHAKESPEARE]
I fear a recession coming.
The sailors feared the dark skies to the west.
The citizens feared another terrorist attack.
We have long feared exactly this happening.
Hearing news of the fatal accident, Martha feared the worst.

INFINITIVE
I feared to even open my eyes.
We feared to make a sound.
I feared to go out after dark.

THAT-CLAUSE
I fear that you are right.
We fear that your flight may be cancelled.
The lawyers feared that the judge would not allow their arguments.

WH-CLAUSE
We all fear what we do not know.
They fear what will happen next.
I feared what might go wrong with our plans.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE
I feared even opening my eyes.
We feared making a sound.
I feared going out after dark.

PHRASAL VERBS

fear for____ worry about
My brother is a coal miner, and I fear for his safety.
The hurricane was approaching, and we feared for our lives.
### feed | feeds · fed · have fed

#### feed

**I** feed

- Present: I feed
- Past: I fed
- Present Perfect: I have fed
- Future: I will feed

**He/She/It** feeds

- Present: He/She/It feeds
- Past: He/She/It fed
- Present Perfect: He/She/It has fed
- Future: He/She/It will feed

**You** feed

- Present: You feed
- Past: You fed
- Present Perfect: You have fed
- Future: You will feed

**We** feed

- Present: We feed
- Past: We fed
- Present Perfect: We have fed
- Future: We will feed

**They** feed

- Present: They feed
- Past: They fed
- Present Perfect: They have fed
- Future: They will feed

- **I am feeding**
- **I was feeding**
- **I have fed**
- **I will feed**

- **I’m feeding**
- **They were feeding**
- **We have fed**

**He feeds the birds every day.**

**I fed the cat two hours ago.**

**The children were fed earlier.**

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**feed | eat**

- How often do they feed?
- The birds were feeding on our plum tree.
- Lions only feed when they are hungry.

**feed | supply [food/materials]**

- The zookeepers feed every morning and evening.
- Don’t feed too fast, or the shredder will jam.

**feed | give food to, supply materials to**

- **OBJECT**
  - We feed the homeless at a downtown shelter.
  - You should only feed the goldfish once a week.
  - Keep feeding the boiler until we have enough steam.

- **INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**
  - Feed me some more rope.
  - Feed some more rope to me.

**feed | send [an electric current, a signal]**

- **OBJECT**
  - The sensor feeds a signal to the computer.
  - The station feeds the broadcast to a satellite.
  - The current is fed to the circuit breaker.

**feed | foster, support**

- **OBJECT**
  - Resentment feeds hostility.
  - Rumors are feeding the confusion.
  - Music feeds the soul.

- **PASSIVE**
  - The mind can only be fed by education.

**feed | supply**

- **INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**
  - We fed the chickens corn.
  - The company fed the press misleading information.
  - The company fed misleading information to the press.

- **TO PARAPHRASE**
  - We fed corn to the chickens.
  - The director fed the actress her lines.
  - The director fed the actress’s lines to her.

**feed | move/push [into/through an opening]**

- **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
  - The nurse fed the breathing tube into the patient’s windpipe.
  - The tourist fed quarters into the vending machine.
feel | feels · felt · have felt

**feel _____ be aware of, sense [continued]**

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

- They felt the **boat getting under way**.
- I felt **myself getting sick**.
- The speaker felt **the audience losing interest**.

**feel _____ believe, think**

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

- The coach felt **the team to be ready for the game**.
- John felt **them to be completely mistaken**.
- I always felt **myself to be a good sport**.
- I feel **that I am right about it**.
- We felt **that we should go ahead as planned**.
- Sam felt **that he deserved a bigger raise**.

**feel _____ experience, have grief/pity because of**

OBJECT

- We felt **Grandma's death** keenly.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**feel (about/around) for _____**

seek by touching

- I felt for the light switch.
- She was feeling around in the dark for her glasses.

**feel for _____ sympathize with**

- I really feel for the team that lost.
- Senator Blather felt out the voters about the tax increase.

**EXPRESSIONS**

**feel at home** feel comfortable/accepted

- My friends feel at home here.
- I feel it in my bones that he's going to hit a home run tonight.
- I feel like pizza for dinner.
- I feel like drinking lemonade.
- This feels like real wood.
- It feels like January, even though it's only September.
- I feel like it's going to rain.
- We feel as if we're never going to pay off the mortgage.
- An early-morning walk through the woods makes me feel like a million bucks.
- After a shower and shave, the hobo felt like a new person.
- The flu made him feel like death warmed over.
- After having a cold for a week, I feel like myself again.
- After drinking a six pack, Meredith is feeling no pain.
- The salesman danced a jig around the office; he's feeling his oats since he landed that big contract.
- Gordon feels out of place at wine-and-cheese parties.
- My parents want to vacation in Spain, but they're feeling the pinch.
- Do you feel up to going shopping?
Present Present Progressive
I feel you feel he/she/it feels My arm feels just fine, thanks.
you feel you feel they feel
he/she/it feels they feel
Past Past Progressive
I felt you felt he/she/it felt They felt sorry for her.
you felt you felt they felt
he/she/it felt they felt
Present Perfect Future
... have | has felt
Past Perfect Future Progressive
... had felt
Future Future Perfect
... will feel
... will be feeling
... will have felt
Past Passive
it was felt they were felt
* The loss was felt by everyone.

COMPLEMENTS
feel ______ perceive oneself to be
PREDICATE NOUN
Sally felt a complete fool.
I felt a victim of circumstances.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
John felt foolish.
We all felt sad at the news.
The situation felt all wrong.
Are you feeling better today?
I don't feel well.
The team felt defeated after losing their best pitcher.
We felt overwhelmed by the experience.

PAST PARTICIPLE
He felt badly about what had happened.
Robert always feels strongly about political issues.

feel ______ have an emotion/opinion
ADVERB OF MANNER
It felt good to go to class again.
It feels weird to be in the presence of so many geeks.

feel ______ seem
it + feel + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE + INFINITIVE
The water feels too cold.

feel ______ seem to the sense of touch
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
I felt everywhere.
He felt in his pockets for the key.
She felt under the cushions.

feel ______ search by touch
ADVERB OF PLACE
The burglars felt their way along the corridor.

feel ______ seek by touching
OBJECT
I felt his swollen ankle.
The detective felt the suspect for a gun.
She carefully felt the dog's injured leg.

feel ______ touch in order to examine
OBJECT
They felt the impact of the explosion.
I felt a rock in my shoe.
Ron felt a pang of jealousy.

feel ______ be aware of, sense
OBJECT
Present
I fight you fight he/she/it fights
we fight you fight they fight
you are fighting you are fighting they are fighting
He always fights for the underdog.

Past
I fought you fought he/she/it fought
we fought you fought they fought
you were fighting you were fighting they were fighting
The senator fought against corruption.

Present Perfect
... have | has fought
Past Perfect
... had fought

Future
... will fight
Future Progressive
... will be fighting
Future Perfect
... will have fought

Past Passive
I was fought you were fought he/she/it was fought
we were fought you were fought they were fought
The battle of Gettysburg was fought in July 1863.

COMPLEMENTS

fight engage in combat/argument

It is useless to fight with City Hall.
The damaged ship will never fight again.
It is noble to fight for one's country.
The media was fighting for access to the court transcripts.
The twins are always fighting.
What married couple doesn't fight occasionally?
She was fighting against other committee members.

fight contend/struggle against, oppose

OBJECT

The Spanish fought Napoleon's armies savagely.
I am fighting a terrible sore throat.
The company is fighting the judge's ruling.
We will fight the takeover bid.
The neighborhood fought the new development.
The minority party is fighting Senator Blather's amendment.

WH-CLAUSE

We have fought what we considered to be wrong.
They will fight whomever we nominate.
We will fight whatever forces are arrayed against us.

fight wage, be engaged in

OBJECT

We are fighting a war on poverty.
He is fighting the good fight.
They fought a running battle for a week.

PHRASAL VERBS

fight back retaliate
She may lose the argument, but
she'll find a way to fight back.

fight back resist, struggle against
Ruth fought back her tears after hearing about his death.

fight off repel an attack by
I'm trying to fight off a bout of the flu.
The platoon fought off a much larger force.

fight on continue to fight
Although surrounded, Colonel Travis's men fought on.

fight out settle by struggle
The rival gangs fought it out with guns.
Beth and Seth fought out their differences in court.

fight over struggle to obtain
The classmates fought over who would get the award.
Jayne and Eve fought over Humphrey.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>FORM</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I figure</td>
<td>He figures to win his first match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you figure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it figures</td>
<td>They figured out the total cost.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I figured</td>
<td>We figured that the flight would be canceled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you figured</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it figured</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>The problem was quickly figured out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was figured</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were figured</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they were figured</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **figure** be just as expected
  - It figures that Ryan would be the team captain.
- **figure** calculate, estimate
  - We need to figure the fixed costs.
  - The garage figured the cost of repairing the dent.
  - How do you figure the time we spent on it?
  - I can't begin to figure our losses.
  - Did you figure what replacing the rug would cost?
- **figure** believe, expect
  - We figured the company to be quite safe.
  - The writers figure the Cubs to win the pennant.
  - The Cubs were figured to win the pennant.
  - We figured that it was too late to call them.
  - The salesman figured that we wouldn't notice the difference.
  - They figured that there would be a delay.
  - Why did he figure that the wedding would be in Chicago?
- **figure** appear likely
  - He figures to be the odds-on favorite.
  - They figure to heat their house with firewood.
  - He figures to beat the odds.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- **figure** into [something]
  - Did you figure office supplies into the expense total?
- **figure in/into** be involved/in
  - The butler figures prominently in the story.
- **figure on** plan/count/depend on
  - Let’s figure on going to a movie after dinner.
  - The contractor figured on five sheets of plywood being left over.
- **figure SEP out** understand
  - The teacher couldn’t figure Stephanie out at all.
- **figure SEP out** solve, determine
  - Tim figured the crossword puzzle out in six minutes.
  - The police figured out who committed the crime.
  - I figured out what our rate of return would be.
  - We figured out how much gas we would need.
file

file | files · filed · have filed

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I file</th>
<th>we file</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you file</td>
<td>you file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it files</td>
<td>they file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He files all the correspondence.

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I filed</th>
<th>we filed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you filed</td>
<td>you filed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it filed</td>
<td>they filed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- She filed for the open seat on the council.

**Present Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am filing</th>
<th>we are filing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you are filing</td>
<td>you are filing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is filing</td>
<td>they are filing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I'm filing all the reports chronologically.

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was filing</th>
<th>we were filing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were filing</td>
<td>you were filing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was filing</td>
<td>they were filing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- She was filing her nails.

**Present Perfect**

... have | has filed

**Past Perfect**

... had filed

**Past Passive**

| it was filed | they were filed |

- The will was filed with the county clerk.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **file** catalog and store something
  
  We filed all day Tuesday.  
  Jack and Hannah are filing in the back office.

- **file** catalog and store
  
  object

  I filed all the letters and memos.
  We filed all the CDs by artist.
  Senator Blather had filed all of his press releases.
  File this report under "Worker Safety."

- **file** put into official records
  
  object

  She filed divorce papers this morning.
  We have just filed our mortgage.
  The sheriff filed an eviction notice on them.
  I filed a complaint with the company.
  They are going to file charges.
  He filed a claim for his share of the estate.
  File this copy with the county clerk's office.

- **file** send [copy] to a newspaper
  
  object

  The freelance reporter filed the story just before midnight.

- **file** march/walk in line
  
  adverb of place to/from

  The children filed out of the classroom quietly.
  We glumly filed into the meeting room.

- **file** smooth with a tool
  
  object

  The actress filed her nails while she waited.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- **file away at** scrape with a tool
  
  file SEP away keep in memory

  file SEP down smooth/reduce with a tool

  file for begin a legal proceeding

  file for register as an election candidate

  file off [something] remove from [something] with a tool

  The jeweler was filing away at the burr.
  You may want to file the idea away for future use.
  The locksmith filed down the key.
  Irene has filed for divorce.
  My brother will file for alderman tomorrow.
  The woodworker filed the edge off the drill bit.
### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>fill</td>
<td>we fill</td>
<td>I fill the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>fill</td>
<td>you fill</td>
<td>You fill the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>fills</td>
<td>they fill</td>
<td>He/she/it fills the sink.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The clinic fills quickly in the evening.

### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am filling</td>
<td>we are filling</td>
<td>I am filling the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are filling</td>
<td>you are filling</td>
<td>You are filling the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is filling</td>
<td>they are filling</td>
<td>He/she/it is filling the sink.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I am filling two vacant positions.

### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>filled</td>
<td>we filled</td>
<td>I filled the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>filled</td>
<td>you filled</td>
<td>You filled the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>filled</td>
<td>they filled</td>
<td>He/she/it filled the sink.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* We already filled the order.

### PAST PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was filling</td>
<td>we were filling</td>
<td>I was filling the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were filling</td>
<td>you were filling</td>
<td>You were filling the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was filling</td>
<td>they were filling</td>
<td>He/she/it was filling the sink.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The boats were filling their tanks at the dock.

### PRESENT PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have filled</td>
<td>I have filled</td>
<td>I have filled the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have filled</td>
<td>you have filled</td>
<td>You have filled the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has filled</td>
<td>he/she/it has filled</td>
<td>He/she/it has filled the sink.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was filled</td>
<td>I was filled</td>
<td>I was filled the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were filled</td>
<td>you were filled</td>
<td>You were filled the sink.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was filled</td>
<td>he/she/it was filled</td>
<td>He/she/it was filled the sink.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The positions were filled almost immediately.

### COMPLEMENTS

#### fill

- **become full**
  - The sails were filling in the rising breeze.
  - The pool was slowly filling.
  - The stadium was quickly filling with noisy fans.
  - Janet’s eyes filled with tears.

- **put as much as possible into, make full**
  - put as much as possible into
  - I filled my coffee cup again.
  - I filled the hole in the driveway with gravel.
  - Kay fills his days with handsetting type and printing.

- **occupy all of**
  - occupy all of
  - The crowd completely filled the small hall.

- **spread throughout, persuade**
  - spread throughout
  - Smoke from the forest fire filled the air.
  - That stupid tune completely filled my head.
  - The scandal filled the evening news.

- **supply what is requested**
  - supply what is requested
  - Can you fill the order by Friday?
  - The pharmacist filled my prescription while I shopped.
  - My prescription was filled while I shopped.

- **put someone into [a job/office]**
  - put someone into [a job/office]
  - We filled the vacancy on the committee.
  - I'm sorry, we have already filled the position.

### PHRASAL VERBS

#### fill in

- **become full, spread**
  - The sign-up sheet is filling in quickly.
  - The new grass is filling in nicely.

- **in**
  - give details to
  - C.J. filled the reporters in about the president’s meeting.

- **SEP. in**
  - write information on
  - Fill in the blank with the correct verb form.
  - Applicants must fill out both sides of the form.

- **in for _____**
  - take the place of
  - Can you fill in for me on Tuesday?

- **fill up**
  - become completely full
  - The hall is filling up for the concert.
  - The kids are filling up on cookies and milk.

- **SEP. up**
  - make completely full
  - We’re filling up the truck with cardboard to recycle.
**find**

*find | finds · found · have found*

**find** _____ declare as a legal verdict

**OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**

The jury found the defendant guilty.

**find** _____ obtain

**OBJECT**

You must find time to study.

Charlotte and Kathy found an apartment on Walnut Street.

Our product found lots of buyers among senior citizens.

Grandma finds comfort in her photo albums.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**find** for _____ decide in favor of

The jury found for the defendant.

**find out** learn the truth

Your mother will find out.

I’ll search the Internet and find out for you.

**find** _____ SEp out learn

I found out what makes Jason tick.

What did you find out about the boss’s husband?

**EXPRESSIONS**

**find a way around _____** discover a way to avoid [something]

The computer engineer found a way around the error message.

My attorney found a way around the regulation.

**find fault (with _____)** discover something wrong with [someone/something]

My landlord finds fault with everyone.

The moderator found fault with both candidates’ arguments.

**find favor with _____** win the approval of

Vergil found favor with the emperor Augustus.

We found it in our hearts to beg forgiveness.

The voters found it in themselves to elect a black president.

**find neither hide nor hair of _____** fail to detect any sign of

The detectives found neither hide nor hair of the suspect.

**find [one’s] bearings** determine where one is

After wandering in the woods for four hours, we found our bearings.

The candidate finally found her voice, but it was too late.

**find [one’s] tongue/voice** determine what to say

We eventually found our way to the log cabin.

Melanie found herself in her sophomore year of college.

**find out the hard way** discover something by (usually unpleasant) experience

Senator Blather found out the hard way how much voters oppose tax hikes.

She found her mark midway through the second period and scored four goals after that.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Complements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>we find</td>
<td>* He finds his new job interesting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>you find</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>finds</td>
<td>they find</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I am finding</td>
<td>we are finding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you are finding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is finding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they are finding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was found</td>
<td>we were found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you were found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they were found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>we found</td>
<td>* We found a really great babysitter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>you found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>they found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was finding</td>
<td>we were finding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you were finding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was finding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they were finding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td>... will find</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>... will be finding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... will have found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was found</td>
<td>we were found</td>
<td>you were found</td>
<td>* They were finding more support than expected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were found</td>
<td>you were found</td>
<td>they were found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMPLEMENTS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>discover, come upon by chance</td>
<td>OBJECT</td>
<td>I finally found my missing wallet.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The hikers found a path back to camp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Astronomers found a new moon orbiting Jupiter.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT</td>
<td>I found jane a great birthday present.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>We found the kittens a nice home.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>for PARAPHRASE</td>
<td>I found a great birthday present for Jane.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>We found a nice home for the kittens.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OBJECT + INFINITIVE</td>
<td>I found the new job to have its limitations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Larry found the restaurant to get a lot of repeat customers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE</td>
<td>I found myself holding my breath.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>They found the kids playing in the backyard.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Harriet found Jim working in the garage.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE</td>
<td>I found the dog covered with mud.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>We found our car damaged beyond repair.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I found myself drained by the experience.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>THAT-CLAUSE</td>
<td>I found that there was no simple solution.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>We all find that we get tired more easily as we get older.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amy found that she liked living in Montana.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I find that the new job has its limitations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>WH-CLAUSE</td>
<td>We found what we had been looking for.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I never found why the computer failed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The police will find whoever did this.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>consider</td>
<td>OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN</td>
<td>I found him (to be) a poor listener.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The teacher found the class (to be) good students.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>They found the car (to be) a piece of junk.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE</td>
<td>I found myself (to be) upset with him.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>We found him (to be) amused at it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>They found the situation (to be) very satisfactory.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Present**

*I always finish my assignments on time.*

**Past**

*I just finished reading the news.*

**Future**

*He will finish whatever painting still needs to be done.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**finish**

**complete an activity/event**

*When will we finish?*

*The play finishes around 10:15.*

**come to an end**

*The boring meeting finished at 5 o'clock.*

**bring to an end, complete the play**

*We finished dinner around 9 o'clock.*

*Have the kids finished their homework?*

*We hope to finish our house before winter comes.*

**wh-clause**

*You must finish what you have begun.*

*He will finish whatever painting still needs to be done.*

**present participle**

*He has finished writing the report.*

*You can finish watching your program after dinner.*

*Have they finished eating dinner yet?*

**consume completely**

*The kids must finish their soup before they get dessert.*

**completely exhaust**

*The 5K run nearly finished me.*

**end a contest in a certain position**

*Our team finished third at the Science Fair.*

**apply a final coat of varnish/paint to**

*We'll finish the desk with urethane varnish.*

**ruin**

*His thoughtless remark finished his political career.*

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**finish off/up**

*We could finish off the last of the chocolate cake.*

*Finish up your spaghetti, kids.*

**finish with**

**stop being involved / dealing with**

*I am finished with local politicians.*

*She was finished with trying to please her neighbors.*

**stop using**

*I need the spatula when you finish with it.*

*I need the spatula when you're finished with it.*
PRESENT
I fire
you fire
he/she/it fires
* Press the starter until the engine fires.
we fire
you are firing
he/she/it is firing
* I am not firing anybody.

PAST
I fired
you fired
he/she/it fired
* The company fired several executives.
we fired
you were firing
he/she/it was firing
* They were firing automatic weapons.

PRESENT PERFECT
I have fired
we have fired
you have fired
* A gun was fired during the protest meeting.

Past Perfect
you had fired
he/she/it had fired

PAST PASSIVE
I was fired
we were fired
you were fired
they were fired

FUTURE
I will fire
we will fire
you will fire
* A gun fired, causing the crowd to panic.

FUTURE PERFECT
I will have fired
we will have fired
you will have fired

PAST PERFECT
I had fired
we had fired
you had fired
he/she/it had fired

COMPLEMENTS

**fire**
begin to burn

The dry grass quickly fired in the hot wind.
The boiler was firing and steam was being produced.

**fire**
discharge [of a weapon]

A gun fired, causing the crowd to panic.
Someone had fired a gun nearby.
The pilot fired his missiles at the enemy trucks.

**fire**
inspire, arouse

The poem fired my imagination.
Her example fired our lagging spirits.

**fire**
dismiss from a job/position

He fired the whole department.
They can't fire everyone, can they?
Three programmers were fired yesterday.
The candidate will fire whoever leaked the memo to the press.
He can fire whomever he wants to.

**fire**
write and send quickly

His assistant fired off 15 memos in one hour.

**fire**
fill with enthusiasm

His speech fired up the crowd, and they were ready to go.

**fire**
begin to operate

The engine fired up with a roar.
My wife fired up her laptop and checked e-mail.

**fire**
cause to begin to operate

The crew fired up the boilers and the ship got under way.
Gerry fired up the grill and barbecued pork steaks.

PHRASAL VERBS

**fire down/in/out/up/etc.**
shoot in a specified direction

The Confederates fired down from Lookout Mountain.
The commando raced to the window and fired in.
The sailors were firing away at the enemy ship.

**fire away**
shoot continuously

“I have three questions.” “Fire away!”

**fire away**
speak without hesitation

When the enemy opens fire, you can fire back.
The policeman fired back at the robber.

**fire back**
shoot (at [someone who shot first])

His assistant fired off 15 memos in one hour.

**fire off**
write and send quickly

His speech fired up the crowd, and they were ready to go.

**fire up**
fill with enthusiasm

The engine fired up with a roar.

**fire up**
begin to operate

My wife fired up her laptop and checked e-mail.

**fire up**
cause to begin to operate

The crew fired up the boilers and the ship got under way.

**fire up**
cause to burn

Gerry fired up the grill and barbecued pork steaks.
fit | fits · fit · have fit
fit | fits · fitted · have fitted

**PRESENT**
I fit we fit
you fit you fit
he/she/it fits they fit

* The theory fits all the facts.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am fitting we are fitting
you are fitting you are fitting
he/she/it is fitting they are fitting

* I am fitting them in as best I can.

**PAST**
I fit/fitted we fit/fitted
you fit/fitted you fit/fitted
he/she/it fit/fitted they fit/fitted

* We fit eight people at the table before.

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was fit/fitted we were fit/fitted
you were fit/fitted you were fit/fitted
he/she/it was fit/fitted they were fit/fitted

* He was fitted for a new suit.

**FUTURE**
... have | has fit/fitted

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
... will fit

**FUTURE PERFECT**
... will have fit/fitted

**COMPLEMENTS**

**note**: For the following six meanings, *fit* is not used in the progressive tenses.

**fit**
be the right size and shape

---
The sweater fits perfectly.
Will the new rug fit in the living room?

**fit**
be accommodated

---
How many students can fit in a phone booth?
These bags won't fit in the dumpster.

**fit**
be the right size and shape for
OBJECT

---
The new suit fits **me** perfectly.
The old frame won't fit **the new picture**.

**fit**
be appropriate/suitable for
OBJECT

---
Your hat fits **the rest of your outfit**.
The class fits **my schedule** pretty well.
The punishment must fit **the crime**.

**fit**
accommodate
OBJECT

---
Can we fit **24 children** in the classroom?

**fit**
manage to insert
OBJECT

---
We can fit **four skeins of yarn** in this box.

**NOTE**: For the following four meanings, *fit* may be used in the progressive tenses.

**fit**
adjust to the right size and shape
OBJECT

---
You need to fit **the rug** to the room.

**fit**
measure for the right size
OBJECT

---
The tailor is fitting **Dad** for a new suit.
Dad was fitted for a new suit.

**fit**
make appropriate/suitable
OBJECT + to OBJECT

---
Does a songwriter fit **words to music** or **music to words**?

**fit**
supply, equip
OBJECT + with OBJECT

---
The shipyard will fit **the boat with everything it needs**.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**fit in**
be in accord/harmony

---
Our new neighbors fit in just fine.

**fit**
sep in provide a place for
OBJECT

---
The hostess will fit the two unexpected guests in.
Present Present Progressive
I fix we fix you fix you fix he/she/it fixes they fix
  * He fixes all of our computers.

Past Past Progressive
I fixed we fixed you fixed you fixed he/she/it fixed they fixed
  * We fixed the date for the meeting.

Present Perfect Present Perfect
... have | has fixed
Past Perfect Past Perfect
... had fixed

Past Passive
I was fixed we were fixed you were fixed you were fixed
  * The location was fixed by GPS.

fix repair, mend
OBJECT

fix make stable
OBJECT

fix direct and hold, focus
OBJECT

fix determine, establish
OBJECT

fix attach
OBJECT

fix put in order, adjust
OBJECT

fix prepare [food/drink]
OBJECT

fix neuter [an animal]
OBJECT

fix illegally influence the outcome of a contest
OBJECT

fix get even with, punish
OBJECT

COMPLEMENTS

fix | fixes · fixed · have fixed

Only the dealer can fix your car.
We will try to fix our relationship.

I fixed the mailbox post in concrete.
To prevent earthquake damage, fix all bookcases to the wall.

I fixed my eyes on the blurry image.
We fixed the telescope on the distant image.
She fixed me with an icy stare.

The committee will fix the blame for this mess.
They will fix the agenda for the hearing.
The amount of damage cannot be fixed yet.

The pharmacist fixed a label to the bottle.

We're late, and Joan is still fixing her hair.

I am fixing lunch now.
I will fix a salad for the picnic.
Can I fix you a martini?
Can I fix a martini for you?

Most cities have a program to fix dogs and cats for free.
Our cat has already been fixed.

The mob fixed all the boxing matches.
Elections have been fixed before.

Bert stole all our turnips. We'll fix him!
PRESENT
I flee we flee
you flee you flee
he/she/it flees they flee

* Everyone flees from imminent danger.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am fleeing we are fleeing
you are fleeing you are fleeing
he/she/it is fleeing they are fleeing

* They are fleeing as fast as they can.

PAST
I fled we fled
you fled you fled
he/she/it fled they fled

* I never fled from a fight.

PAST PASSIVE
Flee is rarely used in the passive voice.

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fled
PAST PERFECT ... had fled

PAST PROGRESSIVE
I was fleeing we were fleeing
you were fleeing you were fleeing
he/she/it was fleeing they were fleeing

* The animals were fleeing from the forest fire.

FUTURE
... will flee
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be fleeing
FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fled

COMPLEMENTS
flee move/run away from danger/
unpleasantness, escape

The fish fled when my shadow fell across
the pond.
The deer fled when they heard the shot.
The birds fled before the coming storm.
The refugees fled into the woods.
The soldiers were fleeing back into the trenches.
The reporters had fled to the press bar.
Civilians were fleeing from the rampaging soldiers.

flee move away swiftly, vanish

The moon fled behind the clouds.
The ghostly shape fled from view.
Our shadows fled before us.

flee _____ run away from
(from) OBJECT

The survivors quickly fled (from) the scene of the explosion.
The reporters fled (from) the room when the senator began
his lengthy speech.
The entire city fled (from) the rapidly rising floodwaters.
The animals fled (from) the burning barn.
I fled (from) the noisy, overcrowded arena.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I fling you fling he/she/it flings we fling you fling he/she/it is flinging you are flinging they are flinging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* She flings her hair back if she's angry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am flinging you are flinging he/she/it is flinging they are flinging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The dog is flinging dirt everywhere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I flung you flung he/she/it flung they flung we flung you flung he/she/it was flinging they were flinging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* He flung his clothes all over room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was flung you were flung he/she/it was flung they were flung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The kids were flinging toys out the car window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>… have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>… had flung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was flung we were flung you were flung he/she/it was flung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The protesters were flung into police vans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we were flung you were flung they were flung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**fling**

- **move suddenly, scatter**
  - **ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
    - Roberta flung **out of the room**.
    - The leaves were flinging **all over the lawn**.

- **throw recklessly**
  - **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
    - The kids had flung **their books everywhere**.
    - I flung **myself onto the sofa**.
    - The rioters had flung **the furniture in every direction**.
    - The wind was flinging **my raked leaves all over the lawn**.

- **cast, throw**
  - **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
    - He flung a **rope over a tree limb**.
    - The cadets will fling **their caps into the air**.
    - I flung a **blanket over the shivering children**.
    - The fisherman is flinging **his net into the pond**.
    - The guards flung **him into an empty cell**.
    - The reporter flung **his shoe at the president**.

- **devote oneself entirely to**
  - **REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + INTO OBJECT**
    - I flung **myself into jazz**.
    - We flung **ourselves into the social scene**.
    - Freshmen tend to fling **themselves into too many activities**.
    - Frank flung **himself into his work**.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- **fling SEP around/aside/away/down/in/off/out/up/etc. throw in a specified direction**
  - The burglar flung away his loot as soon as he saw the cop.
  - Bill opened the car door and flung his jacket in.

**EXPRESSIONS**

- **fling caution to the wind**
  - **take a serious risk**
    - Harry flung caution to the wind and jumped into the lake with all his clothes on.

- **fling [one's] head back**
  - **tilt one's head back suddenly**
    - Don flung his head back and laughed.

- **fling (up) in [someone's] face**
  - **confront [someone] with**
    - She flung his extramarital affairs up in his face.
flow | flows · flowed · have flowed

**PRESENT**

I flow  
you flow  
he/she/it flows  
we flow  
you flow  
they flow

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am flowing  
you are flowing  
he/she/it is flowing  
we are flowing  
you are flowing  
they are flowing

* The river flows south from here.

**PAST**

I flowed  
you flowed  
he/she/it flowed  
we flowed  
you flowed  
they flowed

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was flowing  
you were flowing  
he/she/it was flowing  
we were flowing  
you were flowing  
they were flowing

* The stream flowed into the lake.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has flowed

**PAST PERFECT**

... had flowed

**FUTURE**

... will flow

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**

... will be flowing

**FUTURE PERFECT**

... will have flowed

**PAST PASSIVE**

* Flow is rarely used in the passive voice.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**flow move freely**

- The river eventually flows into the Mississippi.
- The clogged drain was finally beginning to flow.
- The stream was flowing over the little dam.
- Cold air was flowing in through the open window.
- The wine was flowing freely.
- Money was flowing out of the company like water.
- The guests flowed easily from one room to another.

**flow proceed smoothly**

- Mozart wanted his music to “flow like oil.”
- The conversation flowed around the table.
- The wonderful smell of baking flowed throughout the house.
- Ideas flowed easily at the conference.

**flow hang loosely**

- Legolas’s long blond hair flowed across his shoulders and down his back.

**flow come from as a source**

- The spring flowed from a crack in the rocks.
- Wealth flows from trade.
- Blood was flowing from the boxer's nose.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**flow away/in/out/etc. flow**

- People flowed away from the mall at closing time.
- The tide flowed in and out.

---

**flow in a specified direction**

- The river flows south from here.
- The water is flowing into the drain.
- The stream flowed into the lake.
- Money was flowing into his campaign.
### fly | flies · flew · have flown

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>I fly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>you fly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>flies</td>
<td>he/she/it flies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Cathy flies to New York once a month.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am flying</td>
<td>I am flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are flying</td>
<td>you are flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is flying</td>
<td>he/she/it is flying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I am flying back tonight.

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>I flew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>you flew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>he/she/it flew</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I never flew in such a small plane before.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was flying</td>
<td>I was flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were flying</td>
<td>you were flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was flying</td>
<td>he/she/it was flying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The kids were flying kites in the park.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have flown</td>
<td>I have flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have flown</td>
<td>you have flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>have flown</td>
<td>he/she/it have flown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was flown</td>
<td>I was flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>was flown</td>
<td>you was flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was flown</td>
<td>he/she/it was flown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The flags were flown at half-mast.

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>were flown</td>
<td>I was flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were flown</td>
<td>you were flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>were flown</td>
<td>he/she/it were flown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

- fly move through the air
  - My hat flew into the air.
  - The birds flew around us, screeching and squawking.
  - The plane was flying at 36,000 feet.

- fly travel by aircraft
  - Amelia Earhart was the first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic.
  - When are you flying to Paris?
  - Whoever thought that we could fly to the moon?

- fly wave/float in the air
  - Flags were flying in the breeze.
  - His shirttail was flying in the wind as he ran down the hill.

- fly move/spread/go/pass quickly
  - The wood chips flew as the chain saw bit into the log.
  - The door flew open, and in walked Grandmother.
  - Rumors were flying everywhere.
  - I'm already late for the meeting; I have to fly.
  - My, how time flies.

- fly win acceptance
  - His proposal will never fly with the voters.

- fly _____ pilot / travel in [an aircraft]
  - My grandfather flew fighter planes in World War II.

- fly _____ transport by aircraft
  - We flew the children to England, where they would be safe.

- fly _____ cause to move through the air
  - Didn't you fly paper airplanes when you were a kid?

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- fly away/back/down/in/out/over/up/etc. fly in a specified direction
  - The robin flew down from its nest.
  - The planes flew over in formation.

- fly by go quickly past
  - Did you see the wild geese fly by, heading home again?
  - January really flew by.

- fly off come off suddenly
  - The truck's wheel flew off and hit Kathy's car.
### follow

**follow** | **follows** · **followed** · **have followed**

**Regular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>we follow</strong></th>
<th><strong>you follow</strong></th>
<th><strong>he/she/it follows</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td>I follow</td>
<td>you follow</td>
<td>he/she/it follows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>you follow</td>
<td>you follow</td>
<td>they follow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The students never follow my advice.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>we are following</strong></th>
<th><strong>you are following</strong></th>
<th><strong>he/she/it is following</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td>I am following</td>
<td>you are following</td>
<td>he/she/it is following</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>you are following</td>
<td>you are following</td>
<td>they are following</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I'm not following what you mean.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th><strong>we followed</strong></th>
<th><strong>you followed</strong></th>
<th><strong>he/she/it followed</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td>I followed</td>
<td>you followed</td>
<td>he/she/it followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>you followed</td>
<td>you followed</td>
<td>they followed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The press followed his every move.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
<th><strong>I have followed</strong></th>
<th><strong>you followed</strong></th>
<th><strong>he/she/it followed</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td>I followed</td>
<td>you followed</td>
<td>he/she/it followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>you followed</td>
<td>you followed</td>
<td>they followed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>we were followed</strong></th>
<th><strong>you were followed</strong></th>
<th><strong>he/she/it was followed</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td>I was followed</td>
<td>you were followed</td>
<td>he/she/it was followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>you were followed</td>
<td>you were followed</td>
<td>they were followed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The meeting was followed by a reception.*

### COMPLEMENTS

- **follow come/go after/behind**
  - Go ahead. I will follow.
  - When winter comes, spring will follow.

- **follow occur as a result**
  - After a major forest fire, extensive erosion always follows.
  - When there is no planning, disaster will follow.

- **follow _____ come/go after/behind**
  - Night follows day.
  - We followed the guide to the waterfall.
  - Police followed the suspects to their home.

- **follow _____ occur as a result of**
  - Success follows hard work.
  - A big celebration followed her election victory.

- **follow _____ obey, be guided by**
  - I was only following orders.
  - You didn't follow the manual.
  - You must follow what you believe.
  - He will follow whatever advice you give him.

- **follow _____ understand**
  - Go ahead. I'm following you so far.
  - We followed his explanations pretty well.
  - I followed what he was saying.

- **follow _____ pay close attention to**
  - She follows every move the teacher makes.
  - I don't follow college basketball.
  - We have followed Senator Blather's career with interest.

- **follow _____ move forward on**
  - Follow Highway 155 for seven miles.

### PHRASAL VERBS

- **follow _____ down/in/out/up/etc.**
  - The dog followed Zack down to the village.
  - The chairman followed me out and congratulated me.

- **follow through/up (on _____)**
  - My secretary will follow through on the woman's request.
  - The police followed up on several leads.

- **follow in a specified direction**

- **follow out more about, complete [a task]**
### forbid | forbids · forbade · have forbidden

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>I forbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>you forbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>forbids</td>
<td>he/she/it forbids</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The law forbids the sale of handguns.

#### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am forbidding</td>
<td>I am forbidding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are forbidding</td>
<td>you are forbidding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is forbidding</td>
<td>he/she/it is forbidding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Sally's mother is forbidding any more parties.

#### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>forbade</td>
<td>I forbade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>forbade</td>
<td>you forbade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>forbade</td>
<td>he/she/it forbade</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The police forbade parking on the street.

#### PAST PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was forbidding</td>
<td>I was forbidding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were forbidding</td>
<td>you were forbidding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was forbidding</td>
<td>he/she/it was forbidding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The department was forbidding fishing in the area.

#### PRESENT PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>I have forbidden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>I had forbidden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was forbidden</td>
<td>I was forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were forbidden</td>
<td>you were forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was forbidden</td>
<td>he/she/it was forbidden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The lawyers were forbidden to talk to the press.

### COMPLEMENTS

**forbid**  
prohibit, not allow

**OBJECT**

The law forbids **the sale of alcohol to minors**.

Most religions forbid **marriage between close relatives**.

My parents forbid **books at the dinner table**.

Lack of time forbids **further explanation**.

Campfires are forbidden in this area.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

I forbid **you to talk to me like that**.

Some churches forbid **priests to marry**.

Jane’s mother forbade **her to go to the party**.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

The new law forbids **smoking in public places**.

The rules of soccer forbid **tripping an opponent**.

My mother forbids **watching TV before finishing homework**.

Space forbids **covering all the issues**.

**PASSIVE**

Using a cell phone in class is strictly forbidden.

### EXPRESSIONS

**God/Heaven forbid!** I hope it will not happen.

God forbid that Mark should fall asleep and have an accident.

“Your ex-boyfriend is coming to the party.”

“Heaven forbid!”
### force

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form 1</th>
<th>Verb Form 2</th>
<th>Verb Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>force</td>
<td>we force</td>
<td>forces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>force</td>
<td>you force</td>
<td>force</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>forces</td>
<td>they force</td>
<td>force</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*His silliness always forces me to smile.*

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form 1</th>
<th>Verb Form 2</th>
<th>Verb Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>forced</td>
<td>we forced</td>
<td>forced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>forced</td>
<td>you forced</td>
<td>forced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>forced</td>
<td>they forced</td>
<td>forced</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We forced them to apologize.*

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form 1</th>
<th>Verb Form 2</th>
<th>Verb Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>has forced</td>
<td>forced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>has forced</td>
<td>forced</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form 1</th>
<th>Verb Form 2</th>
<th>Verb Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will force</td>
<td>must force</td>
<td>will force</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will force</td>
<td>must force</td>
<td>will force</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The wind is forcing the boat off course.*

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form 1</th>
<th>Verb Form 2</th>
<th>Verb Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was forcing</td>
<td>we were forcing</td>
<td>were forcing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were forcing</td>
<td>you were forcing</td>
<td>were forcing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was forcing</td>
<td>they were forcing</td>
<td>were forcing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I was forcing myself to stay awake.*

**Future Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form 1</th>
<th>Verb Form 2</th>
<th>Verb Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will be forcing</td>
<td>must be forcing</td>
<td>will be forcing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will be forcing</td>
<td>must be forcing</td>
<td>will be forcing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form 1</th>
<th>Verb Form 2</th>
<th>Verb Form 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was forced</td>
<td>we were forced</td>
<td>were forced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were forced</td>
<td>you were forced</td>
<td>were forced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was forced</td>
<td>they were forced</td>
<td>were forced</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The door was forced open.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**force ______ move/open/break using effort**

**Object**

*My husband forced the desk through the doorway.*

*We forced three more candles into the box.*

*The soldiers forced the door.*

*I had to force the lock on the desk.*

*The president forced the legislation through Congress.*

**force ______ produce/cause/compel**

**Object**

*I finally forced a smile from her mother.*

*The police forced a confession from the murderer.*

*The police forced the assailant to his knees.*

*The coach forced a faster pace.*

*I forced him to admit his mistake.*

*We forced the window to stay open.*

*The storm forced us to turn back.*

*My grades forced me to study harder.*

*The army was forced to retreat.*

**force ______ cause**

**Object**

*The fourth-quarter touchdown forced overtime.*

*His statement forced a murmur throughout the audience.*

*The defeat forced a cease-fire between the armies.*

*Heavy snow is forcing delays at the airport.*

### PHRASAL VERBS

**force ______ back/down/in/out/up/etc.**

*cause to move in a specified direction*

*The farmer forced the cows back into the barn.*

*The bad economic news forced the stock market down.*

*Peggy forced the medicine down.*

*We forced our way in.*

###  EXPRESSIONS

**force [someone's] hand**

*cause [someone] to act prematurely/unwillingly*

*The journalist didn't want to reveal her sources, but the judge forced her hand.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>FIRST SINGULAR</th>
<th>SECOND SINGULAR</th>
<th>THIRD SINGULAR</th>
<th>OBJECT PLURAL</th>
<th>HYPOTHETICAL TENSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td>I forget</td>
<td>you forget</td>
<td>he/she/it forgets</td>
<td>they forget</td>
<td>I am forgetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>I am forgetting</td>
<td>you are forgetting</td>
<td>he/she/it is forgetting</td>
<td>they are forgetting</td>
<td>I’m always forgetting something.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>I forgot</td>
<td>we forgot</td>
<td>you forgot</td>
<td>you forgot</td>
<td>he/she/it forgot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>I was forgetting</td>
<td>we were forgetting</td>
<td>you were forgetting</td>
<td>you were forgetting</td>
<td>he/she/it was forgetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PERFECT</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has forgotten</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has forgotten</td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PERFECT</td>
<td>... had forgotten</td>
<td>... had forgotten</td>
<td>... had forgotten</td>
<td>... had forgotten</td>
<td>... had forgotten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IRREGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>FIRST SINGULAR</th>
<th>SECOND SINGULAR</th>
<th>THIRD SINGULAR</th>
<th>OBJECT PLURAL</th>
<th>HYPOTHETICAL TENSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td>I was forgotten</td>
<td>we were forgotten</td>
<td>you were forgotten</td>
<td>you were forgotten</td>
<td>he/she/it was forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PASSIVE</td>
<td>The incident certainly wasn't forgotten.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**forget** fail to remember

- Don’t forget!
- He never forgets.
- They won’t forget, will they?

**forget _____ fail to remember**

**OBJECT**

- I forgot his e-mail address.
- You must never forget your password.
- Don’t forget the flowers.

**INFINITIVE**

- I forgot to water the plants.
- Don’t forget to run the dishwasher.
- The kids always forget to hang their coats up.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

- We forgot that we were having dinner with the Smiths tonight.
- I forgot that the meeting had been canceled.
- She forgot that she had to pick up the cat at the vet.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- I forgot what I was about to say.
- He forgot where he had put his car keys.
- I will never forget where we stayed in Florida.

**WH-INFINITIVE**

- The author forgot where to put the quote marks.
- I forget how to change my password.
- I can’t forget taking her to the hospital.
- He won’t soon forget doing that.
- Did he forget running into a tree?

**forget _____ leave behind**

**OBJECT**

- Darn it. I forgot my briefcase.
- Don’t forget your hat when you leave.
- People always forget things when they get off the plane.

**forget _____ neglect, disregard**

**(about) OBJECT**

- Don’t forget (about) your friends when you send holiday cards.
- Sam forgot (about) the ice cream in the trunk.

**EXPRESSIONS**

Forget it! Disregard it.

- “Do I have to clean the bathroom?”
- “Forget it! I’ll do it myself.”

**forget [oneself] lose one’s temper**

- Peter forgot himself and cursed in front of the principal.
**forgive**  
**Irregular**

### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>I forgive anything his daughter does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>You forgive him for forgetting my birthday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>forgives</td>
<td>He is forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are forgiving</td>
<td>We were always forgiving my mistakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are forgiving</td>
<td>You were forgiven for making such a mistake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is forgiving</td>
<td>They were always forgiving my mistakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are forgiving</td>
<td>They were always forgiving my mistakes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>I forgave him for forgetting my birthday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>They were always forgiving my mistakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>He forgives anything his daughter does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>We were always forgiving my mistakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>You were forgiven for making such a mistake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>They were always forgiving my mistakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>They were always forgiving my mistakes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have forgiven</td>
<td>I have forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have forgiven</td>
<td>You have forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has forgiven</td>
<td>He has forgiven for his thoughtless remark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>have forgiven</td>
<td>We have forgiven for this interruption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have forgiven</td>
<td>You have forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has forgiven</td>
<td>He has forgiven for his thoughtless remark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>have forgiven</td>
<td>They have forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had forgiven</td>
<td>I had forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>had forgiven</td>
<td>You had forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>had forgiven</td>
<td>He had forgiven for his thoughtless remark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>had forgiven</td>
<td>We had forgiven for this interruption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>had forgiven</td>
<td>You had forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>had forgiven</td>
<td>He had forgiven for his thoughtless remark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>had forgiven</td>
<td>They had forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am forgiving</td>
<td>I am forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are forgiving</td>
<td>You are forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is forgiving</td>
<td>He is forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are forgiving</td>
<td>We are forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are forgiving</td>
<td>You are forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>are forgiving</td>
<td>He is forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are forgiving</td>
<td>They are forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was forgiving</td>
<td>I was forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were forgiving</td>
<td>You were forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was forgiving</td>
<td>He was forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>were forgiving</td>
<td>We were forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were forgiving</td>
<td>You were forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>were forgiving</td>
<td>He was forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>were forgiving</td>
<td>They were forgiving part of their debt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will forgive</td>
<td>I will forgive for his thoughtless remark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will forgive</td>
<td>You will forgive for being so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will forgive</td>
<td>He will forgive for his thoughtless remark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>will forgive</td>
<td>We will forgive for this interruption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will forgive</td>
<td>You will forgive for being so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will forgive</td>
<td>He will forgive for his thoughtless remark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>will forgive</td>
<td>They will forgive for being so late.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have forgiven</td>
<td>I will have forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will have forgiven</td>
<td>You will have forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will have forgiven</td>
<td>He will have forgiven for his thoughtless remark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>will have forgiven</td>
<td>We will have forgiven for this interruption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will have forgiven</td>
<td>You will have forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will have forgiven</td>
<td>He will have forgiven for his thoughtless remark.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>will have forgiven</td>
<td>They will have forgiven for being so late.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was forgiven</td>
<td>I was forgiven for making such a mistake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were forgiven</td>
<td>You were forgiven for making such a mistake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was forgiven</td>
<td>He was forgiven for making such a mistake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>were forgiven</td>
<td>We were forgiven for making such a mistake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were forgiven</td>
<td>You were forgiven for making such a mistake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>were forgiven</td>
<td>He was forgiven for making such a mistake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>were forgiven</td>
<td>They were forgiven for making such a mistake.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**Forgive**  
- pardon  
- excuse, pardon, stop feeling angry/punitive about/toward

**Passive**  
- object
- object + for object
- object + for present participle

**Object**  
- cancel payment of [a debt]

### Expressions

**Forgive and forget.**  
[Proverb]  
Pardon an offense, and forget it ever happened.

You could punish him forever—or just forgive and forget.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
<th>Progressive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>form</td>
<td>I am forming</td>
<td>I am forming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>form</td>
<td>you are forming</td>
<td>you are forming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>forms</td>
<td>he/she/it is forming</td>
<td>they are forming</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **A river forms the state's eastern boundary.**
- **The data is forming a pattern.**

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
<th>Progressive Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>formed</td>
<td>I was forming</td>
<td>I was forming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>formed</td>
<td>you were forming</td>
<td>you were forming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>formed</td>
<td>he/she/it was forming</td>
<td>they were forming</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **They formed a new company.**
- **Clouds were forming above the mountains.**

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>formed</td>
<td>I have formed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>formed</td>
<td>you have formed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **I was formed into a line.**
- **The soldiers were quickly formed into battlelines.**

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>formed</td>
<td>I was formed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>formed</td>
<td>you were formed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **The soldiers were quickly formed into a line.**
- **When you look at any game of chance, patterns form real or not.**

### COMPLEMENTS

- **form** *assume a definite shape/structure*  
  - An idea slowly formed in my mind.
  - Tornadoes were forming along the storm front.
  - The soldiers quickly formed into battlelines.
  - When you look at any game of chance, patterns form real or not.

- **form** *give a definite shape/structure to*  
  - Form the dough into a small ball.
  - The captain formed the men into an effective fighting force.
  - The workers formed the mud into adobe bricks.

- **form** *create*  
  - My buddies and I formed a motorcycle club.
  - If you arrange the pieces in a certain way, they form a picture.

- **form** *make up, constitute*  
  - The first ten amendments form the Bill of Rights.
  - Greek and Roman statues form the core of the museum collection.
  - The “-ed” ending forms the regular past tense in English.
  - These three stars form Orion’s belt.

- **form** *develop*  
  - A good education forms the mind.
  - As a child, I formed good study habits.
freeze

**freeze**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>We are freezing</td>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>They are freezing</td>
<td>The muddy roads would soon freeze.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>They were freezing</td>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>They were freezing</td>
<td>The river all froze that dreadful winter.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>We have frozen</td>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>We have frozen</td>
<td>The weatherman says it will freeze tonight.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>They had frozen</td>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>They had frozen</td>
<td>The mountain climbers nearly froze to death.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>We were frozen</td>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>They were frozen</td>
<td>The rabbits froze when they heard the hawk.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>We will freeze</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>We will freeze</td>
<td>We froze a couple of trays of ice.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Progressive</td>
<td>We will be freezing</td>
<td>Future Progressive</td>
<td>We will be freezing</td>
<td>The cold snap froze our garden hoses.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>We will have frozen</td>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>We will have frozen</td>
<td>The wind was freezing my fingers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>complements</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>Harden into ice, become solid due to cold</td>
<td>The muddy roads would soon freeze.</td>
<td>The rivers all froze that dreadful winter.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>Become uncomfortably/dangerously cold</td>
<td>Put on a hat or your ears will freeze.</td>
<td>Turn up the heat; the room is freezing.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>Be at or below 32º Fahrenheit</td>
<td>The weatherman says it will freeze tonight.</td>
<td>The mountain climbers nearly froze to death.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>Be preserved in a very cold place</td>
<td>Girl Scout cookies freeze well.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>Become motionless</td>
<td>The rabbits froze when they heard the hawk.</td>
<td>His face froze when he heard us coming.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>Be damaged/destroyed by frost</td>
<td>My petunias all froze last night.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze <strong>object</strong></td>
<td>Cause (the contents of) to harden into ice or other solid</td>
<td>We froze a couple of trays of ice.</td>
<td>The cold snap froze our garden hoses.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze <strong>object</strong></td>
<td>Chill, make uncomfortably/dangerously cold</td>
<td>The wind was freezing my fingers.</td>
<td>The driving rain froze the crowd watching the game.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze <strong>object</strong></td>
<td>Preserve in a very cold place</td>
<td>We can freeze the leftover vegetable soup.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze <strong>object</strong></td>
<td>Cause to become motionless</td>
<td>The shout froze everyone in the store.</td>
<td>The peace agreement froze the armies in place.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze <strong>object</strong></td>
<td>Fix at a certain level</td>
<td>The accident froze traffic for hours.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze over</td>
<td>Become covered with ice</td>
<td>The Federal Reserve froze the interest rate today.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze up</td>
<td>Stop functioning</td>
<td>The government froze foreign assets today.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Phraseal Verbs**

freeze over

become covered with ice

The lake froze over, and we went ice skating.

freeze up

stop functioning

I just freeze up when I have to talk to a group of people.
If there is a power surge, my computer completely freezes up.
Present Present Progressive
I frighten you frighten he/she/it frightens you are frightening they are frightening
* That costume frightens me.
Past Past Progressive
I frightened you frightened he/she/it frightened you were frightening they were frightening
* The storm frightened the animals.

Present Perfect Future
Present Perfect ... have | has frightened
Future Perfect ... will have frightened

Past Perfect Future Progressive
Past Perfect ... had frightened
Future Progressive ... will be frightening

Past Passive
Past Passive
I was frightened you were frightened he/she/it was frightened they were frightened
* All of us were frightened by the earthquake.

COMPLEMENTS

frighten become scared
Harry frightens easily.
Investors frighten at any unexpected bad news.
The horses will frighten if you do that.

frighten _____ scare
OBJECT
Icy roads frighten me.
The rumors frightened the whole city.
His accident frightened all of us.
The CEO’s strange actions frightened the shareholders.
“I don’t know what effect these men will have upon the enemy, but, by God, they frighten me.” [DUKE OF WELLINGTON]
We were frightened by what he said.

frighten _____ force by scaring
OBJECT + into OBJECT
The police frightened him into a confession.
The police frightened him into confessing.
The weather forecast frightened us into canceling our trip.
The bad economic news frightened me into selling my stock in the company.
I was frightened into cooperating with them.

frighten _____ prevent by scaring
OBJECT + out of PRESENT PARTICIPLE
The crime reports frightened my neighbors out of going downtown.

PHRASAL VERBS

frighten ____ away/off cause to go/stay away by scaring
Our dog frightened the burglar away.
We were frightened off by the unruly Mardi Gras crowd.

frighten ____ to death scare badly
His costume frightened me to death.
**PRESENT**

I furnish  
you furnish  
he/she/it furnishes  

We furnish  
you furnish  
they furnish  

> The hotel furnishes beach towels.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am furnishing  
you are furnishing  
he/she/it is furnishing  

We are furnishing  
you are furnishing  
they are furnishing  

> We are furnishing everything free of charge.

**PAST**

I furnished  
you furnished  
he/she/it furnished  

We furnished  
you furnished  
they furnished  

> They furnished the suite quite nicely.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was furnishing  
you were furnishing  
he/she/it was furnishing  

We were furnishing  
you were furnishing  
they were furnishing  

> They were furnishing information about the victims.

**PRESENT PERFECT**  ... have | has furnished

**PAST PERFECT**  ... had furnished

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was furnished  
you were furnished  
he/she/it was furnished  

We were furnished  
you were furnished  
they were furnished  

> The stables were furnished with clean straw.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**furnish**

**OBJECT**

provide, supply

We furnished **everything they needed**.

Our company furnished **the computers and printers**.

The landscapers furnished **all the flowers and trees**.

The table decorations were furnished by the host committee.

**PASSIVE**

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

The government furnished **him a new identity**.

The car rental agency furnished **us an SUV**.

He furnished **the police a solid alibi**.

The government furnished **a new identity for him**.

The car rental agency furnished **an SUV for us**.

He furnished **a solid alibi for the police**.

**for PARAPHRASE**

The government furnished **a new identity for him**.

The car rental agency furnished **an SUV for us**.

He furnished **a solid alibi for the police**.

**furnish**

**OBJECT**

provide furniture for

They furnished **the room** with everything.

An interior decorator furnished **the model house**.

The guest cottage is completely furnished.
Present Progressive
I am gaining
you are gaining
he/she/it is gaining
→ We are gaining on them.

Past Progressive
I was gaining
you were gaining
he/she/it was gaining
→ The baby was gaining weight normally.

Future
... will gain
Future Progressive
... will be gaining
Future Perfect
... will have gained

Past Passive
it was gained
they were gained
→ His fortune was gained in commodities trading.

COMPLEMENTS

gain benefit
ADVERB OF MANNER
Barney will gain politically from redistricting.
Kenny gained career-wise from interning with an ad agency.
Peter gained in maturity by joining the Peace Corps.
Bertha gained in wisdom and experience.

gain increase
ADVERB OF MANNER
The market has gained steadily over the last week.
My art collection has gained in value every year.
I can gain weight just by looking at a package of cookies.
The hurricane gained strength as it approached land.
The Dow gained two percent today.
The company needs to gain market share.

gain get as an increase/advantage
OBJECT
We will gain half an hour by taking the shortcut.
You gain time when you fly westward.
We can gain six inches by moving the cabinet over.
He gained a few seconds on us every time we circled the track.

gain acquire, earn, win
OBJECT
They gained control of the company.
She gained friends easily.
The attack gained the high ground.
We hope to gain recognition with lots of TV commercials.
His argument gained a number of followers.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
His speech gained him a large following.
The treaty gained us several important trade concessions.
The deal gained the company a lot of publicity.

for PARAPHRASE
His speech gained a large following for him.
The treaty gained several important trade concessions for us.
The deal gained a lot of publicity for the company.

PHRASAL VERBS

gain on catch up to
The yellow car was gaining on us rapidly.

PAST
I gained
you gained
he/she/it gained
→ I gained six pounds over the holidays.

PRESENT
I gain
you gain
he/she/it gains
→ My watch gains three minutes a day.

PRESENT PERFECT... have | has gained
I have gained
you have gained
he/she/it has gained

PAST PERFECT... have | has gained
I was gaining
you were gaining
he/she/it was gaining

PAST
I gained
you gained
he/she/it gained
→ My watch gains three minutes a day.
### 225 **gather**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I gather \hspace{1em} we gather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you gather \hspace{1em} you gather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it gathers \hspace{1em} they gather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I gather that there is a problem.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I gathered \hspace{1em} we gathered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you gathered \hspace{1em} you gathered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it gathered \hspace{1em} they gathered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The soldiers gathered their gear.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I am gathering \hspace{1em} we are gathering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are gathering \hspace{1em} you are gathering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is gathering \hspace{1em} they are gathering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I am gathering them together now.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I was gathering \hspace{1em} we were gathering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were gathering \hspace{1em} you were gathering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was gathering \hspace{1em} they were gathering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>He was gathering wild mushrooms for restaurants.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have \hspace{1em} has gathered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had gathered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td>I was gathered \hspace{1em} we were gathered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were gathered \hspace{1em} you were gathered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was gathered \hspace{1em} they were gathered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The blanket was gathered about the baby.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>... will gather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Progressive</strong></td>
<td>... will be gathering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... will have gathered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**gather** cluster, come together

Clouds were gathering in the west.
A mob was gathering in front of the gate.
A worldwide economic crisis was gathering.
The hungry cows gathered along the fence.
At sunset the birds all gather in the trees.

**gather _____ collect, bring together**

**OBJECT**

She was out gathering flowers.
I gathered the children around me.
He tried to gather his scattered thoughts.
His collection of rare books was just gathering dust in the basement.
I tried to gather my courage.
They gathered what provisions they still had.
The bus gathered whoever wanted to go on the field trip.
Rescuers gathered whatever survivors they could find.

**gather _____ gain gradually**

**OBJECT**

The truck gathered speed on the open highway.
The proposal had gathered a lot of support.

**gather _____ conclude**

**THAT-CLAUSE**

They gathered that the young couple wanted to be left alone.
We gathered that the trip to London was off.
I gather that the meeting wasn’t a great success.

**gather _____ pull/fold together**

**OBJECT**

We gathered our cloaks about us tightly.
She gathered her hair into a tight bun.
I gathered the cloth and stitched it.
The sailors gathered the sails.
Present Present Progressive
I get you get he/she/it gets
you get you get they get
he/she/it gets they get
* He gets to sleep late on weekends.

Past Past Progressive
I got you got he/she/it got
you got you got they got
he/she/it got they got
* We got good feedback on the proposal.

Present Perfect Future
PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has got/gotten
I have got you have got he/she/it has got
you have got you have got they have got
he/she/it has got they have got

Past Perfect Future Progressive
PAST PERFECT ... have got/gotten
I was got you were got he/she/it was got
you were got you were got they were got
he/she/it was got they were got
* Permission was gotten from the authorities.

Future Future Perfect
FUTURE ... will get
I will get you will get he/she/it will get
you will get you will get they will get
he/she/it will get they will get

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have got/gotten
I will have got you will have got he/she/it will have got
you will have got you will have got they will have got
he/she/it will have got they will have got

Note: Get is also used as a helping verb to form the passive voice.

Get + Past Participle
The burglar got caught by police.
I got injured playing football.
Bobby got sent to the principal’s office.
We’ll get married in October.

Get ____ receive, obtain
OBJECT
They got permission to leave early.
I got a “B” in Social Studies last quarter.
I got a traffic ticket last night.
The company got an award for community service.
I’m getting a busy signal.
We are getting a new car.
Permission to leave early was gotten.

Get ____ bring
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
Get me a coffee, will you?
I will get her a blanket.

Get ____ notice, understand
OBJECT
Get a coffee for me, will you?
I will get a blanket for her.

Get ____ notice, understand
WH-CLAUSE
Did you get that smirky look on his face?
“Did you get the joke?” “Yes, I got it.”
I got what he was trying to say.
Did you get how he avoided talking to us?

Get ____ become
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
He really got angry about it.
I got sick on the way back.
The dogs got loose and headed for the barn.

Get ____ begin, start
PRESENT PARTICIPLE
Let’s get going.

Get ____ have the opportunity, receive permission
INFINITIVE
We will get to meet them at the reception.
The kids get to stay up late tonight.
get ____ cause/persuade [to do/be]
OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
Get your hands clean before coming to the table.
I got the computer screen dirty.
I got the kids to clean up their room.
We finally got the truck to start.
I got the kids cleaning up their room.
It got me thinking about a new solution.
I finally got my computer fixed.
We got our house painted.

get ____ arrive at
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
Our parents got home early.
We can get to the office in 15 minutes.

get ____ travel
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
Did you get to Paris last summer?
I got as far as Chicago.

get ____ cause to move
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
Can you get me to the airport in 30 minutes?
I got the car out of the garage.

get ____ be affected/infect by
OBJECT
I got the hiccups just before I went on stage.
Can you get the flu from a flu shot?

NOTE: For the following two meanings, get is used only in the present perfect tense.

get ____ have, possess
OBJECT
I’ve got a terrible cold.
I’ve only got about $20 on me.

get ____ must
INFINITIVE
I’ve got to go now.
He has got to be more careful.

PHRASAL VERBS
get across/back/down/in/out/up/etc.
move in a specified direction
The police ordered the crowd to get back.
She opened the car door and told him to get in.
Did you get the firewood in?
He got the cheese and crackers out.
The news got around that they were divorced.
He got around the problem by installing new software.
The company got away with selling pirated software.

I must get back to Anthony tomorrow.
Lots of people have gotten behind on their mortgages.

get by/on/with ____
survive/do (with [something])
Amos gets by on $750 a month.
Our neighbors get by with just one car.

get in/into ____
be admitted to
Our son got into nursing school.
Harold got out of doing dishes four nights in a row.

get away with ____
do without being punished
Pat got over the flu in three days.
It’s 7 o’clock—time to get up.
Please get up and get me a fork.
Mom got us up before dawn.
Present Progressive
I am giving
you are giving
he/she/it is giving

Past Progressive
I was giving
you were giving
he/she/it was giving

Present Perfect
I have given
you have given
he/she/it has given

Past Perfect
I had given
you had given
he/she/it had given

Future
I will give
you will give
he/she/it will give

Future Progressive
I will be giving
you will be giving
he/she/it will be giving

Future Perfect
I will have given
you will have given
he/she/it will have given

Past Passive
I was given
you were given
he/she/it was given

Present
I give
you give
he/she/it gives

Past
I gave
you gave
he/she/it gave

Present Perfect
I have given
you have given
he/she/it has given

Past Perfect
I had given
you had given
he/she/it had given

Future
I will give
you will give
he/she/it will give

Future Progressive
I will be giving
you will be giving
he/she/it will be giving

Future Perfect
I will have given
you will have given
he/she/it will have given

Passive
A graduation party was given for the seniors.
The seniors were given a graduation party.

Complements

**give**

- **make a gift/donation**
  - How much can you give?
  - They always give generously to the homeless shelter.

- **yield, collapse**
  - For the deadlock to be broken, something has to give.
  - The floor might give if we put that much weight on it.

- **make a gift of, donate**
  - Terry gave Dan a new computer.
  - Spunky gave Alfalfa the high sign.
  - Terry gave a new computer to Dan.
  - Spunky gave the high sign to Alfalfa.

- **convey physically**
  - She gave a little smile at the news.
  - Leo gave the president a copy of the report.
  - She gave the boys a dirty look.
  - Leo gave a copy of the report to the president.
  - She gave a dirty look to the boys.

- **provide**
  - Soy-based inks give good results.
  - Give me a chance to prove myself.
  - This gives gays and lesbians the right to marry.
  - The boss gave his cousin a job.
  - The boss gave a job to his cousin.

- **host**
  - We will give the reception in his honor.
  - I gave my parents a surprise party.
  - We gave the seniors a graduation party.
  - I gave a surprise party for my parents.
  - We gave a graduation party for the seniors.

- **present**
  - The senator is giving a speech on TV.
  - He gave a good argument against the proposal.
## give

**give _____ perform**  
**OBJECT**

The symphony gave a **concert** last night.  
The band gave a **free concert** to benefit AIDS victims.

**give _____ cause to have**  
**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

Loud music gives *me a headache*.

**give _____ pay**  
**OBJECT**

Michelle gave $125 for her outfit.

**give _____ administer**  
**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

to PARAPHRASE

Freddie gave *the guard a punch in the mouth*.  
Darla’s mom gave *her some cough syrup*.  
Darla’s mom gave *some cough syrup to her*.

**give _____ cause**  
**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

You gave *me to understand that you would support us*.  
He gave *Jackson to believe that the problem was solved*.

**give _____ sentence to**  
**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

The judge gave *the criminal 30 days in jail*.

**give _____ sacrifice**  
**OBJECT + for OBJECT**

“It is sweet and right to give *your life for your country*.”  
[HORACE]

**give _____ devote**  
**OBJECT + to OBJECT**

Marvin gave *his whole life to the cause of justice*.

### PHRASAL VERBS

**give ____ away**  
**betray**

A club member gave away our secret meeting place.

**give ____ back**  
**return**

You’ll have to give the engagement ring back.

**give in (to ____)**  
**surrender**  
(to [someone/something])

After arguing for two hours, our opponents gave in.  
Senator Blather gave in to pressure from his colleagues.

**give it to ____**  
**scold, punish**

My boss really gave it to me when I walked in late.

**give off ____**  
**release, emit**

The compost is giving off an earthy smell.  
The laptop gives off a lot of heat.

**give out ____**  
**come to an end**

The settlers’ food gave out after three weeks.  
After 203,000 miles, our 1979 Oldsmobile finally gave out.

**give out ____**  
**distribute**

C.J. gave out the president’s itinerary.

**give out ____**  
**make known**

Don’t give out your cell phone number.

**give out ____**  
**produce**

This old furnace gives out a lot of heat.

**give up ____**  
**stop, cease**

Mom and Dad gave up smoking at the same time.  
Within an hour, the gunman gave up two hostages.  
An hour later, he gave himself up.

**give up (on ____)**  
**admit failure**  
(with [something])

Sheila finally gave up on the crossword puzzle.  
I tried four times to reach Lisa, then gave up.

**give up (on ____)**  
**stop trying ([to do])**

Ainsley finally gave up on trying to convince Sam.
Present Progressive
I am going you are going he/she/it is going
you are going they are going
- I'm going now.

Past Progressive
I was going you were going he/she/it was going
you were going they were going
- The party was going very well.

Present Perfect
I have gone you have gone he/she/it has gone
you have gone they have gone

Past Perfect
I had gone you had gone he/she/it had gone
you had gone they had gone

Future
I will go you will go he/she/it will go
you will go they will go

Future Progressive
I will be going you will be going he/she/it will be going
you will be going they will be going

Future Perfect
I will have gone you will have gone he/she/it will have gone
you will have gone they will have gone

Past Passive
Go is never used in the passive voice. Gone in sentences like He is gone is a past participle functioning as an adjective.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**go**

depart, leave

Please go.
I'm going as soon as I can get packed.
The seasons come and go.

function

The engine won't go.
I think my hearing is going.

become worse, fail

For most athletes, the knees are the first thing to go.
I'm afraid that Smith will have to go.

be eliminated/discarded

The song goes like this … la la di la la, la la da.

be worded, sung

I'm going to Dallas tomorrow.
We are going to lunch now.

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

go 

I'm going to Dallas tomorrow.
We are going to lunch now.

Where do they go on vacation?

ADVERB OF MANNER

go

The car in the left lane is going too slow.
I'm going as fast as I can.

extend, lead

Route 66 originally went from Chicago to Los Angeles.
Delta goes everywhere in the Southeast.
That door goes to the kitchen.

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

go

The evening went too quickly.

pass

The meeting is going well.
How is it going?

ADVERB OF MANNER

go

The soldiers went hungry for days.
I think the cheese has gone bad.

ADVERB OF MANNER

be, become, turn out

How many banks have gone bankrupt?
My e-mails to her have all gone unanswered.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

attend

dad went to college on the G.I. Bill.
Sidney went to Harvard Law School.
Our family goes to church on Sunday.
Let's go to a movie tonight.

to
We plan to go **skiing** in Idaho.  
They went **dancing** last night.

Don't go **telling everyone** about it.  
We won't go **running to him** with all our problems.

Coats go **in the closet**, not **on the floor**.  
The proposal went by **e-mail** to all department heads.

The prize goes **to the lady in the blue sweater**.  
The antique lamp goes **to bidder No. 17**.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Indefinite Pronoun</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have granted</td>
<td>I grant</td>
<td>you grant</td>
<td>he/she/it grant</td>
<td>The group grants awards to young artists.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am granting</td>
<td>I am granting</td>
<td>you are granting</td>
<td>he/she/it is granting</td>
<td>They are granting a dozen awards this year.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was granting</td>
<td>I was granting</td>
<td>you were granting</td>
<td>he/she/it was granting</td>
<td>They were not granting any more loans.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I granted</td>
<td>I granted</td>
<td>they granted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was granting</td>
<td>I was granting</td>
<td>they were granting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I granted</td>
<td>I granted</td>
<td>they granted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was granting</td>
<td>I was granting</td>
<td>they were granting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have granted</td>
<td>I have granted</td>
<td>they have granted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have granted</td>
<td>I have granted</td>
<td>you have granted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have granted</td>
<td>I have granted</td>
<td>he/she/it has granted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I will grant</td>
<td>I will grant</td>
<td>you will grant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I will grant</td>
<td>I will grant</td>
<td>he/she/it will grant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### EXRESSIONS

**Granted, ...**  
I/We admit that the conversation should not have been recorded.
**grind** | grinds · ground · have ground

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I grind</td>
<td>I am grinding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you grind</td>
<td>you are grinding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it grinds</td>
<td>he/she/it is grinding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Poverty grinds everyone down.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I ground</td>
<td>I was grinding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you ground</td>
<td>you were grinding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it ground</td>
<td>he/she/it was grinding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We ground some more coffee.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>I has ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... had ground</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was ground</td>
<td>... will grind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were ground</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was ground</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I was grinding my teeth in my sleep.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>COMPLEMENTS</strong></th>
<th><strong>PHRASAL VERBS</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crush, sharpen/smooth/press by rubbing</td>
<td>grind away at _____ work steadily on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clash/grate noisily</td>
<td>She ground away at her thesis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crush into powder / tiny pieces object</td>
<td>This job really grinds me down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sharpen/smooth by rubbing object</td>
<td>The wheels of justice grind slow, but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rub together forcefully object</td>
<td>they grind exceeding fine. [PROVERB]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>press/rub with a circular motion object</td>
<td>The mill grinds continuously when the harvest comes in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppress object</td>
<td>The editorial ground the opposition’s argument to shreds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The editorial ground the opposition’s argument to shreds.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>grind</th>
<th>crush, sharpen/smooth/press by rubbing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The mill grinds continuously when the harvest comes in.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by rubbing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The mill grinds the seeds, separating wheat from chaff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The lens maker ground the glass until it was perfectly smooth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The wheel grinds the seeds, separating wheat from chaff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The wheel grinds the seeds, separating wheat from chaff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The miller is grinding the corn into meal.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The editorial ground the opposition’s argument to shreds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The editorial ground the opposition’s argument to shreds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The editorial ground the opposition’s argument to shreds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The editorial ground the opposition’s argument to shreds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The editorial ground the opposition’s argument to shreds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The editorial ground the opposition’s argument to shreds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The editorial ground the opposition’s argument to shreds.*
### History of Verbs

#### Past Tense

- **I grew**
- **we grew**
- **you grew**
- **he/she/it grew**
- **they grew**

#### Present Tense

- **I grow**
- **we grow**
- **you grow**
- **he/she/it grows**
- **they grow**

### Progressive Tenses

#### Present Progressive

- **I am growing**
- **we are growing**
- **you are growing**
- **he/she/it is growing**
- **they are growing**

#### Past Perfect

- **He grew wheat and barley on his land.**

#### Future Perfect

- **The kids will grow.**

### Passive Voice

- **The Fair Trade coffee was grown in Mexico.**

### Complements

**grow**  develop, mature

- Weeds were growing in the driveway.
- Many flowers won’t grow in partial shade.

**grow**  become taller

- My, how you’ve grown!
- The kids are sure growing.

**grow**  become longer

- Her hair grew two inches over the summer.

**grow**  become bigger, expand

- Our investments have grown about eight percent a year.
- His reputation is growing even outside the region.
- The company is growing through mergers with smaller firms.
- The deficit has grown every year.

**grow**  raise [plants, a crop]

- We will grow more corn next year.
- We can grow pansies in the window boxes.
- It isn’t good to grow the same crop in a field year after year.
- We will grow what sells the best.
- They grow whatever crops can tolerate the heat.

**grow**  cause to develop and flourish

- We are trying to grow the business.
- The company has grown its profits effectively.
- The magazine needs to grow its circulation.

**grow**  begin

- I have grown to like broccoli.
- I had grown to hate Senator Blather’s speeches.

**grow**  become

- The driver grew tired as evening approached.
- Ruby grew pale at the sight of the snake.
- They grew accustomed to the boss’s angry outbursts.

**grow into**  become big enough for

- She’s grown into her sister’s winter coat.

**grow into**  develop into

- Your son has grown into a fine young man.
- The banking problem has grown into a major economic crisis.

**grow up to be**  develop into

- She has grown up to be a poised and confident woman.
### guess

**guess**

**Present**

- I guess
- you guess
- he/she/it guesses

**Past**

- I guessed
- you guessed
- he/she/it guessed

**Present Perfect**

- ... have | has guessed

**Past Perfect**

- ... had guessed

**Present Progressive**

- I am guessing
- you are guessing
- he/she/it is guessing

**Past Progressive**

- I was guessing
- you were guessing
- he/she/it was guessing

**Future**

- ... will guess

**Future Progressive**

- ... will be guessing

**Future Perfect**

- ... will have guessed

**Past Passive**

- I was guessed
- you were guessed
- he/she/it was guessed

* The answer was never guessed.

---

#### COMPLEMENTS

**guess**

**have/state an opinion without enough information**

- You don't know; you're just guessing.
- You can guess as well as I can.
- Go ahead—guess.

**guess**

**give an answer/solution with no certainty of being correct**

**OBJECT**

- Can you guess the answer?
- I can only guess the outcome.
- Guess my dog's name!

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER**

- I guessed it wrong again.
- You guessed it right.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

- I guessed Mary to take the prize.
- Watson didn't guess the "opium addict" to be Sherlock Holmes.
- We guessed him to be innocent.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

- She guessed that the train would arrive in 15 minutes.
- The contractor guessed that a new furnace would cost $3,000.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- You must guess who he is.
- Guess what time it is.
- Guess where I'm going tomorrow.

**guess**

**reach a correct conclusion about**

**OBJECT**

- He guessed the answer.
- You can probably guess my big news.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- You guessed what he wanted this time.
- Janet guessed how many jelly beans were in the jar.
- Can you guess how much it cost?

**guess**

**think, suppose**

**THAT-CLAUSE**

- I guess (that) you're right.
- I guess (that) I'll go straight to the party.

---

#### EXPRESSIONS

**I guess (so). I suppose so.**

[Showing vague agreement]

- “Are you thirsty?” “I guess so.”
- “Will your dad be home this evening?” “I guess so.”

**Guess what! [Conversation opener]**

- “Guess what!” “What?” “I'm going to have a baby.”
guide | guides · guided · have guided

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I guide</th>
<th>you guide</th>
<th>he/she/it guides</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we guide</td>
<td>you guide</td>
<td>they guide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He guides hikers through the park.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am guiding</th>
<th>you are guiding</th>
<th>he/she/it is guiding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we are guiding</td>
<td>you are guiding</td>
<td>they are guiding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’m guiding this trip, not you.

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I guided</th>
<th>you guided</th>
<th>he/she/it guided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we guided</td>
<td>you guided</td>
<td>they guided</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- His advice guided me through life.

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was guided</th>
<th>you were guided</th>
<th>he/she/it was guided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we were guided</td>
<td>you were guided</td>
<td>they were guided</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The ship was guided into the harbor by the pilot.

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have guided</th>
<th>... has guided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**FUTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will guide</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**FUTURE PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will have guided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**OBJECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>conduct a tour, show the way</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Who can guide better than he?
- The North Star will always guide at night.

- Ms. Brown will guide the tour of the plant.
- Sacagawea guided the Lewis and Clark expedition.
- The GPS guided us to the restaurant.
- The lighthouse guided the ship back to harbor.

- The score guides the conductor in the interpretation of the music.
- The computer manual guided us through every step of the installation.
- Software guides the flow of electricity in the Smart Grid.

- The bank's actions were guided by the need to protect the depositors.

- The latest research guides what we will do.
- The environmental impact should guide where we locate the new plant.
- Our income guides how much we can spend.
**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I hand</th>
<th>we hand</th>
<th>you hand</th>
<th>you hand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it hands</td>
<td>they hand</td>
<td>he/she/it is handing</td>
<td>they are handing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We hand in our report every Friday.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am handing</th>
<th>we are handing</th>
<th>you are handing</th>
<th>you are handing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is handing</td>
<td>they are handing</td>
<td>he/she/it is handing</td>
<td>they are handing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I’m handing the report to them now.*

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I handed</th>
<th>we handed</th>
<th>you handed</th>
<th>you handed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it handed</td>
<td>they handed</td>
<td>he/she/it was handing</td>
<td>they were handing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The waiter just handed us the menus.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was handing</th>
<th>we were handing</th>
<th>you were handing</th>
<th>you were handing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was handing</td>
<td>they were handing</td>
<td>he/she/it was handing</td>
<td>they were handing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The hostess was handing out party favors to the kids.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has handed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

| ... had handed |

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was handed</th>
<th>we were handed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were handed</td>
<td>you were handed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was handed</td>
<td>they were handed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The documentation was handed to him by our lawyer.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**hand**

*pass something by hand*

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

Please hand **me** that towel.

Can you hand **the agent** our tickets?

Tarzan handed **Jane** a banana.

Please hand **that towel** to me.

Can you hand **our tickets** to the agent?

Tarzan handed **a banana to Jane**.

**hand**

*provide/present*

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

The news handed **us** a golden opportunity.

Napoleon's delay handed Wellington **the battle**.

The scandal handed Senator Blather **the election**.

Our goalie's error handed our opponents **the game**.

Please hand **that towel** to me.

Can you hand **our tickets** to the agent?

Tarzan handed **a banana to Jane**.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**hand**

*up/down issue [an official decision]*

The judge handed down a sentence of five to 10 years.

**hand**

*up/down pass from generation to generation*

This story was handed down from mother to daughter.

The desk has been handed down through six generations.

Don't forget to hand in your essays at the end of class.

**hand**

*up/down submit [a report, assignment]*

Warner handed off the running back.

The quarterback handed the ball off before he was tackled.

**hand**

*up/down administer*

She can hand out insults, but she can't take them.

C.J. handed out the president's schedule to the reporters.

**hand**

*up/down distribute*

Did the store clerk hand over all the money?

President Bush handed power over to President Obama.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>regular form</th>
<th>progressive form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I handle</td>
<td>I am handling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you handle</td>
<td>you are handling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it handles</td>
<td>he/she/it is handling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* My new car handles well.</td>
<td>* I'm handling the fraud case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I handled</td>
<td>I was handling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you handled</td>
<td>you were handling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it handled</td>
<td>he/she/it was handling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* I handled this problem last week.</td>
<td>* The kids were handling the baby kittens carefully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... will handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has handled</td>
<td>future perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... will have handled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>handled</td>
<td>future perfect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>regular form</th>
<th>progressive form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was handled</td>
<td>I was handled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were handled</td>
<td>you were handled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was handled</td>
<td>they were handled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* These issues were handled by our legal department.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**handle (function in a certain way)**

- **Adverb of manner**: His truck doesn't handle *very well at all.*
- **Object**: The boat's helm began to handle *sluggishly.*
- **Object**: Most sports cars handle *very tightly.*

**handle (touch, hold, feel)**

- **Object**: Please don't handle the *merchandise.*
- **Object**: We handled the *material* to see how soft it was.
- **Object**: Nobody would handle the *reptiles* at the petting zoo.

**handle (take care of, manage, deal with)**

- **Object**: Who is handling the *phones*?
- **Object**: The Major Case Squad handles *only murder cases.*
- **Object**: His main job is to handle *all requests to meet the senator.*
- **Object**: Who will handle the *problem of employee theft*?
- **Passive**: All our legal affairs are handled by their firm.

**handle (endure, cope with)**

- **Object**: I can't handle the *heat in Florida.*
- **Object**: Do you think you can handle all the confusion?
- **Object**: We couldn't handle the *cigarette smoke in the restaurant.*
- **Wh-clause**: They couldn't handle what was happening.
- **Present participle**: I can handle whatever I need to.
- **Present participle**: The soldiers could handle whatever the enemy threw at them.
- **Present participle**: He couldn't handle working such long hours.
- **Present participle**: The soldiers couldn't handle being away from their families.
- **Present participle**: The engine couldn't handle pulling such a heavy load.

**handle (be involved in buying/selling)**

- **Object**: The hardware store handles plumbing and electrical supplies.

**handle (behave)**

- **Reflexive pronoun**: Sam handled himself very well in the scandal.

**handle (with kid gloves)**

- **Verb phrase**: You need to handle the actor with kid gloves.

**EXPRESSIONS**
### hang

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Progressive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I hang</td>
<td>I am hanging</td>
<td>I have hung</td>
<td>I was hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you hang</td>
<td>you are hanging</td>
<td>you have hung</td>
<td>you were hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it hangs</td>
<td>he/she/it is hanging</td>
<td>he/she/it has hung</td>
<td>he/she/it was hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>His picture hangs in the boardroom.</em></td>
<td><em>I'm hanging around until she returns.</em></td>
<td><em>They were hanging out at Tom's house.</em></td>
<td><em>He was hanged in 1803.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**hang**  
*be suspended by the neck until dead*  
He will hang for his crimes.  
Black Bart was finally hanged.  

**hang**  
*be suspended, droop*  
ADVERB OF PLACE  
The gulls hung **above the fishing boats.**  
The smoke from the forest fire hung **in the still air.**  
Wet laundry hung **everywhere in the small apartment.**  
ADVERB OF MANNER  
The flag was hanging **limply** from the staff.  
His suit hangs **a little too loosely.**  
His head hung **in shame** after his arrest.  

**hang**  
*be prevalent*  
ADVERB OF PLACE  
Before the battle, tension hung **in the air.**  

**hang**  
*suspend/fasten without support from below, let droop*  
OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE)  
We've already hung **the Christmas wreath.**  
We hung **our wet clothing on branches.**  
I hung a **bird feeder in the oak tree.**  
The bridge was hung **from steel cables.**  

**hang**  
*exhibit [artwork]*  
OBJECT  
They hung **her paintings** in the main gallery.  
I hung **the photograph** in the spring exhibition.  
His pictures have been hung at all the major art shows.  

**hang**  
*suspend by the neck until dead*  
OBJECT  
PASSIVE  
They hanged **the convict** at dawn.  
He was hanged for his many crimes.  

### PHRASAL VERBS

- **hang around/out**  
  *loiter, linger*  
  Leo hung around for Josh.  
  Can you hang on while I take another call?  
  Hang on to the baby clothes; you may need them again.  
  I was telling her about my day when she just hung up.
### tense present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Progressive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>we happen</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>it happened</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>you happen</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>they happened</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>he/she/it happens</td>
<td>it is happening</td>
<td>they are happening</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>we happen</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>they happened</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>you happen</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>it happened</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>he/she/it happened</td>
<td>it was happening</td>
<td>they were happening</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>they happen</td>
<td>it is happening</td>
<td>they are happening</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It happens to be my birthday today.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tense past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Progressive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>we happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>it happened</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>you happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>they happened</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>he/she/it happened</td>
<td>it was happening</td>
<td>they were happening</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>we happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>they happened</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>you happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>it happened</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>he/she/it happened</td>
<td>it was happening</td>
<td>they were happening</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>they happened</td>
<td>it was happening</td>
<td>they were happening</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I happened to be downtown on Friday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tense present perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Progressive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>… have</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>… have</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>… have</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>… have</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>… have</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>… have</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>… have</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It happened to be my birthday today.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tense past perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Progressive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Past perfect</td>
<td>… had happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Past perfect</td>
<td>… had happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Past perfect</td>
<td>… had happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>Past perfect</td>
<td>… had happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Past perfect</td>
<td>… had happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Past perfect</td>
<td>… had happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>Past perfect</td>
<td>… had happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I happened to be downtown on Friday.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tense future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Progressive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>… will happen</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>… will happen</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>… will happen</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>… will happen</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>… will happen</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>… will happen</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>… will happen</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I will happen again, you know.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tense future perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Progressive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>… will have happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>… will have happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>… will have happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>… will have happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>… will have happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>… will have happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>… will have happened</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive Voice

Happen is never used in the passive voice.

### Complements

- **happen** *occur, take place*
  - Mistakes happen.
  - Good stuff is happening there.
  - What happened on this date in history?
  - The same thing had happened to us before.
  - It will happen again, you know.

- **happen** *by chance*
  - I happen to know the combination to the lock.
  - Did you happen to see Mary on your way in?
  - Do you happen to have change for a dollar?
  - We happened to be visiting Denver at the time.
  - We happened to be visiting Denver at the time.
  - There happens to be a tool kit in my car.
  - There happened to be a police car passing by.
  - It happens to be trash pickup day.
  - It happened to be the third Sunday of the month.
  - It happened to be hot and humid here in the Midwest.
  - It happens that we will be out of town Saturday.
  - It happened that George went to school with him.
  - It could happen that the game will be postponed.
  - It happened that the hotel had lost our reservation.

### Phrasal Verbs

- **happen along/by** *appear, come past*
  - We were sitting on the porch when a deer happened by.

- **happen on/upon** *meet/find*
  - We happened on Luis at the baseball game.
  - I happened on his wallet when I was cleaning the living room.

- **happen to** *be done to, be the fate of*
  - Could something have happened to the kids?
  - They promised nothing would happen to me.
  - Pay us the money, and nothing will happen to little Jimmy.

What happened to the proposal I gave you?
### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>The kids hate broccoli.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>I hate the way my hair looks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>She hates the long commute to work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>hates</td>
<td>The judge hates attorneys filing frivolous motions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>The company hates the union striking at the busiest time of year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>hated</td>
<td>I would hate him criticizing everybody's ideas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>hated</td>
<td>The judge hates attorneys filing frivolous motions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>hated</td>
<td>The company hates the union striking at the busiest time of year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>hated</td>
<td>The judge hates attorneys filing frivolous motions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>hated</td>
<td>The company hates the union striking at the busiest time of year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>will hate</td>
<td>We hated for them to lose their last game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>will hate</td>
<td>Mr. Jordan always hated for meetings to start late.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>will have hated</td>
<td>We hated for them to worry so much about it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>will have hated</td>
<td>Mr. Jordan always hated for meetings to start late.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Our dog was hated by every cat in the neighborhood.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were hated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they were hated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **hate**
  - dislike very strongly
  - **OBJECT**
    - The kids hate broccoli.
    - I hate the way my hair looks.
    - She hates the long commute to work.
  - **OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
    - I hate him criticizing everybody's ideas.
    - The judge hates attorneys filing frivolous motions.
    - The company hates the union striking at the busiest time of year.
  - **FOR OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
    - I would hate for them to lose their last game.
    - We hated for them to worry so much about it.
    - Mr. Jordan always hated for meetings to start late.
  - **INFINITIVE**
    - I hate to interrupt, but I need to talk to you.
    - We hate to estimate the extent of the problem without knowing more about it.
    - She hates to throw anything away.
  - **(it) THAT-CLAUSE**
    - I hate (it) that the kids can’t come for Christmas.
    - We hated (it) that the candidates were unwilling to discuss the real issues.
    - I hate (it) that the library is closed on weekends.
  - **WH-CLAUSE**
    - I hate who he has become.
    - Ben hated what they did to his parents' house.
    - Everyone hates how expensive gasoline is these days.
  - **PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
    - My parents hate being out so late.
    - Everyone hates getting old.
    - Don’t you hate getting stuck at the airport?

### Expressions

- **hate [someone’s] guts**
  - dislike
  - **[someone] intensely**
    - He used to be her friend, but now she hates his guts.
**PRESENT**

- I have
- you have
- he/she/it has

- we have
- you have
- they have

- November only has 30 days.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

- I am having
- you are having
- he/she/it is having

- we are having
- you are having
- they are having

- I’m having some people over.

**PAST**

- I had
- you had
- he/she/it had

- we had
- you had
- they had

- We had a really great time.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

- I was having
- you were having
- he/she/it was having

- we were having
- you were having
- they were having

- We were having a lot of problems then.

**PAST PERFECT**

- I have had
- you have had
- he/she/it has had

- we have had
- you have had
- they have had

**FUTURE**

- I will have
- you will have
- he/she/it will have

- we will have
- you will have
- they will have

- Future Perfect

- I will have had
- you will have had
- he/she/it will have had

- we will have had
- you will have had
- they will have had

**PAST PASSIVE**

- Have is not used in the passive voice except in idiomatic expressions.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**NOTE:** *Have* is also used as a helping verb to form the perfect tenses.

**have + past participle**

- She has read all of Jane Austen’s novels.

**have _____ possess, own, contain, include**

**OBJECT**

- Do you have a car?
- I have enough food for everyone.
- Ted has an interesting news item for us.
- Do you have a minute?
- We have an office in Tokyo.
- Does the meeting room have a projection screen?
- The department store has mattresses on sale.
- A week has seven days.
- The knitters’ club has 372 members.

**have _____ be characterized by**

**OBJECT**

- She has red hair.
- He has a quick temper.
- My car has a tendency to stall at stop signs.

**have _____ must**

**INFINITIVE**

- I have to be at the office by 8 o’clock.
- We have to stop for gas at the next exit.
- You will have to make up your minds soon.

**NOTE:** When the information in the infinitive is clear from context, *have + infinitive* is often contracted to *have + to*. For example, *Do you have to go now?* may be contracted to *Do you have to?* *Have to* is sometimes pronounced /hafta/.

**have _____ cause [to do]**

**OBJECT + base-form infinitive**

- I had the kids put away their toys.
- We will have the builder modify the deck.
- He had me reprint the document.
- He had his crew working on the addition.
- The comedian really had us laughing.
- The coach had the team running wind sprints.
- I had my watch repaired.
- Aunt Jenny had her hip replaced this fall.
- They had the wedding reception catered.
have ______ experience, undergo
OBJECT

He had chicken pox when he was a child.
Did you have a good time at the party?
The Southwest had drought conditions for several years.
They are having an argument about visitation rights.

have ______ keep in one's mind
OBJECT

Senator Blather has an opinion about everything.
We have doubts about the new employee.
I have an idea for earning extra money.

have ______ host
OBJECT

The restaurant is having a grand opening this Saturday.

have ______ eat, drink
OBJECT

Dan is having blackberry pie for dessert.
Tim had a refill on his soft drink.

have ______ be the parent(s) of
OBJECT

We have two sons and a daughter.

have ______ study
OBJECT

Terry had three years of Spanish in high school.

have ______ position
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

Mark had his hands on the steering wheel.
The graduate had a parent on either side of him.

PHRASAL VERBS

have ______ back/down/over/up/etc.
invite and host [someone] at a specified location

We had the Smiths over for dinner.

have ______ against have as a reason to dislike

She has a grudge against her ex-boyfriend.

have ______ on be operating

She has the radio on when she's at home.
He had on a turtleneck sweater and baggy trousers.
I had one of my upper molars out.

have ______ sep be wearing

EXPRESSIONS

have had it have done/endured all that one can

I have had it with tax auditors.

have a big mouth gossip a lot, reveal secrets a lot

Don't tell Joanie your troubles; she has a big mouth.

have a bone to pick (with ______) have something to argue about (with [someone])

I have a bone to pick with the editor about his changes.

have [one's] cake and eat it too / have it both ways have the advantages of something without its disadvantages

Denny wants to live in the country, but he wants a grocery store next door. He can't have his cake and eat it too.
The bank executive really has it good—a Mercedes, a mansion, and a vacation home in California.

have it good be rich

The teacher had it out with the principal.

have it out (with ______) settle an argument (with [someone])

Rumor has it that Glenda is getting married.

have it that ______ claim/say that

The article has to do with child labor laws.

have to do with ______ concern, involve
head | heads · headed · have headed

**PRESENT**
- I head
- you head
- he/she/it heads
- She heads the compensation committee.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am heading
- you are heading
- he/she/it is heading
- I am heading the investigation.

**PAST**
- I headed
- you headed
- he/she/it headed
- Jones headed the list of candidates.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was heading
- you were heading
- he/she/it was heading
- We were finally heading home.

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has headed

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had headed

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was headed
- you were headed
- he/she/it was headed
- The ship was headed out to sea.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**head | lead, be in charge of**

- OBJECT
- Ms. Lewis is heading the operation.
- Who will head the department after she retires?

**past | be at the front/top of**

- OBJECT
- Clearly, she heads the list of potential nominees.
- Who is heading the short list?

**head | proceed/go**

- ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
- We headed home after dinner.
- The sheep were heading into the south pasture.
- The fishing boats were all heading west.

**head | move (toward)**

- OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
- We headed the car to the curb.
- The ranchers headed the sheep up to the mountains.
- They headed the sailboat into the wind.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**head back/down/in/off/out/over/up/etc.**
- go in a specified direction
- Let’s head down to Mexico City.
- The twins headed off to college in 2006.

**head after | pursue**
- Pierre headed after Lizbeth to apologize.

**head for | have as a destination**
- Our family headed for the Ozarks.
- Patton’s army headed for Berlin.

**head into | begin to do**
- She finished her Algebra homework and headed into Chemistry.

**head off | block, intercept**
- Grant’s army headed off the Confederate army at Appomattox.
**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I hear</td>
<td>I am hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you hear</td>
<td>you are hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it hears</td>
<td>they are hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He only hears what he wants to.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I heard</td>
<td>I was hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you heard</td>
<td>you were hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it heard</td>
<td>they were hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* I heard that there was a problem.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>... had heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Passive</th>
<th>I was heard</th>
<th>we were heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

* All witnesses were heard in one afternoon.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**hear**

- **perceive sound by ear**
  - She can only hear in the middle frequencies.
  - Sam hears pretty well for someone his age.

- **make out words/music**
  - Can everybody hear, or should I turn the radio up?
  - I don't think anyone could hear while the band was playing.

**hear _____ perceive by ear**

**OBJECT**

- I just heard the telephone.
  - We could hear the surf from our room.
  - Did you just hear something?

**PASSIVE**

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]**

- The dog's barking was heard by everybody in the building.
- The senator was heard to make threats.

**OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE**

- I heard him start the car.
- We heard the kids turn on the TV.

**OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

- I heard her play a Mozart piano concerto.
- I heard him starting the car.
- We heard the kids playing in the backyard.
- He heard someone talking on the phone.

**hear _____ be told, learn**

**OBJECT**

- Did you hear the news?
  - I heard the final score.
  - John has just heard the results of his test.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

- I heard that Jim is leaving the company.
  - Did you hear that they are going to have a baby?

**WH-CLAUSE**

- Have you heard who won the game?
  - I heard what you said.

**hear _____ listen to the two sides in [a court case]**

**OBJECT**

- The judge heard three divorce cases this morning.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**hear from _____ receive a message from**

- We heard from the Ellners last week.

**hear of _____ learn of the existence of**

- We've heard of hedgehogs, but I've never seen one.

**hear _____ out listen to everything [someone] has to say**

- Simon heard her out, but he didn’t change his mind.
help | helps · helped · have helped

**PRESENT**
- I help
- you help
- he/she/it helps

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am helping
- you are helping
- he/she/it is helping

- *He helps the kids with their homework.*
- *I'm helping wherever I can.*

**PAST**
- I helped
- you helped
- he/she/it helped

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was helping
- you were helping
- he/she/it was helping

- *I helped as much as I could.*
- *We were helping them fix dinner.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has helped

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had helped

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was helped
- you were helped
- he/she/it was helped

- *The situation was helped by their timely actions.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**help**

**be of assistance/use**
- He always helps if we need him.
- A little extra money always helps.
- The kids help around the house once in a while.

**help ____ assist, support**

**OBJECT**
- Help your mother in the kitchen, will you?
- The new players have really helped the team.
- Some rain will help the corn.
- Please help yourself to more coffee.

**OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE**
- Jerry helped me get the kite off the roof.
- I will help you do it.
- The guards actually helped the prisoners escape.
- Can you help me finish this report?

**BASE-FORM INFINITIVE**
- Can you help fix it?
- He even helped pay for it.
- Theo helped clean out the barn.
- Help get the dog back inside.

**help ____ improve, give relief to**

**OBJECT**
- The extra tutoring helped my test scores a lot.
- Nothing would help this food.
- A new rug would help the living room.
- The aspirin helped my headache.

**help ____ avoid [USUALLY USED IN THE NEGATIVE]**

**but + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE [INFORMAL]**
- I couldn't help but hear what you said.
- I couldn't help hearing what you said.
- They couldn't help laughing at the situation.
- Bill can't help making a bad situation worse.
- Romeo couldn't help being attracted to Juliet.

**help ____ down/in/out/up/etc. assist in moving in a specified direction**

- We helped the kitten down from the tree.
- I've fallen; can you help me up?

**help [someone] on/off with ____ assist [someone] in putting on / taking off [clothing]**
- She helped Gretchen on with her shoes.
- Would you help me off with this sweatshirt?
### hide

#### hide | hides · hid · have hidden

**PRESENT**
- I hide
- you hide
- he/she/it hides
- we hide
- you hide
- they hide

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am hiding
- you are hiding
- he/she/it is hiding
- we are hiding
- you are hiding
- they are hiding

*Our cat always hides in the closet.*

**PAST**
- I hid
- you hid
- he/she/it hid
- we hid
- you hid
- they hid

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was hiding
- you were hiding
- he/she/it was hiding
- we were hiding
- you were hiding
- they were hiding

*I hid a house key outside.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has hidden

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had hidden

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was hidden
- you were hidden
- he/she/it was hidden
- we were hidden
- you were hidden
- they were hidden

*The photos were hidden in a closet.*

#### COMPLEMENTS

hide **keep oneself out of sight,** conceal oneself

- The dog hides whenever we get his cage.
- The birds hide in the trees if there is a hawk nearby.
- The kids were hiding behind the tree.
- The thief hid in an abandoned warehouse.

hide **put out of sight, conceal**

**OBJECT**

- The cat had hidden her kittens in the attic.
- The burglars hid themselves carefully.
- The old lady hid her money under her mattress.
- He hid the stolen property in the basement.
- Janet hid her face behind the newspaper.
- They hid their business losses by altering the records.

hide **keep secret**

**OBJECT**

- I tried to hide my confusion by changing the subject.
- The senator hid who had actually made the campaign contribution.
- They wanted to hide what they had done.
- Allison never hid what she was going to do.
- We all want to hide whatever makes us look foolish.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- The senator hid who had actually made the campaign contribution.

hide **keep from being seen**

**OBJECT**

- A sign hid the entrance to his office.
- My iPod had been hidden by a stack of books.

**PASSIVE**

- The photos were hidden in a closet.

#### PHRASAL VERBS

hide out **conceal oneself for a period of time**

- Jesse and Frank James hid out in Meramec Caverns.

#### EXPRESSIONS

hide [one's] head in the sand **ignore signs of danger**

- We hid our heads in the sand when Hitler seized control of the government.

hide [one's] light under a bushel **conceal one’s talents/ideas**

- Share your suggestions, Donna. Don’t hide your light under a bushel.
Present Present Progressive
I hire we hire
you hire you are hiring
he/she/it hires they hire
he/she/it is hiring they are hiring
• The firm only hires college graduates.

Past Past Progressive
I hired we hired
you hired you hired
he/she/it hired they hired
he/she/it was hiring they were hiring
• We just hired a new IT person.

Present Perfect
… have | has hired

Past Perfect
… had hired

Past Passive
I was hired we were hired
you were hired you were hired
he/she/it was hired they were hired
• Marian was hired by a company in Texas.

COMPLEMENTS

hire employ someone to do a job

The Apex Corporation is hiring now.
Do you know anyone who is hiring?
Nobody will hire in a recession.

hire employ to do a job, engage the services of

OBJECT

We had to hire a contractor.
He hired his brother-in-law.
The hospitals are trying to hire more skilled nurses.
My neighbor was hired for temporary work.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We hired an electrician to wire the new ceiling fan.
The company hired a salesman to fill in for Dolores.
We can only hire who is on the short list of applicants.
They will hire whoever is the most qualified.
I will hire whomever I want to.

WH-CLAUSE

PHRASAL VERBS

hire away cause [someone] to leave a job and begin a job with one’s company

They tried to hire away the top math professors at our university.

hire oneself out take a job, usually temporarily

Between campaigns, he hired himself out as a speechwriter.
She hired herself out as a babysitter.
hit | hits · hit · have hit

**PRESENT**
I hit
you hit
he/she/it hits
* He always hits his target.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am hitting
you are hitting
he/she/it is hitting
* I’m hitting a lot of resistance.

**PAST**
I hit
you hit
he/she/it hit
* The storm hit us pretty hard.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was hitting
you were hitting
he/she/it was hitting
* Prices were hitting all-time highs.

**PRESENT PERFECT** … have | has hit
**PAST PERFECT** … had hit

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was hit
you were hit
he/she/it was hit
* Our car was hit by a pickup truck.

**COMPLEMENTS**

*hit deliver a blow/setback*
Depression can hit at any time.
The storm will hit sometime tomorrow morning.
The shells and bombs were hitting everywhere.

*hit strike, deliver a blow to*
*OBJECT*
The batter hit the pitch sharply.
I hit the target on the first shot.
The bullet hit him in the left shoulder.
Our oak tree was hit by lightning.

*hit cause to suffer, distress*
*OBJECT*
A terrible drought has hit the entire Midwest.
A sharp sell-off hit the market today.

*hit activate, turn on/off*
*OBJECT*
He hit the brakes in a panic.
Hit the light switch, will you?
They always want to hit the panic button right away.

*hit reach [a level/goal]*
*OBJECT*
Do you think oil will hit $100 a barrel?
Sales could hit our goal of 2,000 units this week.
A new record was hit on Wall Street today.

*hit arrive/appear at*
*OBJECT*
We should hit Kansas City around noon.
The tourists hit all the souvenir shops.

*hit encounter*
*OBJECT*
The pilot hit a headwind 120 miles from Singapore.
The research was going well, then we hit a snag.

*hit become clear to*
*OBJECT*
The smell of garlic hit me as soon as I entered the house.
The solution hit Johanna right after lunch.

*hit on/upon discover*
She hit upon the idea of extending Medicare to people 55 and over.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Irregular Tense Forms</th>
<th>Complements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>I hold</td>
<td>keep one's position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we hold</td>
<td>So far, our defensive line is holding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you hold</td>
<td>We hope the tent holds in this wind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it holds</td>
<td>The beautiful weather will hold through the weekend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I held</td>
<td>Our market share is still holding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we held</td>
<td>The senator's lead in the polls has held steady.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you held</td>
<td>Please hold still.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it held</td>
<td>Please hold. Your call is important to us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was held</td>
<td>The plane was held for transfer passengers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we were held</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were held</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was held</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>have held</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>has held</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>had held</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>will hold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>past perfect</td>
<td>will be holding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>future perfect</td>
<td>will have held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>future</td>
<td>have held</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

- A barrel holds 55 U.S. gallons.
- She held that position for years.
- Susan was holding the baby.
- The plane was held for transfer passengers.
- The troops were held in reserve.

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **hold keep one's position**
  - So far, our defensive line is holding.
  - We hope the tent holds in this wind.
  - The beautiful weather will hold through the weekend.
  - Our market share is still holding.
  - The senator's lead in the polls has held steady.
  - Please hold still.
  - Please hold. Your call is important to us.

- **hold stay together / in one piece**
  - I hope this rope holds.
  - I held the hammer in my right hand.
  - Please hold the ladder while I change the light bulb.
  - Hold my hand while we cross the street.

- **hold grasp**
  -object
  - I held the hammer in my right hand.
  - Please hold the ladder while I change the light bulb.
  - Hold my hand while we cross the street.

- **hold keep steady, maintain, keep control of**
  -object
  - They will hold their prices at the current level.
  - The runners held a five-mile-per-hour pace.
  - The house had held its value over the years.
  - Will you hold the elevator for a minute?
  - The framework holds the entire structure together.
  - He needs to hold his temper better.
  - How long can you hold your breath?
  - The movie completely held my attention.
  - The senator held his audience spellbound.
  - The scream held everyone frozen in place.
  - The cables hold the tower rigid.

- **hold keep for later use**
  -object
  - The hotel will hold the room for us until 10 p.m.
  - Hold my calls.
  - The troops were held in reserve.

- **hold contain, have room for**
  -object
  - The safe deposit box holds the deed to our house.
  - The tank holds 1,000 gallons.
  - The auditorium can hold 400 people.
### hold

**hold ____ consider, believe**

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The judge held the **defendant** *(to be)* **blameless.***
I hold him *(to be)* **fully responsible** for the accident.

“We hold these truths to be self-evident …”

[DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE]

**THAT-CLAUSE**

The court held that **citizens have a right** to possess firearms.
For years, the tobacco industry held that cigarettes didn’t cause cancer.

**hold ____ conduct**

OBJECT

The seniors held a **bake sale** for their class trip.
We held a **seminar** for the interns.
The neighbors held a **lively conversation** on the porch.
They will hold a **special exhibit on pre-Columbian art.***
The president will hold a **press conference** on Tuesday.

**hold ____ have as one’s own**

OBJECT

Amelia Earhart holds the **title of first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic Ocean.***
My wife holds the **office of County Clerk.***

**hold ____ keep in one’s mind, maintain**

OBJECT

They held the belief that the earth is flat.
We will hold the memory of her in our hearts forever.

### PHRASAL VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Hold</strong></th>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong> (SEP) back/down/in/out/up/etc.</td>
<td>keep in a specified position</td>
<td>A police barricade held the crowd back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong> (SEP) against [someone]</td>
<td>have as a reason to think poorly of [someone]</td>
<td>She still holds it against him that he has never opened the door for her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong> (SEP) back</td>
<td>keep secret, withhold</td>
<td>The juror held back the fact that he knew the defendant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong> (SEP) down</td>
<td>have and keep [a job]</td>
<td>Jake holds down two jobs and takes college classes too.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong> (SEP) in</td>
<td>suppress</td>
<td>The candidate is good at holding his emotions in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold off (on) ____ delay, postpone</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>She held off asking her parents for more money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong> (SEP) off</td>
<td>keep away, resist</td>
<td>The old woman held the robber off until police arrived.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold on</strong></td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>Hold on while I dry my hands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold on</strong></td>
<td>manage to keep one’s position</td>
<td>Although our team was outscored in the final period, we held on and won the game.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong> (SEP) on</td>
<td>secure</td>
<td>A clasp holds the lid on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold out</strong></td>
<td>last, endure</td>
<td>How long will our food hold out?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold out for ____ insist on getting</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>The settlers held out until the cavalry arrived.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong> (SEP) over</td>
<td>keep for more performances</td>
<td>I don’t want a cookie; I’m holding out for a cupcake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold ____ together</strong></td>
<td>keep united</td>
<td>The union held out for better working conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold up</strong></td>
<td>remain in the same condition</td>
<td>The theater held the movie over for six more weeks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong> (SEP) up</td>
<td>delay, stop</td>
<td>It was Mom who held the family together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hold</strong> (SEP) up</td>
<td>support</td>
<td>This old house is holding up pretty well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sales of soccer balls are holding up in spite of the economy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The discovery of human remains held up construction for two weeks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Three teenagers held the store up in broad daylight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Special bolts hold up the roof of a coal mine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Present Present Progressive
I honor    we are honoring
you honor  you are honoring
he/she/it honors they honor
* He always honors his agreements.

Past Past Progressive
I honored  we were honoring
you honored you were honoring
he/she/it honored they were honoring
* The club honored me with an award.

Present Perfect 
... have | has honored

Future Future Perfect
... will honor ... will have honored

Past Passive
I was honored we were honored
you were honored you were honored
he/she/it was honored they were honored
* Dean Smith was honored by all of her colleagues.

COMPLEMENTS

honor ______ show great respect for
OBJECT

The party honors graduating seniors.

"Honor your father and your mother." [BIBLE]

We can’t honor our soldiers enough.

The nation honors Presidents Washington and Lincoln on Presidents’ Day in February.

I am greatly honored by your applause.

honor ______ fulfill the terms of, fulfill one’s commitment to pay
OBJECT

Our country will honor all the terms of the treaty.

He is a person who always honors his word.

The company must honor all of its bills.

honor ______ accept as payment
OBJECT

Will the restaurant honor my credit card?

A certified check will be honored at any bank.
### Present
- **I hope**
- **we hope**
- **you hope**
- **he/she/it hopes**

- *He hopes that he can visit sometime.*

### Present Progressive
- **I am hoping**
- **we are hoping**
- **you are hoping**
- **he/she/it is hoping**

- *I'm hoping that it will snow.*

### Past
- **I hoped**
- **we hoped**
- **you hoped**
- **he/she/it hoped**

- *I always hoped that I could go to Italy.*

### Past Progressive
- **I was hoping**
- **we were hoping**
- **you were hoping**
- **he/she/it was hoping**

- *We were hoping for success.*

### Present Perfect
- **... have**
- **has hoped**

### Past Perfect
- **... had hoped**

### Future
- **... will hope**
- **future progressive**
- **... will be hoping**
- **future perfect**
- **... will have hoped**

### Past Passive
- **it was hoped**
- **they were hoped**

- *A bigger turnout was hoped for.*

### Complements

**hope**

- **desire, wish**

- **for object**

- **that-clause**

**The kids are hoping for snow on Christmas Day.**

**We couldn't hope for a nicer day to go to the beach.**

**I hope that everything is okay.**

**We hoped that you could join us.**

**My father was hoping that he might rest awhile.**

**The players hope that they do not have to play in the rain.**

**Everyone hopes that the market will recover.**

**I hope that I didn't offend anyone.**

**hope**

- **expect, plan**

- **infinitive**

**I hope to go Boston on Tuesday.**

**The plumber hopes to be finished in an hour.**

**We hope to see you there.**

**I never hoped to have such success with it.**

**He hopes to do better next time.**

### Expressions

**hope against (all) hope**

- **desire an improbable outcome**

- **The family is hoping against hope that their house wasn't flooded.**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I house, you house, he/she/it houses, we house, they house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>I am housing, you are housing, he/she/it is housing, we are housing, they are housing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I housed, you housed, he/she/it housed, we housed, they housed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>I was housing, you were housing, he/she/it was housing, we were housing, they were housing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>… have, has housed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>… had housed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>… will house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>… will be housing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>… will have housed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>I was housed, you were housed, he/she/it was housed, we were housed, they were housed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The refugees were temporarily housed in army tents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*NOTE*: The verb *house* ends with a /z/ sound. The noun *house* ends with an /s/ sound.

### COMPLEMENTS

**house ______ give shelter/lodging to**

- **OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE)**
  - We offered to *house* an exchange student.
  - They housed us in old army barracks.
  - We have to *house* the volunteers somewhere.
  - Can we *house* our pets with you?

**house ______ store**

- **OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE)**
  - While I was working abroad, my parents housed my furniture.
  - You must *house* these papers somewhere dry.
  - His documents were housed in various places.

**house ______ contain**

- **OBJECT**
  - Those buildings *house* government offices.
  - These rooms *house* all of his photographs.
  - The outbuildings *house* his antique automobiles.
  - These drawers *house* thousands of specimens.

- **PASSIVE**
  - The printers are housed in a separate room.
**hurt**

**hurt | hurts · hurt · have hurt**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I hurt</td>
<td>I am hurting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you hurt</td>
<td>you are hurting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it hurts</td>
<td>he/she/it is hurting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The scandal hurts his re-election chances.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>PAST PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I hurt</td>
<td>I was hurting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you hurt</td>
<td>you were hurting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it hurt</td>
<td>he/she/it was hurting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I hurt my knee yesterday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT PERFECT</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... will hurt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST PERFECT</th>
<th>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... had hurt</td>
<td>... will be hurting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST PASSIVE</th>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was hurt</td>
<td>... will have hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were hurt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was hurt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* He was hurt playing football.

**COMPLEMENTS**

hurt be a source of pain

- Mommy, my stomach hurts.
- My shoulder was hurting again.
- This injection may hurt a little.
- The loss of so many jobs has got to hurt.

hurt be in a bad situation

- The entire economy is hurting.

hurt _____ injure, cause pain/harm to

OBJECT

- He hurt his back trying to move the refrigerator.
- Listening to such loud music hurts my ears.
- The new shoes are hurting my feet.
- Would it hurt you to wash the dishes once in a while?
- Her feelings were hurt by what they said.

hurt _____ damage, harm

OBJECT

- A high interest rate will hurt car sales.
- The unusually cold summer has hurt vacation rentals.
- Injuries have hurt our team's chances.
- The recession is hurting sales.
- Such negative criticism would hurt anyone's self-image.
- The dollar has been hurt by high oil prices.
identify | identifies - identified - have identified

**PRESENT**
- I identify you identify he/she/it identifies
- we identify you identify they identify
- * She identifies DNA sources for a lab.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am identifying you are identifying he/she/it is identifying
- we are identifying you are identifying they are identifying
- * They are identifying the plant as a new species.

**PAST**
- I identified you identified he/she/it identified
- we identified you identified they identified
- * I identified two possible suspects.

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... have | has identified

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had identified

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was identified you were identified he/she/it was identified
- we were identified you were identified they were identified
- * He was identified by two eyewitnesses.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**identify ____ establish/classify who/what [someone/something] is**

**OBJECT**
- The police identified the body.
- He can identify every airplane ever made.
- Her book identifies the causes of depression.

**PASSIVE**
- Fortunately, the tumor was identified at an early stage.
- We identified the flower as a kind of daisy.
- The poll identified 55% of likely voters as Democrats.
- The hospital identified my blood type as AB.

**WH-CLAUSE**
- The police identified who took the jewels.
- They never identified whose body it was.
- Can you identify what kind of car it was?
- The lab will identify which blood type it was.

**identify ____ be compatible, associate oneself**

**with OBJECT**
- I always identify with the underdog.
- Voters can identify with her.
- I could never identify with anybody in that movie.
- Las Vegas will always be identified with gambling.

**PASSIVE**
- Grandpa identifies rock music with drugs and immorality.

**identify ____ associate**

**OBJECT + with OBJECT**
- Grandpa identifies rock music with drugs and immorality.

**identify ____ say who one is**

**REFLEXIVE PRONOUN**
- The police asked us to identify ourselves.
ignore | ignores · ignored · have ignored

**PRESENT**
- I ignore    we ignore
- you ignore  you ignore
- he/she/it ignores they ignore
  - He ignores what he doesn't want to hear.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am ignoring we are ignoring
- you are ignoring you are ignoring
- he/she/it is ignoring they are ignoring
  - I am ignoring the heat as best I can.

**PAST**
- I ignored  we ignored
- you ignored you ignored
- he/she/it ignored they ignored
  - We ignored the problem far too long.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was ignoring we were ignoring
- you were ignoring you were ignoring
- he/she/it was ignoring they were ignoring
  - They were ignoring all of our requests.

**FUTURE**
- ... will ignore

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
- ... will be ignoring

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- ... will have ignored

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... have | has ignored

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had ignored

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was ignored we were ignored
- you were ignored you were ignored
- he/she/it was ignored they were ignored
  - His early movies were ignored by the critics.

---

**ignore _____ pay no attention to**

**OBJECT**
- He ignored all the overdue bills.
- Senator Blather ignored the reporters’ questions.
- The taxi drivers there ignore all traffic signals.
- The waiter ignored us the whole evening.
- Economists ignored the warning signs.

**PASSIVE**
- My warnings were totally ignored.

**WH-CLAUSE**
- We can never ignore who he really is.
- He ignored what he had been told.
- Should we just ignore what happened?
**REGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>I illustrate</th>
<th>you illustrate</th>
<th>he/she/it illustrates</th>
<th>Davy illustrates his stories with crayons.</th>
<th>we illustrate</th>
<th>you are illustrating</th>
<th>he/she/it is illustrating</th>
<th>I am illustrating a graphic novel.</th>
<th>present progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present</td>
<td>I illustrate</td>
<td>you illustrate</td>
<td>he/she/it illustrates</td>
<td>Davy illustrates his stories with crayons.</td>
<td>we illustrate</td>
<td>you illustrate</td>
<td>he/she/it is illustrating</td>
<td>I am illustrating a graphic novel.</td>
<td>present progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>I illustrated</td>
<td>you illustrated</td>
<td>he/she/it illustrated</td>
<td>A professional artist illustrated the book.</td>
<td>we illustrated</td>
<td>you illustrated</td>
<td>he/she/it was illustrating</td>
<td>He was just illustrating his point.</td>
<td>past progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>past passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future perfect</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>future perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past passive</td>
<td>I was illustrated</td>
<td>you were illustrated</td>
<td>he/she/it was illustrated</td>
<td>Medieval manuscripts were often beautifully illustrated.</td>
<td>we were illustrated</td>
<td>you were illustrated</td>
<td>they were illustrated</td>
<td>Medieval manuscripts were often beautifully illustrated.</td>
<td>past passive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**ILLUSTRATE**
- explain/decorate with pictures/diagrams
  - Jason illustrates children's books.
  - She illustrates wedding and birth announcements.
  - The company will illustrate any kind of promotional material.
  - Medical textbooks are illustrated at great expense.

**ILLUSTRATE**
- show/explain with examples
  - Good speakers always illustrate their ideas with numerous examples.
  - Henry illustrated his concern about the economy by showing employment data.
  - Preachers have always illustrated their message with parables.
  - Laurie's thesis was cleverly illustrated with personal experiences.
  - Always illustrate what you are trying to say.
  - Peter illustrated how much the project would cost with a series of bar charts.
  - He illustrated whatever point he was making with a carefully chosen example.
**Present**
- I imagine
- you imagine
- he/she/it imagines

**Present Progressive**
- I am imagining
- you are imagining
- he/she/it is imagining

*He always imagines the worst.*

**Past**
- I imagined
- you imagined
- he/she/it imagined

* I never imagined buying food online.

**Past Progressive**
- I was imagining
- you were imagining
- he/she/it was imagining

*I was imagining everything that could go wrong.*

**Present Perfect**
- I have imagined
- you have imagined
- he/she/it has imagined

**Future**
- I will imagine
- you will imagine
- he/she/it will imagine

**Future Progressive**
- I will be imagining
- you will be imagining
- he/she/it will be imagining

**Future Perfect**
- I will have imagined
- you will have imagined
- he/she/it will have imagined

**Past Passive**
- I was imagined
- you were imagined
- he/she/it was imagined

*Such success was never imagined by anyone.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

*imagine ______ suppose, picture, form an idea of*

- **OBJECT**
  - Can you imagine **such a thing**?
  - I cannot imagine **it**.
  - You can imagine **anything you want**.

- **OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN**
  - I could imagine **myself as a college professor**.
  - We can't imagine **our grandparents as teenagers**.
  - Can you imagine **the book as a movie**?

- **OBJECT + (TO BE) PREDICATE NOUN**
  - I imagined **their house (to be) a grand mansion**.
  - Fred imagined **himself (to be) quite a critic**.
  - Everyone imagines **himself (to be) an honest person**.

- **OBJECT + (TO BE) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**
  - I always imagined **him (to be) very calm**.
  - We never imagined **New York (to be) so noisy**.
  - Larry imagines **himself (to be) very creative**.

- **OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
  - I imagined **myself winning the lottery**.
  - We couldn't imagine **our parents doing such a thing**.
  - Thelma could imagine **Louise driving a truck**.

- **THAT-CLAUSE**
  - I imagine **that you will want to be up early**.
  - Who could imagine **that such a thing would happen**?
  - An optimist always imagines **that things will get better**.

- **WH-CLAUSE**
  - Just imagine **what might have happened**!
  - I can't imagine **how much that would have cost**.
  - Imagine **whatever you like**.

- **PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
  - Can you imagine **acting like that**?
  - I never imagined **doing so well on the test**.
  - Who hasn't imagined **winning the lottery**?
**PRESENT**
- I imply
- you imply
- he/she/it implies
  - Silence implies consent.

**PAST**
- I implied
- you implied
- he/she/it implied
  - I never implied any such thing.

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have
- ... has implied

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had implied

**PAST PASSIVE**
- it was implied
- they were implied
  - It was certainly implied by what he said.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**imply**

suggest/indicate without actually saying

**OBJECT**
- His comments imply a willingness to cooperate.
- The tone of the statement implied a relaxation of hostilities.
- Dark clouds always imply rain.
- I don’t think he was necessarily implying anything.

**PASSIVE**
- Their cooperation was definitely implied.

**THAT-CLAUSE**
- He implied that they would cooperate fully.
- The publisher has implied that they might publish my book.
- His knowing smile implies that he understands you perfectly.
- The waiter implied that our table was needed by others.
### improve | improves · improved · have improved

#### PRESENT
- I improve, you improve, he/she/it improves
- I am improving, you are improving, he/she/it is improving

- *The new road improves land values.*

#### PAST
- I improved, you improved, he/she/it improved
- I was improving, you were improving, he/she/it was improving

- *His health improved after he quit his job.*

#### PRESENT PERFECT
- I have improved, you have improved, he/she/it has improved

- *I am improving every day.*

#### PAST PERFECT
- I had improved, you had improved, he/she/it had improved

- *The design was improved by eliminating the frills.*

#### FUTURE
- I will improve, you will improve, he/she/it will improve

- *We were improving the kitchen little by little.*

#### FUTURE PERFECT
- I will have improved, you will have improved, he/she/it will have improved

#### PAST PASSIVE
- He/she/it was improved

- *The quality of the soil was noticeably improving.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**improve** get better
- Paul’s health is improving daily.
- My knee isn’t improving as quickly as I would like.
- The quality of the soil was noticeably improving.
- Sales figures have not improved much lately.
- Our Spanish has improved since we moved to Madrid.

**improve** make better, increase
- The new antenna improved radio reception a lot.
- My new glasses have noticeably improved my vision.
- Urban redevelopment has improved the city’s tax base.
- Reorganization has improved productivity by 25%.

### PHRASAL VERBS

**improve on/upon** make/do better than
- How could you improve on Post-it notes?
- The new website improved on the navigation shortcomings of the old site.
- Your original article has been much improved upon.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>INCLUDE</th>
<th>INCLUDES</th>
<th>INCLUDED</th>
<th>HAVE INCLUDED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I include</td>
<td>we include</td>
<td>you include</td>
<td>he/she/it includes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are including</td>
<td>you are including</td>
<td>they are including</td>
<td><em>The price includes all taxes.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I included</td>
<td>we included</td>
<td>you included</td>
<td>he/she/it included</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were including</td>
<td>you were including</td>
<td>they were including</td>
<td><em>I included some extra brochures.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has included</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had included</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was included</td>
<td>we were included</td>
<td>you were included</td>
<td>he/she/it was included</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were including</td>
<td>you were including</td>
<td>they were including</td>
<td><em>Wine was not included on the fixed-price menu.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I am including</td>
<td>we are including</td>
<td>you are including</td>
<td>he/she/it is including</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are including</td>
<td>you are including</td>
<td>they are including</td>
<td><em>I am including everyone who wants to come.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was including</td>
<td>we were including</td>
<td>you were including</td>
<td>he/she/it was including</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were including</td>
<td>you were including</td>
<td>they were including</td>
<td><em>They were including service charges on their bills.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>... will be including</td>
<td>... will be including</td>
<td>... will be including</td>
<td>... will have included</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... will have included</td>
<td>... will have included</td>
<td>... will have included</td>
<td>... will have included</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**include** _____ have as part of a whole, contain [NOT USED IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]

**OBJECT**
- The bid includes **parts and materials**.
- The nucleus includes **both protons and neutrons**.
- Their family includes **two adopted children**.
- The treaty can only include **what both sides agree to**.

**include** _____ make a part of, add

**OBJECT**
- Did you include **ketchup and mustard** on the shopping list?
- He is including **wind technology** in the nation's energy policy.
- We have to include **all the aunts and uncles**.
- A number of out-of-town friends and relatives were included on the guest list.

**WH-CLAUSE**
- You can include **whomever you want to invite**.
- I will include **whatever else you need**.
increase | increases · increased · have increased

PRESENT
I increase
you increase
he/she/it increases
* Rainfall increases as you move east.

PRESENTE PROGRESSIVE
I am increasing
you are increasing
he/she/it is increasing
* I am increasing my original estimate.

PAST
I increased
you increased
he/she/it increased
* His popularity increased over the years.

PAST PROGRESSIVE
I was increasing
you were increasing
he/she/it was increasing
* Costs were increasing every month.

PRESENT PERFECT
... have | has increased

PAST PERFECT
... had increased

PAST PASSIVE

it was increased
they were increased
* My salary was increased by 10%.

COMPLEMENTS

increase become larger/greater/faster
Computing capacity increases every year.
New housing starts have not increased for a year.
At first, family size increases with income.
Power generation has increased 20% a year for a decade.
Population increases at a geometric rate.
The hurricane's speed is increasing as it moves away from Florida.

increase _____ make larger/greater/faster, add to
OBJECT
Can you increase the power?
Senator Blather wants to increase his popularity.
We should increase the kids' allowance.
Replacing the pipe will increase the flow rate.
He wanted to increase the minimum wage from $5.15 an hour to $7.25.
They increased processor speed while decreasing power consumption.

PASSIVE
Plant growth can be increased by improved fertilizers.
### Verb Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Progressive</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td>I indicate</td>
<td>I am indicating</td>
<td>I indicated</td>
<td>I was indicating</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... will indicate</td>
<td>... will be indicating</td>
<td>... will have indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>you indicate</td>
<td>you are indicating</td>
<td>you indicated</td>
<td>you were indicating</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... will indicate</td>
<td>... will be indicating</td>
<td>... will have indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>he/she/it</strong></td>
<td>he/she/it indicates</td>
<td>he/she/it is indicating</td>
<td>he/she/it indicated</td>
<td>he/she/it was indicating</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... will indicate</td>
<td>... will be indicating</td>
<td>... will have indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>we</strong></td>
<td>we indicate</td>
<td>we are indicating</td>
<td>we indicated</td>
<td>we were indicating</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... will indicate</td>
<td>... will be indicating</td>
<td>... will have indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong></td>
<td>you indicate</td>
<td>you are indicating</td>
<td>you indicated</td>
<td>you were indicating</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... will indicate</td>
<td>... will be indicating</td>
<td>... will have indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>he/she/it</strong></td>
<td>he/she/it indicates</td>
<td>he/she/it is indicating</td>
<td>he/she/it indicated</td>
<td>he/she/it was indicating</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... will indicate</td>
<td>... will be indicating</td>
<td>... will have indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>they</strong></td>
<td>they indicate</td>
<td>they are indicating</td>
<td>they indicated</td>
<td>they were indicating</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... will indicate</td>
<td>... will be indicating</td>
<td>... will have indicated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*His temperature indicates an infection.*

*He is indicating that he will not accept the award.*

*Economic signs were indicating a mild recession.*

*Prompt action was indicated.*

### Complements

**indicate**
- **point to, signify, make known**
  - **OBJECT**
    - The poll indicates **voter dissatisfaction**.
    - The broken window indicated **an intruder**.
    - Warm, wet weather usually indicates **a high-pressure system**.
    - A yellow card indicates **a penalty**.
    - Each blip on the screen indicates **one aircraft**.
  - **THAT-CLAUSE**
    - That light indicates **that the engine is overheating**.
    - His hesitation indicated **that he was having doubts**.
    - Their laughter indicated **that the kids were having a great time**.
    - All signs indicate **that the economy will rebound**.
  - **WH-CLAUSE**
    - The committee never indicated **whom they would recommend**.
    - The attendant indicated **where we should park**.
    - A sign indicated **how much we should pay**.

**indicate**
- **express**
  - **OBJECT**
    - He indicated **his displeasure** by frowning.
    - The cat indicated **her pleasure** by purring.
    - The suspect indicated **a willingness to cooperate**.
  - **THAT-CLAUSE**
    - I indicated **that I would be more careful**.
    - The coach indicated **that he would meet us after the game**.
    - We politely indicated **that we disagreed**.

**indicate**
- **show/suggest the need for**
  - **OBJECT**
    - A system breakdown indicates **immediate action**.
    - The X-rays indicate **surgery**.
    - The team's poor performance indicated **a coaching change**.
  - **PASSIVE**
    - Intervention was clearly indicated by the circumstances.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td><em>He informs us when a deadline is near.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td><em>I am informing you now.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td><em>I already informed them of the decision.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td><em>We were already informed of the meeting.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td><em>We were informed that the class was already full.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td><em>They will be informing passengers about the delay.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td><em>We will have informed</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**inform** ______ tell, give facts/information to

**OBJECT**

You should inform the staff right away.

When will you inform them?

We can inform all of our suppliers by e-mail.

We were informed just this morning.

The president informed Congress of weapons sales in the Mideast.

The contractor informed Jerry that the tile was unavailable.

The applicant's personality always informs who we hire.

Conservative principles inform what the party stands for.

Her own experience has always informed what she writes about.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**inform on/against** ______ give information about the criminal activity of

Danielle informed on her boss, who was using questionable accounting practices.
### PRESENT
- I insist
- you insist
- he/she/it insists

* He insists that we go ahead without him.

### PAST
- I insisted
- you insisted
- he/she/it insisted

* I always insisted on promptness.

### PRESENT PERFECT
- ... have insisted

### PAST PERFECT
- ... had insisted

### FUTURE
- ... will insist

### FUTURE PERFECT
- ... will have insisted

### PAST PASSIVE
- it was insisted
- they were insisted

* Additional security was insisted on.

## COMPLEMENTS

**insist claim forcefully**

- THAT-CLAUSE
  - I insisted **that I had made a reservation.**
  - We insisted **that there had been some mistake.**
  - They insisted **that the roads were too icy to drive on.**

**insist demand strongly**

- on/upon OBJECT
  - He always insists **on the aisle seat.**
  - We insisted **on a table near the window.**
  - They didn’t insist **on a formal bid.**
  - The president insists **upon integrity** among his cabinet members.
  - A May deadline was insisted upon by the mayor.
  - I insist **that the motion be voted on.**
  - We insisted **that we be seated immediately.**
  - Fiona insists **that she be allowed to say a few words.**
  - The kids insisted **on doing it themselves.**
  - My parents always insist **on arriving an hour early.**
  - They insisted **on taking us out to dinner.**
  - I insist **upon speaking with your manager.**

---

**06 Big Verbs pp 289-342.indd 299**

17-6-2009 3:01:24 AM
install | installs · installed · have installed

**PRESENT**

I install  
you install  
he/she/it installs  
* They install air conditioning systems.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am installing  
you are installing  
he/she/it is installing  
* She is installing the new version of the program.

**PAST**

I installed  
you installed  
he/she/it installed  
* The church installed a new minister.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was installing  
you were installing  
he/she/it was installing  
* She was installing the garbage disposal herself.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

… have | has installed

**PAST PERFECT**

… had installed

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was installed  
you were installed  
he/she/it was installed  
* He was installed as president of the historical society.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**install**  
be (able to be) put in position for use

**ADVERB OF TIME**

Our company’s cable modem installs **in minutes**.

**ADVERB OF PLACE**

The low-flow showerhead installs **in place of the old one**.

**ADVERB OF MANNER**

The spam filter installs **easily on any server**.

**install**  
put in a position/office with a ceremony

**OBJECT**

We installed **a new president** on January 20.

The college has installed **its first African-American dean**.

**OBJECT + AS OBJECT**

They installed **Michelle as the new secretary**.

Michelle was installed **as the new secretary**.

**install**  
put in position for use

**OBJECT**

Don installed **flooring** until his knees gave out.

We need to install **new locks** on all exterior doors.

Casey will install **a new dishwasher** this weekend.

My daughter installed **a new operating system** on my computer.

Dad had installed **three different antivirus programs** on his computer.
### REGULAR

**intend** | **intends** · **intended** · **have intended**

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>intend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>intend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>intends</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He intends to start the meeting at eight.*

#### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am intending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are intending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is intending</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I am intending for Larry to assist us.*

#### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>intended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>intended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>intended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I always intended to learn Italian."

#### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>intended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>intended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>intended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *We were intending to go to a movie tonight.*

#### COMPLEMENTS

**intend**

- _plan, have in mind_
  - **for object + infinitive**
    - I intended _for Robert to pick us up._
    - The captain intended _for the squad to hold the bridge._
    - Holmes intended _for Watson to solve the crime._
  - **infinitive**
    - I intend _to take the train to Chicago._
    - We had intended _to leave early._
    - We never intended _to stay so long._
    - _What_ did you intend _to do about it?_

**intend**

- _mean, have for the purpose/use of_
  - **object + as predicate noun**
    - I intended _the book as a present._
    - He intended _the play as social satire._
    - We only intended _the proposal as a first draft._
    - They intended _it as a joke._
    - He intended _the remark as an attack on racism._
    - The remark was intended _as an attack on racism._
  - **passive**
    - We intend _these instructions for beginners._
  - **object + for object**
    - The teacher intended _the punishment for whoever failed to do their homework._
  - **object + for wh-clause**
    - We intend _for these sweaters to be donated to disabled veterans._
  - **for object + infinitive**
    - We intend _for these sweaters to be donated to disabled veterans._
### interest | interests · interested · have interested

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>interest</td>
<td>have interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>interest</td>
<td>you interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>interests</td>
<td>they interest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Your proposal interests me.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>interest</td>
<td>Interest is rarely used in the progressive tenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>interest</td>
<td>Interest is rarely used in the progressive tenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>interests</td>
<td>they interest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Your proposal interests me.*

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>interested</td>
<td>have interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>interested</td>
<td>you interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>interested</td>
<td>they interested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Her talk interested me in learning more.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>interested</td>
<td>Interest is rarely used in the progressive tenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>interested</td>
<td>Interest is rarely used in the progressive tenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>interested</td>
<td>they interested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Her talk interested me in learning more.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>have interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>you have interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>they have interested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Your idea has interested all of us.*

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had interested</td>
<td>had interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>had interested</td>
<td>you had interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>had interested</td>
<td>they had interested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I was really interested in what you were saying.*

**FUTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will interest</td>
<td>will interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will interest</td>
<td>you will interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will interest</td>
<td>they will interest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Your proposal interests me.*

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will be interested</td>
<td>will be interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will be interested</td>
<td>you will be interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will be interested</td>
<td>they will be interested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Your proposal interests me.*

**FUTURE PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have interested</td>
<td>will have interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will have interested</td>
<td>you will have interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will have interested</td>
<td>they will have interested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Your proposal interests me.*

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was interested</td>
<td>we were interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>was interested</td>
<td>you were interested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was interested</td>
<td>they were interested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I was really interested in what you were saying.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**interest**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complement Type</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT</td>
<td>engage the attention/involvement of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Your idea has interested **all of us**.
The game will interest **the children**.
The weather interests **everyone**.

**interest**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complement Type</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT + in OBJECT</td>
<td>cause to become involved with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Can I interest **you in a game of checkers**?
We tried to interest **our son in finding his own apartment**.

OBJECT + in WH-CLAUSE | Passive |
|-----------------------|---------|

The writer tried to interest **them in what he had published**.
I was interested **in what you said**.
introduce | introduces | introduced | have introduced

**Present**

I introduce we introduce
you introduce you introduce
he/she/it introduces they introduce

- He always introduces the speaker.

**Past**

I introduced we introduced
you introduced you introduced
he/she/it introduced they introduced

- They introduced several new products.

**Present Perfect**

... have | has introduced

**Past Perfect**

... had introduced

**Present Progressive**

I am introducing you are introducing
you are introducing they are introducing

- I am introducing them this afternoon.

**Past Progressive**

I was introducing we were introducing
you were introducing you were introducing
he/she/it was introducing they were introducing

- We were introducing ourselves to all the visitors.

**Future**

... will introduce

**Future Progressive**

... will be introducing

**Future Perfect**

... will have introduced

**Past Passive**

I was introduced we were introduced
you were introduced you were introduced
he/she/it was introduced they were introduced

- The legislation was introduced last session.

**Complements**

**introduce**

**Object**

present, announce

Ms. Taylor will introduce the next speaker.
They are going to introduce a new product next week.
Only a member can formally introduce a bill.
The first chapter introduces the main characters.

**Passive**

The speaker was introduced by Ms. Wamhoff.

**introduce**

**Object**

make acquainted

I introduced Ron and Barbara.
When did you introduce the Smiths?
Let me introduce myself to you and your wife.
Our club has introduced a number of young couples.

Ruth and I were never formally introduced.

**introduce**

**Object**

bring into use, bring for the first time

The ancient Greeks introduced writing throughout the Mediterranean world.
The Spanish introduced many new diseases to the New World.
Ships introduce nonnative species of marine organisms to ports when they dock.
John Baskerville introduced a method for producing smooth white paper.

**Passive**

Insulin was introduced in the 1920s.

**introduce**

**Object + to Object**

make familiar with, bring a knowledge of [something] to

My mom introduced me to knitting.
Melvin introduced his friends to archaeology.
Professor Kirby introduced his students to the joys of Latin poetry.
The second graders were introduced to multiplication and division.

**introduce**

**Object + into Object**

insert

Senator Blather introduced humor into the debate.
Scientists introduced the modified genes into potato plants.

**Passive**

Was the virus introduced into Japan?
invite | invites · invited · have invited

**PRESENT**
I invite  
you invite  
he/she/it invites  
* He always invites us to stay for lunch.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am inviting  
you are inviting  
he/she/it is inviting  
* I am not inviting everyone.

**PAST**
I invited  
you invited  
he/she/it invited  
* We invited the Flynns to dinner.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was inviting  
you were inviting  
he/she/it was inviting  
* They were inviting all their old friends.

**PRESENT PERFECT**  … have | has invited
**PAST PERFECT**  … had invited

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was invited  
you were invited  
he/she/it was invited  
* We were invited to the reception.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

invite _____  ask to be one’s guest(s)
OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)

We only invited the committee members.
We invited them home.
They invited us to the concert.
Let’s invite the Muellers over for dinner.
Everyone is invited to Joe’s retirement party.

invite _____  ask politely, request
OBJECT + INFINITIVE

We invited the kids’ friends to swim in the pool.
He invited us to sit down.
The senator invited the reporters to ask questions.
The audience was invited to examine the displays.

invite _____  make likely to happen
OBJECT

Doing that just invites trouble.
The king’s harsh policies invited rebellion.
The rumors will invite financial speculation.
The wet spring invited a plague of mosquitoes.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

invite _____ along/down/in/out/over/up/etc.
ask to be one’s guest in a specified location

Let’s invite the grandkids along on our next vacation.
The McLanes invited the Molitors over for drinks.
Billy Joe invited Mary Sue out for lunch.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>FIRST SINGULAR</th>
<th>FIRST PLURAL</th>
<th>SECOND SINGULAR</th>
<th>SECOND PLURAL</th>
<th>THIRD SINGULAR</th>
<th>THIRD PLURAL</th>
<th>MORE SINGULAR</th>
<th>MORE PLURAL</th>
<th>MORE THIRD SINGULAR</th>
<th>MORE THIRD PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td>I involve</td>
<td>we involve</td>
<td>you involve</td>
<td>you involve</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they involve</td>
<td>I am involving</td>
<td>we are involving</td>
<td>you are involving</td>
<td>they are involving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Her music involves us completely.</td>
<td>* I am not involving you in the project.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>I involved</td>
<td>we involved</td>
<td>you involved</td>
<td>you involved</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they involved</td>
<td>I was involving</td>
<td>we were involving</td>
<td>you were involving</td>
<td>they were involving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* I involved Roderick as little as possible.</td>
<td>* The financial crisis was involving the banks.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PERFECT</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has involved</td>
<td>PAST PERFECT</td>
<td>... had involved</td>
<td>past passive</td>
<td>... were involved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I was involved</td>
<td>we were involved</td>
<td>you were involved</td>
<td>you were involved</td>
<td>he/she/it was involved</td>
<td>they were involved</td>
<td>* We were completely involved.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**involve ___** engage, occupy, affect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
<th>OBJECT + in OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The research involves <strong>him</strong> completely.</td>
<td>The children.</td>
<td>The election has involved <strong>the entire country</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These stupid games totally involve <strong>the children</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The plan involves <strong>a lot of risk</strong>.</td>
<td>The lymph nodes.</td>
<td>The cancer might involve <strong>the lymph nodes</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did the accident involve <strong>any injuries</strong>?</td>
<td></td>
<td>Some danger is involved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The charges involve <strong>filing a false report</strong>.</td>
<td>The attack involved <strong>making a complex flanking movement</strong>.</td>
<td>The job involves <strong>working every other weekend</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The job involves <strong>working every other weekend</strong>.</td>
<td>The play's staging will involve <strong>flying a kite</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The play's staging will involve <strong>flying a kite</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**involve ___** include, entail

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
<th>OBJECT + in OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The plan involves <strong>a lot of risk</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did the accident involve <strong>any injuries</strong>?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The cancer might involve <strong>the lymph nodes</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some danger is involved.</td>
<td>The attack involved <strong>making a complex flanking movement</strong>.</td>
<td>The job involves <strong>working every other weekend</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some danger is involved.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some danger is involved.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some danger is involved.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**involve ___** draw into difficulty/trouble

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
<th>OBJECT + in OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Paying for Sonny’s college involved <strong>us in a lot of debt</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paying for Sonny’s college involved <strong>us in a lot of debt</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paying for Sonny’s college involved <strong>us in a lot of debt</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paying for Sonny’s college involved <strong>us in a lot of debt</strong>.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Present

- **I** issue, am issuing
- **you** issue, are issuing
- **he/she/it** issues, is issuing

*The senator issues press releases nonstop.*

### Past

- **I** issued, was issuing
- **you** issued, were issuing
- **he/she/it** issued, was issuing

*The company issued new stock.*

### Present Perfect

... have | has issued

### Past Perfect

... had issued

*The stamps were first issued in 1945.*

### Future

... will issue

### Future Perfect

... will have issued

### Passive

- **I** was issued
- **you** were issued
- **he/she/it** was issued

*The amendments to the bill were just issued.*

## Complements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Complements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>issue</td>
<td>send out, distribute, make available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT</td>
<td>The officers were issuing a string of frantic orders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The editor issued new assignments to all the reporters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We need to issue new ID cards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The publisher issued a new series of foreign language textbooks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Senator Blather issued an apology.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The National Weather Service has issued a tornado warning for our area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>issue</td>
<td>discharge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT</td>
<td>The pipe issued wastewater into the lake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The brakes were issuing a shower of sparks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The volcano was issuing clouds of toxic gases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>issue</td>
<td>emerge, flow out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM</td>
<td>Blood issued from the gash in his leg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The stream issues out of a spring in the mountains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A wisp of smoke issued from the cave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Additional mistakes issued from the first error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>issue</td>
<td>come about as a result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM</td>
<td>Nothing useful will issue from this seminar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue a call for</th>
<th>request publicly</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Red Cross issued an urgent call for blood donors.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Join

Present
- I join
- you join
- he/she/it joins
- we join
- you join
- they join
- * He always joins us for lunch.

Past
- I joined
- you joined
- he/she/it joined
- we joined
- you joined
- they joined
- * Thompson joined the company.

Present Perfect
- I have joined
- you have joined
- he/she/it has joined
- we have joined
- you have joined
- they have joined

Past Perfect
- I had joined
- you had joined
- he/she/it had joined
- we had joined
- you had joined
- they had joined
- * We were joined by several friends.

Future
- I will join
- you will join
- he/she/it will join
- we will join
- you will join
- they will join

Future Perfect
- I will have joined
- you will have joined
- he/she/it will have joined
- we will have joined
- you will have joined
- they will have joined

Complements
join come together
The two rivers join farther south.
Their voices joined in perfect harmony.
I think the two segments will join nicely.
The two family lines have joined many times.

join connect, link
- object
- passive
We joined the pieces with superglue.
We need to join the two servers.
First, join Part A to Part B.
The two villages are joined by a wooden bridge.

join become a member of
- object
I would like to join a reading group.
They just joined our church.

Phrasal Verbs
join in take part in
Toby loosened his tie and joined in the fun.
Celeste would like to join in the conversation.

join up (with _____) become associated
(with [someone/something])
Some scientists joined up with a local brewery and started “Science on Tap.”

Expressions
join battle begin to fight
The two sides joined battle at 6 A.M.

join forces work together for a purpose
The liberals joined forces to defeat the amendment.

join hands hold one another’s hands
The children joined hands and sang “We Are the World.”

join in marriage/matrimony preside over the marriage of
The minister joined the couple in marriage.

Join the club! You’re in the same situation that I am / we are.
You don’t have money either? Join the club!
### judge

**Present Progressive**

- I am judging
- you are judging
- he/she/it is judging

**Past Progressive**

- I was judging
- you were judging
- he/she/it was judging

**Future**

- I will judge
- you will judge
- he/she/it will judge

**Future Progressive**

- I will be judging
- you will be judging
- he/she/it will be judging

**Future Perfect**

- I will have judged
- you will have judged
- he/she/it will have judged

### COMPLEMENTS

**judge**

- **form an opinion, act as a judge**
  
  He always judges as fairly as he can.
  
  “Judge not, lest ye be judged.” [BIBLE]
  
  “When ye judge between people, judge ye with justice.” [KORAN]

- **hear and decide a legal case**
  
  He has judged several cases in circuit court.
  
  She judged the big copyright appeal.

- **determine, conclude**
  
  How do you judge the load capacity of a bridge?
  
  The experts were unable to judge the value of the painting.
  
  The sheriff judged Bart (to be) a risk to society.
  
  They judged Jim (to be) a skilled negotiator.

- **criticize**
  
  He is always judging people.
  
  You can’t judge them without knowing what happened.
  
  He shouldn’t judge people by how they dress.
  
  Don’t judge me!
  
  My English isn’t perfect, so try not to judge me too harshly.

- **decide the winner of [a contest]**
  
  They now judge Olympic figure skating anonymously.
  
  She was qualified to judge scholastic debates.
  
  Three prominent citizens will judge the local art fair.
**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>jump</td>
<td>we jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>jump</td>
<td>you jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>jumps</td>
<td>they jump</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He jumps at the slightest sound.*

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>jumped</td>
<td>we jumped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>jumped</td>
<td>you jumped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>jumped</td>
<td>they jumped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Oil prices jumped four dollars a barrel.*

**Present Perfect**

| . . . have | has jumped |

**Past Perfect**

| . . . had | jumped    |

**Past Progressive**

| I am jumping | we are jumping |
| you are jumping | you are jumping |
| he/she/it is jumping | they are jumping |

- *The kids are jumping into the pool.*

**Future**

| . . . will jump |

**Future Progressive**

| . . . will be jumping |

**Future Perfect**

| . . . will have jumped |

**Past Passive**

| I was jumped | we were jumped |
| you were jumped | you were jumped |
| he/she/it was jumped | they were jumped |

- *My idea was jumped on by everybody.*

---

**Complements**

**jump**

| spring up, leap up | move suddenly and quickly | move involuntarily, jerk | change suddenly | leap over |

- The kids were jumping with excitement.
- The survivors were jumping and waving their arms.
- The market jumped 200 points in the first hour.
- The price of groceries jumped 17% in two years.
- The river level jumped three feet.
- All the kids jumped in the pool at the same time.
- We jumped from rock to rock across the stream.
- I can jump on the bus and be there in 20 minutes.
- I jumped into bed right after supper.
- The cat jumped from the table onto my lap.
- The skydivers jumped from 12,000 feet.
- My left eye was jumping uncontrollably.
- The computer screen was jumping every few seconds.
- He has jumped from one job to another.
- He jumped the fence and ran across the field.
- Their new product has really jumped the competition.

**Phrasal Verbs**

**Jump down/in/off/out/ up/ etc.**

| leap in a specified direction | My friend opened the car door and said, “Jump in.” |
|                              | Pookie the cat liked to jump up on the top edge of a door and meow at us. |
|                              | The players were jumping up and down along the sidelines. |

**Jump at**

| seize enthusiastically | Melanie jumped at the chance to teach music. |

**Jump in**

| join a conversation | We were talking about our favorite books, and Jeremy immediately jumped in. |

**Jump in/into/on**

| become quickly involved in | His assistants jumped into the problem of homelessness. |
|                           | The reporters jumped on the story about the mayor’s resignation. |

**Jump on**

| criticize severely | The committee jumped on his income-tax proposal. |
justify

**Present**
- I justify
- you justify
- he/she/it justifies
* He always justifies himself.

**Past**
- I justified
- you justified
- he/she/it justified
* He clearly justified his actions.

**Present Perfect**
- I have justified
- you have justified
- he/she/it has justified

**Future**
- I will justify
- you will justify
- he/she/it will justify

**Passive**
- I am justified
- you are justified
- he/she/it was justified
* The manager's decision was justified.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**Object**
- You need to justify your claim.
- I can't justify Larry's rude behavior.
- I have to justify my trip expenses.

**Passive**
- Senator Blather tried to justify his wild accusations against his opponent.
- Her response was completely justified.

**Wh-clause**
- I can fully justify what I did.
- The repairman justified how much he was charging.
- You must justify whatever changes you made in the contract.

**Present Participle**
- Nobody can justify behaving like that.
- I can't justify buying a new computer.
- We need to justify hiring a temp.
- How can they justify going so far over budget?

**Position**
- I don't like the ragged look of this paragraph. Justify it left and right.
## keep | keeps · kept · have kept

### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>keep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>keep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>keeps</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **He keeps his keys in the top drawer.**

### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am keeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are keeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is keeping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **I am keeping his letters.**

### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **I kept careful records of all the expenses.**

### PAST PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was keeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were keeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was keeping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **We were keeping the grandchildren for the weekend.**

### PRESENT PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have kept</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had kept</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PAST PASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was kept</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **His antique autos were kept in immaculate condition.**

### COMPLEMENTS

**keep**

- **remain in good condition,**
- **remain the same**

The yogurt will keep for days.  
How long will meat keep in the freezer?  
No secret keeps for very long.  
Will the work keep until tomorrow?

**keep _____ hold in one’s possession, retain**

**OBJECT**

- We kept all of our children’s letters.  
  Keep the change.  
  The quarterback kept the ball.

**keep _____ store**

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**

- We keep all of our cash in a safe.  
  Where do you keep the potato chips?  
  We’re keeping the extra envelopes in this drawer.

**keep _____ maintain, take care of**

**OBJECT**

- Everyone used to keep a garden.  
  Are you going to keep your subscription to the magazine?  
  You need to keep good records.

**keep _____ continue in an activity/position/condition**

**PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**

- The soldiers kept ready.  
  Keep warm!  
  Amazingly, the children kept quiet.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

- Keep working!  
  The people behind us kept talking throughout the concert.  
  The company kept losing money.

**keep _____ cause to continue in an activity/position/condition**

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**

- Keep your hands over your head!  
  I kept my eyes on the road.  
  Kids! Keep your hands to yourselves.  
  The doctor kept Alice in the hospital two days longer.

**OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN**

- The president kept Wilson as ambassador to Great Britain.  
  The team kept Charlie as captain.  
  The new company kept Chris as office manager.
keep | keeps · kept · have kept

**keep _____** cause to continue in an activity/position/condition [continued]

**OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**

- The soldiers kept **their weapons ready**.
- Keep **your feet dry**!
- Please try to keep **the room clean**.
- The secretary kept **the file secret**.
- The sergeant kept **the men digging trenches**.
- Keep **them talking**!
- He always kept us **laughing at his silly jokes**.
- Keep **me informed** about the merger.

**OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

- The soldiers kept **their weapons ready**.
- Keep **your feet dry**!
- Please try to keep **the room clean**.
- The secretary kept **the file secret**.
- The sergeant kept **the men digging trenches**.
- Keep **them talking**!
- He always kept us **laughing at his silly jokes**.
- Keep **me informed** about the merger.

**OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE**

- The hotel keeps **a large housekeeping staff**.
- John always keeps **his word**.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- Keep away/back/down/in/off/out/etc. remain in a specified location
  - Keep **away** from the edge of the bluff.
  - My parents are coming—**keep down**!
  - Can you keep the squirrels away from the corn?
  - It's raining; keep the children in.
  - The teacher keeps after us about our homework.
  - You're doing a great job. **Keep it up**!
  - Keep on writing—the paper's due tomorrow. **Keep up the good work**.
  - We're trying to keep our grocery bill down.
  - When I had the flu, I couldn't keep food down.
  - **Keep down** limit.
  - I could hardly keep from laughing at his costume.
  - His counselor kept him from using drugs.
  - **Keep down** not vomit.
  - I tried to keep myself from screaming at him.

- Keep **after/at _____ nang, harass**
  - Keep after/at us nagging, harassing.

- Keep **at/on/up _____ continue [doing]**
  - Keep at/on/up us continuing our discussion.

- Keep **SEP down** limit
  - He kept down his voice.
  - He was trying to keep the noise down.
  - I'm trying to keep my weight down.

- Keep **SEP down** not vomit
  - I couldn't keep down my food.

- Keep **(oneself) from _____ prevent oneself from [doing something]**
  - You must keep yourself from getting into trouble.
  - My sister keeps herself from getting into trouble.
  - I could hardly keep from laughing at his costume.

- Keep **[someone] from _____ prevent [someone] from [doing something]**
  - He kept his children from watching TV.
  - Keep your children from watching TV.

- Keep **SEP in/inside suppress**
  - He kept his anger inside.
  - She kept her anger inside until he left.
  - The boss hopes to keep all the systems analysts on.

- Keep **_____ on continue to employ**
  - Keep her on the payroll.
  - The boss hopes to keep all the systems analysts on.

- Keep **_____ on continue to operate**
  - Keep the radio on all night long.
  - We've been keeping the radio on all night long.
  - Keep the radio on all night long.
  - It's cold in here; I'll keep my coat on.

- Keep **SEP on continue to wear [clothing]**
  - I keep on wearing my coat.
  - She keeps on wearing her coat.
  - Derek keeps the radio on all night long.

- Keep **SEP out provide protection from**
  - This jacket should keep out the rain and wind.
  - We have managed to keep up our family traditions.

- Keep **out of _____ not become involved in**
  - My sisters are arguing, and I'm keeping out of it.

- Keep **to [oneself] avoid being with other people**
  - The author keeps to himself.

- Keep **_____ to [oneself] not tell**
  - Be sure to keep this to yourself.

- Keep **SEP up maintain**
  - It's not easy for Grandpa to keep up a large house.
  - We have managed to keep up our family traditions.

- Keep up (with _____) stay even (with [someone/something])
  - It's hard to keep up with our rich neighbors.
  - We have managed to keep up our family traditions.
## kill | kills · killed · have killed

### PRESENT
- **I** kill
- **you** kill
- **he/she/it** kills

  - *He kills the engine when he brakes.*

### Past
- **I killed**
- **you killed**
- **he/she/it killed**

  - *The Senate killed the bill.*

### Present Perfect
- **... have | has killed**

### Past Perfect
- **... was | had killed**

### Future
- **... will kill**

### Future Perfect
- **... will have killed**

### Passive
- **I was killed**
- **you were killed**
- **he/she/it was killed**

  - *The deer were killed by wolves.*

### Complements

**kill** cause to die

- **OBJECT** Someone had killed *the night watchman.*
- **OBJECT** Beetles are killing *pine trees* all over the West.
- **OBJECT** The cancer can only be killed by radiation.

**kill** stop, shut off, put an end to

- **OBJECT** Jeff killed *the motor.*
  - **OBJECT** Kill *the lights,* will you?
  - **OBJECT** The scandal killed *any chance for his re-election.*
  - **OBJECT** The company killed *the ad campaign.*
  - **OBJECT** It might kill *the pain.*
  - **OBJECT** Our competition was just killed by our new product.

**kill** pass [time] idly [INFORMAL]

- **OBJECT** They killed *time* looking through old magazines.
  - **OBJECT** You have *an hour* to kill before the appointment.

**kill** cause extreme pain/unhappiness to [INFORMAL]

- **OBJECT** These shoes are killing *me.*
  - **OBJECT** Turn the music down—the noise is killing *me.*
  - **OBJECT** Working for a boss like Stanley was killing *her.*

**kill** entertain very well [INFORMAL]

- **OBJECT** She just killed *her audience.*

**kill** perform very well on [INFORMAL]

- **OBJECT** You killed *the exam!*

### Phrasal Verbs

**kill for** go to extremes to get

- **OBJECT** I would kill for some frozen custard right now.

**kill sep off** cause the death of most/all of a group

- **OBJECT** Our neighbor killed off all the dandelions in his yard.
  - **OBJECT** Dinosaurs were killed off 65 million years ago.

### Expressions

**kill two birds with one stone** accomplish two tasks with a single action

- **OBJECT** I’ll kill two birds with one stone by dropping the package off on my way to the grocery store.
**Present**
- I kneel
- you kneel
- he/she/it kneels

*The priest always kneels before the altar.*

**Past**
- I knelt/kneeled
- you knelt/kneeled
- he/she/it knelt/kneeled

*The clergy all knelt in prayer.*

**Present Progressive**
- I am kneeling
- you are kneeling
- he/she/it is kneeling

*He is kneeling to reach something under the bed.*

**Past Progressive**
- I was kneeling
- you were kneeling
- he/she/it was kneeling

*The soldiers were kneeling behind the wall.*

**Present Perfect**
- ... have knelt/kneeled

**Past Perfect**
- ... had knelt/kneeled

**Future**
- ... will kneel

**Future Progressive**
- ... will be kneeling

**Future Perfect**
- ... will have knelt/kneeled

**Past Passive**

*Kneel* is never used in the passive voice.

---

**Complements**

- **kneel** *be/rest on one’s knee(s)*
  - Laying floor tiles kept me kneeling all afternoon.
  - The policeman was kneeling on one knee when he fired his pistol.

- **kneel** *show respect/submission by being/resting on one’s knee(s)*
  - The king forced the rebels to kneel.
  - The nuns knelt before the cross.
  - He knelt before the king to be knighted.
  - They all knelt in prayer.

---

**Phrasal Verbs**

- **kneel down** *go down on one’s knee(s)*
  - I knelt down to pick up the kids’ toys.
  - We all had to kneel down to get through the low doorway.
### Present Progressive

- I am knitting
- you are knitting
- he/she/it is knitting
- we are knitting
- they are knitting

*She is knitting a wool baby blanket.*

### Past Progressive

- I was knitting
- you were knitting
- he/she/it was knitting
- we were knitting
- they were knitting

*He was knitting his hands together.*

### Future

- will knit
- will be knitting
- will have knit

### Past Passive

- it was knit
- they were knit

*The wall hanging was knit in Scotland.*

---

#### Complements

**knit** create fabric/clothing by interlocking loops of yarn/thread together with needles

She knits as a full-time occupation.

A lot of people knit for charity organizations.

My mother knits when she watches TV.

The broken bone will eventually knit and become strong.

Our neighborhood gradually knit into a close community.

**knit** join, grow together

I am knitting a wool sweater for a child in Kazakhstan.

Could you knit a pair of socks for me?

The afghan was knit by my grandmother.

The tree had knitted its roots into a solid mass.

I knit my fingers to form a shallow bowl.

A cast may be required to knit the broken bone together.

The major had knit the unit into an effective force.

**knit** create by interlocking loops of yarn/thread together with needles

**object**

I am knitting a wool sweater for a child in Kazakhstan.

Could you knit a pair of socks for me?

The afghan was knit by my grandmother.

The tree had knitted its roots into a solid mass.

I knit my fingers to form a shallow bowl.

A cast may be required to knit the broken bone together.

The major had knit the unit into an effective force.

**knit** cause to join / grow together

**object**

I am knitting a wool sweater for a child in Kazakhstan.

Could you knit a pair of socks for me?

The afghan was knit by my grandmother.

The tree had knitted its roots into a solid mass.

I knit my fingers to form a shallow bowl.

A cast may be required to knit the broken bone together.

The major had knit the unit into an effective force.

---

#### Phrasal Verbs

**knit up** make a knitted item, repair by knitting

This yarn knits up well.

That scarf pattern knits up quickly.

“Sleep that knits up the ravell’d sleeve of care.”

[SHAKESPEARE]

---

#### Expressions

**knit [one’s] brow(s)** wrinkle one’s eyebrows

Colin knits his brow when he’s thinking.
Present Progressive

I am knocking
you are knocking
he/she/it is knocking

* He is knocking on everyone's door.

Past Progressive

I was knocking
you were knocking
he/she/it was knocking

* The engine was knocking pretty badly.

Future

... will knock

Future Progressive

... will be knocking

Future Perfect

... will have knocked

Past Passive

I was knocked
you were knocked
he/she/it was knocked

* He was knocked down by a passing motorcycle.

knock

**knock | knocks · knocked · have knocked**

**COMPLEMENTS**

knock

make a pounding/tapping noise

The radiator in our room is knocking again.
The engine knocks when you go more than 45 miles an hour.
We have a woodpecker that knocks loudly every morning.

knock ______ strike/drive

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

Casey knocked the pitch into left field.
I knocked the water glass onto the floor.
The explosion knocked the soldiers off their feet.
I accidentally knocked the vase out of her hand.

knock ______ criticize [INFORMAL]

OBJECT

Politicians are always knocking their opponents.
The critics really knocked his last movie.

knock ______ rap with one's knuckles/fist

OBJECT

I knocked on George's door, but no one answered.
I knocked on the desk to get everyone's attention.

knock ______ make by hitting

OBJECT

The carpenter knocked a hole in the wall.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

knock __ SEP__ down demolish

Workers knocked down the vacant building.
The kids knocked the chair down as they ran past.

knock __ SEP__ down hit and cause to fall

The bully knocked him down with a single punch.
We're going to knock off at 4 o'clock.

knock off stop working

The car dealer knocked $1,000 off the sticker price.
I convinced the manager to knock off 20% from the bill.

knock __ SEP__ off reduce the amount by

How many afghans can you knock off in a week?
Gerry can knock out 25 rolling pins in a day.

knock __ SEP__ off/out make quickly

The ice storm knocked out electricity in our neighborhood.

knock __ SEP__ out cause to stop working

The blow to the head knocked him out.

knock __ SEP__ out exhaust

Running five miles has really knocked me out.

knock __ SEP__ out make unconscious

Don't knock yourself out on this project.

knock [oneself] __ SEP__ out work to exhaustion

The price increase knocked me over.
**IRREGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>know</th>
<th>knows · knew · have known</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I know</td>
<td><strong>Know</strong> is never used in the progressive tenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you know</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it knows</td>
<td>they know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He always knows what to say.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I knew</td>
<td><strong>Know</strong> is never used in the progressive tenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you knew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it knew</td>
<td>they knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* I knew Ben in graduate school.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have known</td>
<td>... had known</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we were known</td>
<td>... will know</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were known</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was known</td>
<td>they were known</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The problem was known years ago.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**know**  
*be aware / have knowledge of something*

*“How old is she?”  “I don’t know.”*  
*“Do you think he knows?”  “I am sure he doesn’t know.”*

**know ____**  
*be aware*

**about/of OBJECT (+ INFINITIVE)**

*We have known about his cancer for several months.  
Do you know about his refusal to sell the house?  
I don’t know of another doctor to call.*

**know ____**  
*be aware of, realize, have information about*

**OBJECT**

*I know the answer.  
Tracy knows a lot about my personal history.  
We know the place you mean.  
His password was known only by his wife.  
I know him to be an honest person.  
We have known the senator to give better speeches.  
The company has been known to take big risks before.  
We knew that it was going to be bad.  
They should have known that we were leaving early.  
Does he know that we are waiting?  
I know what you mean.  
Do the tourists know where they are going?  
Do you know why he lied to you?  
I don’t know how much it costs.  
He knows whom to ask.  
Do you know where to go?  
I know how to do it.*

**PASSIVE**

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

**PASSIVE**

**THAT-CLAUSE**

**WH-CLAUSE**

**WH-INFINITIVE**

**know ____**  
*have in one’s memory*

**OBJECT**

*Most of the actors know their lines well.  
I knew your father in college.  
She knows everybody in the organization.  
We knew her as Liddy when we were kids.*

**know ____**  
*be acquainted/familiar with*

**OBJECT**

**OBJECT + as OBJECT**

**know ____**  
*recognize*

**OBJECT**

*I’d know his voice anywhere.*
lack

lack | lacks · lacked · have lacked

Present
I lack
you lack
he/she/it lacks
* He lacks the tools to do the job right.

Past
I lacked
you lacked
he/she/it lacked
* We lacked the necessary resources.

Present Perfect
... have | has lacked
Past Perfect
... had lacked

Past Passive
Lack is rarely used in the passive voice.

Present Progressive
I am lacking
you are lacking
he/she/it is lacking
* The expedition is lacking both food and water.

Past Progressive
I was lacking
you were lacking
he/she/it was lacking
* Up-to-the-minute information was lacking.

Future
... will lack
Future Progressive
... will be lacking
Future Perfect
... will have lacked

COMPLEMENTS

lack be missing, not be enough [used only in the progressive tenses]

We need to make a decision, but solid information is lacking.

lack be missing, not have (enough of), need

We lack just about everything we need.
The apartment lacks adequate closet space.
We never lacked confidence in our abilities.
The team has always lacked a good defense.
Is there anything that you lack?

for object [usually negative]
The downtown area doesn't lack coffee shops, I see.

Hadley doesn't lack confidence, that's for sure.

in object [used only in the progressive tenses]

Herman is lacking in confidence.
My old kitchen was lacking in storage space.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronouns</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I last</td>
<td><em>The concert lasts about two hours.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you last</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it lasts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I am lasting</td>
<td><em>The meeting is lasting longer than I expected.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you are lasting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it is lasting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I lasted</td>
<td><em>The recession lasted 18 months.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you lasted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it lasted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I was lasting</td>
<td><em>The traffic jam was lasting for hours.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were lasting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>he/she/it was lasting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... will last</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... will be lasting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... will have lasted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Last is never used in the passive voice.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

*last* continue, endure

His Olympic record will never last.
The supplies were lasting pretty well.
Their remarkable success can’t last.
The ice cream can’t last in this heat.

*last _____* continue, endure *for a specified period of time*

**ADVERB OF TIME**

All of our classes last **50 minutes**.
This far north, the sunsets seem to last **forever**.
Football games last **60 minutes**.
Marie can’t last **a whole day** without ice cream.
Brick lasts **longer** than vinyl siding.
This car will last **10 years** if you take care of it.
**How long** can a cricket game last?

*last _____* be available to *for a specified period of time*

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF TIME**

The water will last **you about two days**.
Our supplies will not last **us forever**.
Fifty pounds of dog food will last **them about a month**.
**How long** will the gasoline last **the convoy**?
### laugh

**laugh | laughs · laughed · have laughed**

#### SUBTENSE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Present Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I laugh</td>
<td>I am laughing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you laugh</td>
<td>you are laughing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it laughs</td>
<td>he/she/it is laughing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* She laughs a lot at my stories.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* I'm not laughing anymore.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I laughed</td>
<td>I was laughing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you laughed</td>
<td>you were laughing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it laughed</td>
<td>he/she/it was laughing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* I laughed so hard that my sides hurt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... was having</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... has laughed</td>
<td>... had laughed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past Passive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was laughed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we were laughed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were laughed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was laughed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* His crazy scheme was laughed at.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**laugh**

- chuckle/giggle loudly
- be amused by
  - at object
  - at wh-clause
  - at present participle
- mock, make fun of
  - at object
  - passive
  - at wh-clause

**laugh**

- sep. off dismiss as silly
  - They laughed off my warnings about snakes near the campsite.
  - The actress laughed off recent reports about her love life.

### PHRASAL VERBS

- laugh sep. off dismiss as silly
  - They laughed off my warnings about snakes near the campsite.
  - The actress laughed off recent reports about her love life.

### EXPRESSIONS

- He who laughs last, laughs best/longest.
  - Jonathan stole my girlfriend, but I’ll get her back. He who laughs last, laughs best.
- laugh all the way to the bank make a lot of money doing something that others consider foolish
  - People criticize the actress for her outrageous behavior, but she’s laughing all the way to the bank.
- laugh [one’s] head off laugh loudly and hard
  - Be ready to laugh your head off when Pete’s around.
- laugh [oneself] silly laugh loudly and hard
  - I laugh myself silly when I read Mark Twain’s sketches.
**lay | lays · laid · have laid**

**REGULAR**

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I lay</td>
<td>He usually lays his keys on his desk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you lay</td>
<td>He laid them somewhere else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it lays</td>
<td>The wet clothing was laid over bushes to dry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I laid</td>
<td>He laid the spreadsheets across the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you laid</td>
<td>The presents were laid neatly under the Christmas tree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it laid</td>
<td>The bird had laid a pair of eggs in the oak tree.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>I laid the blankets on the foot of the bed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... has</td>
<td>He had just laid my head on the pillow when the phone rang.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... had</td>
<td>The government's plans for a new world federation were laid.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it was laid</td>
<td>The chickens were laying eggs normally again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they were laid</td>
<td>The boss laid into the sales staff at the meeting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**Note:** For the differences between *lay* and *lie*, see the note in the Complements section of verb No. 290.

**lay ______ put down**

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**

**PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lay ______ put in position, build</td>
<td>Workers are laying the foundation for a new office building.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay ______ prepare</td>
<td>The governments laid plans for a new world federation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay ______ attribute</td>
<td>I lay his mistake to youth and inexperience.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT + TO OBJECT</td>
<td>Tanya lays her success to her high school English teacher's advice.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**lay ______ produce and push out [eggs]**

**OBJECT**

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**lay **SEP** aside/back/down/out/etc. put in a specified location**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sep</td>
<td>The student laid his book bag down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Would you lay the pamphlets out on the table?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The teacher laid down the rules for playground behavior.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**lay **SEP** aside abandon**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sep</td>
<td>The president asked the senators to lay aside their differences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>She laid aside $100 a month for her son's college education.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There's a snowstorm coming; we should lay in plenty of food.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**lay **SEP** aside/away save, put away for future use**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sep</td>
<td>She laid aside $100 a month for her son's college education.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There's a snowstorm coming; we should lay in plenty of food.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**lay **SEP** down impose, state clearly**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sep</td>
<td>The teacher laid down the rules for playground behavior.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There's a snowstorm coming; we should lay in plenty of food.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**lay in/up _____ store for future use**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in/up</td>
<td>She laid up canned goods for the winter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**lay into _____ criticize strongly**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The boss laid into the sales staff at the meeting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
lay into _____ consume voraciously

lay off (_____) stop teasing/criticizing [INFORMAL]

lay off _____ stop doing/consuming

lay __sep__ off stop employing, often temporarily

lay _____ on [someone] present to [someone]

lay _____ on [someone] blame [someone] for

lay __sep__ on apply

lay __sep__ out explain

lay __sep__ out design, plan, organize

lay out _____ spend

lay over make a stop during a trip

lay ____ up confine, keep from normal activities

Did you see how Bill laid into the barbecued chicken?

Lay off, will you?

I wish they would lay off my drag racing.

You should lay off video games for a while.

I’m laying off candy until after my next doctor’s visit.

The company laid off 1,200 programmers.

Let me lay my latest moneymaking scheme on you.

Don’t let Bridget lay the whole crisis on you.

Parents really know how to lay on the guilt when you’ve done something wrong.

He laid out the campaign strategy to the senator’s inner circle.

Would you lay out the summer catalog for us?

How much money did you lay out for your new computer?

We had to lay over at O’Hare Airport for four hours before continuing to Anchorage.

The knee injury laid him up for two months.

The mumps laid the boy up for two weeks.

EXPRESSIONS

lay a finger on _____ touch lightly

lay _____ at [someone’s] door/feet blame [someone] for

lay claim to _____ state that one has a right to

lay down [one’s] life sacrifice one’s life

lay down the law speak sternly

lay eyes on _____ look at, usually for the first time

lay hold of _____ grasp, understand

lay __sep__ in ruins, lay waste to _____

lay __sep__ to waste destroy completely

lay it on (thick) exaggerate

lay it on the line make something very clear

lay _____ to blame [something] for

If he lays a finger on my computer, I’m calling the police.

My supervisor laid the scheduling conflict at my door.

The Spanish government laid claim to the island. Prairie du Rocher lays claim to the title of the oldest continuous white settlement in Illinois.

The soldier laid down his life for us and our country.

Ned’s father laid down the law about drinking and driving.

We fell in love the first time we laid eyes on each other.

“We must lay hold of the fact that economic laws are not made by nature. They are made by human beings.” [FRANKLIN D. ROOSEVELT]

The Roman army laid Jerusalem in ruins in 70 A.D.

The hurricane laid waste to the entire coast.

The tour guide really lays it on thick about the superiority of Wisconsin cheese.

Our teacher laid it on the line: Attend every class or fail the course.

The company laid the power outage to a lightning strike.
**lead | leads · led · have led**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lead</td>
<td>we lead</td>
<td>I lead the accounting department.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you lead</td>
<td>you lead</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it leads</td>
<td>they lead</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am leading</td>
<td>we are leading</td>
<td>He is leading the investigation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are leading</td>
<td>you are leading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is leading</td>
<td>they are leading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I led</td>
<td>we led</td>
<td>Our policy led to considerable success.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you led</td>
<td>you led</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it led</td>
<td>they led</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was leading</td>
<td>we were leading</td>
<td>We were leading until the last minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were leading</td>
<td>you were leading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was leading</td>
<td>they were leading</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>I have never led before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has led</td>
<td>I can’t lead until I know where we are going.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had led</td>
<td>In a formal dance, it is customary for the gentleman to lead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The Giants are leading for the first time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>He has led in every tournament he has played this year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMPLEMENTS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>guide</td>
<td>He leads the league in goals scored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>be first/ahead (in a competition)</td>
<td>The Giants are leading for the first time. He has led in every tournament he has played this year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>be ahead of, be at the head of object</td>
<td>He leads the league in goals scored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>be in charge of object</td>
<td>Admiral Butler is leading the task force.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>go [in a direction, to a place]</td>
<td>This road leads to my Uncle’s farm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>lead guide, conduct</td>
<td>The path leads back home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>result in to object</td>
<td>His proposal will lead to disaster.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>cause, influence object + infinitive</td>
<td>The weather forecast led them to cancel their trip.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>live, spend [time] object</td>
<td>A viral infection can lead to pneumonia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>result in to object</td>
<td>Four years of college leads to a bachelor’s degree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead</td>
<td>live, spend [time] object</td>
<td>Our cats led pampered lives.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PHRASAL VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lead</th>
<th>away/back/down/in/on/out/etc.</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lead</td>
<td>guide in a specified direction</td>
<td>The police led the suspect away.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The sergeant led the soldiers out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## lean

### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>lean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>lean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>lean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* His head always leans to the left.

### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>am leaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>are leaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is leaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I am leaning toward Senator Blather.

### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>leaned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>leaned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>leaned</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I never leaned on anybody for help.

### PAST PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>was leaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were leaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was leaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The ladder was leaning dangerously.

### COMPLEMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>definition</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bend/tilt to one side</td>
<td>The Christmas tree is leaning toward the fireplace.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest [on/against]</td>
<td>The sailboat leaned steeply as the breeze freshened.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADVERB OF PLACE</td>
<td>After the storm, the wharf was leaning and about to collapse.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favor, tend</td>
<td>The wheat was leaning in the wind.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM</td>
<td>The hikers leaned into the howling storm.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PHRASAL VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>definition</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>back/down/forward/off/out/over/etc. bend ([something]) in a specified direction</td>
<td>He leaned back and laughed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lean on</td>
<td>rely on for advice/support</td>
<td>Doris is leaning on her parents for tuition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Regular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I leap</td>
<td>Superman leaps tall buildings with ease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I leaped/leapt</td>
<td>He leapt at every opportunity he got.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>I am leaping</td>
<td>The frogs are leaping all over the place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>I was leaping</td>
<td>They were leaping out of the basket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>The wall was leaped over without any difficulty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>He hurt his leg. He can't leap.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Irregular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td>Superman leaps tall buildings with ease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Progressive</td>
<td>... will be</td>
<td>The frogs are leaping all over the place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>... will have</td>
<td>The wall was leaped over without any difficulty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**leap**

*jump, spring*

- He leaps whenever anybody says “Boo!”
- The kids were all leaping with excitement.
- Antelope were leaping across the savannah.
- The fish were leaping like crazy.
- Our Siamese cat leapt onto Grandmother’s lap.
- He hurt his leg. He can’t leap.
- The defensive player leapt and intercepted the ball.
- The basketball player leaped and slammed the ball into the net.
- I leaped as high as I could.

**leap over**

*jump over*

- We had to leap the ditch.
- The horses leapt the fence easily.
- He leaped every obstacle his opponents put in his way.

### Phrasal Verbs

**leap down/in/off/on/out/over/up/**

*etc. jump in a specified direction*

- The wagon slowed down, and the boys leaped off.
- We were leaping up and down, trying to get their attention.

**leap at**

*accept eagerly*

- Max leaped at the chance to be his own boss.
- The club leaped at Kyle’s offer to bring cupcakes.

**leap out at**

*get the immediate attention of*

- The misspelled word leaped out at the proofreader.

### Expressions

**leap for joy**

*be extremely happy*

- Tad won the spelling bee, and his parents leapt for joy.
- The typographical error leaped off the page at me.
- The unemployment statistics leaped off the page at her.

**leap off the page**

*(at _____) be quickly noticed (by [someone])*

- The author that leaps to mind is William Faulkner.
- The audience leapt to its feet and shouted, “Encore!”

**leap to mind**

*suddenly be thought of*

- Until you have read the entire article, don’t leap to conclusions.
### learn

**learn** | **learns** | **learned** | **have learned**
--- | --- | --- | ---
**PRESENT**
I learn | we learn
you learn | you learn
he/she/it learns | they learn

- He always learns the hard way.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am learning | we are learning
you are learning | you are learning
he/she/it is learning | they are learning

- I am learning how to do it.

**PAST**
I learned | we learned
you learned | you learned
he/she/it learned | they learned

- I just learned what happened.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was learning | we were learning
you were learning | you were learning
he/she/it was learning | they were learning

- We were learning Italian.

**FUTURE**
... | ... will learn

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
... | ... will be learning

**FUTURE PERFECT**
... | ... will have learned

**PAST PERFECT**
... have | has learned

**PAST PASSIVE**

- it was learned
- they were learned

- That lesson was learned at great expense.

### COMPLEMENTS

**learn** | gain some knowledge/skill
--- | ---
I am always learning.
Nobody can learn under these circumstances.
He can learn as well as anybody else.

**learn** | gain some knowledge/skill in
--- | ---

**OBJECT**
I learned English in high school.
You need to learn your lines for the play.
Everyone should learn a trade.

**PASSIVE**
Carpentry can only be learned by doing it.

**INFINITIVE**
I eventually learned to cook pretty well.
He must learn to use his time better.
The team must learn to work together.

**WH-CLAUSE**
I quickly learned who was really in charge.
The students are learning what they need to know.
He needs to learn where he can find the information.

**WH-INFINITIVE**
I learned whom to ask for help.
They learned how to deal with unexpected situations.
He needs to learn how to parallel park.

**learn** | find out, come to know
--- | ---

**ABOUT/OF OBJECT**
When did you learn about his criminal record?
We learned of her death from the newspaper.
I just learned that you have been ill.
Everyone eventually learns that they can't do it alone.

**OBJECT**
Students must learn the Gettysburg Address by Monday.
Learn these 20 spelling words by Friday.

**EXPRESSIONS**

**learn** | the hard way
--- | ---
learn [something] by (usually unpleasant) experience

Amy learned about drugs the hard way.

learn the ropes | learn how to do something
--- | ---

It may take some time for the new secretary to learn the ropes.

learn to live with | learn to adapt to
--- | ---
the pain/difficulty of

Grandpa has learned to live with his arthritis.
The house has no closets, but we've learned to live with it.
# IRREGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>FORMS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* He always leaves home by eight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* I left you a little surprise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we were left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Water stains were left all over the ground floor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## COMPLEMENTS

**leave**

**go away, depart**

- We are leaving soon.
- When can you leave?
- I am not leaving until this is settled.

**leave _____ go away from, depart**

**OBJECT**

- Elvis has left the building.
- The train will leave the station at 10:13 a.m.
- I left the office early that day.

**leave _____ abandon, quit**

**OBJECT**

- He left the university in his junior year.
- Ray has just left his wife.
- I left the law firm some time ago.

**leave _____ cause/allow to remain behind**

**OBJECT**

- Red wine always leaves a stain.
- He left a fortune after his death.
- The surgery will leave a scar.

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**

- I left my coat with the concierge.
- The kids left footprints on the tile floor.
- She left her purse on the park bench.
- Somebody’s tickets were left on the counter.

**leave _____ cause/allow to remain/be in a certain state**

**OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN**

- The accident left him a broken man.
- The fire left the building a ruined shell.
- The training left the division a formidable fighting force.

**OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**

- The movie left me confused.
- We had to leave the children alone for a few hours.
- The incident left us speechless.
- Please leave the door open.
- Riding a bicycle leaves Bill out of breath.

**OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

- I left the kids finishing up their homework.
- The comedian left the audience roaring with laughter.
- We left the plumber ripping out the old sink.
- Leave the engine running.
# leave

**leave ** _deliver/provide before going away_

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

They left you a message.  
I am leaving the waiter a big tip.  
We left the kids some cookies.

**for PARAPHRASE**

They left a message for you.  
I am leaving a big tip for the waiter.  
We left some cookies for the kids.

**leave ** _allow/give [someone] to do_

**OBJECT + for OBJECT**

My older sister left the dishes for me.  
The boss will leave the decision to his assistant.  
While I'm in Toronto, I'm going to leave the project with you.

**OBJECT + to OBJECT**

Grandfather left his stamp collection to his granddaughter.  
Mr. Plavsik left all his money to charity.

## PHRASAL VERBS

**leave ** _down/out/up/etc._

**allow to remain in a specified position**

Please leave the window up when you’re finished in the room.

**leave for ** _depart in the direction of_

We will be leaving for the airport in 10 minutes.

**leave off ** _stop temporarily_

Now, where did we leave off at yesterday’s meeting?  
The staff left off trying to organize a company picnic.

**leave ** _sep off/on not put off/on_

He left his jacket off in the classroom.  
She left her coat on because it was chilly inside.

**leave ** _sep out (of [something]) omit, exclude_

Harry left out all references to World War Two.  
Mrs. Crabtree left Norman out of her will.

**leave ** _sep on not switch off_

Leave the light on when you leave the room.

## EXPRESSIONS

**leave ** _open not schedule another activity on [a day/date]_

Leave next Saturday open for the bake sale.

**leave a bad taste in [one's] mouth cause one to have a lingering bad impression**

The argument over immigration left a bad taste in my mouth.

**leave no stone unturned search everywhere, do everything possible**

The police left no stone unturned in looking for the murderer.

**leave ** _sep alone/be not disturb_

Leave me alone—I’m trying to study.  
We should leave the matter be for the moment.

**leave ** _sep out in the cold not keep [someone] informed_

The rest of the staff left her out in the cold with regard to the new project.

**leave (some) loose ends not finish a project, not solve a problem_

The movie rushed the ending and left some loose ends.

**be left (over) remain**

Is there any chocolate cake left?  
Some potato salad is left over from the picnic.  
Half a skein of yarn is left over from my sweater project.
lend | lends · lent · have lent

**PRESENT**
- I lend
- you lend
- he/she/it lends

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am lending

**PAST**
- I lent
- you lent
- he/she/it lent

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was lending

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has lent

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had lent

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was lent

**FUTURE**
- ... will lend

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
- ... will be lending

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- ... will have lent

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**lend**
- give money on condition of repayment (plus interest)
  - repayment (plus interest)
    - to
      - The bank lends money for new cars.
  - Who can afford to lend?
  - Who is still lending these days?

**lend ***allow temporary use of on condition of return/payment***
  - allow temporary use of on condition of return/payment
    - to
      - Peter my lawnmower.
    - The bank lends money for new cars.
  - to
    - The book was lent to me by a friend.

**lend ***make available to***
  - make available to
    - to
      - The Red Cross lent its services to the flood relief effort.
  - to
    - The bowl of fruit lends color to an otherwise dull painting.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**lend itself to ***be suitable for***
  - be suitable for
    - The gathering room lends itself to intimate conversation.

**lend SEp out ***allow temporary use of on condition of return***
  - allow temporary use of on condition of return
    - We lent our copy of Jane Austen's Pride and Prejudice.

---

**EXPRESSIONS**

**lend an[/one's] ear (to ***listen (to [someone])***
  - listen (to [someone])
    - The president is speaking; lend an ear.
    - "Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears."
      - [Shakespeare]
### Let

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I let</td>
<td>I am letting</td>
<td>I was letting</td>
<td>I was let</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... will have let</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you let</td>
<td>you are letting</td>
<td>you were letting</td>
<td>you were let</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... will have let</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it lets</td>
<td>he/she/it is letting</td>
<td>he/she/it was letting</td>
<td>he/she/it was let</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>... will have let</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>He lets us know if there is a problem.</strong></td>
<td><strong>The coach is letting them try again.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>_<em>I let the dogs run in the backyard.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **Let**
  - **allow, permit**
    - **Object + Base-Form Infinitive**
      - The referee let the game continue.
      - Let me show you around.
      - We let the kids watch TV for a while after dinner.
      - Don't let them leave without me.
      - Let me go!

- **Let's**
  - [Contraction of let us; a way to suggest doing something]
    - **Base-Form Infinitive**
      - Let's go home now.
      - Let's find out what happened.
      - Let's not do that.

### Phrasal Verbs

- **Let _sep_ by/down/in/off/on/out/through/ up/etc.**
  - allow to come/go in a specified direction
    - Let the children in.
    - The bus stopped and let off two passengers.
    - Let the dog out.
    - Stop wrestling and let your brother up.

- **Let _sep_ down**
  - disappoint
    - Son, you've let your parents down again.

- **Let _sep_ off (easy) (with ____)**
  - forgive/release (with [little/no punishment])
    - The policeman let the boys off with a warning.
    - The teacher let me off easy.

- **Let off/out ____ release, emit**
  - The teakettle let off a loud whistle.

- **Let on ____ pretend**
  - Barry is letting on that he knows about the crisis.

- **Let on ____ admit**
  - Charlotte never let on that she was my sister.

- **Let out end**
  - When does the movie let out?

- **Let up slow down, diminish**
  - The rain appears to be letting up.

### Expressions

- **Let alone ____ not to mention, much less**
  - The patient can't walk, let alone run.
  - I don't have time to read a chapter, let alone the whole book.

- **Let ____ alone/be not disturb**
  - Let your sister alone. Let her be.

- **Let ____ go fire, lay off**
  - The company let four mechanics go last Friday.

- **Let go/loose of ____ release, stop gripping**
  - If we let go of the rope, we'll fall into the river.
Present Present Progressive
I lie you lie he/she/it lies we lie you lie you lie they lie
The responsibility lies with all of us.

Past Past Progressive
I lay you lay he/she/it lay they lay
The ship lay at anchor for a week.

Past Perfect Future
I have lain you were lying they were lying
The book was lying on your desk.

Future Perfect
I will have lain
The paintings had lain hidden in a barn for 50 years.

Past Passive
Lie is never used in the passive voice.

Note: The irregular verb lie is presented here. The regular verb lie (lie | lies · lied · have lied) means “to say something that isn’t true”; it may be used without an object (The suspect is lying) or with a that-clause (She lied that her husband was home all evening).

Infinitive Present Past Past Participle Basic Meaning
lie lie lay have lain “be in a horizontal position”
lay lay laid have laid “put in a horizontal position”

The two verbs are historically related in an odd way: To lay means “to cause something to lie.” In other words, lay always requires a direct object, while lie is never used with a direct object.

lie
be buried
Here lie the bones of the city’s founder.
be located
The report is lying right in front of you.
The town lies in the Thames valley.
His few hairs lay across his bald head.
The ocean lies to the west.

lie
be/stay in a horizontal position
The ocean lay flat as far as we could see.
The tablecloth lay perfectly smooth.

lie
be/stay in a certain state/condition
The cat lay motionless, watching the bird.
The town lay helpless in front of the invading army.
The nurse told him to lie still while she examined him.
The paintings had lain hidden in a barn for 50 years.

lie
be, exist
in object
The confusion lies in our conflicting goals.
with object
The problem lies with senior management.

lie
affect
on object
The wrongful conviction lies heavily on the prosecutors.
His extramarital affair lies heavily on his conscience.

Phrasal Verbs
lie ahead/around/back/behind/below/down/etc. be/rest in a specified position
She lay back and relaxed in the afternoon sun.
I’ll lie down for an hour.
### lift

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>lift</td>
<td>we lift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>lift</td>
<td>you lift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>lift</td>
<td>they lift</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* His humor always lifts my spirits.

#### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am lifting</td>
<td>we are lifting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are lifting</td>
<td>you are lifting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is lifting</td>
<td>they are lifting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I'm lifting your hall pass.

#### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>lifted</td>
<td>we lifted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>lifted</td>
<td>you lifted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>lifted</td>
<td>they lifted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The president lifted the embargo.

#### PAST PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was lifting</td>
<td>we were lifting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were lifting</td>
<td>you were lifting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was lifting</td>
<td>they were lifting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The fog was finally lifting.

#### PRESENT PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>lifted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... had</td>
<td>lifted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was lifted</td>
<td>we were lifted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were lifted</td>
<td>you were lifted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was lifted</td>
<td>they were lifted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The siege of Leningrad was lifted after 872 days.

---

#### COMPLEMENTS

- **Lift** rise, rise and disappear
  - The bank of clouds over the bay was lifting.
  - The icy mist over the frozen lake lifted slowly.
  - The darkness began to lift in the pre-dawn hours.
  - Our gloomy spirits gradually lifted.

- **Lift** raise
  - Object
  - I could hardly lift my suitcase.
  - The rescuers lifted the fallen wall with a crane.
  - The good news lifted everyone’s mood instantly.
  - The wounded cowboy was lifted onto the horse.

- **Lift** revoke, rescind, end
  - Object
  - The police lifted his passport.
  - The judge lifted the restraining order.
  - The governor lifted the ban on same-sex marriage.
  - Censorship was only lifted after the war.
  - The embargo was lifted in April.

- **Lift** steal, plagiarize
  - Object
  - Someone had lifted her purse.
  - He had lifted several paragraphs from a magazine article.
  - Our luggage was lifted from the room while we slept.

#### PHRASAL VERBS

- **Lift** SEP down/up/etc. move in a specified direction
  - I lifted the wine glasses down from the cabinet.
  - Lift your feet up, or you’ll stumble.
  - The space shuttle lifted off at 8:54 P.M.

- **Lift off** launch, take off [OF SPACECRAFT]
  - The space shuttle lifted off at 8:54 P.M.

#### EXPRESSIONS

- **Lift a finger** make an effort
  - [USUALLY NEGATIVE]
  - Roland won’t lift a finger to help around the house.

- **Lift weights** exercise using [barbells, dumbbells, etc.]
  - Look at Biff’s biceps—he must be lifting weights.
### light

#### PRESENT
- I light
- you light
- he/she/it lights

#### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
- I am lighting
- you are lighting
- he/she/it is lighting

#### PAST
- I lit/lighted
- you lit/lighted
- he/she/it lit/lighted

#### PAST PROGRESSIVE
- I was lighting
- you were lighting
- he/she/it was lighting

#### PRESENT PERFECT
- I have lit/lighted

#### PAST PERFECT
- I had lit/lighted

#### PAST PASSIVE
- it was lit/lighted
- they were lit/lighted

#### COMPLEMENTS

- light catch fire
  - The pile of dry leaves and twigs finally lit.
  - The smoldering coals lit with a whoosh.
  - The damp wood never lit.

- light ignite, set fire to, cause to burn
  - Sparks from the train lit trash along the track.
  - We should light the lantern before it gets dark.
  - The fire was lit by an electrical short circuit in the wall.

- light illuminate
  - We used torches to light the path.
  - The campfire lighted the boys' faces.
  - The golden moon lit the southern sky.

- light guide with a light
  - We lit the children to their rooms with the lantern.
  - "And all our yesterdays have lighted fools the way to dusty death." [Shakespeare]

#### PHRASAL VERBS

- light up brighten
  - The black night lit up with occasional flashes of lightning.
  - Her face lit up when she heard the news.

- light a fire under cause to move/work faster/harder
  - The coach's tirade lit a fire under his sluggish team.
### Like

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I like</td>
<td>Uses <em>like</em> in the present tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it likes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Everyone likes chocolate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I liked</td>
<td>Uses <em>liked</em> in the past tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we liked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you liked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it liked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* I never liked his attitude.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>Uses <em>have</em> with <em>like</em> in the present perfect tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has liked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had liked</td>
<td>Uses <em>had</em> with <em>like</em> in the past perfect tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>... will like</td>
<td>Uses <em>will</em> with <em>like</em> in the future tense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Progressive</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... will have liked</td>
<td>Uses <em>will have</em> with <em>like</em> in the future perfect tense.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

#### Like

**Enjoy, be fond of**

- **Object**
  - I liked the movie a lot. We all liked Venice. Did the kids like their babysitter? I like dogs, and my sister likes cats.  
  - **Object + Present Participle**
    - I like them doing their homework as soon as they get home. We like our children living so close to us.  
  - **Infinitive**
    - They like to go canoeing when the weather is good. I like to read by the fireplace.  
  - **Wh-clause**
    - I like what you have done with the room. The committee liked how you answered their questions.  
  - **Present Participle**
    - We like living in Chicago. My parents like traveling by train.  

#### Like

**Want, prefer**

- **Object**
  - We would like some coffee, please. I would like a new job. Would you like red or white wine?  
  - **Object + Predicate Adjective**
    - We like our coffee black, please. My parents like the TV really loud.  
  - **Object + Infinitive**
    - I would like you to take care of it yourself. Would you like him to come with us?  
  - **Object + Past Participle**
    - I would like the oil changed every 5,000 miles. We would like the wines uncorked now, please.  
  - **Infinitive**
    - Would you like to go to dinner now? See if they would like to join us. I would like to say a few words.  

#### Like

**Have affection for**

- **Object**
  - I think Ray likes her too. Mr. Rogers likes you just the way you are. Renee likes Paul as a friend.  

#### Like

**Thrive in**

- **Object**
  - Pansies like full sun. The blue spruce doesn’t like wet soil.
Present  Present Progressive
I limit  I am limiting
you limit  you are limiting
he/she/it limits  they limit
  * I limit myself to two cups of coffee a day.
Past  Past Progressive
I limited  I was limiting
you limited  you were limiting
he/she/it limited  they were limiting
  * They limited the number of trips we take.
Present Perfect  Future
... have | has limited
Past Perfect  Future Progressive
... had limited  ... will be limiting
Future Perfect  ... will have limited
Past Passive
I was limited  we were limited
you were limited  you were limited
he/she/it was limited  they were limited
  * The power of government was limited by the Constitution.

COMPLEMENTS

limit _____ restrict
OBJECT
We must limit unnecessary spending.
The fishing industry has limited catches of endangered species.
We try to limit our use of electricity.
The Environmental Protection Agency has limited mercury emissions.
OBJECT + to OBJECT
Senator Blather will limit his speech to 15 minutes.
The company's server limits us to 25 e-mails a day.
State law limits senators to two terms.
Our cell phone plan limits calls to the 48 contiguous states.
WH-CLAUSE
The high elevation limits what plants can grow there.
The rescue team limited how far they would search.
I should limit how much I spend on nonessentials.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE
Our budget limits eating out.
Time limits our taking too many side trips.
Company policy limits taking spouses on business trips.
list | lists · listed · have listed

**PRESENT**
- I list
- you list
- he/she/it lists
- *He lists himself as an Independent.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am listing
- you are listing
- he/she/it is listing
- *I am listing the advantages and disadvantages.*

**PAST**
- I listed
- you listed
- he/she/it listed
- *I listed some of the things we need to do.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was listing
- you were listing
- he/she/it was listing
- *They were listing everything they could think of.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has listed

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had listed

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was listed
- you were listed
- he/she/it was listed
- *His name was already listed.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**OBJECT**
- List **three things** that you like **about the United States.**
- We need to list **our supplies.**
- Can you list **everyone who was present?**
- We list **you** among the club’s most valuable members.

**PASSIVE**
- I was listing **all the books I wanted to read,** and I ran out of paper.
- Our college has been listed among the top ten engineering schools.

**WH-CLAUSE**
- Is your company listed in the phone book?
- The participants listed **why they were taking the workshop.**
- I will list **whatever times are still available.**

**OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN**
- I listed **Tom as a volunteer.**
- They listed the reporters **as nonvoting observers.**
- The school was listed **as a private four-year college.**
- The army listed **him as missing in action.**

**OBJECT + AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**
- The car lists **for $23,995,** but we’ll sell it to you for $22,500.
- The book lists **for $19.95.**
**PRESENT**

I listen  
you listen  
he/she/it listens

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am listening  
you are listening  
he/she/it is listening

**PAST**

I listened  
you listened  
he/she/it listened

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was listening  
you were listening  
he/she/it was listening

**PRESENT PERFECT** … have I have listened  
**PAST PERFECT** … had I was listened

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was listened  
you were listened  
he/she/it was listened

**FUTURE** … will listen  
**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** … will be listening  
**FUTURE PERFECT** … will have listened

* He always listens to other people.
*I’m listening to what you have to say.*
* I listened long enough.
* We were listening to the radio.
* Her proposal was listened to carefully.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

| listen | pay attention to in order to hear | Go ahead. I’m listening.
| Teenagers never listen. |
| When the president speaks, the country listens. |
| I think someone is listening. |

**listen _____ hear attentively**

to OBJECT

Just listen to that music!

We had to listen to their sales pitch.

I want to listen to the news at six.

**PASSIVE**

to OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Experimental music is not listened to often.

Listen to the rain falling on the roof.

The campers listened nervously to the wolves howling in the darkness.

We listened to the kids playing under our window.

We will all listen to what they propose.

I will listen to whomever they choose as a spokesperson.

The public listens to whatever nonsense they hear on talk radio.

**listen _____ try to hear**

for OBJECT

Do you know what to listen for at a congressional hearing?

Listen for the words “walrus” and “Paul.”

I am listening for the clock to chime.

Listen for the owl to hoot.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

listen in  listen to a radio broadcast  
Noam Chomsky will be interviewed on NPR tonight; I’m going to listen in.

listen in on  listen to secretly  
If you heard two friends talking about you, would you listen in on them?

listen up  listen carefully  
The drill sergeant told the recruits to listen up.

---

**EXPRESSIONS**

**listen to reason** accept a reasonable argument  
His lawyer recommended that he plead guilty, but he wouldn’t listen to reason.
**live** live · lives · lived · have lived

### Present
- I live
- you live
- he/she/it lives

### Present Progressive
- I am living
- you are living
- he/she/it is living

### Past
- I lived
- you lived
- he/she/it lived

### Past Progressive
- I was living
- you were living
- he/she/it was living

### Present Perfect
- ... have | has lived

### Past Perfect
- ... had lived

### Future
- ... will live

### Future Perfect
- ... will have lived

### Past Passive
- it was lived
- they were lived

* They live on Chautauqua Court.

* He is living pretty well.

* He lived in the United States for six years.

* John was virtually living in his office.

* His life was lived to the fullest.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**live**
- be alive, exist
- have a wonderful life
- subsist, survive, feed on
- reside
- experience, pass one’s life in a certain way

**OBJECT**
- Aunt Pearl lived to be 99 years old.
- Few people live after such a terrible accident.
- King Arthur never lived.
- You haven’t lived until you’ve tasted Mom’s lemon meringue pie.
- I can’t live that way.
- The prisoners lived under dreadful conditions.
- They live at 3817 West Main Street.
- My great-grandparents lived on a farm.
- We have never lived outside the country.
- James Bond loves to live dangerously.
- And the prince and princess lived happily ever after.
- The actor was living a dream.
- He was living a life of luxury.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**live sep. down** stop being embarrassed about

**live for** consider extremely important

**live off (of)** survive by eating

**live off (of)** depend on for food and shelter

**live on** survive, continue

**live on** eat, feed on

**live on** support oneself with [or people]

**live through** survive

**live up to** maintain, meet [standards]

**live with** endure, put up with

- I’ll never live down forgetting my wedding anniversary.
- Betty lives for coffee.
- The campers lived mostly off fruits and berries.
- She lived off her parents when she was in college.
- They live off the paintings that they sell.
- The legend of the phantom funeral lives on.
- Many poor farmers live on rice and beans.
- Goldfinches live on insects and seeds.
- Mrs. Blaine lives on Social Security and a small pension.
- How did they live through the Great Depression?
- How can I live up to my parents’ expectations?
- He lived with a limp for the rest of his life.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form(s)</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I locate, we locate, you locate, he/she/it locates, they locate</td>
<td>* The agency locates missing people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I located, we located, you located, he/she/it located, they located</td>
<td>* They located the shipwreck in 1985.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has located</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>... had located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>I was located, we were located, you were located, he/she/it was located, they were located</td>
<td>* The old stadium was located at Grand and Dodier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>... will locate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>... will have located</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**locate** find out where [someone/something] is

- **OBJECT**
  - We never located the original deed.
  - Have the police located the murder weapon?
  - My parents located a good preschool for Thomas.

- **PASSIVE**
  - The treasure was never located.

- **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**
  - We eventually located the keys under some papers.
  - I located the store in a strip mall near the highway.
  - He located the missing cup in the trash can.

- **WH-CLAUSE**
  - Historians have located where Shakespeare's theater stood.
  - He finally located where the smell was coming from.
  - Did you locate whatever you were looking for?

**locate** position, situate

- **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**
  - They advised us to locate the store downtown.
  - You should locate your café in the new business park.
  - We located our house as far from the road as possible.

- **PASSIVE**
  - Our house is located as far from the road as possible.

**locate** settle, put one's home/business

- **ADVERB OF PLACE**
  - The English colonists located on the banks of the James River.
  - The trucking company located at the intersection of two interstate highways.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>lock</td>
<td>I lock we lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>lock</td>
<td>you lock you lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>lock</td>
<td>they lock <em>My knee locks if I stand too long.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>locked</td>
<td>I locked we locked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>locked</td>
<td>you locked you locked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>locked</td>
<td>they locked <em>They have just locked the gate.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am locking</td>
<td>I am locking we are locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are locking</td>
<td>you are locking you are locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is locking</td>
<td>they are locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>I am locking all of the windows.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was locking</td>
<td>I was locking we were locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were locking</td>
<td>you were locking you were locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was locking</td>
<td>they were locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>*The left front wheel was locking.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have locked</td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>had locked</td>
<td>... had locked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>locked</td>
<td>I was locked we were locked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>locked</td>
<td>you were locked you were locked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was locked</td>
<td>they were locked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>All of the doors were locked.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **lock** become fastened with a bolt mechanism
  - The door locked with a click.
  - The gates lock automatically.
  - That door never locks properly.

- **lock** become stuck in one position
  - Sometimes the car’s steering wheel locks.
  - My left elbow locks if I sit still too long.
  - The transmission locks every time I try to shift into reverse.

- **lock*** fasten with a bolt mechanism
  - Please lock **the door** when you leave.
  - You should always lock **your car doors**.
  - The trunk was securely locked.

- **lock*** secure with a lock
  - I locked **the documents in the drawer**.
  - We locked **the car in the garage**.
  - My brother locked **me in a closet**.
  - The prisoners were locked **in a cell**.

- **lock*** join together
  - The elks locked **horns**.
  - As the rioters approached, the police locked **arms**.
  - He locked **his fingers** around the steering wheel and braked hard.
  - The bumpers were so tightly locked that we had to call a tow truck.

### Phrasal Verbs

- **lock** **sep** away/in/out/etc.
  - secure with a lock in a specified location
  - We locked the dogs in for the night.
  - They locked the rest of the staff out.
  - I locked myself out of the car.

- **lock** **sep** up secure a building by locking all the entrances
  - I’ll lock up when I leave for the night.

- **lock** **sep** up lock securely
  - He locked his stamp collection up in a safe.
  - The police locked the suspects up.

- **lock** **sep** up put in jail
  - Our varsity team locked up first place in the conference.
  - Senator Blather has locked up enough votes to override the president’s veto.
PRESENT
I look you look he/she/it looks
you look you look they look

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am looking you are looking he/she/it is looking
you are looking you are looking they are looking

Past Progressive
I looked you looked he/she/it looked
you looked you looked they looked

Past Perfect
I was looked you were looked he/she/it was looked
you were looked you were looked they were looked

Future
will look will be looking will have looked

Past Passive
I was looked we were looked
you were looked you were looked

COMPLEMENTS

look turn one’s eyes to see something
Don’t look now!
Thanks, but I am only looking. [IN A STORE]
Whenever there is an accident, people have to stop and look.

look _____ see, notice
at object

look _____ search, hunt
ADVERB OF PLACE

look _____ face [in a certain direction]
ADVERB OF PLACE

look _____ seem, appear
PREDICATE NOUN
The house is really looking its age.
You look a total wreck!
The rug looks old and faded.
I thought Aunt Polly looked pretty good.
A recession looks unlikely for now.
The job looks to be about finished.

look _____ expect, hope
INFINITIVE
They are looking to finish in first place.
The market is looking to rebound this quarter.

look _____ turn one’s eyes to see something

Kerry looks upset about something.
Your lawn is looking good these days.
I looked for him in the barn.
They were looking everywhere.

… have | has looked … will look
… had looked … will be looking
… will have looked

My proposal was looked upon as brilliant.
look away/back/inside/outside/etc.  
look in a specified direction

look after _____ take care of

look around explore

look at _____ consider

look at _____ examine

look at _____ read

look back think about (something in)
the past

look down on _____ despise, have contempt for

look for _____ expect

look for [someone/something] to _____
expect that [someone/something] will [do]

look in on _____ visit briefly, check on

look into _____ investigate

look on watch something happen

look on/upon _____ as consider

look out be careful

look out for _____ be cautious about

look out for _____ be concerned about

look on/upon _____ as consider

look over review, examine

look through _____ examine the parts of

look to _____ depend on

look to _____ think about, examine

look up improve [used only in the progressive tenses]

look up to _____ admire, respect

look ____ up search for

it looks like _____

it looks like / as if / as though _____

look forward to _____ anticipate eagerly

look like _____ have the appearance of

PHRASAL VERBS

There was a bad accident, and Mom made me look away.
Open the package and look inside.

Teresa looks after her 95-year-old mother.
Would you look after my children while I’m at the grocery?

We entered the old fort and looked around.

They looked at the possibility of buying new computers.
Just look at his success in the real estate business!

The vet looked at Yu’s pet hamster.
I haven’t looked at today’s newspaper yet.

The old sailor spends most of his time looking back.

Aunt Hilda looked down on us because we were poor.
He looked down on manual labor of any kind.

The weatherman is looking for rain by tomorrow afternoon.
I look for my aunt to win the election.

We are looking for the economy to rebound within a year.
I’ll look in on Grandma when I go to the store.

The nurse looked in on the patient in Room 312.
She is looking into the possibility of new office furniture.

Workers looked on helplessly as the boat sank in the harbor.
I’ve always looked on you as a friend.

Look out! The sidewalk is slippery.

Look out for falling rocks.

His older brother looked out for him on the playground.

The treasurer looked over our accounts.
Patti is looking over the newspaper recipes.

Jim looked through the book for Civil War photos.
We looked through the desk and found nothing to keep.

Donald looked to his family to help pay his medical bills.
Students look to their teachers for help.

The playwright looks to Greek tragedies for inspiration.
The Dow Jones average was up 126 points today;

things are looking up.

All the scientists looked up to Robert Oppenheimer.
If you don’t know a word, look it up in the dictionary.

When I’m in Buffalo, I’ll look up a childhood friend of mine.
I lose we lose I am losing we are losing
you lose you lose you are losing you are losing
he/she/it loses they lose he/she/it is losing they are losing
* My team always loses.

I lost we lost I was losing we were losing
you lost you lost you were losing you were losing
he/she/it lost they lost he/she/it was losing they were losing
* I lost my glasses again.

I was lost we were lost
you were lost you were lost
he/she/it was lost they were lost
* The battle was lost in the first few minutes.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**lose** not win, be defeated

The team has never lost this season.  The longer you gamble, the more certain you are to lose.  The Patriots lost by 14 points.

**lose** not win, be defeated in **OBJECT**

Napoleon never lost a battle—except the last one.  You can win a battle, but still lose the war.  I lost my bet with Sam.

**lose** be deprived of **OBJECT**

We lost some dear friends in the war.  He has lost the use of his left hand.  The senator has lost their support.

**lose** misplaced, be unable to find **OBJECT**

I lost the key to my desk.  The guide lost his way in the woods.  I lost my place in the book.  The mountain climbers were lost in the avalanche.

**lose** fail to keep/maintain **OBJECT**

The cat is losing its hair.  My watch is losing time.  The sink has been losing water for days.  The boat was losing speed.  I lost control of the motorcycle.

**lose** get rid of **OBJECT**

I finally lost some weight.

**lose** fail to make use of **OBJECT**

The company lost a great opportunity to expand.  Don’t lose any time getting to the bookstore.

**lose** cause to be deprived of **INDIRECT OBJECT** + **OBJECT**

His position on immigration lost him a lot of votes.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**lose out (to ____)** be unsuccessful [in a competition (with [someone])]

I applied for the job, but I lost out to a younger applicant.
**love**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Present Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I love</td>
<td>I am loving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you love</td>
<td>you are loving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it loves</td>
<td>he/she/it is loving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He loves living in San Francisco.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I loved</td>
<td>I was loving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you loved</td>
<td>you were loving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it loved</td>
<td>he/she/it was loving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I always loved the impressionist painters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have loved</td>
<td>... had loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Passive**

I was loved

- Grammar class was not always loved by everyone.

**Complements**

In the progressive tenses, the verb love is primarily used informally and for emphasis.

**love _____ feel romantic love for**

**OBJECT**

Basil says he loves her, but they haven’t even kissed.

Jason and Paul have loved each other for years.

**love _____ like/desire very much**

**OBJECT**

Don’t you just love the sunshine?

I love the food in southern France.

**Passive**

The professor was loved by all of his students.

I love John’s parents living so close to us.

The children have loved the beach being in walking distance.

**Infinitive**

I love to take long walks in the fog.

The children love to play in the sandbox.

Who wouldn’t love to go to Hawaii?

**Wh-clause**

I love what you are wearing.

Dogs generally love whoever loves them.

I am sure we will love whatever you are cooking.

**Present Participle**

I love taking long walks in the fog.

They don’t love having to commute so far.

No one loves being kept waiting for hours.

**love _____ take pleasure in**

**(for) OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

We would love (for) you to come.

Jack and I would love (for) them to join us.

They would love (for) you to open the program.

**Infinitive**

I would love to come to dinner with you.

They would love to meet you.

The kids would love to come to Jane’s birthday party.

**love _____ thrive in**

**OBJECT**

Many flowering plants love acidic soil.

Snails love mild, wet weather.

New businesses love word-of-mouth publicity.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>FORMS</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td><strong>I</strong> maintain</td>
<td>he/she/it maintains <strong>He maintains that he is totally innocent.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>you</strong> maintain</td>
<td>they maintain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>we</strong> maintain</td>
<td><strong>we are maintaining</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>you are maintaining</strong></td>
<td><strong>they are maintaining</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>he/she/it is maintaining</strong></td>
<td><strong>I am still maintaining that old truck.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td><strong>I am maintaining</strong></td>
<td><strong>We are maintaining a strong market position.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>you are maintaining</strong></td>
<td><strong>they are maintaining</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>he/she/it is maintaining</strong></td>
<td><strong>We were maintaining that old truck.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td><strong>I maintained</strong></td>
<td><strong>Our stock maintained its price.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>you maintained</strong></td>
<td><strong>we were maintaining</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>he/she/it maintained</strong></td>
<td><strong>they were maintaining</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Our stock maintained its price.</strong></td>
<td><strong>We were maintaining a strong market position.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PASSIVE</td>
<td><strong>I was maintained</strong></td>
<td><strong>The house was maintained in excellent condition.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>you were maintained</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was maintained</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>he/she/it was maintained</strong></td>
<td><strong>we were maintained</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>The house was maintained in excellent condition.</strong></td>
<td><strong>We were maintaining a strong market position.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**maintain** keeps the same

**OBJECT**

- The prisoner maintained **his silence** throughout the torture.
- The company will maintain **whatever benefits them**.

**maintain** preserve, keep in good condition

**OBJECT**

- We spend our weekends just maintaining **our house**.
- We spend our weekends just maintaining **our house**.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- You have to maintain **whatever you buy**.
- The company will maintain **whatever benefits them**.

**maintain** provide support for

**OBJECT**

- He is required to maintain **the children** until they are 18 years old.
- The duke maintained **a household of 20 people**.

**maintain** assert, declare as true

**OBJECT**

- The heirs maintained **the validity of their claim**.
- The government maintained **that it had no involvement in the coup**.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

- He maintains that **he is completely innocent**.
- He maintains **what he has always said**.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- President Lincoln maintained **that the war was fought to preserve the Union**.
- The government maintained **that it had no involvement in the coup**.
make _____ force, cause
OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE
They made me do it!
The earthquake made the windows rattle.
The officials made the teams replay the game.

make _____ be used to produce
OBJECT
PASSIVE
Cotton rags make the best paper.
The sculpture was made entirely of driftwood.

make _____ earn, succeed in achieving
OBJECT
You could make a lot of money.
We made about 500 miles driving today.

make _____ amount to, total
OBJECT
Four quarts make a gallon.
Three feet make a yard.

make _____ arrive at
OBJECT
Glen will make Phoenix by tomorrow afternoon.

make _____ be on time for
OBJECT
Do you think we can make the 2 o'clock flight?
Three students didn't make the deadline for submitting papers.

make away/off with _____ steal
The robbers made away with $3,500.
They made off with my briefcase too.

make for _____ go toward
The soldier made for the nearest foxhole.

make for _____ result in
Good pitching and hitting make for a successful team.

make like _____ pretend to be, imitate
Dad made like a dinosaur and tromped around the room.

make out _____ succeed
Gavin made out very well during the dot-com bubble.

make SEP out distinguish, decipher
I can barely make out the road in the snowstorm.
The bank teller couldn't make out the signature on the check.

make SEP out fill out
Make the check out to the agency for $25.

make SEP out understand
We couldn't make out what the professor was saying.

make SEP over change the appearance of
The programmer made over his cubicle with movie posters.

make [someone] out _____ describe [someone], usually falsely
Dixie's parents made her out to be a perfect student.

make up _____ become friendly after a quarrel
Luke and Lana finally made up after two weeks of not speaking to one another.

make up _____ form, be the parts of
These servers make up the backbone of our network.
The fleet was made up of battleships, cruisers, and destroyers.

make SEP up put together, prepare
I made a pot of chili up in 30 minutes.

make SEP up invent
Gary made up a story about a dog stealing his homework.

make SEP up apply cosmetics to
The artist made her up to look like a witch.
I have to make myself up before going out.

make SEP up do [something] that one has missed
Jan was sick and has to make up the test on Monday.

make up for _____ compensate for
How can I make up for the trouble I've caused you?
I make we make I am making we are making
you make you make you are making you are making
he/she/it makes they make he/she/it is making they are making
* She makes an excellent salary.

I made we made I was making we were making
you made you made you were making you were making
he/she/it made they made he/she/it was making they were making
* I made lunch for my in-laws.

I was made we were made
you were made you were made
he/she/it was made they were made
* Mistakes were made at every level.

I am making we are making
you are making you are making
he/she/it is making they are making
* I'm making some coffee.

I was making we were making
you were making you were making
he/she/it was making they were making
* We were making pretty good time.

I have | has made I will | will have made
you have | has made you will | will have made
he/she/it has made they will | will have made

I make we make I am making we are making
you make you make you are making you are making
he/she/it makes they make he/she/it is making they are making
* She makes an excellent salary.

I made we made I was making we were making
you made you made you were making you were making
he/she/it made they made he/she/it was making they were making
* I made lunch for my in-laws.

I was made we were made
you were made you were made
he/she/it was made they were made
* Mistakes were made at every level.
**manage**

**PRESENT**

I manage  
you manage  
he/she/it manages  
* He manages an import-export company.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am managing  
you are managing  
he/she/it is managing  
* I’m managing okay since the surgery.

**PAST**

I managed  
you managed  
he/she/it managed  
* The coach managed several great teams.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was managing  
you were managing  
he/she/it was managing  
* We were just managing to break even.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has managed

**PAST PERFECT**

... had managed

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was managed  
you were managed  
he/she/it was managed  
* The project was not managed very well.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**manage**  
cope with a stressful/difficult  
situation

He is managing pretty well, under the circumstances.  
The kids can't manage by themselves.  
You will have to manage as best you can.

**manage ____**  
administer, control, regulate  
OBJECT

I will manage the new unit.  
Everybody needs to learn how to manage their expenses.  
This valve manages the flow of water into the irrigation system.  
Remote sensors are managed by satellite.

**manage ____**  
succeed in, be able to  
INFINITIVE

I finally managed to get some sleep.  
The technician managed to repair the server.  
Despite the awful evening, she still managed to smile.  
He could manage to get wet in a desert.

**manage on/with ____**  
be able to live/  
do by using

We can manage on $1,300 a month.  
The office manages fine with just one photocopier.
### mark | marks - marked - have marked

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>mark</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am marking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are marking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is marking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>marked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>marked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>marked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was marking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were marking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was marking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have marked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have marked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was marked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were marked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will mark</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will be marking</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have marked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was marked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were marked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Complements

- **mark**
  - become stained/dirty
    - This flooring marks too easily.
    - The surface marks everywhere you touch it.
  - identify [something] by writing on it
    - I marked all the boxes that are to be shipped.
    - Did you mark all the books that the kids are taking to school?
    - The items on sale are marked with a green tag.
    - We marked what we are taking with us.
    - I marked how much each item cost.
  - identify, characterize
    - A marble plaque marks the house where Mozart died.
    - The yellow line marks the location of a buried gas line.
    - The fever marked a new stage in his illness.
    - Gettysburg marked the turning point of the Civil War.
    - The occasion was marked by a special concert.
    - His robe marked him as a judge.
    - Her clear diction marked her as a professional actor.
  - affect
    - Being in combat marks everyone who experiences it.
  - grade, evaluate
    - English teachers spend their free time marking papers.
    - We need to mark the applicants' résumés.
    - The exams were marked anonymously.

#### Phrasal Verbs

- **mark** **sep** **down**
  - lower the price of
    - They marked down their pizzas by 35%.
  - **mark** **sep** **down** **make a note of**
    - Kyle will mark down the speech's important points.
  - **mark** **sep** **off**
    - indicate the boundaries of
      - A rope marks off the staff-only area.
  - **mark** **sep** **up**
    - raise the price of
      - They marked up their paintings by 200%.
    - mar, deface
      - Calvin marked up Susie's book with his crayons.
      - Don't touch the photographs, you will mark them up.
### marry | marries · married · have married

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>marry</td>
<td>we marry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>marry</td>
<td>you marry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>marries</td>
<td>they marry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Many couples marry in June.

**PRESENT PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am marrying</td>
<td>we are marrying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are marrying</td>
<td>you are marrying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is marrying</td>
<td>they are marrying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I am not marrying anyone!

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>married</td>
<td>we married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>married</td>
<td>you married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>married</td>
<td>they married</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* She just married an old friend of mine.

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was married</td>
<td>we were married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>was married</td>
<td>you were married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was married</td>
<td>they were married</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* We were married in 2005.

**FUTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will marry</td>
<td>we will marry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will marry</td>
<td>you will marry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will be marrying</td>
<td>we will be marrying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will be marrying</td>
<td>you will be marrying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have married</td>
<td>we will have married</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**marry** enter into marriage

- Will they ever marry?
  - We want to marry as soon as we can.
  - We are not marrying anytime soon.

**marry** fit together, be compatible

- The fish and wine did not marry well at all.
  - The two pieces have to marry perfectly.
  - The two companies will never marry successfully.

**marry** become the husband/wife of **OBJECT**

- John married Marsha.

**PASSIVE**

- He asked her to marry him.

**marry** join as husband and wife **OBJECT**

- Gwendolen could only marry someone named Ernest.

**PASSIVE**

- He was never married.

**marry** combine, fit together **OBJECT**

- My brother married Michael and Kathy last week.

**PASSIVE**

- An ordained minister married the happy couple.
  - We were married at my parents’ home.

- Clint taught Dan how to marry red wine with Italian food.
  - Wine and food must be married carefully.
  - The two power cables were never married properly.

**marry above [oneself]** marry someone of a higher social class

- Jane married above herself.

**marry below/beneath [oneself]** marry someone of a lower social class

- My cousin married beneath herself.

**marry into** become a member of by marrying someone who is a member

- Diana married into royalty.

**sep. off** give in marriage

- Wilton married into an old New England family.
  - The Bennets married off three daughters in one year.

**marry money** marry a rich person

- When she finishes college, my niece wants to marry money.
match | matches · matched · have matched

**PRESENT**

I match  
you match  
he/she/it matches

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am matching  
you are matching  
he/she/it is matching

**PAST**

I matched  
you matched  
he/she/it matched

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was matching  
you were matching  
he/she/it was matching

**PRESENT PERFECT**

I have matched  
you have matched  
he/she/it has matched

**FUTURE**

I will match  
you will match  
he/she/it will match

**FUTURE PERFECT**

I will have matched  
you will have matched  
he/she/it will have matched

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was matched  
you were matched  
he/she/it was matched

The two teams were evenly matched.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**match**

go well together

The jacket and trousers do not match.
Do you think the colors will match?
The music and the occasion matched perfectly.

match _____
go fit well together with

**OBJECT**

The film's audio doesn't match the video.
His actions don't match his words.
The carpet matches the drapes perfectly.
The bedroom curtains were matched by the bedspread.

match _____
be equal to, be as good as

**OBJECT**

The punishment must match the crime.
My enthusiasm matched hers.
I think this year's team matches last year's.
The price in yen doesn't match the price in dollars.

match _____
succeed in equaling

**OBJECT**

I can't match their price.
Will they match your offer?
Our performance matches expectations.
Their bid was never matched.
I can't match what they offered you.
They will match whatever bid we make.

match _____
make get something equal to

**OBJECT**

Can you match this silverware pattern?
I'd like to match the golden oak finish of the dresser.

match _____
make a connection between, compare

**OBJECT + with OBJECT**

The pupils need to match each animal picture with its name.
The lab tries to match each DNA sample with DNA in its database.
**mean** | means · meant · have meant

**PRESENT**
- I mean
- you mean
- he/she/it means

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am meaning
- you are meaning
- he/she/it is meaning

*A warm wind means that it will rain.*

**PAST**
- I meant
- you meant
- he/she/it meant

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was meaning
- you were meaning
- he/she/it was meaning

*I always meant to try skydiving.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has meant

**FUTURE**
- ... will mean

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
- ... will be meaning

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- ... will have meant

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was meant
- you were meant
- he/she/it was meant

*No harm was meant.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**NOTE:** The verb *mean* is used in the progressive tenses only in the sense “intend, plan.”

**mean _____ signify, indicate**
- **OBJECT**
  - “Aloha” means both “hello” and “goodbye” in Hawaiian. A rainbow means **good luck.** It doesn’t mean **anything.** Thanks. That meant **a lot to me.** This means **war!**
  - **THAT-CLAUSE**
    - The flare means **that there has been an accident.**
    - The whistle means **that it is time to quit.**
    - A heavy snowfall means **that there will be no school.**
  - **WH-CLAUSE**
    - It can’t mean **what I think it means.**
    - It means **whatever you want it to mean.**

**mean _____ intend, plan**
- **(for) OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
  - I meant **(for) you to do that.**
  - He was meaning **(for) us to finish up here.**
  - The truck was meant **to stay with the crew.**
  - We meant **to stop off and do some shopping.** They didn’t mean **to do anything wrong.**
  - I was meaning **to tell you about that.**

**mean _____ intend [TO EXPLAIN A PREVIOUS STATEMENT]**
- **THAT-CLAUSE**
  - I mean **that you should wait in my office.**
  - He meant **that he might have made a mistake.**

**mean business** be serious
- He jokes with reporters, but he means business.

**mean everything / the world to _____**
- be very important to
- Jeanine’s fiancé means everything to her.

**mean nothing to _____ not be very important to**
- My environmental work means the world to me.

**mean nothing to _____ not make sense to**
- Her criticism means nothing to me.

**mean well** have good intentions
- This paragraph will mean nothing to the reader.

**EXPRESSIONS**

mean business be serious
- He jokes with reporters, but he means business.

mean everything / the world to _____
- be very important to
- Jeanine’s fiancé means everything to her.

mean nothing to _____ not be very important to
- My environmental work means the world to me.

mean nothing to _____ not make sense to
- This paragraph will mean nothing to the reader.

mean well have good intentions
- Ed is a little eccentric, but he means well.
measure | measures | measured | have measured

**PRESENT**
- I measure
- you measure
- he/she/it measures

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am measuring
- you are measuring
- he/she/it is measuring

**PAST**
- I measured
- you measured
- he/she/it measured

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was measuring
- you were measuring
- he/she/it was measuring

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- I have measured

**FUTURE**
- I will measure

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- I will have measured

**COMPLEMENTS**

**measure**
- be a certain size/amount/extent
  - OBJECT
    - The carpet measures **9 feet by 12 feet**.
    - The pool measures **30 feet long**.
    - The material measures **45 inches wide**.

**measure**
- determine the size/amount/extent of
  - OBJECT
    - We need to measure **the square footage**.
    - The pollsters measured **the extent of Senator Blather’s support**.
    - We measured **the time it took to place an order**.
    - How do we measure **the value of his proposal**?
    - Wall Street measures **success** in monetary terms.
    - The flow of the river is measured by the water department.
    - They measured **how far each contestant threw the discus**.
    - The recording engineer measured **exactly how long each segment lasted**.
    - We measured **how heavy the average box was**.

**measure**
- get exact portions of
  - OBJECT
    - Before you start baking, you should measure **all the ingredients**.

**measure**
- moderate, make less strong
  - OBJECT
    - You need to measure **your words** carefully.
    - Politicians always measure **their criticisms of each other**.
    - Both criticism and blame should be measured.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**measure **
- off mark the boundaries / the beginning and end of
  - Andy measured off half an acre to grow tomatoes on.
  - Would you measure off 200 feet of kite string?

**measure up**
- be good enough
  - The candidates have been chosen; we hope they measure up.
  - This new brand of paper towels just doesn’t measure up.

**measure up to**
- be as good as
  - The coffee doesn’t measure up to Oregon Trail’s.
  - She doesn’t measure up to her teacher’s expectations.
  - The movie doesn’t measure up to the book.
**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>we meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>you meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>meets</td>
<td>they meet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The stationmaster meets every train.*

**Present Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am meeting</td>
<td>we are meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are meeting</td>
<td>you are meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is meeting</td>
<td>they are meeting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Excuse me, I am meeting someone.*

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>we met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>you met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>they met</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I never met your brother.*

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was meeting</td>
<td>we were meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were meeting</td>
<td>you were meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was meeting</td>
<td>they were meeting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *We were meeting in the conference room.*

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>has met</td>
<td>we have met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>you have met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>they have met</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was met</td>
<td>we were met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>was met</td>
<td>you were met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was met</td>
<td>they were met</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *We were met at the airport by the tour guide.*

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will meet</td>
<td>we will meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will meet</td>
<td>you will meet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will be meeting</td>
<td>they will be meeting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have met</td>
<td>we will have met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will have met</td>
<td>you will have met</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>we were met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were met</td>
<td>you were met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was met</td>
<td>they were met</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *We were met at the airport by the tour guide.*

**Complements**

- **meet** come together for a particular purpose

  - We will meet next Tuesday.
  - “When shall we three meet again?” [Shakespeare]
  - Can we meet for lunch tomorrow?
  - These same two teams will meet in the playoffs.

- **meet** be joined

  - The hiking paths meet at the top of the hill.

- **meet** become acquainted, be introduced

  - Our in-laws will meet in person for the first time.
  - It is amazing that we never met before.

- **meet** come into contact

  - The gates have never met properly because they sag.
  - Their lips met tenderly.
  - The sliding doors met with a thud.

- **meet** come together by arrangement

  - I met Carrie for lunch today.
  - I can’t meet them until next week.
  - You will meet with the search committee this afternoon.

- **meet** become acquainted with

  - When did you first meet your husband?
  - Guess whom I met today!

- **meet** fulfill, satisfy, pay

  - I still have to meet my undergraduate science requirement.
  - Can he meet the deadline for the grant application?
  - Her organization works to meet the needs of the homeless.
  - If you meet our demands, no one will get hurt.
  - They might not be able to meet their mortgage payment.
  - The terms of the agreement have not been met.

- **meet** be present at the arrival of

  - Someone needs to meet the train.
  - We should meet their plane tomorrow.
  - Everyone will meet the boats when they cross the finish line.

- **meet** encounter, experience

  - Our plans really met an obstacle today.
  - My great-great-grandfather met his death in the Great War.
  - The proposal met a stone wall in the committee hearing.
mention | mentions 
mentioned | have mentioned

**PRESENT**
- I mention
- you mention
- he/she/it mentions

**PRESEN T PROGRESSIVE**
- I am mentioning
- you are mentioning
- he/she/it is mentioning

**PAST**
- I mentioned
- you mentioned
- he/she/it mentioned

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was mentioning
- you were mentioning
- he/she/it was mentioning

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- I have mentioned
- you have mentioned
- he/she/it has mentioned

**FUTURE**
- I will mention
- you will mention
- he/she/it will mention

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was mentioned
- you were mentioned

**OBJECT**
- He mentioned the problem briefly.
- They never mentioned anything about it.

**PASSIVE**
- The report mentioned the possibility of tornadoes.
- The issue was barely mentioned at the meeting.

**OBJECT + TO OBJECT**
- Somebody mentioned it to me.
- Terry mentioned his concern to some of his friends.

**TO OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE**
- I mentioned to him that we were out of eggs.
- Harold mentioned to Betty that they needed new snow tires.

**THAT-CLAUSE**
- Jack mentioned that they were going out to dinner.
- I mentioned that we would miss the game.

**WH-CLAUSE**
- I mentioned what we have been working on.

**mention | suggest / refer to as noteworthy**

**OBJECT + AS OBJECT**
- They mentioned Steve as a possible replacement.

**OBJECT + FOR OBJECT**
- Meredith mentioned Ava for treasurer.

**PASSIVE**
- She is being mentioned for secretary of state.
- He was mentioned for the vacant Senate seat.

**complements**

**EXPRESSIONS**

not to mention and also
- I can’t believe all the cooking and cleaning
- I have to do, not to mention the grocery shopping and laundry.
The verb *miss* is used in the progressive tenses only in the sense “be lacking.”

**Note:**

**miss**  
*be lacking*  
The veteran’s right arm is missing.  
Help! All my jewelry is missing.

**miss**  
*fail to succeed*  
With our pitching staff, we can’t miss.

**miss**  
*fail to hit/strike*  
The batter swings and misses.  
The bullet missed by inches.

**miss**  
*be lacking*  
**OBJECT**  
This computer is missing its hard drive.  
Our six-year-old is missing her two front teeth.

**miss**  
*fail to hit/strike*  
**OBJECT**  
The arrow missed the target by a foot.  
We just missed a deer on the road coming home last night.

**miss**  
*fail to hear/notice/understand*  
**OBJECT**  
I missed his first few words.  
We must have missed the last turn.  
He missed the whole point of the presentation.  
I missed what you just said.

**miss**  
*fail to attend/keep*  
**OBJECT**  
He missed three meetings in a row.  
Randy missed his doctor’s appointment yesterday.  
Rhonda missed the application deadline.

**miss**  
*fail to reach/meet/catch/see*  
**OBJECT**  
He went home early. You just missed him.  
We are going to miss the train if we don’t hurry.

**miss**  
*avoid*  
**OBJECT**  
**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**  
We really want to miss the afternoon traffic.  
The bicyclist just missed being hit by a drunk driver.

**miss**  
*feel the absence/loss of*  
**OBJECT**  
**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**  
Did you miss me while I was gone?  
I really miss Cassie the cat—she had lots of personality.  
I don’t miss having to work so hard.
## mix | mixes · mixed · have mixed

### PRESENT
- I mix
- you mix
- he/she/it mixes

### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
- I am mixing
- you are mixing
- he/she/it is mixing

### PAST
- I mixed
- you mixed
- he/she/it mixed

### PAST PROGRESSIVE
- I was mixing
- you were mixing
- he/she/it was mixing

### PRESENT PERFECT
- ... have | has mixed

### PAST PERFECT
- ... had mixed

### PAST PASSIVE
- I was mixed
- you were mixed
- he/she/it was mixed

- *He only mixes what he needs.

- *I already mixed the batter for pancakes.

- *He was always mixing metaphors.

- *The album was mixed in a professional recording studio.

### COMPLEMENTS

- **mix** | blend
  - Oil and water don't mix.  
  - Drinking and driving don't mix.

- **mix** | associate, interact
  - They really mix well at social gatherings.

- **mix** | combine, join
- **OBJECT**
  - To make concrete, you mix sand, cement, and water.

- **OBJECT + with OBJECT**
  - The conference mixes experts from different fields.
  - The studio can mix eight tracks simultaneously.

- **WH-CLAUSE**
  - I will only mix what I can use in a few hours.
  - They mix whatever spices will go together.

- **mix** | make by combining [items, elements]
- **OBJECT**
  - He mixed the final version of the CD in just a couple of weeks.

- **PASSIVE**
  - I'll mix drinks while you make the salad.

- **mix** | cause to interact
- **OBJECT**
  - All the paint was mixed at one time to keep the color uniform.

  - Their parties mix artists and business people.

  - The training mixes people from different social and ethnic backgrounds.

### PHRASAL VERBS

- **mix** | stir in
  - Gradually mix in two cups of flour.

- **mix** | confuse [someone/something] with [someone/something else]

  - She's always mixing her granddaughters up.
  - The boss usually mixes up our names.

  - With all these options, I'm really mixed up.

  - He got mixed up in a scheme to defraud Medicare.
### mount

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>mount</td>
<td>to mount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>mount</td>
<td>to mount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>mounts</td>
<td>to mount</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am mounting</td>
<td>to be mounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are mounting</td>
<td>to be mounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is mounting</td>
<td>to be mounting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The store mounts prints and photos.*

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>mounted</td>
<td>from mounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>mounted</td>
<td>from mounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>mounted</td>
<td>from mounted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I never mounted a horse before.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was mounting</td>
<td>to be mounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were mounting</td>
<td>to be mounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was mounting</td>
<td>to be mounting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He was mounting the stairs two steps at a time.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>has mounted</td>
<td>to have mounted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>had mounted</td>
<td>to have mounted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>was mounted</td>
<td>to be mounted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>were mounted</td>
<td>to be mounted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The attack was mounted at six in the morning.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**mount**

- increase, rise
  - The excitement is mounting.
  - The noise in the stadium was mounting to a fever pitch.
  - Our anxiety mounted as the minutes passed.
  - The company’s debts had been mounting for months.

- climb up/onto [object]
  - We mounted our bicycles and rode off.
  - Someone was mounting the steps to the front door.
  - The conductor mounted the podium.

- undertake [object]
  - They are going to mount a new ad campaign.
  - Senator Blather mounted a spirited defense of his record.
  - The unhappy parents mounted an attack on the school board.

- place/install [object]
  - We mounted a new light fixture in the dining room.
  - They mounted the garbage disposal under the sink.
  - In the old Volkswagens, the engine was mounted in the rear.

- arrange/fix [in a support/frame] [object]
  - We mounted the pictures in simple black frames.
  - The jeweler mounted four diamonds in a gold setting.
  - The technician mounted the slides for the biology lecture.
  - Her exhibit had been beautifully mounted.

### PHRASAL VERBS

**mount up**

- get on a horse
  - Once the horses are saddled, we’ll mount up.
move | moves · moved · have moved

**PRESENT**
I move
you move
he/she/it moves

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am moving
you are moving
he/she/it is moving

- *The new plan moves the deadline back.*
- *They are moving to Dallas next week.*

**PAST**
I moved
you moved
he/she/it moved

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was moving
you were moving
he/she/it was moving

- *I was moving as fast as I could.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
... have | has moved

**PAST PERFECT**
... had moved

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was moved
you were moved
he/she/it was moved

- *The audience was quite moved by her performance.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**move**  
*change position*

- *They are taking your picture, so don't move.*
- *The policeman raised his gun and yelled, “Don't move!” The car is moving, and there's no driver in it!*  

**move**  
*change one’s residence*

- *My family moved from Santa Monica in 1955.*

**move**  
*take action*

- *The board decided to move quickly.*

**move**  
*make progress*

- *The film moves slowly in the beginning.*

**move**  
*be sold*

- *The new iPods are moving like crazy.*
- *Those handbags are not moving at all.*

**move**  
*go*

**ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

- *Move closer so you can hear the speaker.*
- *Everyone's eyes moved toward the person who just entered.*
  
  I moved **out of the hot sun**.
  
  Can we move **to a new topic**?

**move**  
*cause to go, place*

**OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)**

- *Susanna moved the refrigerator by herself.*
- *We moved the couch under the window.*
- *The nurse moved the patient out of the emergency room.*
- *The boss moved me into a new job.*
- *We moved our checking account to a new bank.*
- *The refugees were moved to a different camp.*

**PASSIVE**

**move**  
*sell*

**OBJECT**

- *We are finally beginning to move the condos.*
  
  They can't move those cars without big discounts.

**move**  
*affect emotionally*

**OBJECT**

- *Her performance totally moved the audience.*  
  
  The story moved all of us.
  
  We were deeply moved by what happened.

**PASSIVE**

**move**  
*cause, provide a reason for*

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

- *His story moved the jury to acquit him.*
- *The accident moved us to reconsider what we were doing.*  
  
  Nothing could move him to change his mind.*
**move** | moves · moved · have moved

---

**move _____ formally propose**
for object
Infinite

**BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE**

- The defense attorney moved for dismissal of all charges.
- I moved to adjourn the meeting until tomorrow afternoon.
- Mr. Chairman, I move that the motion be tabled.
- I move that we accept the company’s offer.
- He moved that the amendment be adopted.

---

**move away/back/off/etc. go in a specified direction**

- The cop ordered us to move back.
- The deer moved off in the opposite direction.
- The students moved in for a closer look.
- When will the new neighbors move in?
- Roger and Denise moved in last summer, then moved out in April.

---

**move in/out change one’s residence**

- The FBI is moving in on the leader of the drug cartel.
- To save expenses, I moved in with my sister.

---

**move in on get closer to**

- The police moved the crowd on.
- Congress should move on to more important issues.

---

**move in with take up residence with [someone]**

- Our son is moving up in the corporate world.
- Alison has been moving up the corporate ladder.

---

**move a mile a minute move extremely fast**

- The typist’s fingers were moving a mile a minute.
- The hockey season has moved into full swing.
- The global warming debate has moved into high gear on Capitol Hill.

---

**move on change (to [a different activity/subject])**

- The novel moved Jackie to tears.
- Look at Jonathan’s fancy new car. He’s really moved up in the world.

---

**move it start going quickly**

- It’s almost time for class—we’d better move it.

---

**move over shift one’s position slightly**

- Would you move over? I need more room.

---

**move to tears cause to cry**

- The novel moved Jackie to tears.
- Look at Jonathan’s fancy new car. He’s really moved up in the world.

---

**move up become successful**

- Our neighbors have moved up to a hybrid car.

---

**move up to get [something] better**

- We were moved by the president’s kind gesture.
- I loved the moving scene in which the boy was reunited with his parents.
Present Present Progressive
I name we name
you name you name
he/she/it names they name

Past Past Progressive
I named we named
you named you named
he/she/it named they named

Present Perfect Future
... have | has named

Past Perfect Future Progressive
... was naming they were naming

Future Perfect
... will name

Future Perfect
... will be naming

Past Passive
I was named we were named
you were named you were named
he/she/it was named they were named

She was just named to a cabinet position.

COMPLEMENTS

name ______ give a name to
OBJECT (+ PREDICATE NOUN)
Have you named your yacht yet?
They will name their first daughter Harriet.
President Washington named the first major ship the USS Constitution.
The atoll was named Midway because it was halfway between North America and Asia.
I was named Walter after my grandfather.

name ______ appoint, choose
OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN
The president named her ambassador to India.
We named them acting chairs.
He was named student athlete of the year.
The court will name him to oversee the election.
The committee named me to fill the vacant position.
We were named to administer the contract.

name ______ give the name of, identify
OBJECT
Can you name all the presidents?
Name three foods that are rich in vitamins.

name ______ set, fix
OBJECT
Have they named a date for the grand opening?

EXPRESSIONS

name names identify people involved in something
The witness in the fraud case threatened to name names.

name [one's] price indicate how much one wants to buy/sell something for
The car dealer's lot is full, so you can name your price.
No reasonable offer will be refused.
Everyone wants the new GPS—the manufacturer can name his price.
need needs · needed · have needed

**PRESENT**
I need we need
you need you need
he/she/it needs they need
* He needs help right away.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
Need is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

**PAST**
I needed we needed
you needed you needed
he/she/it needed they needed
* The company needed more office space.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
Need is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

**PRESENT PERFECT** … have | has needed
**PAST PERFECT** … had needed

**FUTURE** … will need
**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** —
**FUTURE PERFECT** … will have needed

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was needed we were needed
you were needed you were needed
he/she/it was needed they were needed
* The rain was desperately needed.

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**need ____ require**

**OBJECT**
Man, I need a break now.
The engine needs a quart of oil.
I don’t need any more problems right now.

**PASSIVE**
Reinforcements are needed right away.

**OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**
I need a dictionary (to be) handy when I’m reading English novels.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
Grandpa needs the type (to be) large and bold.

**PASSIVE**
An editor will be needed to write the final version.

**OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE**
I need something done right away.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
My car really needs washing.
He needs convincing to do the right thing.
The knives need sharpening.

**need ____ must, should**

**INFINITIVE**
My car really needs to be washed.
I need to get something to eat.
Everybody needs to slow down a little.
The letter needs to be sent special delivery.

---

### PHRASAL VERBS

**need ____ back/in/out/etc. require**

to be in a specified position

The library needs the books back in two weeks.
I need the splinter out before I can continue.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>note</td>
<td>The detective noted the bloodstain on the rug.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>note</td>
<td>I note a sense of despair in your voice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we, you, they</td>
<td>note</td>
<td>The secretary will note all motions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we, you, they</td>
<td>note</td>
<td>Please note all students who are absent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we, you, they</td>
<td>note</td>
<td>Please note the date and time on your reports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>The reporter noted the main points of the news conference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>The detective carefully noted what the witnesses said.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>Who enters the building is always noted by the guards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>Details of Paul's odd behavior were noted by his fellow students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>Did you note that most of the new jobs pay better than average wages?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>The guard immediately noted that something was wrong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>Who enters the building is always noted by the guards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>The library committee chair noted the large number of overdue books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>In his speech, the president noted the upcoming summit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>The mayor noted that the flags were at half-mast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>The principal noted that school uniforms will be worn at all times.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>“The company is financially sound,” the accountant noted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you, he/she/it</td>
<td>noted</td>
<td>The store manager noted in passing, “We served our millionth customer yesterday.”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complements**

- **note** notice, observe
  - **Object**
    - The detective noted the bloodstain on the rug.
    - I note a sense of despair in your voice.
    - The secretary will note all motions.
    - Please note all students who are absent.
    - Please note the date and time on your reports.
  - **Passive**
    - Details of Paul's odd behavior were noted by his fellow students.
    - The guard immediately noted that something was wrong.
    - All the extra costs must be noted and reported.
    - The reporter noted the main points of the news conference.
    - Who enters the building is always noted by the guards.
  - **That-clause**
    - Did you note that most of the new jobs pay better than average wages?
    - The guard immediately noted that something was wrong.
  - **Wh-clause**
    - Did you note who was invited to the meeting?
    - “The world will little note, nor long remember, what we say here.”
    - [Lincoln's Gettysburg Address]
    - I noted how much more they were charging.

- **note** make a record of
  - **Object**
    - The library committee chair noted the large number of overdue books.
    - In his speech, the president noted the upcoming summit.
  - **That-clause**
    - The mayor noted that the flags were at half-mast.
    - The principal noted that school uniforms will be worn at all times.
  - **Direct quotation**
    - “The company is financially sound,” the accountant noted.
    - The store manager noted in passing, “We served our millionth customer yesterday.”
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I notice you notice he/she/it notices&lt;br&gt;<strong>we</strong> notice you are noticing they are noticing&lt;br&gt;<strong>The guard</strong> notices everything.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I noticed you noticed he/she/it noticed&lt;br&gt;<strong>we</strong> noticed you were noticing they were noticing&lt;br&gt;<strong>I noticed that the Internet was really slow.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had noticed&lt;br&gt;<strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was noticed you were noticed he/she/it was noticed&lt;br&gt;<strong>we</strong> were noticed you were noticed they were noticed&lt;br&gt;<strong>Fortunately, my mistake was never noticed.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

| notice | pay attention | Who would ever notice?<br>He was too busy to notice.<br>Men never notice! |
| notice _____ | observe, become aware of<br>**OBJECT** | Everyone noticed her new coat.<br>I noticed an odd flickering on my computer screen.<br>Anne's performance was eventually noticed by the CEO.<br>She was first noticed in a small off-Broadway play. |
| notice _____ | observe, become aware of<br>**OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE** | I noticed a car turning into our driveway.<br>Did you notice him doing anything unusual?<br>The suspect was noticed hanging around the store earlier. |
| notice _____ | observe, become aware of<br>**PASSIVE** | I noticed that the animals were not in their pens.<br>He noticed that the road would be closed next week.<br>The doctor noticed that my right knee was swollen. |
| notice _____ | observe, become aware of<br>**THAT-CLAUSE** | I noticed that the animals were not in their pens.<br>He noticed that the road would be closed next week.<br>The doctor noticed that my right knee was swollen. |
| notice _____ | notice | I noticed how slippery the roads were getting.<br>I didn't notice how late it was getting.
Present Present Progressive
I observe we observe you observe you observe he/she/it observes they observe
* The school observes all major holidays.

Past Past Progressive
I observed we observed you observed you observed he/she/it observed they observed
* I have observed some problems.

Present Perfect Future
FUTURE ... have | has observed
FUTURE PERFECT ... had observed

Past Passive
I was observed we were observed you were observed you were observed he/she/it was observed they were observed
* The accident was observed by dozens of witnesses.

COMPLEMENTS

observe engage in watching
(as opposed to participating in)

The staff can only observe.
Their job is to observe.
Will they let us observe?

observe ____ pay careful attention to
OBJECT

The class observed the debate with interest.
The engineers observed the re-creation of the accident in slow motion.
The experimental procedure was observed by the entire staff.

observe ____ notice, watch
OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

I did not observe him actually do it.
Did you observe anyone leave the room?
I observed my friends turn green with envy.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I observed him pacing back and forth in his office.
We observed the fishermen getting the nets ready.
He was observed leaving the scene of the crime.

observe ____ follow, be guided by
OBJECT

If the players don’t observe the rules, they will be disqualified.
Does your class observe the custom of exchanging valentines on February 14?

observe ____ celebrate, commemorate
OBJECT

The United States observes Independence Day on July 4.
We observed a moment of silence in honor of the earthquake victims.
Christmas is observed on December 25.

PASSIVE

observe ____ comment, remark
THAT-CLAUSE

The spokesperson observed that the Senate is considering a bill to reduce the speed limit.

DIRECT QUOTATION

“A single man in possession of a good fortune,” Jane Austen observed, “must be in want of a wife.”
Present
I obtain we obtain you obtain you obtain
he/she/it obtains they obtain
* Commodity prices obtain everywhere.

Past
I obtained we obtained you obtained you obtained
he/she/it obtained they obtained
* He obtained a law degree recently.

Present Progressive
I am obtaining we are obtaining you are obtaining you are obtaining
he/she/it is obtaining they are obtaining
* He is obtaining some euros for our vacation.

Past Progressive
I was obtaining we were obtaining you were obtaining you were obtaining
he/she/it was obtaining they were obtaining
* They were obtaining as much land as they could.

Present Perfect
... have | has obtained

Past Perfect
... had obtained

Past Passive

... was/were obtained

Future
... will obtain

Future Progressive
... will be obtaining

Future Perfect
... will have obtained

COMPLEMENTS

obtain ____ get, acquire

OBJECT
It is difficult to obtain a classic MG in good condition.
They finally obtained U.S. citizenship.
You must obtain all components from local suppliers.

PASSIVE
An export license was obtained.

WH-CLAUSE
Very few of us obtain what we really wish for.
He never obtained whatever he was looking for.
You can only obtain however many trucks the dealership is authorized to sell you.

obtain ____ be in force/use

ADVERBS OF TIME
This price will obtain for the next few days.
The exchange rate obtains until the central bank changes it.
The law obtains until Congress changes it.

ADVERBS OF PLACE
The same price obtains everywhere in the world.
Standard pricing obtains at all of our dealerships.
The laws on torture obtain everywhere.
### Regular Verbs

**occur** | **occurs** · **occurred** · **have occurred**

#### Tenses

**Present**
- **it occurs**
- **they occur**
  - *The solstice occurs on June 20 or 21.*

**Present Progressive**
- **it is occurring**
- **they are occurring**
  - *Attacks are occurring as we speak.*

**Past**
- **it occurred**
- **they occurred**
  - *The same thought occurred to all of us.*

**Past Progressive**
- **it was occurring**
- **they were occurring**
  - *The epidemic was occurring everywhere.*

**Present Perfect**
- **have | has occurred**

**Past Perfect**
- **had occurred**

**Future**
- **will occur**

**Future Progressive**
- **will be occurring**

**Future Perfect**
- **will have occurred**

**Past Passive**

*Occur* is never used in the passive voice.

#### Complements

**occur**
- **happen, take place**
  - Bad things occur all the time.
  - Accidents occur when you least expect them.
  - A solar eclipse occurs when the moon passes between the sun and the earth.
  - When did the meeting occur?
  - Where did the assault occur?

**occur**
- **exist, be found**
  - A certain level of radiation occurs everywhere.
  - Corruption occurs in every secretive organization.
  - Flooding always occurs during the spring runoff.

**occur**
- **come into [someone’s] mind**
  - to object
  - A solution just occurred to Johanna.
  - This just occurred to me: Why not plug the router directly into the cable modem?
  - A drawback to the plan just occurred to the attorney.

**it + occur + to object + Infinitive**
- It never occurred to her to register to vote.
- It didn’t occur to us to postpone the trip.
- Did it ever occur to you to try to find a job?

**it + occur + to object + That-Clause**
- It occurred to me that I was running quite late.
- It soon occurred to everyone that we were completely wrong.
- It has occurred to us that we owe you an apology.
**offer**

**offer | offers - offered - have offered**

### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td>I offer the idea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td>you offer an opportunity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td>he/she/it offers a reward.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The idea offers us a great opportunity.*

**Present Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>offering</td>
<td>I am offering a reward.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are offering</td>
<td>you are offering an opportunity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is offering</td>
<td>he/she/it is offering a reward.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I am offering a reward for finding my dog.*

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>offered</td>
<td>I offered a small raise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>offered</td>
<td>you offered him a promotion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>offered</td>
<td>he/she/it offered a special deal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I offered the job to Pat.*

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was offering</td>
<td>I was offering a small raise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were offering</td>
<td>you were offering him a promotion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>were offering</td>
<td>he/she/it were offering a special deal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *They were only offering the minimum wage.*

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have offered</td>
<td>I have offered a small raise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have offered</td>
<td>you have offered him a promotion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>have offered</td>
<td>he/she/it have offered a special deal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had offered</td>
<td>I had offered a small raise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>had offered</td>
<td>you had offered him a promotion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>had offered</td>
<td>he/she/it had offered a special deal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I was offered the job to Pat.*

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was offered</td>
<td>I was offered a small raise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were offered</td>
<td>you were offered a promotion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>were offered</td>
<td>he/she/it were offered a special deal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I was offered the job to Pat.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**offer | offers · offered · have offered**

- **express, suggest**
  - May I offer a comment or two?
  - Matthew offered two proposals at the last meeting.
  - Senator Blather offered his reasons for voting against the bill.

- **present for [someone] to accept or refuse**
  - They offered us an interesting proposition.
  - The director offered Tom some useful advice.
  - Lucy offered Charlie Brown psychiatric help for five cents.
  - Charlie Brown offered Lucy five cents for psychiatric help.

- **indirect object + direct object**
  - They offered an interesting proposition to us.
  - The director offered some useful advice to Tom.
  - The guide offered a special deal to the tourists.

- **present, hand**
  - The waiter offered each of us menus.
  - He offered me his business card.
  - Everyone offered the couple their congratulations.

- **infinitive**
  - He offered to drive us to the airport.
  - They are offering to buy the bonds at par.
  - We offered to replace the broken coffeepot.

- **provide**
  - The job offers an excellent health plan.
  - The road offers easy access back to the freeway.
  - The city offers many cultural opportunities to residents and tourists.
  - Their team will not offer much resistance to the new rules.
Present Present Progressive
I open you open he/she/it opens
you open you open you open
he/she/it opens they open
* The office opens at 9 o’clock.

Past Past Progressive
I opened you opened he/she/it opened
you opened you opened you were opening
he/she/it opened they opened
* They opened all the windows upstairs.

Present Perfect
… have | has opened
I have opened you have opened
he/she/it has opened
* The bids were opened last Monday at noon.

Past Perfect
… had opened
I had opened you had opened
he/she/it had opened

Future
… will open
I will open you will open
he/she/it will open

Future Progressive
… will be opening
I will be opening you will be opening
he/she/it will be opening

Future Perfect
… will have opened
I will have opened you will have opened
he/she/it will have opened

Past Passive
it was opened they were opened
* The bids were opened last Monday at noon.

**COMPLEMENTS**

open become open
His eyes slowly opened.
His mouth opened in astonishment.
The door suddenly opened, and in walked my mother-in-law.
The windows in the living room won't open.
The lilies opened in the warm summer sun.

open start operating
The stores open at 10 o’clock.
New businesses are opening at the shopping mall.

open begin
The opera opens with a rousing chorus of happy peasants.
You must have a pair of jacks or better to open.

open become free of obstruction
The tangle of trees and bushes abruptly opened in front of us.

open cause to become open
OBJECT
I opened the doors to the patio.
The waiter opened another bottle of wine.
She opened the drawer and took out a notebook.
He opened his mouth, but said nothing.
The book was opened to the last chapter.

open start the operation of
OBJECT
PASSIVE
He plans to open a coffee shop.
They’re opening an auto parts store on Lebanon Avenue.

open begin
OBJECT
PASSIVE
Beethoven’s third piano concerto will open the concert.

open establish
OBJECT
I need to open a checking account.

open begin to use [a file/program] [COMPUTERS]
OBJECT
He opened the spreadsheet and began to enter data.
I opened Photoshop to resize some photographs.

open lead
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
This door opens onto a sun porch.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>operate</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>operate</td>
<td>we operate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>operates</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>operate</td>
<td>they operate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>The firm operates foreign subsidiaries.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>operated</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>operated</td>
<td>we operated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>operated</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>operated</td>
<td>they operated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>I never operated a forklift before.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>operated</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>operated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>operated</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>operated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I am operating</td>
<td>you are operating</td>
<td>he/she/it is operating</td>
<td>they are operating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>The company is operating at a loss.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I was operating</td>
<td>you were operating</td>
<td>he/she/it was operating</td>
<td>they were operating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>The surgeon was operating with a robotic device.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>... will operate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Progressive</strong></td>
<td>... will be operating</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... will have operated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was operated</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were operated</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was operated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>were operated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>The controls were operated electronically.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complements**

**Operate**

*function, work*

- The elevator only operates during business hours.
- The motor operates at variable speeds.
- The sleeping pill operated very quickly.
- His network of spies has operated for years.
- Gangs have always operated on the fringes of society.
- The Seventh Fleet operates in the western Pacific.
- Gretchen was operating on four hours of sleep.

**Operate**

*perform surgery*

- When will they operate?
- They couldn't operate because he still had a high temperature.
- The surgeon will operate as soon as she can.

**Operate**

*exert influence*

- A lot of factors are operating here.
- Political influences always operate in making major decisions.

**Operate**

**run, control the functioning of**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My father operated a drill press for 20 years.</td>
<td>The device is operated by remote control.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Operate**

**direct, manage**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They operate a small jewelry supply business.</td>
<td>Nobody can operate a company without accurate financial information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Operate**

*perform surgery*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>On Object</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They will operate on Douglas tomorrow.</td>
<td>We have to operate on his left wrist as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gail was operated on for appendicitis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### REGULAR: oppose | opposes · opposed · have opposed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I oppose</td>
<td>The committee opposes the referendum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you oppose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it opposes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I am opposing</td>
<td>I am opposing the bill on general principle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are opposing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is opposing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I opposed</td>
<td>I always opposed relocating the firm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you opposed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it opposed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was opposing</td>
<td>He was opposing the proposal because of its cost.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were opposing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was opposing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have had opposed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had opposed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was opposed</td>
<td>The plan was opposed by nearly everyone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were opposed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was opposed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**oppose** be/argue against, disagree with

- **OBJECT**
  - Republicans generally oppose any kind of tax increase.
  - The board will strongly oppose the merger.
  - Lincoln opposed slavery from the beginning.
  - The initiative was opposed by environmentalists.
  - I really opposed what they were recommending.
  - They will oppose whoever is nominated.
  - They have consistently opposed whatever we have tried to do.
  - I opposed postponing the decision indefinitely.
  - He opposed spending so much money on landscaping.
  - He never opposed our going to France this year.

- **PASSIVE**
  - Overwhelming forces opposed the fleet.
  - Napoleon's 72,000 soldiers opposed Wellington's army of 67,000 at Waterloo.

- **WH-CLAUSE**
  - The senator was opposed by a respected ex-governor.
  - The mob was opposed by a handful of poorly trained soldiers.
### Present Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>order</td>
<td>we order</td>
<td>they order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you order</td>
<td>you order</td>
<td>they order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>orders</td>
<td>he/she/it orders</td>
<td>they order</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He always orders red wine with fish.*

### Past Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>ordered</td>
<td>we ordered</td>
<td>they ordered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you ordered</td>
<td>you ordered</td>
<td>they ordered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>ordered</td>
<td>he/she/it ordered</td>
<td>they ordered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I ordered the replacement parts.*

### Present Perfect Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have ordered</td>
<td>you have ordered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you have ordered</td>
<td>he/she/it has ordered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was ordered</td>
<td>you were ordered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were ordered</td>
<td>he/she/it was ordered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The soldiers were ordered to return to camp.*

### Future Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will order</td>
<td>you will order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you will order</td>
<td>he/she/it will order</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have ordered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you will have ordered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was ordered</td>
<td>we were ordered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were ordered</td>
<td>you were ordered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was ordered</td>
<td>they were ordered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

- **order request service**

  - Are you ready to order?
  - We should order as soon as we can.

- **order _____ command**
  - **OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

  - The teacher ordered **the class to be silent**.
  - The captain ordered **the troops to hold their fire**.
  - I was ordered **to report on Tuesday**.
  - The officer ordered **the rioters arrested**.
  - The king ordered **the duke placed in irons**.
  - The fleet was ordered **held in readiness**.
  - The judge ordered **that the defendant be released**.
  - The dean ordered **that the students be expelled**.

- **order _____ request [food, merchandise]**
  - **OBJECT**

  - Peter ordered **a martini**, and I ordered **a glass of wine**.
  - We have to order **more copier paper** today.
  - I ordered **you a tuna sandwich**.
  - Peggy ordered **her husband a new jacket** online.
  - I ordered **a tuna sandwich for you**.
  - Peggy ordered **a new jacket for her husband** online.

- **order _____ officially direct to be done**
  - **OBJECT**

  - The sergeant ordered **an inspection of the barracks**.
  - The doctor ordered **a whole battery of tests**.
  - A new hearing was ordered by the judge.

- **order _____ arrange, organize**
  - **OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER**

  - He always orders **his books alphabetically**.
  - Some kids like to order **their toys in neat rows**.
  - The letters were ordered **in careful piles on his desk**.

### PHRASAL VERBS

- **order ____ sep away/back/in/off/out/over/up/etc. command to go in a specified direction**

  - The guard ordered the student out.
  - The general ordered up reinforcements.
  - Let’s order in Chinese and watch a movie.
  - I’m tired of cooking; let’s order out.
### REGULAR

**organize | organizes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I organize you organize he/she/it organizes</td>
<td><em>He always organizes the kids’ games.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>I am organizing you are organizing he/she/it is organizing</td>
<td><em>I am organizing a fund-raising drive.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I organized you organized he/she/it organized</td>
<td><em>I organized the data into a chart.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>I was organizing you were organizing he/she/it was organizing</td>
<td><em>They were organizing transportation for the visitors.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has organized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>... had organized</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>I was organized you were organized he/she/it was organized</td>
<td><em>The strike was organized by an ad-hoc committee.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>... will organize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Progressive</td>
<td>... will be organizing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>... will have organized</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**organize** *form a group*

- We have to organize.
- The workers are organizing.
- They will never organize by themselves.

**organize** *arrange into groups*

- Grains of sand and silt naturally organize *themselves* by size.
- For gym, we organize *the children* by age and sex.
- I have to organize *my workspace* better.
- The memos were organized by topic.

**organize** *make part of a group*

- They organized *the farm workers in the Southwest*.
- He will help organize *the voters in the fifth district*.

**organize** *form, start, arrange*

- Richard organized *a Latin club* for interested students.
- I am organizing *a garden party* for my church.
- We organized *Earth Day events* at local schools.
- Rachel organized *an impromptu group* to perform the song.
- We need to organize *a rapid response team*.
- Jane helped organize *the fortieth class reunion*.
- The strike was organized by the union.
**overcome**  

**PRESENT**  
I overcome  
you overcome  
he/she/it overcomes  
*He always overcomes his problems.*  

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**  
I am overcoming  
you are overcoming  
he/she/it is overcoming  
*He is overcoming a serious injury.*  

**PAST**  
I overcame  
you overcame  
he/she/it overcame  
*She always overcame obstacles.*  

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**  
I was overcoming  
you were overcoming  
he/she/it was overcoming  
*They were gradually overcoming their opposition.*  

**PRESENT PERFECT**  
... have | has overcome  

**PAST PERFECT**  
... had overcome  

**PAST PASSIVE**  
I was overcome  
you were overcome  
he/she/it was overcome  
*He was overcome with emotion.*  

**COMPLEMENTS**  

**overcome**  

prevail, fight and win  
“*We shall overcome.*” [GOSPEL SONG]  
They have finally overcome.  

overcome  
be strongly affected  
[USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]  
They were overcome with emotion.  
The children were overcome with excitement.  
Mr. Darcy was overcome by Elizabeth’s goodness.  
Three firemen were overcome by smoke.  

overcome  
prevail over, defeat, get control of  

**OBJECT**  
The prisoners overcame their guards.  
He overcame all of his personal problems.  
She overcame her addiction to cigarette smoking.  
The revised proposal overcame the board’s initial resistance.  
Mr. Knightley eventually overcomes his concerns about Emma’s foolishness.  

**PASSIVE**  
The guards were overcome by the prisoners.
Present Progressive

Owe is never used in the progressive tenses.

Past Progressive

Owe is never used in the progressive tenses.

Future

… will owe

Future Progressive

—

Future Perfect

… will have owed

Past Passive

I was owed you were owed he/she/it was owed

* We were owed a small fortune.

COMPLEMENTS

owe _____ be in debt for

OBJECT

He owes a lot of money.
The company owes millions of dollars.
He owes a week’s work.

owe _____ be in debt to

OBJECT

You owe me!
He owes everybody in town.
Thanks for your help. I really owe you.

owe _____ be obligated to pay/repay

OBJECT

The couple owes $6,000 in student loans.
She owes $13,000 on her new car.
Did you owe any income tax last year?

OWE

We owe the bank $200,000.
We owe $200,000 to the bank.

owe _____ be indebted to [someone] for [something]

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
to PARAPHRASE

I owe you my life.
I owe my life to you.

owe _____ need to [do/give]

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
to PARAPHRASE

it + to OBJECT + INFINITIVE

You owe Uncle Joe a letter.
I owe you an explanation.
You owe a letter to Uncle Joe.
I owe an explanation to you.

We owe it to returning veterans to be sure they have jobs.
You owe it to yourself to take a vacation.

EXPRESSIONS

owe [someone] a debt of gratitude

feel the need to thank [someone]

owing to _____ because of

For all the hard work you have done,
the school owes you a debt of gratitude.

Owing to the recent flooding, the ferry is not operating.
**Present**

- I own
- you own
- he/she/it owns

- we own
- you own
- they own

*He owns the only hotel in town.*

**Past**

- I owned
- you owned
- he/she/it owned

- we owned
- you owned
- they owned

*I owned several businesses in the 1990s.*

**Present Perfect**

- I have owned
- you have owned
- he/she/it has owned

**Past Perfect**

- I had owned
- you had owned
- he/she/it had owned

*The gun was owned by a man from Denver.*

**Future**

- I will own
- you will own
- he/she/it will own

**Future Perfect**

- I will have owned
- you will have owned
- he/she/it will have owned

**Past Passive**

- I was owned
- you were owned
- he/she/it was owned

- we were owned
- you were owned
- they were owned

**Complements**

- **own** 
  - possess, hold as property
  - object

- **own** 
  - control
  - object

- **own** 
  - take responsibility for
  - object

- **own** 
  - acknowledge
  - that-clause

**Phrasal Verbs**

- **own up to** 
  - admit, confess

- The neighbor boy owned up to the vandalism.
- The suspect eventually owned up to the robbery.
- Marvin owned up to sneaking off to the football game.
- Steve owned up to having eaten the last piece of cake.
**Present**

I pack  
you pack  
he/she/it packs  
- *My daughter packs her own suitcase.*

**Past**

I packed  
you packed  
he/she/it packed  
- *I packed last night for the trip.*

**Present Perfect**

... have | has packed

**Past Perfect**

... had packed

**Past Passive**

I was packed  
you were packed  
he/she/it was packed  
- *The boxes were all packed for shipping.*

**Present Progressive**

I am packing  
you are packing  
he/she/it is packing  
- *I’m packing right now.*

**Past Progressive**

I was packing  
you were packing  
he/she/it was packing  
- *We were packing everything into boxes.*

**Future**

... will pack

**Future Progressive**

... will be packing

**Future Perfect**

... will have packed

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

pack  put items in containers [boxes, luggage]

pack ______ fill [a container]

Object  

PASSIVE  

pack ______ put into a container for transport/storage

Object  

PASSIVE  

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

pack ______ crowd, fill to/beyond capacity

Object  

PASSIVE

pack ______ put [a large number of people] into [a place]

Object + into Object  

PASSIVE

pack ______ be able to be put [somewhere] for transport

ADVERB OF PLACE

pack ______ stuff, fill

Object + with Object  

PASSIVE

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

pack  SEP  away  store  
Gene and Louise packed away the baby clothes.

pack  SEP  down  compress, make compact  
Traffic packed the snow down on the streets.

pack  SEP  in  crowd, push in  
The promoters packed people in as tightly as possible.

pack up  fill one’s luggage  
We need to pack up tonight for our early-morning flight.

pack  SEP  up  gather [items] for transport  
Be sure to pack up all your tools before leaving.
**Present Progressive**

**Past Progressive**

**Present Perfect**

**Future Perfect**

**Past Perfect**

**Future Progressive**

**Past Passive**

### COMPLEMENTS

**paint** **engage in painting**

I try to paint as often as I can.

They will be painting all afternoon.

**paint ____ cover [a surface/area] with paint**

**object**

We need to paint the kitchen walls.

Our neighbors will paint their house this summer.

The deck has never been painted.

**Object + Predicate Adjective**

I painted our bedroom a light tan.

You should paint the exterior gray.

The porch ceiling was painted sky blue.

**paint ____ make a picture of with paint**

**Object**

Gilbert Stuart painted George Washington many times.

Linda painted clouds and airplanes on Tim's bedroom walls.

His ancestors were painted by Thomas Gainsborough.

**Passive**

He painted us a family portrait.

She painted them a picture of their old farm.

She painted a family portrait for us.

She painted a picture of their old farm for them.

He painted her laughing in the sunlight.

She painted the family working in the garden.

Gentlemen were painted posing in front of their mansions.

**paint ____ describe, usually in a colorful way**

**Object + (as) Predicate Noun**

The article painted him (as) a complete fool.

The newspaper painted the administration (as) a disaster.

The candidate was painted (as) a hopeless loser.

The article painted the flat tax proposal as ludicrous.

**paint ____ apply makeup to**

**Object**

Mindy paints her lips with bright red lipstick.

She paints her nails bright purple.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**paint** **sep out/over** cover with paint

She painted the dog out and replaced it with a cat.

City workers will paint over the graffiti.
park | parks · parked · have parked

**PRESENT**
- I park
- you park
- he/she/it parks
- we park
- you park
- they park

- **He parks in a garage on Locust Street.**

**PAST**
- I parked
- you parked
- he/she/it parked
- we parked
- you parked
- they parked

- **We parked our car on the lawn.**

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has parked

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had parked

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was parked
- you were parked
- he/she/it was parked
- we were parked
- you were parked
- they were parked

- **Cars were parked everywhere.**

**COMPLEMENTS**

**park** engage in parking a vehicle

- He is just parking now.
- I will park as soon as I can.
- Many drivers park in gear so the car won't roll.

**park** stop [a vehicle] temporarily

**OBJECT**

- We parked the car to listen to the end of the game.
- They parked the truck during the worst of the storm.

**PASSIVE**

- Cars were parked along the interstate until the snowplow came through.

**park** leave a vehicle [in a certain place]

**ADVERB OF PLACE**

- I always park there.
- You can't park in a handicapped space.
- He usually parks in front of my house.
- They will park anywhere they can find a space.

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**

- I parked the car in a lot behind the office.
- He always parks his van on the street.
- You can park your luggage in the entryway.
- Their car was parked in the neighbor's driveway.

**park** settle in [INFORMAL]

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**

- They parked themselves on my doorstep.
- He parked the kids with his mother for the afternoon.
- Bob parked himself in front of the TV and watched the game.
participate | participates · participated · have participated

PRESENT
I participate we participate
you participate you participate
he/she/it participates they participate

* He participates in all group activities.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am participating we are participating
you are participating you are participating
he/she/it is participating they are participating

* I am already participating in two events.

PAST
I participated we participated
you participated you participated
he/she/it participated they participated

* I never participated in organized sports.

PAST PROGRESSIVE
I was participating we were participating
you were participating you were participating
he/she/it was participating they were participating

* They were participating in planning the retreat.

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has participated
PAST PERFECT ... had participated

PAST PASSIVE
...
...

it was participated they were participated

* The parade was participated in by the entire community.

COMPLEMENTS

participate take part in an event/activity

There's a conference on global warming in May, and I think our company should participate.
The county fair is holding a photography contest, and grade-schoolers can participate.

participate _____ take part, be involved in OBJECT

I couldn't participate in the discussion.
Everyone should participate in citizen referendums.
I participated in most school activities.

PASSIVE in WH-CLAUSE

Elections may be participated in by every eligible voter.
Participate in what you find most helpful.
I couldn't participate in what you recommended.
I participated in whatever activities fit my schedule.

in PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We will participate in planning the conference.
I am participating in locating the new office.
We all participated in cleaning up the beach.
**Regular**

**Pass | passes · passed · have passed**

### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I pass</td>
<td>we pass</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you pass</td>
<td>you pass</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it pass</td>
<td>they pass</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Time passes slowly in the mountains.**

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I passed</td>
<td>we passed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you passed</td>
<td>you passed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it passed</td>
<td>they passed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **I passed my last exam.**

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... has passed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... has passed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was passed</td>
<td>we were passed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were passed</td>
<td>you were passed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was passed</td>
<td>they were passed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **The bill was passed by a narrow majority.**

### Complements

**Pass**

- **go by, proceed**
  - Slow down and let the truck pass.
  - The day passed slowly.

- **happen, come to an end**
  - The danger has passed.
  - His moment of fame has already passed.

- **go past each other, cross**
  - Our letters must have passed in the mail.
  - The two ships passed in the night.
  - We must have passed without seeing each other.

- **succeed in an examination/course**
  - He finally passed.
  - Do you think I will pass?

- **be officially approved**
  - The bill passed without a dissenting vote.

- **change from one state to another**
  - Water passes from a liquid to a gas at 100 degrees Celsius.

- **go by, move past**
  - ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
    - The steamboat passed **under the bridge** at 2 o'clock.
    - We passed **through Springfield** on our way to Chicago.
    - He passed **every vehicle on the road**.
    - Michelle passes **our house** on her way to school.
    - Have we already passed **the post office**?

- **succeed in [an examination/course]**
  - OBJECT
    - All the recruits passed **their physicals**.
    - I will pass **calculus** without a problem.

- **approve officially**
  - OBJECT
    - PASSIVE
      - The committee passed **all the candidates**.
      - The motion was passed by consensus.

- **transfer**
  - OBJECT
    - INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
      - TO PARAPHRASE
      - Pass **the biscuits**, please.
      - I passed **him the envelope**.
      - Please pass **Mary the salad**.
      - Wickheiser passed **Pavese the puck**.
      - I passed **the envelope to him**.
      - Please pass **the salad to Mary**.
      - Wickheiser passed **the puck to Pavese**.
**pass**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>pass</th>
<th>passes</th>
<th>passed</th>
<th>have passed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**OBJECT**

- spend, occupy [time]

- **OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
  - use illegally as money

**Bill and Melinda passed the day in meetings.**

- What would you do to pass the time on the plane?

- The family passed the day working in the garden.

- They were able to pass the counterfeit bills easily.

- Someone was passing bad checks at local businesses.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>pass</th>
<th>sep</th>
<th>back/down/in/over/under/etc.</th>
<th>transfer in a specified direction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td><em>SEP</em></td>
<td>along</td>
<td>relay [information]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td><em>SEP</em></td>
<td>along/on</td>
<td>transfer [a price change]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td><em>SEP</em></td>
<td>around/out</td>
<td>distribute</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td><em>SEP</em></td>
<td>as/for</td>
<td>be mistakenly recognized as</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td>away/on</td>
<td>die</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td><em>SEP</em></td>
<td>by</td>
<td>ignore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td><em>SEP</em></td>
<td>down/on</td>
<td>hand down, give to a younger family member</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td><em>SEP</em></td>
<td>off as</td>
<td>succeed in presenting oneself[something] as</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td><em>SEP</em></td>
<td>off on</td>
<td>sell as genuine to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td>on to</td>
<td>skip, not accept</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td>out</td>
<td>faint, fall asleep</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td><em>SEP</em></td>
<td>over/up</td>
<td>skip, not choose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td><em>SEP</em></td>
<td>up</td>
<td>not accept</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td><em>SEP</em></td>
<td>up</td>
<td>go past without stopping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Would you pass the butter back when you're finished?

- We passed our homework in at the beginning of class.

- Joanie always passes along the latest gossip.

- The store passed along the price increase to its customers.

- Please pass the cookies around for me.

- The students will pass out flyers at the rally.

- With his beard, he easily passes as an adult.

- He could pass for a professional football player.

- The magician is 55, but he could pass for 40.

- Great-aunt Amelia passed away at the age of 83.

- The boss passed Lana by for promotion.

- Sometimes I feel that life has passed me by.

- Aunt Clara passed the rocking chair down to my sister.

- The nurse's aide passed herself off as a doctor.

- He tried to pass the work off as his own.

- He passed the fake watch off on an unsuspecting passerby.

- Donald passed on the pie because he's diabetic.

- The discussion group passed on to the issue of health care.

- John passed out after two beers.

- The coach passed over Scotty and picked Lamar.

- I'll pass the main course up and go straight for dessert.

- John passed on the pie because he's diabetic.

- Don't pass up the chance to go to college.

- The old men passed up three nice restaurants and ended up at this dump.

**EXPRESSIONS**

- Don't pass judgment on the book until you've read it.

- I'm afraid his lecture on black holes passed over the audience's head.

- They passed the buck from one bureaucrat to the next.

- The organizers passed the hat around after the concert.

- The old men passed the time of day on a bench in front of the general store.
Present Progressive
I am paying we are paying
you are paying you are paying
he/she/it is paying they are paying

Past Progressive
I was paying we were paying
you were paying you were paying
he/she/it was paying they were paying

Future
... will pay
... will be paying
... will have paid

Past Passive
I was paid we were paid
you were paid you were paid
he/she/it was paid they were paid

Present Perfect
... have | has paid

Past Perfect
... had paid

Future Perfect

Past Passive

Pay (Regular)

Pay | pays · paid · have paid

**Present**
I pay we pay
you pay you pay
he/she/it pays they pay

**Past**
I paid we paid
you paid you paid
he/she/it paid they paid

**Present Perfect**
... have | has paid

**Past Perfect**
... had paid

**Future**

**Past Passive**
I was paid we were paid
you were paid you were paid
he/she/it was paid they were paid

COMPLMENTS

**Pay**

give money for goods/services

The job pays pretty well.
“Who’s going to pay?” “I’ll pay this time.”

pay be worthwhile

Crime doesn’t pay.

**Pay**

give money to [for goods/services/settlement of a bill/debt]

**Object**
I paid the plumber today.

**Object + for Object**
I paid the cashier for the book.

**Object + infinitive**
We will pay the kids to clean out the basement.
The firm was paid to run a call center for us.

**Object + for Present Participle**
We will pay the kids for cleaning out the basement.
The firm was paid for running a call center for us.

**Passive**

Pay (Regular)

**Pay**

give money for [services/settlement of a bill/debt]

**Object**
We have to pay our car insurance this month.
Did you pay the credit card bill?

The dentist’s bill has already been paid.

**Pay**

give [a certain amount of money] for goods/services

**Object**
The job pays $30,000 a year.
He pays $15 an hour.

**Indirect Object + Direct Object**
He pays his employees a commission.
Would you pay me $30 for this lamp?

He pays a commission to his employees.

**To Paraphrase**

**Pay**

be worthwhile

It pays to be careful.
It never pays to be in a hurry.

PHRASAL VERBS

pay **sep** back

return money borrowed from [someone]

Wimpy will gladly pay you back on Tuesday for a hamburger today.

pay **sep** back

get even with

We’ll pay them back for stealing our tickets.

pay off
result in a profit/benefit

Working overtime has really paid off.

pay **sep** off
settle [a debt] by paying all that is owed

We hope to pay the car loan off in three years.
### perform | performs | performed | have performed  

**REGULAR**

#### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>perform</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>do an action of a sprained wrist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>perform</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>performs</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>task/function</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am performing</td>
<td>we are performing</td>
<td>you are performing</td>
<td>do an action of a sprained wrist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are performing</td>
<td>you are performing</td>
<td>they are performing</td>
<td>function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is performing</td>
<td>they are performing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*She performs in Los Angeles.*

#### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I performed</td>
<td>we performed</td>
<td>you performed</td>
<td>do an action of a sprained wrist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you performed</td>
<td>you performed</td>
<td>they performed</td>
<td>function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it performed</td>
<td>they performed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I performed that operation once before.*

#### PAST PROGRESSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was performing</td>
<td>we were performing</td>
<td>you were performing</td>
<td>do an action of a sprained wrist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were performing</td>
<td>you were performing</td>
<td>they were performing</td>
<td>function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was performing</td>
<td>they were performing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The company was performing below expectations.*

#### PRESENT PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>… have</td>
<td>has performed</td>
<td>… has performed</td>
<td>perform</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>… had</td>
<td>performed</td>
<td>… had performed</td>
<td>perform</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PAST PASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it was</td>
<td>performed</td>
<td>they were performed</td>
<td>perform</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The play was last performed in 1989.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**perform** do / carry out an action/

**task/function**

The violinist cannot perform because of a sprained wrist.

The candidates all performed well on the first interview.

The band will perform again at ten.

**perform** do, function [in terms of success/effectiveness]

None of my stocks is performing satisfactorily.

How is your new hybrid car performing?

**perform** _____ do, carry out object

Jeanette has always performed her job well.

The veterinarian performed two surgeries this afternoon.

My brother performed three wedding ceremonies last year.

She performed a complicated experiment for the science fair.

**perform** _____ entertain an audience by acting/singing/dancing/etc. in object

The kids’ class is performing a play that they wrote.

The cast of Saturday Night Live performs its comedy sketches before a live audience.

What roles have you performed?

Penn and Teller performed the “Sawing a Woman in Half” illusion on television.

At the 77th Academy Awards, Beyoncé performed three songs nominated for Best Original Song.

My boss performed a little dance when he heard the good news.

**PASSIVE**

Shakespeare’s Henry VIII is almost never performed.
**Present**

| I permit | we permit |
| you permit | you permit |
| he/she/it permits | they permit |

*He never permits parking on the lawn.*

**Past**

| I permitted | we permitted |
| you permitted | you permitted |
| he/she/it permitted | they permitted |

*We permitted them to watch TV tonight.*

**Present Perfect**

| ... have | has permitted |

**Past Perfect**

| ... had permitted |

**Future**

| ... will permit |

**Future Progressive**

| ... will be permitting |

**Future Perfect**

| ... will have permitted |

**Past Passive**

| I was permitted | we were permitted |
| you were permitted | you were permitted |
| he/she/it was permitted | they were permitted |

*Smoking was permitted only in the parking lot.*

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**permit**

allow, make possible

- We will eat outside if the weather permits.
- If time permits, I will take questions from the audience.
- We will sail back tomorrow if the winds permit.

**permit _____ allow, give permission for**

**OBJECT**

- I will not permit a failure on my watch.
- The court cannot permit such an injustice.

**PASSIVE**

- Such behavior is not permitted here.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

- I will permit you to ask one more question.
- The law permits 18-year-olds to vote.

**PASSIVE**

- High school students are permitted to enroll in university classes.

**OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

- The school does not permit freshmen living off campus.
- The library does not permit books being copied without permission.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

- Her mother does not permit Harriet staying out late.
- We don't permit eating in the living room.
- Hawaii does not permit importing snakes or other reptiles.

---

### PHRASAL VERBS

**permit _____ in/out/through/up/etc.**

allow to go in a specified direction / be in a specified position

- The teacher permitted the boys in after recess.
- The doctor permitted the patient up for half an hour.
**PRESENT**
- I persuade
- you persuade
- he/she/it persuades

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am persuading
- you are persuading
- he/she/it is persuading

*He persuades us with excellent arguments.*

**PAST**
- I persuaded
- you persuaded
- he/she/it persuaded

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was persuading
- you were persuading
- he/she/it was persuading

*I persuaded him to go along with my joke.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has persuaded

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had persuaded

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was persuaded
- you were persuaded
- he/she/it was persuaded

*They were persuaded that it was a good investment.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**persuade ____ convince [to do]**

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
- The players persuaded the coach to cut practice short.
- The report persuaded a lot of people to sell their shares.
- I couldn't persuade them to do anything.
- The judge was persuaded to allow the testimony.

**PASSIVE**
- Okay, okay. You've persuaded me. [instead of Okay, okay. You've persuaded me to do anything.]
- What can I do to persuade you?

**persuade ____ convince [of the truth/value of]**

**OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE**
- He persuaded us that he was right after all.
- Roberta persuaded the committee that her proposal deserved extra funding.

**PASSIVE**
- I was persuaded that the report contained factual errors.
PRESENT
I pick we pick
you pick you pick
he/she/it picks they pick
* He only picks the ripest fruit.

PAST
I picked we picked
you picked you picked
he/she/it picked they picked
* They picked the best players first.

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has picked
PAST PERFECT ... had picked

PAST PASSIVE
I was picked we were picked
you were picked you were picked
he/she/it was picked they were picked
* We were picked to go first.

COMPLEMENTS
pick  choose, select
I get to pick this time.
Who will pick first?

pick _____  choose, select
OBJECT
The kids picked the programs they wanted to watch.
I picked the best option open to me.
She will pick Princeton if she gets admitted.
Their horse was picked as the favorite.

passive
pick _____  pluck, remove; gather, harvest
OBJECT
I had to pick lint from my coat before leaving the house.
We need to pick some flowers for the party.
Their horse was picked as the favorite.

PHRASAL VERBS
pick _SEP_ apart criticize in detail
Critics began to pick apart Senator Blather's budget proposal.

pick at _____  take small bites of [food]
The child had a fever and just picked at her food.

pick (away) at _____  criticize
The opposition party was picking away at the president's plan.

pick on _____  tease, annoy
Stop picking on Gary; he's doing his best.

pick _SEP_ out find, single out
How can you pick anyone out in this crowd?
The discussion picked up where it had left off.

pick up  resume, continue after an interruption
Business has picked up since Christmas.
The train is picking up speed now.
The runners picked the pace up after 20 miles.

pick _SEP_ up lift
She picked her daughter up and gave her a hug.

pick _SEP_ up stop for and take along
Would you pick us up at seven?
Don't pick up strangers along the highway.

pick _SEP_ up increase, improve
The runners picked the pace up after 20 miles.

pick _SEP_ up acquire, buy
I picked up some milk on the way home.

pick _SEP_ up capture, take into custody
Police picked up the robbery suspect.

pick _SEP_ up learn easily
You must pick up your room before going out to play.
**place**

**place**  put, position

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**

- I placed the groceries on the counter.
- He placed the bicycles in the garage.
- You shouldn’t place your money in an uninsured account.
- The court temporarily placed the children in foster care.
- The incident placed me at a distinct disadvantage.
- I was placed in an awkward position.

**place**  submit, arrange

**OBJECT**

- I am placing an order for pizza.
- You will need to place a call for an overseas connection.
- The new restaurant placed a large ad in the newspaper.
- They have placed a contract for 10 heavy trucks.

**place**  recall, find [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

**OBJECT**

- We couldn’t place him at all.
- I can’t place his name.
- He can’t place his car keys.

**place**  finish [in a certain position in a competition]

**ADVERB OF PLACE**

- We placed third.
- The Cougars placed behind the rest of the teams.
- They hope to place in the top five this year.

**place**  rank

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**

- The committee places Geraldo second among the applicants.
- We place environmental quality high on our list of priorities.
- In the 19th century, Milton was placed first among English writers.

**place**  attach [importance/value/etc.] to

**OBJECT + ON OBJECT**

- The president places great value on perseverance.

**place**  WITH

**get [someone] a job at**

- The employment agency placed Wade with a law firm.

**place**  put in a specified position

- The teacher placed the essays aside until the weekend.
- Place the books back where you found them.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**place**

**put, position**

- I placed we place you place he/she/it places they place
- *The team usually places in the top ten.

**PAST**

- I placed we placed you placed he/she/it placed they placed
- *I placed the memos on your desk.

**PRESENT PERFECT**  ... have | has placed

**PAST PERFECT**  ... had placed

**PAST PASSIVE**

- I was placed we were placed you were placed he/she/it was placed they were placed
- *The order was placed on December 12.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**place**  ASIDE/BACK/UP/etc.

- The teacher placed the essays aside until the weekend.
- Place the books back where you found them.

**place**  WITH

- The employment agency placed Wade with a law firm.
### Regular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb form</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>plan</td>
<td>I plan to stay in Chicago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>I am planning</td>
<td>are planning</td>
<td>I’m planning to take a few days off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>planned</td>
<td>He plans to stay in Chicago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>I was planning</td>
<td>were planning</td>
<td>We were planning on getting married in June.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>have planned</td>
<td>We planned a surprise for her birthday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>had planned</td>
<td>We planned on getting married in June.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>were planned</td>
<td>The meeting was planned weeks in advance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**plan** decide on, make arrangements for

**Object**

- She is planning the fall conference.
- The school is planning a field trip for seniors.
- We must plan our strategy.
- The prisoners had planned their escape for months.
- The senator’s remarks were planned days in advance.
- He should plan what he is going to do.
- We are planning where we are going on vacation.

**Passive**

- The meeting was planned weeks in advance.

**Wh-clause**

- He should plan what he is going to do.

**plan** intend, expect

**for object + infinitive**

- He planned for us to revise the contract.
- The doctor plans for him to undergo surgery Monday.
- I had planned for Diane to write the summary.
- Dave and Kathy plan to enjoy a glass of homemade wine in front of a blazing fire.
- How do they plan to finish the job?
- The company plans to open a branch in Phoenix.

**Infinitive**

- We were planning on good weather for the picnic.
- Beth is planning on Margaret’s help with the editing.
- We are all planning on attending the meeting.
- Are you planning on going out tonight?
- We weren’t planning on being delayed in traffic.

**plan** design

**Object**

- An architect is planning the new kitchen.
- How soon can you plan the extension?
- He was hired to plan the garden and reception area.

**Phrasal Verbs**

**Plan** sep out make complete arrangements for

- Mom and Dad planned out our entire vacation.
play ____ act the part/role of
OBJECT
She is playing Ophelia in Hamlet.

play ____ perform music on [an instrument]
OBJECT
Katie plays the violin beautifully.

play ____ perform [a musical composition (by)]
OBJECT
She will play a Haydn piano sonata.
The symphony is playing Beethoven on Friday night.

play ____ pretend to be, behave [in a certain way]
PREDICATE NOUN
He always plays the victim.
The reporter played the role of a mere bystander.
The smuggler tried to play a completely innocent deckhand, but it didn't work.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
He played dead during the attack.
I played innocent, acting like I didn't know where the noise was coming from.

---

PHRASAL VERBS

play along (pretend to) cooperate
Let's play along and see what the boss wants.

play _____ along keep [someone] waiting
The boss keeps playing us along; will we get a raise or not?

play (around) with ____ consider,
usually not seriously
The company played around with the idea of a four-day workweek.
Mom and Dad played with moving to San Diego after the war.

play SEP down try to reduce the importance/likelihood/value of
News commentators played down the probability of a recession.

play _____ off against set in opposition to
Joe played the car dealers off against each other to get the best price.

play on ____ exploit, manipulate
The candidate played on our desire for world peace in order to win our votes.

play SEP out complete
We were behind by 12 runs but had to play the game out.
The forward played out the rest of the season with a sore hamstring.

play (straight) through perform all of
Agatha played the concerto straight through.

play SEP up emphasize, praise
The press release played up the politician's strong points.

play up to ____ flatter
Lisa is always playing up to the manager; she wants a promotion.

---

EXPRESSIONS

play a part/role in ____ be influential in
Genetics plays an important role in cancer.
Our group plays a big part in keeping politicians honest.

play ball (with ____) cooperate (with [someone])
Will the players who used steroids play ball with the Senate subcommittee?

play ____ by ear decide what to do as a situation develops
The union will have to play it by ear with regard to future layoffs.

play (the) devil's advocate argue against a proposal in order to test its validity
Good journalists play devil's advocate when interviewing politicians.

play with fire take a serious risk
The governor is playing with fire by giving jobs to all his friends.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I play</th>
<th>we play</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you play</td>
<td>you play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it plays</td>
<td>they play</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He plays tennis on weekends.

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I played</th>
<th>we played</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you played</td>
<td>you played</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it played</td>
<td>they played</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The two teams never played each other.

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has played</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... had</th>
<th>played</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will</th>
<th>play</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Future Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will be</th>
<th>playing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will have</th>
<th>played</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was played</th>
<th>we were played</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were played</td>
<td>you were played</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was played</td>
<td>they were played</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The game was played last night.

### Complements

- **play** *have fun, amuse oneself*
  - We promise not to play in the street.
  - The kids have been playing all afternoon.

- **play** *take part in [a sport/game/recreation]*
  - The manager will let Luis play tomorrow.
  - Can I play, Coach?
  - We never play for money.

- **play** *perform music*
  - The soloist will not be able to play because of an injury.
  - The Beatles played at Busch Stadium on August 21, 1966.

- **play** *be performed/shown [ENTERTAINMENT]*
  - A band was playing in the distance.
  - What’s playing on the radio right now?
  - *The Lord of the Rings* was playing downtown.

- **play** *be successful/convincing [INFORMAL]*
  - The senator’s new ad is not playing well.
  - Do you think my idea will play?
  - We thought the ad campaign would play better than it did.

- **play** *take part in [a sport/game/recreation]*
  - object
  - We play *softball* nearly every weekend.
  - The Yankees are playing *three games* at home this week.
  - Do you like to play *chess*?

- **play** *be at [a certain position] in a game/sport*
  - object
  - I always played *left field*, and my sister played *shortstop*.

- **play** *put [a player] in a game*
  - object
  - He plays *left guard*.

- **play** *be a member of [a sports team]*
  - for object
  - The coach played *Felipe* in center field.

- **play** *compete against [SPORTS]*
  - object
  - Willie Mays played *for the Giants*.
  - Michael Jordan played *for the Bulls*.

- The Seahawks are playing *the Rams* on Sunday.

**Whom* are we playing tomorrow?*

I am playing *Ben White* in the semifinal match.
### Complements

**plead** make an emotional appeal, beg
- The women and children were pleading.
- Standing proudly, the men refused to plead.
- The convicts were pleading on their knees.

**plead [object]** present/argue [a law case, one’s position]
- The lawyer will plead your case.
- You shouldn’t plead your own case.
- The state’s attorney will plead the government’s case.

**plead [predicate adjective]** formally declare oneself [innocent/guilty] in court
- He pled guilty on all charges.
- The gang members will plead innocent.
- How do you plead?

**plead [for object]**
- The condemned man was pleading for his life.

**plead [for object + infinitive]**
- We pleaded for them to be careful.
- I’m pleading with you! Let me go to the concert.
- They pleaded with the manager to reconsider his decision.
- I have pleaded with Bob to look for a better job.
- He pleaded to come with us.
- The children pleaded to get a dog.
- I pleaded to get a bigger budget.

**plead [object]** give as an excuse
- Tanya pleaded ignorance of the law, but got a ticket anyway.
- The tobacco company heads pleaded ignorance of the addictive properties of cigarette smoking.

**plead [that-clause]**
- Scott pleaded that he didn’t have enough time to complete the assignment.
- Brandon pleaded that he didn’t see the speed limit sign.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>SUBJECT PRONOUNS</th>
<th>OBJECT PRONOUNS</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I please</td>
<td>you please</td>
<td><em>His behavior pleases no one.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you please</td>
<td>you please</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it pleases</td>
<td>they please</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am pleasing</td>
<td>you are pleasing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are pleasing</td>
<td>you are pleasing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is pleasing</td>
<td>they are pleasing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>you pleased</td>
<td><em>The decision pleased everyone but me.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you pleased</td>
<td>you pleased</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it pleased</td>
<td>they pleased</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... has pleased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>... had pleased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>was pleased</td>
<td>were pleased</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were pleased</td>
<td>you were pleased</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was pleased</td>
<td>they were pleased</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>... will please</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Future Progressive</strong></td>
<td>... will be pleasing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... will have pleased</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>please give satisfaction/happiness</td>
<td>He just wants to please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We aim to please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ruby's Derby pie was sure to please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Our salespeople are eager to please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please wish, desire</td>
<td>Once dinner is over, you may do as you please.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>His parents allow him to watch whatever he pleases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please cause to be satisfied/happy</td>
<td>The presents really pleased the children.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You can only please him by doing what he wants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The piano recital pleased the audience immensely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We were pleased by what you said.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It pleased him to get such good publicity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It pleased everyone to escape from harm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“It has pleased Almighty God to prolong our national life another year.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[ABRAHAM LINCOLN]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Regular please**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular please</th>
<th>please · pleases · pleased · have pleased</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>347</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## point

### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>point</td>
<td></td>
<td>I am pointing</td>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>point</td>
<td></td>
<td>you are pointing</td>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>point</td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is pointing</td>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>point</td>
<td></td>
<td>we are pointing</td>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>point</td>
<td></td>
<td>you are pointing</td>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>point</td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is pointing</td>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>point</td>
<td></td>
<td>we are pointing</td>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The compass always points north.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>I was pointing</td>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>you were pointing</td>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was pointing</td>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>we were pointing</td>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>you were pointing</td>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was pointing</td>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>we were pointing</td>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The guide pointed out the monument.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>I have pointed</td>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>you have pointed</td>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>they have pointed</td>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>I will point</td>
<td>Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>you will point</td>
<td>Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>they will point</td>
<td>Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The flashlight was pointed at a car in the ditch.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>I was pointed</td>
<td>Past Passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>you were pointed</td>
<td>Past Passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>pointed</td>
<td></td>
<td>they were pointed</td>
<td>Past Passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The gun was pointed right at us.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

- **point**: indicate direction by extending one's finger.

- **point**: direct attention to/from object.

- **point**: direct, aim to/from object.

- **point**: be oriented in a certain direction.

- **point**: indicate as a result to object.

### PHRASAL VERBS

- **point out**: say, mention.

- **point out**: indicate, identify.

- **point to/toward**: mention.

- **point up**: emphasize.
### Present

- **I possess**
- **you possess**
- **he/she/it possesses**

> He possesses a terrific sense of humor.

### Past

- **I possessed**
- **you possessed**
- **he/she/it possessed**

> We never possessed a stereo system.

---

### Present Perfect

... have | has possessed

### Past Perfect

... had possessed

### Future

... will possess

### Future Perfect

... will have possessed

---

### Past Passive

- **I was possessed**
- **you were possessed**
- **he/she/it was possessed**

> He was possessed by a sudden desire to laugh.

---

#### Complements

- **possess**
  - **have, own**
    - **object**
      - I have never possessed **any stock in that company**.
      - Do they possess **any firearms**?
      - They possessed a **large amount of cash**.
      - They were suspected of possessing **illegal drugs**.
  
  - **possess**
    - **have as a characteristic**
      - **object**
        - She possesses **great natural singing ability**.
        - He possesses **a grumpy disposition**.
        - Volvos possess a **good safety record**.
        - The city possessed a **strong credit rating**.
    
  - **possess**
    - **take complete control of**
      - **object**
        - An uncontrollable rage possessed **him**.
        - He was possessed by greed.
        - What possessed **Donna to say she didn't keep a diary**?
**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I pour</th>
<th>we pour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you pour</td>
<td>you pour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it pours</td>
<td>they pour</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* When it rains, it pours.

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I poured</th>
<th>we poured</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you poured</td>
<td>you poured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it poured</td>
<td>they poured</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I just poured the tea.

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have</th>
<th>I has poured</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... had poured</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will pour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will have poured</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Passive**

- it was poured
- they were poured

* The coffee was poured and the dessert was served.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**pour**

fall/flow steadily [of a liquid]

- It has been pouring all night.
- The milk was pouring down the baby’s chin.

fill a glass/cup with [a liquid], serve [a liquid]

- Please pour the wine, will you?
- Don’t pour the coffee until the guests arrive.

**OBJECT**

- We poured the children some lemonade.
- The hostess poured everyone a glass of wine.

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

for paraphrase

- We poured some lemonade for the children.
- The hostess poured a glass of wine for everyone.

**pour**

dispense [a liquid]

- I poured the marinade over the meat.
- He poured the water down the drain.

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**

- She carefully poured the medicine into the dispenser.
- The unused olive oil was poured back into the bottle.

spend, invest

- We poured all our savings into a dot-com start-up.
- The government poured billions of dollars into student aid.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

pour back/down/forth/in/out/through/ etc. flow in a specified direction

- The levee collapsed, and the floodwater poured in.

**pour **sep** away/back/in/out/etc. cause to flow in a specified direction**

- The candidate’s supporters poured into the arena.
- Fans poured out of the stadium.

**pour into/out of**

enter/exit in large numbers

- The candidate’s supporters poured into the arena.
- Fans poured out of the stadium.

**pour**

off drain from the top of a container of liquid

- She poured off a little sauce before cooking.

**pour [oneself] into**

become very involved in

- After being laid off, he poured himself into finding a new job.

**pour**

out discard [a liquid]

- The milk is past its expiration date; we need to pour it out.

**pour out to [someone]**

tell [one’s feelings] to [someone]

- Layla poured her heart out to Eric.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>practice</td>
<td>I practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>practice</td>
<td>we practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>practice</td>
<td>you practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>practices</td>
<td>he/she/it practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>He practices his Italian with a friend.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>practice</td>
<td>you practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>practices</td>
<td>he/she/it practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>I’m practicing my new magic trick.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>practiced</td>
<td>I practiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>practiced</td>
<td>we practiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>practiced</td>
<td>you practiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>practiced</td>
<td>he/she/it practiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>I practiced law in Illinois and Oregon.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>practiced</td>
<td>you practiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>practiced</td>
<td>he/she/it practiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>He was practicing medicine without a license.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>…</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>… have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>it was practiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>they were practiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>The dance routine was practiced for hours.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

practice **do something over and over**

to increase one’s skill

practice **… do over and over to increase one’s skill**

- **OBJECT**
  - Philip practices the trumpet nearly every day.
  - If you don’t practice a foreign language, you quickly forget it.

- **PASSIVE**
  - Every piece was practiced until it was perfect.

- **WH-CLAUSE**
  - I practiced what I would say to my boss.
  - We all practiced what we would do in the event of an earthquake.

- **WH-INFINITIVE**
  - The apprentices were practicing how to install ceramic tile.

- **PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
  - He needs to practice fielding ground balls.
  - The orchestra practiced coming in together.
  - Nursing students will practice giving injections this week.

practice **… do regularly**

- **OBJECT**
  - All people have the right to practice their beliefs.
  - Paulette practices yoga daily.

- **PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
  - Kids should practice being nice to the elderly.

practice **… work in [LAW, MEDICINE]**

- **OBJECT**
  - He practices law in the state of California.
  - Rachel is no longer practicing medicine.

practice **… train**

- **on OBJECT**
  - I don’t want a surgical intern to practice on me!
  - I’m learning to tattoo. Can I practice on you?

### Expressions

**Practice what you preach.** [PROVERB]

**Do what you advise others to do.**

When my boss harassed me for being late, I told him, “Practice what you preach.”
**precede**

**Present**
- I precede
- you precede
- he/she/it precedes

**Past**
- I preceded
- you preceded
- he/she/it preceded

**Present Progressive**
- I am preceding
- you are preceding
- he/she/it is preceding

**Past Progressive**
- I was preceding
- you were preceding
- he/she/it was preceding

**Present Perfect**
- I have preceded
- you have preceded
- he/she/it has preceded

**Future**
- I will precede
- you will precede
- he/she/it will precede

**Future Progressive**
- I will be preceding
- you will be preceding
- he/she/it will be preceding

**Future Perfect**
- I will have preceded
- you will have preceded
- he/she/it will have preceded

**Past Passive**
- I was preceded
- you were preceded
- he/she/it was preceded

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **precede**  *happen, come/go before*
  - Group A precedes, Group B follows.
  - The professors precede, the graduates follow.

- **precede**  *happen, come/go before in space/time*
  - Wind always precedes rain.
  - Several minor tremors preceded the main earthquake.
  - The wail of sirens preceded the air raid.
  - An economic collapse preceded Roosevelt's election.
  - Who preceded John F. Kennedy as president?

- **precede**  *in rank*
  - In the army, a general precedes a colonel, and a colonel precedes a major.
  - In the Roman Republic, consuls preceded praetors.
  - In Jane Austen's time, a married daughter preceded her unmarried sisters.

- **precede**  *introduce, preface*
  - The professor always preceded his lecture with a story from his childhood.
###prefer | prefers · preferred · have preferred

####REGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I prefer</td>
<td>we prefer</td>
<td>Prefer is rarely used in the progressive tenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you prefer</td>
<td>you prefer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it prefers</td>
<td>they prefer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He prefers white wine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I preferred</td>
<td>we preferred</td>
<td>Prefer is rarely used in the progressive tenses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you preferred</td>
<td>you preferred</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it preferred</td>
<td>they preferred</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I preferred traveling by train as a child.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have preferred</td>
<td>... will prefer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... had preferred</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was preferred</td>
<td>we were preferred</td>
<td>... will have preferred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were preferred</td>
<td>you were preferred</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was preferred</td>
<td>they were preferred</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jane's solution was preferred by most of us.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

####COMPLEMENTS

- **prefer** like better
  - **OBJECT**
    - I prefer **chunky peanut butter**.
    - Would you prefer **soup or salad**?
    - The kids would prefer **their old babysitter**.
    - Dino prefers **baseball** over football.
    - Dina prefers **football** to baseball.
  - **OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**
    - I prefer **my soup really hot**.
    - Americans prefer **their drinks ice-cold**.
    - John prefers **his memos short and decisive**.
  - **(for) OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
    - Your mother would prefer **(for) you** to stay home.
    - He would prefer **(for) the kids** to rake the leaves.
    - They might prefer **(for) us** to submit the report later.
  - **INFINITIVE**
    - I would prefer **to do it myself**.
    - Would you prefer **to eat in or go out**?
    - Everyone would prefer **to be rich**.
  - **(it) BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE**
    - Everyone would prefer **(it) that he stay in school**.
    - The doctor would prefer **(it) that you undergo the treatment**.
    - The board would prefer **(it) that we impose a moratorium on hiring**.
  - **PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
    - I prefer **doing it myself**.
    - Thomas really prefers **playing outside**.
    - Do you prefer **watching dramas or crime shows** on TV?

- **prefer** formally bring [a charge] in court
  - **OBJECT**
    - My aunt preferred **charges against her neighbor for destroying her fence**.
**prepare**

**OBJECT**

They were in the kitchen preparing lunch.

Our group prepared a position paper on the topic.

**PASSIVE**

Evacuation plans were prepared in case the hurricane came ashore.

Let’s prepare the car for driving in snow.

Robert prepared the float for the homecoming parade.

The owner prepared the store for the anniversary sale.

A brochure will be prepared for the grand opening.

**OBJECT + for OBJECT**

The nurses prepared me to be transferred.

We prepared them to hear some bad news.

The player prepared himself to be overlooked in the draft.

The soldiers were prepared to withstand the attack.

**prepare**

**OBJECT**

Are you preparing for your driving test?

We must prepare for an economic downturn.

The sailors were preparing for 12 months away from their families.

**INFINITIVE**

Sandra prepared to answer the committee’s questions.

The actors are preparing to go on stage for the second act.

The ships should prepare to sail at dawn tomorrow.
I present  
we present

you present  
you present

he/she/it presents  
they present

* He always presents the annual award.

I am presenting  
we are presenting

you are presenting  
you are presenting

he/she/it is presenting  
they are presenting

* I am presenting my report this afternoon.

She presented a paper at the conference.

I presented  
we presented

you presented  
you presented

he/she/it presented  
they presented

* The economy was presenting new challenges.

She was presented as an old friend of the family.

He will present the names of the winners.
The speaker presented his wife and two children at the end of his talk.

Diplomats must always present their credentials.
Michael presented a talk on scientific frauds and charlatans.
The architects have presented their invoice.

He presented himself as a humanitarian.
They presented the plan as a big opportunity for us.
She was presented as an old friend of the family.

We hope that a suitable opportunity will present itself soon.

The network is presenting an hour-long special about the epidemic.
The symphony will present a concert under the stars.

The teacher presented a book to each of us.
The booster club presented a check for $500 to the school.
The teacher presented each of us with a book.
The booster club presented the school with a check for $500.
**preserve** | preserves · preserved · have preserved

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I preserve</th>
<th>we preserve</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you preserve</td>
<td>you preserve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it preserves</td>
<td>they preserve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* John preserves every e-mail he gets.  

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am preserving</th>
<th>we are preserving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you are preserving</td>
<td>you are preserving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is preserving</td>
<td>they are preserving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I am preserving all my father's notes.  

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I preserved</th>
<th>we preserved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you preserved</td>
<td>you preserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it preserved</td>
<td>they preserved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* They preserved the entire downtown area.  

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was preserving</th>
<th>we were preserving</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were preserving</td>
<td>you were preserving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was preserving</td>
<td>they were preserving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* We were preserving the raspberries.  

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has preserved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... had preserved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

| it was preserved | they were preserved |

* The records were preserved for 10 years.  

**COMPLEMENTS**

**preserve**

**OBJECT**

save, protect from harm/damage/destruction

I have preserved all my grandmother's letters.  
Immigrants often struggle to preserve their native language.  
They have a grant to preserve several endangered species.  
We must preserve our right to life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness.  
The dinosaur bones were preserved by the museum staff.  
We have preserved what could be saved from the fire.  
Preserve whatever insurance documents you have.

**preserve**

**OBJECT**

keep [food] from decaying by canning/freezing/etc.

We preserve all of our summer fruit.  
We preserve what we grow.

**preserve**

**OBJECT**

maintain

It is important that senior citizens preserve their dignity.  
The movie preserves the eerie feel of the novel.  
Despite his problems, he has preserved his sense of humor.  
Remarkably, the town has preserved its unique charm.
**press**

**press** | presses · pressed · have pressed

### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>press</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>press</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>press</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am pressing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are pressing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is pressing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was pressing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were pressing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was pressing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>has pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>was pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>were pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>were pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will press</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will press</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will press</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will be pressing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will be pressing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will be pressing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will have pressed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **press** try too hard
- **press** push (on) with steady force
  - **object**
  - **press** crowd, push closely together
    - **adverb of place to/from**
  - **press** make smooth-flat
    - **object**
  - **press** squeeze
    - **object**
    - **press** from / out of **object**
  - **press** put forward continuously and forcefully
    - **object**
  - **press** urge continuously
    - **for object**
    - **object + infinitive**

### Phrasal Verbs

- **press back/forward/in/on/onward/etc.** push in a specified direction
  - **etc.**
  - **press** sep back/forward/in/on/etc. push in a specified direction
  - **etc.**

- **He always presses his point too hard.**
- **He is pressing charges against them.**
- **They were pressing apples to make cider.**
- **We never pressed the issue.**
- **They were pressing apples to make cider.**
- **The key was pressed too soon.**

- **The coach warned the team not to press.**
- **I pressed the elevator button.**
- **Press any key to continue. [COMPUTERS]**
- **He pressed my hand to reassure me.**
- **I need to press my shirt.**
- **The kids were pressing flower petals.**
- **Everyone in the village helped press the grapes.**
- **They pressed oil from the olives.**
- **She pressed all the juice out of the lemon.**
- **The plaintiffs were pressing their suit.**
- **We should press the issue in the next debate.**
- **The union is pressing for higher wages.**
- **Senator Blather was pressing for deregulation of banks.**
- **The governor is pressing the legislature to pass the bill.**
- **Can you press them to make a decision?**

- **The mob pressed forward.**
- **The explorers pressed on against all odds.**
- **The enemy was pressing us back.**
**PRESENT**
- I prevail
- you prevail
- he/she/it prevails

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am prevailing
- you are prevailing
- he/she/it is prevailing

*The stronger team usually prevails.*

**PAST**
- I prevailed
- you prevailed
- he/she/it prevailed

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was prevailing
- you were prevailing
- he/she/it was prevailing

*Hope is prevailing over fear.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- I have prevailed

**PAST PERFECT**
- I had prevailed

*Optimism about the recovery prevailed.*

**FUTURE**
- I will prevail

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
- I will be prevailing

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- I will have prevailed

*Hurricane conditions were prevailing along the coast.*

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was prevailed upon
- you were prevailed upon
- he/she/it was prevailed upon

*She was prevailed upon to say a few words.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**prevail**
- be dominant/widespread
  
  A sense of crisis prevails everywhere.
  Cloudy weather will prevail for the next few days.
  The New Year’s Eve custom has prevailed there for nearly 300 years.
  Similar unemployment rates prevail in most states.
  Mobile homes prevail on the west side of town.

**prevail**
- be successful, win out
  
  In the long run, reason must prevail.
  It was not until 1945 that the Allies prevailed.
  Our soccer team prevailed against the No. 1 team in the country.

**prevail**
- persuade, get [to do]
  - on/upon object + infinitive
  
  Can we prevail on you to take notes for us?
  The audience prevailed upon the pianist to play an encore.
  The board prevailed upon the director to step aside.

**PASSIVE**
- I was prevailed on
  
  I was prevailed on to run for treasurer.
**REGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</th>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>PAST PROGRESSIVE</th>
<th>PRESENT PERFECT</th>
<th>PAST PERFECT</th>
<th>PAST PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>prevent</td>
<td>I am preventing</td>
<td>I prevented</td>
<td>I was prevented</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had prevented</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>prevent</td>
<td>you are preventing</td>
<td>you prevented</td>
<td>you were prevented</td>
<td>has prevented</td>
<td>had prevented</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>prevents</td>
<td>he/she/it is preventing</td>
<td>he/she/it prevented</td>
<td>he/she/it was prevented</td>
<td>is preventing</td>
<td>was prevented</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *My illness prevents my going to work.*
- *Am I preventing you from doing your homework?*
- *We prevented a big mistake.*
- *The medicines were preventing an epidemic.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE</th>
<th>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</th>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... will prevent</td>
<td>... will be preventing</td>
<td>... will have prevented</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The ship was prevented from docking.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**prevent ____ stop from happening**

**OBJECT**

Regular exercise can prevent **major health problems**.

Only **you** can prevent **forest fires**. [ADVERTISING SLOGAN]

We are trying to prevent **further damage from the flood**.

A collision was prevented by the truck driver’s quick reaction.

We prevented **what could have been a bad mistake**.

It will prevent **whatever problems might have arisen**.

Lack of space prevents **our eating in the kitchen**.

Federal law prevents **building on a floodplain**.

**present participle**

She prevented **them from making a really big mistake**.

Nothing could prevent **me from watching the game**.

An outbreak of flu prevented **the kids from going to school**.

We were prevented **from working** by a power failure.

**prevent ____ stop [from doing]**

**OBJECT + from present participle**

**PASSIVE**
**print**

**Present**
I print  
you print  
he/she/it prints

**Present Progressive**
I am printing  
you are printing  
he/she/it is printing

- He prints everything in color.

**Past**
I printed  
you printed  
he/she/it printed

**Past Progressive**
I was printing  
you were printing  
he/she/it was printing

- I printed a copy of the e-mail for you.

**Present Perfect**
... have | has printed

**Past Perfect**
... had printed

**Future**
... will print

**Future Progressive**
... will be printing

**Future Perfect**
... will have printed

**Past Passive**

- it was printed
- they were printed

- The newspaper is printing a correction.

- The company was printing about 20 titles a year.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**print** write in block letters  
(as opposed to cursive)

- Please print.
- Most forms require you to print.
- I usually print, because nobody can read my handwriting.

- Does your copier print in color?  
- He prints with soy-based ink.

- produce [text/images on paper] using a printing press / photocopier / computer printer  

- The newspaper prints 10,000 copies a day.  
- Always print a copy of your correspondence for the files.  
- The university will print my dissertation in July.  
- Art books are printed on special paper.

- publish in print, include in a publication  

- The journal printed a list of Isaac Asimov's 10 favorite books.  
- They printed three of Hilary's poems in the December issue.

- issue  

- The lawyers forced the magazine to print a retraction.  
- It was like a license to print money.  
- The tabloid newspaper will have to print a formal apology.

- press/stamp onto a surface  

- They can print hundreds of millions of transistors on a single microprocessor.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- print **sep out** produce (a copy of) using a photocopier / computer printer  

- Would you print out six more copies of the report?  
- I need to print the drawing out in a larger size.
REGULAR

**proceed**

- **Present**
  - I proceed
  - you proceed
  - he/she/it proceeds

- **Present Progressive**
  - I am proceeding
  - you are proceeding
  - he/she/it is proceeding

- **Past**
  - I proceeded
  - you proceeded
  - he/she/it proceeded

- **Past Progressive**
  - I was proceeding
  - you were proceeding
  - he/she/it was proceeding

- **Present Perfect**
  - I have proceeded
  - you have proceeded
  - he/she/it has proceeded

- **Past Perfect**
  - I had proceeded
  - you had proceeded
  - he/she/it had proceeded

- **Future**
  - I will proceed
  - you will proceed
  - he/she/it will proceed

- **Future Perfect**
  - I will have proceeded
  - you will have proceeded
  - he/she/it will have proceeded

- **Past Passive**
  - Proceed is never used in the passive voice.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**proceed**

- **go ahead, continue**
  - Please proceed.
  - The trial is proceeding smoothly.
  - We must proceed without delay.

- **go on after stopping for a while**
  - After unloading, the truck proceeded to the warehouse.
  - After lunch, we proceeded on our way.
  - After clearing customs, we proceeded to the baggage claim area.

- **begin and continue [to do]**
  - John stopped a policeman and proceeded to tell him what had happened.
  - I got the waiter’s attention and proceeded to order dinner.
  - He got paid and promptly proceeded to spend every penny. [used ironically]
  - Aaron bought a new pair of skis and proceeded to break his leg. [used ironically]
produce | produces · produced · have produced

**PRESENT**
I produce we produce  
you produce you produce  
he/she/it produces they produce

* Our firm produces cases for cell phones.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am producing we are producing  
you are producing you are producing  
he/she/it is producing they are producing

* Their vineyard is producing 30 tons of grapes a year.*

**PAST**
I produced we produced  
you produced you produced  
he/she/it produced they produced

* His announcement produced a sensation.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was producing we were producing  
you were producing you were producing  
he/she/it was producing they were producing

* They were producing 2,000 widgets an hour.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**  ... have | has produced  
**PAST PERFECT**  ... had produced

**PAST PASSIVE**

---

---

it was produced they were produced

* The play was first produced in 2003.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**produce** show satisfactory results
The new ad campaign is finally producing.
Their division was eliminated because they weren’t producing.

**produce** bear/yield food
Are the fruit trees producing yet?
The hens will start producing soon.
Cows stop producing during really hot weather.

**produce** make, create, manufacture
**OBJECT**
The company produces components for airplanes.
Mozart produced his compositions at an amazing rate.

**PASSIVE**
The mill produces recycled paper from post-consumer waste.

**WH-CLAUSE**
The parts were produced at our plant in Tennessee.
The company will only produce what they have orders for.

**produce** cause to happen/exist
**OBJECT**
The announcement produced a financial panic.
The discovery could produce a whole new industry.

**PASSIVE**
Side effects are produced by every medicine.

**produce** show, make available
**OBJECT**
The court ordered them to produce the documents.
With a smile, he produced a bouquet of roses.

**PASSIVE**
They must produce evidence of the drug’s effectiveness.
The play was first produced on Broadway in 2001.

**produce** supervise the making of [an artistic production]
**OBJECT**
He has produced many successful films.
She is producing her newest CD herself.
I am producing a revival of a 1960 musical.

**note:** The verb produce is stressed on the second syllable, which rhymes with loose. The noun produce is stressed on the first syllable.
promise | promises
--- | ---
• promised | have promised

**PRESENT**
- I promise you promise he/she/it promises
  - It promises to be an eventful meeting.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am promising you are promising he/she/it is promising
  - He is always promising to fix the gate.

**PAST**
- I promised you promised he/she/it promised
  - I promised to take the kids to the movies.

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... have | has promised

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was promised you were promised he/she/it was promised
  - The job was never promised to anyone.

**FUTURE**
- ... will promise

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- ... will have promised

**COMPLEMENTS**

**promise _____ assure** [that something will happen]
- **OBJECT**
  - The weatherman promises **sunny weather all weekend**.
  - The coach promised **a winning season**.

- **PASSIVE**
  - Record earnings were promised by Wall Street.

- **OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
  - He promised **Janet to have his report done tomorrow**.
  - I promised **myself to take some time off**.
  - I promised **my folks that I would not be late**.
  - You promised **the kids that we would play a game with them**.
  - We were promised **that the car would be ready today**.

- **INFINITIVE**
  - I promise **to give you a call**.
  - The hotel clerk promised **to forward my mail**.
  - The game promises **to be a sellout**.

- **THAT-CLAUSE**
  - I promised **that I would not be late**.
  - The salesman promised **that we could return the rug**.
  - We promise **that we will be careful**.

**promise _____ pledge**
- **INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**
  - The coach promised **the fans a winning season**.
  - He promised **his staff a bonus**.
  - I never promised **the kids a puppy**.

- **TO PARAPHRASE**
  - The coach promised **a winning season to the fans**.
  - He promised **a bonus to his staff**.
  - I never promised **a puppy to the kids**.

**promise _____ give a reason to expect**
- **OBJECT**
  - A rising barometer promises **clear weather**.
  - The dark thunderclouds promised **rain**.
  - This promises **to be a high-scoring game**.

**EXPRESSIONS**

promise the moon/stars/world to _____ /
promise the moon/stars/world
make exaggerated promises to
- My boyfriend promised me the world.
**promote**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>we promote</td>
<td>The publisher promotes all his books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you promote</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they promote</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>we promoted</td>
<td>The governor promoted wind energy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you promoted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they promoted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>has promoted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>had promoted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>were promoting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were promoting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they were promoting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>am promoting</td>
<td>We are promoting a new product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>are promoting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is promoting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>were promoting</td>
<td>The university was promoting its science programs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were promoting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they were promoting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>will promote</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Progressive</strong></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>will be promoting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>will have promoted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **promote** raise to a higher rank/level/position
  
  **OBJECT**
  
  - The captain will promote **three soldiers from our squad**.
  - The teacher promoted **the entire class** to fifth grade.
  - Did they ever promote **Ralph**?
  - The candidate is promoting **his daughter** to campaign manager.
  - Sally was just promoted.

- **promote** encourage, actively support
  
  **OBJECT**
  
  - Senator Blather has always promoted **free enterprise**.
  - The art department promotes **individual creativity**.
  - The hiring of minorities is promoted by the government.

- **promote** give publicity to
  
  **OBJECT**
  
  - We aggressively promote **all of our new products**.
  - The athletic department has heavily promoted **the star of the basketball team**.

  **PASSIVE**
  
  - Sugary breakfast cereals are constantly being promoted.
**REGULAR**

**propose | proposes | proposed | have proposed**

**PRESENT**
- I propose
- you propose
- he/she/it proposes
  - *He proposes reducing the budget by 5%.*
- we propose
- you are proposing
- he/she/it is proposing
  - *I am proposing a totally new plan.*

**PAST**
- I proposed
- you proposed
- he/she/it proposed
  - *I proposed that we adopt the motion.*
- we proposed
- you were proposing
- he/she/it was proposing
  - *We were only proposing it as a temporary measure.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have
  - *An acceptable agreement was finally proposed.*
- ... has proposed

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had proposed

**COMPLEMENTS**

**propose _____ suggest for consideration**
- Shelly has proposed an exciting idea.
- The dean proposed the elimination of several programs.

**OBJECT**
- The plan was proposed by someone I didn’t know.

**PASSIVE**
- The president will propose him as ambassador.
- He proposed her plan as an alternative strategy.

**OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN**
- The plan was proposed by someone I didn’t know.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
- He proposed me to act as secretary.

**PASSIVE**
- He proposed a consulting firm to develop our marketing plan.

**TO OBJECT + BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE**
- I proposed to them that we rent out the cottage.
- Harry proposed to us that we leave early.
- Charles proposed to him that he delay the press release.

**INFINITIVE**
- The major proposed to attack their left flank.
- I proposed to return via Boston.
- Bob proposed to go out for pizza.

**BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE**
- Someone proposed that he delay the staff meeting.
- Who proposed that John manage the reception?
- Nobody is proposing that we stop working on it.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
- I proposed taking a little break.
- No one wanted to propose our giving up.
- She proposed getting married in June.

**propose _____ ask to marry one**
- Tim proposed to Katie on a horse-drawn carriage ride.

**OBJECT**
- I’ll propose to Stephanie when I’m home on leave.

**propose _____ intend, plan**
- Do you propose to leave us here alone?

**INFINITIVE**
- The engaged couple proposed to honeymoon in Montreal.

**EXPRESSIONS**

**propose a toast honor publicly and drink to the health/happiness of**
- I propose a toast to the bride and groom.
- I propose a toast to the President of the United States.
Present Progressive

I am protecting we are protecting
you are protecting you are protecting
he/she/it is protecting they are protecting

* I am not protecting you any longer.

Past Progressive

I was protecting we were protecting
you were protecting you were protecting
he/she/it was protecting they were protecting

* We were protecting ourselves as best we could.

Present Perfect

... have | has protected

Past Perfect

... had protected

Past Passive

I was protected we were protected
you were protected you were protected
he/she/it was protected they were protected

* We were protected from the strong winds by a line of trees.

protect ______ keep safe from harm/damage/loss

Object

You must protect yourself at all times.
The senator is careful to protect his reputation.
The cast protects your arm until the bone is healed.
He protected his money by investing cautiously.

Passive

We were fully protected by our insurance policy.

Object + from Object

A healthy diet can help protect us from heart disease.
A barrier reef protects the island from waves.

Passive

The firefighters were protected from the flames by special fire-resistant clothing.

Object + from Present Participle

Only good records protected us from being sued.
The barrier protected our car from colliding with oncoming traffic.

Passive

Our house was protected from being destroyed by the quick response of the fire department.
prove | proves · proved · have proven
--- | ---
prove | proves · proved · have proved

**PRESENT**

I prove | we prove
you prove | you prove
he/she/it proves | they prove

* His experiment proves that we are right.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am proving | we are proving
you are proving | you are proving
he/she/it is proving | they are proving

* Cal is proving to be a bit of a problem.

**PAST**

I proved | we proved
you proved | you proved
he/she/it proved | they proved

* It proved to be much more difficult.

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was proven | we were proven
you were proven | you were proven
he/she/it was proven | they were proven

* His guilt was never proven.

**PAST PERFECT**

have | has proven

**FUTURE**

will prove

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**

will be proving

**FUTURE PERFECT**

will have proven

**COMPLEMENTS**

prove | demonstrate that something is true/correct

**OBJECT**

For homework, Johanna told the students to prove the theorem.

I can prove my claim.

The validity of the will was proven in court.

The lawyer proved the defendant (to be) an innocent bystander.

Her boyfriend’s subsequent behavior proved him (to be) a complete loser.

Placido has proved himself (to be) an excellent shortstop.

Our analysis proved the plan (to be) feasible.

Madeline has proved herself (to be) fearless.

Our guide proved (to be) a stranger to the region.

Our hotel proved (to be) a dumpy guest house.

Her suggestion proved (to be) a stroke of pure genius.

The guide proved (to be) quite unreliable.

Their claim proved (to be) false.

Our best guess proved (to be) totally wrong.

**PASSIVE**

The validity of the will was proven in court.

**RELEXITIVE PRONOUN + AS PREDICATE NOUN**

Sandra has proven herself as an astronaut.

Emily has proven herself as a teacher.

**OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN**

The lawyer proved the defendant (to be) an innocent bystander.

Her boyfriend’s subsequent behavior proved him (to be) a complete loser.

Placido has proved himself (to be) an excellent shortstop.

Our analysis proved the plan (to be) feasible.

Madeline has proved herself (to be) fearless.

Our guide proved (to be) a stranger to the region.

Our hotel proved (to be) a dumpy guest house.

Her suggestion proved (to be) a stroke of pure genius.

The guide proved (to be) quite unreliable.

Their claim proved (to be) false.

Our best guess proved (to be) totally wrong.

**OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**

Her boyfriend’s subsequent behavior proved him (to be) a complete loser.

Placido has proved himself (to be) an excellent shortstop.

Our analysis proved the plan (to be) feasible.

Madeline has proved herself (to be) fearless.

Our guide proved (to be) a stranger to the region.

Our hotel proved (to be) a dumpy guest house.

Her suggestion proved (to be) a stroke of pure genius.

The guide proved (to be) quite unreliable.

Their claim proved (to be) false.

Our best guess proved (to be) totally wrong.

**TO OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE**

Can they prove to the police that they were not involved in the crime?

**THAT-CLAUSE**

In 1616, William Harvey proved that blood circulates.

The police proved that the driver was lying.

**WH-CLAUSE**

Can they prove who caused the accident?

I can prove what I am saying.

prove | turn out [to be]

**(to be) PREDICATE NOUN**

Our guide proved (to be) a stranger to the region.

Our hotel proved (to be) a dumpy guest house.

Her suggestion proved (to be) a stroke of pure genius.

The guide proved (to be) quite unreliable.

Their claim proved (to be) false.

Our best guess proved (to be) totally wrong.

**(to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**

Our guide proved (to be) a stranger to the region.

Our hotel proved (to be) a dumpy guest house.

Her suggestion proved (to be) a stroke of pure genius.

The guide proved (to be) quite unreliable.

Their claim proved (to be) false.

Our best guess proved (to be) totally wrong.
provide | provides · provided · have provided

**PRESENT**
- I provide
- you provide
- he/she/it provides
- we provide
- you provide
- he/she/it provides
- they provide

* The catering service provides great food.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am providing
- you are providing
- he/she/it is providing
- we are providing
- you are providing
- he/she/it is providing
- they are providing

* He is not providing much help.

**PAST**
- I provided
- you provided
- he/she/it provided
- we provided
- you provided
- he/she/it provided
- they provided

* The barn provided shelter from the storm.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was providing
- you were providing
- he/she/it was providing
- we were providing
- you were providing
- he/she/it was providing
- they were providing

* The staff was providing us with a lot of information.

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have provided

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had provided

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was provided
- you were provided
- he/she/it was provided
- we were provided
- you were provided
- he/she/it was provided
- they were provided

* The animals were provided with food and water.

**COMPLEMENTS**

provide _____ supply

**OBJECT**
- He provided some helpful advice.

**PASSIVE**
- They didn't provide enough food for the group.
- Complete assembly instructions were provided.

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**
- The unlocked back door provided them easy entry.
- The annuity will provide your parents an adequate income.
- The unlocked back door provided easy entry for them.
- The annuity will provide an adequate income for your parents.
- The book provided us with the answers.
- The weather provides you with a reason to cancel the party.

provide _____ state

**THAT-CLAUSE**
- The ordinance provides that apartments must pass inspection before they can be rented.
- The contract provides that any legal disputes will be tried in Sangamon County.

provide against _____ prepare for
- Have you provided against flood damage if the levee breaks?

provide for _____ allow
- The employment contract provides for two weeks of paid vacation.

provide for _____ support
- He provides for his wife, his two children, and his aging mother.
- A trust provides for their daughter's education.
### Publish

**Regular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>publish</td>
<td>you publish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>publish</td>
<td>you publish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>publishes</td>
<td>they publish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The company publishes reference works.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>published</td>
<td>you published</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>published</td>
<td>you published</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>published</td>
<td>they published</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* She recently published two fine essays.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>published</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>published</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was published</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were published</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was published</td>
<td>they published</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The book was published by a university press.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **publish** **have one's writing printed** in a book/journal/etc.
- **publish** **prepare, print, and distribute** books/magazines/newspapers/etc.
- **publish** **have one's writing printed** in [a book/magazine/newspaper/etc.]
  - **OBJECT**:
    - Ross has published his new book about climate change.
    - I have published a dozen articles in my field.
    - He will publish his study in a linguistics journal.
- **publish** **prepare, print, and distribute** [books/magazines/newspapers/etc. or parts thereof]
  - **OBJECT**:
    - The press only publishes art books.
    - University presses have an obligation to publish scholarly works.
    - The newspaper will publish a story about homelessness in America.
  - **PASSIVE**:
    - Many of Shakespeare's plays were first published in pirated editions.
- **publish** **make known**
  - **OBJECT**:
    - The drug company should publish the study's findings.
pull away/back/down/in/out/over/up/etc. move in a specified direction

pull **sep** along/aside/away/down/over/under/up/etc. cause to move in a specified direction

pull **sep** ahead take the lead
pull **sep** apart find fault with
pull **sep** apart affect emotionally very strongly
pull **sep** away increase one's lead

pull **sep** down reduce
pull **sep** down make sad/depressed
pull down/in ______ earn
pull for ____ hope for the success of
pull **sep** in attract
pull **sep** in capture, take into custody
pull in/up arrive by car
pull **sep** off perform successfully
pull **sep** on/off put on / take off [clothing]

pull out (of ______) withdraw/retreat (from [something])

pull **sep** out produce

pull through survive, recover from illness/difficulty
pull **sep** together gather and organize

pull up come to a stop
pull up move forward

---

**EXPRESSIONS**

pull a stunt/trick on ____ fool, deceive
pull out all the stops use all available resources, hold nothing back

pull (some) strings use one's influence
pull [someone's] leg fool, trick [someone]

pull the plug on ____ stop, put an end to
Present Present Progressive
I pull you pull he/she/it pulls * The steering wheel pulls to the right.
we pull you pull they pull
you pull you pull they pull
he/she/it pulls they pull

Past Past Progressive
I pulled you pulled he/she/it pulled * Matt pulled his kayak into the water.
we pulled you pulled they pulled
you pulled you pulled they pulled
he/she/it pulled they pulled

Present Perfect Future
PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has pulled
I have pulled we have pulled
you have pulled you have pulled
he/she/it has pulled they have pulled

Past Perfect Future Progressive
PAST PERFECT ... will pull
I was pulled we were pulled
you were pulled you were pulled
he/she/it was pulled they were pulled

Future Future Perfect
FUTURE ... will pull
I will pull we will pull
you will pull you will pull
he/she/it will pull they will pull

Past Passive
PAST PASSIVE
I was pulled we were pulled
you were pulled you were pulled
he/she/it was pulled they were pulled

COMPLEMENTS

pull | pulls · pulled · have pulled pull

pull | drag/tug/tow something
We will all pull on the count of three.
The horses were pulling as hard as they could.
I couldn’t keep pulling much longer.

pull | drag, tug, tow
OBJECT
The tractor was pulling a big agricultural sprayer.
I don’t think my car can pull such a heavy trailer.
Will you pull me in the wagon?
The barges were being pulled by a towboat.

pull | move
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
We pulled into the parking lot.
The car pulled to the side of the road.
The ship slowly pulled out to sea.

pull | cause to move
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
The pilot pulled the plane into the hangar.
The brakes pull the car to the right.
Pull your chair closer.
All heavy trucks were pulled to the side by the police.

pull | drag toward one
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
I pulled the children onto my lap.
I pulled the book closer to me.
He pulled the coins into a heap in front of him.

pull | remove
OBJECT
We pulled weeds all afternoon.
The dentist pulled her wisdom teeth.
The manager pulled the pitcher after four innings.
The robber pulled a gun from his jacket.
I can’t pull the cork out of the wine bottle.

pull | injure by stretching
OBJECT
The athlete pulled a muscle during his morning sprints.
**purchase**

### Present
- I purchase
- you purchase
- he/she/it purchases
- we purchase
- you are purchasing
- he/she/it is purchasing
- we are purchasing

*He purchases old furniture to refinish.*

### Past
- I purchased
- you purchased
- he/she/it purchased
- we purchased
- you were purchasing
- he/she/it was purchasing
- we were purchasing

*We purchased presents for the children.*

### Present Perfect
- ... have | has purchased

### Past Perfect
- ... had purchased

### Present Progressive
- I am purchasing
- you are purchasing
- he/she/it is purchasing

*I am only purchasing useful items this Christmas.*

### Past Progressive
- I was purchasing
- you were purchasing
- he/she/it was purchasing

*We were purchasing some drapes for the living room.*

### Future
- ... will purchase

### Future Progressive
- ... will be purchasing

### Future Perfect
- ... will have purchased

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it was purchased</td>
<td>they were purchased</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The items were purchased with a credit card.*

---

### Complements

**purchase** ______ buy

**OBJECT**
- He purchased *everything we would need for the picnic.*
- We have never purchased *anything* at that store.
- We could purchase *the refrigerator* on an installment plan.

**PASSIVE**
- Supplies are purchased by the office manager.

**WH-CLAUSE**
- You should only purchase *what you need right away.*
- We will only purchase *what is on sale.*
- He can purchase *whatever he wants to.*

**purchase** ______ acquire/achieve by sacrifice

**OBJECT**
- The army purchased *its victory* at a very high price.
- Our goal was purchased at great expense.
- The fortress was purchased by the sacrifice of many brave men.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB FORMS</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I pursue you pursue he/she/it pursues</td>
<td>He pursues moderation in all things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I am pursuing you are pursuing he/she/it is pursuing</td>
<td>I am pursuing a career in electronics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I pursued you pursued he/she/it pursued</td>
<td>The company pursued a number of options.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was pursuing you were pursuing he/she/it was pursuing</td>
<td>We were pursuing an impossible goal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>The stolen vehicle was pursued by several police cars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**pursue** __________ chase/follow in order to catch/attack

**OBJECT**

The hunters pursued _the elk_ all day.

Grant's army pursued _Lee's remaining forces_ westward.

A good salesman pursues _anyone who expresses the slightest interest in his product._

The suspect is being pursued by the police.

**pursue** __________ continue to work to achieve

**OBJECT**

Barbara is pursuing _a master's degree._

Becky is pursuing _a career in architecture._

We all must pursue _our own dreams._

Sam pursues _knowledge_ for its own sake.

An appeal to a higher court was pursued.

**pursue** __________ carry further, continue

**OBJECT**

The teacher won't pursue _the matter._

Can we pursue _this discussion_ after lunch?

**pursue** __________ engage in, practice

**OBJECT**

I pursue _letterpress printing_ as a hobby.

Melanie pursues _music_, and Kathy pursues _gardening_.
### push

**push** | pushes · pushed · have pushed  
---|---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Present Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I push</td>
<td>I am pushing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you push</td>
<td>you are pushing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it pushes</td>
<td>he/she/it is pushing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He always pushes things too far.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I pushed</td>
<td>I was pushing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you pushed</td>
<td>you were pushing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it pushed</td>
<td>he/she/it was pushing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I already pushed the elevator button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had pushed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past Passive</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future Progressive</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was pushed</td>
<td>... will push</td>
<td>... will be pushing</td>
<td>... will have pushed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were pushed</td>
<td>we were pushed</td>
<td>they were pushed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The company is pushing its new insurance product.

- I was pushing the bike because it had a flat tire.

**Complements**

- **Stop pushing!**
  - I hate it when people push.
  - Nothing happens when I push.
  - Push and hold for a few seconds.

- **Can you push the stroller?**
  - Don't push the red button!

- The crowd pushed through the door.
  - He pushed past the security guards.

- The nurse pushed the needle into my arm.
  - The company was pushing its new allergy drug.
  - The army was pushing south.

- We finally managed to push the proposal through.
- We had to push the car off the road.
- We were being pushed too hard.

**Phrasal Verbs**

- Maria pushed the baby carriage along.
  - Gwen pushed her plate away and left the table.
  - I couldn't push the lid down.
  - It's midnight—time to push off.

- They hadn't eaten in days, and still they pushed on.
  - We finally managed to push the proposal through.

- push **sep** along/aside/away/back/down/in/out/etc. cause to move with force in a specified direction

- push off leave, go away

- push on continue moving

- push **sep** through succeed in accomplishing

- push **sep** shove, crowd forward

- push **sep** press (against) something
### Present Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>we put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>you put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>puts</td>
<td>they put</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He always puts his car in the garage.*

### Past Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>we put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>you put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>they put</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I put the package on his desk.*

### Present Perfect Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>... has put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... had</td>
<td>put</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was put</td>
<td>we were put</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were put</td>
<td>you were put</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was put</td>
<td>they were put</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The documents were put into the safe.*

### Future Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... will put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... will be putting</td>
<td>put</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... will have put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was put</td>
<td>we were put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were put</td>
<td>you were put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was put</td>
<td>they were put</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The picture was put above the fireplace.*

### Complements

**Put**

- place, set
  - **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**

  I always put **my keys on the dresser**.
  We put **the new rug in the living room**.
  The guards put **a barricade across the road**.
  She put **her hand under the kitten** to lift it.
  Terry put **her knitting aside** and picked up a book.
  The clerk put **a price of $49.99 on the dress**.
  The coach put **pressure on the team**.
  The picture was put **above the fireplace**.

- insert
  - **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

  I put **the key into the lock** and turned it.
  We put **the note under his door**.
  The telephone company will put **a new satellite into orbit**.
  You will need to put **your car into the garage**.
  The suitcases were put **into the closet**.

- cause to be in a certain condition/state
  - **OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER**

  His lectures put **me to sleep** sometimes.
  The CEO’s decision put **3,000 people out of work**.
  Don’t put **yourself in danger**.
  He always puts **me in a good mood**.
  I’d like to put **the old lawn mower to good use**.

- express, say
  - **OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER**

  I thought he put **it very well**.
  You will need to put **your ideas in a simpler form**.
  I put **my comments in writing**.

  **PASSIVE**

  His complaints were put **rather rudely**, I thought.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb combination</th>
<th>Example sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>put across</td>
<td>He managed to put across the complexity of the plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put aside</td>
<td>We put aside the income tax refund for our retirement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put away</td>
<td>We need to put away the good silverware.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put away</td>
<td>Would you put the ketchup away, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put away</td>
<td>Steve can really put away the potato chips.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>The government put down a rebellion in the provinces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>It’s important to put everything down on paper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>The campaign volunteer put me down as a “maybe.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>She put him down in front of all their friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>You can put 10% down and pay the rest in 90 days.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>The daffodils are putting forth their blooms early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>She put forward her plan to save endangered species.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>Could you put in a paragraph about offshore drilling?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>We put in more shelves for our books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>The defendant put in for a change of venue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put down</td>
<td>Drake put in for the vacant Senate seat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>Bubba’s vulgar language really puts me off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>We’ll have to put the meeting off until next week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>Ron put on his fake French accent, and we all laughed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>Don’t believe him; he’s just putting you on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>Will I need to put my coat on?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>Uncle Nelson has put on quite a bit of weight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>The senior class put on a musical.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>She puts lipstick on in the morning and after lunch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>We put on some rock music for Dad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>Mom put a pot of coffee on for us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>The campers put the fire out with water from the pond.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>They put out 40 titles a year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>Your laptop puts out a lot of heat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put off</td>
<td>The anesthesia will put you out, and you won’t remember the surgery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put through</td>
<td>The new CEO put the merger through.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put through</td>
<td>Laurie put herself through law school at Georgetown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up</td>
<td>We can put your parents up for one night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up</td>
<td>The airline put the stranded passengers up at a hotel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up</td>
<td>Our neighbors put their house up for sale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up</td>
<td>John put up $2,000 for the new playground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up</td>
<td>They put up a new drugstore in just four months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up</td>
<td>They put Renni up for a three-year term.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up</td>
<td>Martha couldn’t put up with the noise anymore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put up</td>
<td>I don’t like to be put upon by my friends.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I question we question I am questioning we are questioning
you question you question you are questioning you are questioning
he/she/it questions they question he/she/it is questioning they are questioning
* The committee questions our estimates.

Past
I questioned we questioned I was questioning we were questioning
you questioned you questioned you were questioning you were questioning
he/she/it questioned they questioned he/she/it was questioning they were questioning
* Nobody questioned his good intentions.

Present Perfect
... have I has questioned
Past Perfect ... had questioned

Future
... will question
Future Progressive ... will be questioning
Future Perfect ... will have questioned

Past Passive
I was questioned we were questioned
you were questioned you were questioned
he/she/it was questioned they were questioned
* He was questioned about the accident.

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **question** | **doubt, object to**
  - **OBJECT**
    - The police were questioning everyone.
    - *Whom* will they question next?
  - **PASSIVE**
    - The whole family was questioned.
  - **OBJECT + about OBJECT**
    - A policeman questioned them about the accident.
    - The whole office questioned me about the memo.
  - **PASSIVE**
    - We were questioned about Alice's dinner party.
  - **OBJECT + about WH-CLAUSE**
    - I questioned the kids about who had started the fight.
    - The reporter questioned us about what had happened.
    - Parents always question teenagers about where they are going.
  - **OBJECT + on OBJECT**
    - He questioned me on the difference between banks and credit unions.
    - The students questioned the professor on the uses of science and technology.
  - **PASSIVE**
    - The expert witness was questioned on the validity of DNA testing.

- **question** | **request information from, ask**
  - **OBJECT**
    - The police were questioning everyone.
    - *Whom* will they question next?
  - **PASSIVE**
    - The whole family was questioned.
  - **OBJECT + about OBJECT**
    - A policeman questioned them about the accident.
    - The whole office questioned me about the memo.
  - **PASSIVE**
    - We were questioned about Alice's dinner party.
  - **OBJECT + about WH-CLAUSE**
    - I questioned the kids about who had started the fight.
    - The reporter questioned us about what had happened.
    - Parents always question teenagers about where they are going.
  - **OBJECT + on OBJECT**
    - He questioned me on the difference between banks and credit unions.
    - The students questioned the professor on the uses of science and technology.
  - **PASSIVE**
    - The expert witness was questioned on the validity of DNA testing.
**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I quit</th>
<th>you quit</th>
<th>he/she/it quits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we quit</td>
<td>you quit</td>
<td>they quit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He usually quits around 5 o'clock.

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I quit</th>
<th>you quit</th>
<th>he/she/it quit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we quit</td>
<td>you quit</td>
<td>they quit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I quit my job last year.

**Present Perfect**

... have | has quit

**Past Perfect**

... had quit

**Present Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am quitting</th>
<th>you are quitting</th>
<th>he/she/it is quitting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we are quitting</td>
<td>you are quitting</td>
<td>they are quitting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I am quitting next week.

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was quitting</th>
<th>you were quitting</th>
<th>he/she/it was quitting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we were quitting</td>
<td>you were quitting</td>
<td>they were quitting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He was quitting because he needed a full-time job.

**Future**

... will quit

**Future Progressive**

... will be quitting

**Future Perfect**

... will have quit

**Past Passive**

Quit is never used in the passive voice.

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**quit** stop functioning

- My cell phone just quit.
- The engine quits if you give it too much gas.
- His poor old heart finally quit.

**quit** stop working at the end of a work period

- When do they quit for the day?
- I am getting tired. How soon can we quit?
- We can’t quit until the next shift comes in.

**quit** resign from a job

- That’s it. I quit!
- How many people quit in the course of a month?
- We are moving to a new town, so I will have to quit.

**quit** admit defeat, give up

- You beat me again. I quit.
- No matter how bad things look, we will never quit.
- They quit before the game was half over.

**quit** voluntarily stop doing [a job, school, activity]

**OBJECT**

- I am going to quit my job at the end of the year.
- Tom quit the police force and went to law school.
- Mike quit college to join the Marines.
- He quit the team because he injured his knee.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- You need to quit what you are doing and get a better job.
- Quit whatever you are doing and listen to this!

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

- I have to quit smoking so much.
- The company is going to quit paying overtime.
- He can’t quit worrying about what is going to happen.

**quit** leave, move away from

**OBJECT**

- They quit the suburbs and moved into the city.

---

### PHRASAL VERBS

**quit on** leave one’s job without warning [someone]

- The carpenters quit on us in the middle of the renovation.

**quit on** stop functioning while [someone] is using it

- The lawn mower quits on me when I get into the tall grass.
- The furnace quit on us again.
**quote** repeat another’s words/writing

**quote** repeat / closely paraphrase another’s words/writing

**passive**

**from** object

**quote** draw on or make allusions to previous work

**quote** make one’s opinion/feelings public

**quote** give [the price of]

**COMPLEMENTS**

quote repeat another’s words/writing  Don’t blame me; I was only quoting.
You shouldn’t quote without citing the original source.
Why quote when you can write your own original material?

quote ______ repeat / closely paraphrase another’s words/writing

object The reporter was quoting a government official.
Can I quote you on that?
You’re quoting Jane Austen quite a lot in this book.
Gregory likes to quote Hamlet. [the character] To quote Hamlet: “To be or not to be, that is the question.”

passive

from object Gregory likes to quote from Hamlet. [the play] Manuel quotes from Don Quijote.

quote ______ draw on or make allusions to previous work

object The film quotes 1930s gangster movies.
The fourth movement quotes themes from the opening movement.

passive

Classical references are often quoted in Renaissance literature.

quote ______ make one’s opinion/feelings public

object + as present participle They quoted the CEO as rejecting the contract offer.
The president was quoted as having no regrets.
Senator Blather was quoted as doubting the validity of global warming.

passive

quote ______ give [the price of]

indirect object + direct object

He quoted me a good price.
United Airlines quoted us a fare of $360.
The lawn service quoted Judy a price of $60 an hour.

He quoted a good price to me.
United quoted a fare of $360 to us.
The lawn service quoted a price of $60 an hour to Judy.
raise | raises · raised · have raised

**COMPLEMENTS**

**raise** lift, move to a higher position/level

- **OBJECT**
  - I raised my hand to get the teacher’s attention.  
  - The crane raised the air conditioning unit to the roof.  
  - A car raised a cloud of dust along the lane.

- **PASSIVE**
  - The boats were all being raised off the sand by the tide.

**raise** increase the amount/strength of

- **OBJECT**
  - The news raised everyone’s hopes.  
  - The Fed announced that it would raise the interest rate.  
  - We will have to raise our offer.  
  - The boss raised my salary $75 a week.  
  - The meeting raised our hopes for a quick settlement.  
  - The noise was raised to an unbearable level.

- **PASSIVE**
  - Their farm raises barley and lentils.  
  - Everyone used to raise a few chickens.

**raise** cause to grow [plants, animals]

- **OBJECT**
  - We raised three children in that house.  
  - Grandma raised her family single-handedly.

- **OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
  - “I didn’t raise my boy to be a soldier.” [1915 antiwar song]

- **PASSIVE**
  - Children were raised to respect their elders.  
  - Our children weren’t raised to act like that.

**raise** amass, collect [money, resources]

- **OBJECT**
  - The company has to raise more capital.  
  - We raised money for the hurricane victims.  
  - The rebels are raising an army in the mountains.

**raise** bring up [an issue/topic for consideration]

- **OBJECT**
  - He raised a number of objections to the bill.  
  - You raise a good point.

- **PASSIVE**
  - The issue was raised earlier.

**raise** cause to happen/exist

- **OBJECT**
  - His bad jokes raised a few groans from the audience.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I range, you range, he/she/it ranges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>I am ranging, you are ranging, he/she/it is ranging, we are ranging, they are ranging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I ranged, you ranged, he/she/it ranged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>I was ranging, you were ranging, he/she/it was ranging, we were ranging, they were ranging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>... will range, ... will be ranging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>... will have ranged</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**range** — vary [between two limits], extend

**ADVERB OF TIME**

- The Age of Discovery ranges from the late 15th to the early 17th centuries.
- The children range from six to nine in age.

**ADVERB OF PLACE**

- The area we service ranges from the Atlantic Ocean to the Mississippi River.
- Our archaeological work ranged across the entire Southwest.

**ADVERB OF MANNER**

- The rugs range from inexpensive cotton ones to pricey handwoven wool ones.
- The Thai dishes ranged from very spicy to extremely spicy.
- The wedding caterer's menu ranged from mostaccioli and fried chicken to chateaubriand and pan-seared halibut.
- The cost ranges between two and three hundred dollars.

**range** — scan, wander

**ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

- His eyes ranged around the room.
- Her glance ranged from face to face.

**range** — live in

**OBJECT**

- The sawfish ranged the Atlantic Ocean from New York to Brazil.
    **ADVERB OF PLACE**
    - In 1850, 50 million bison ranged over the North American prairie.
reach | reaches · reached · have reached

### PRESENT

- I reach
- you reach
- he/she/it reaches

### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

- I am reaching
- you are reaching
- he/she/it is reaching

- *His show reaches its intended audience.*

### PAST

- I reached
- you reached
- he/she/it reached

### PAST PROGRESSIVE

- I was reaching
- you were reaching
- he/she/it was reaching

- *The train reached St. Louis around 2:45.*

### FUTURE

- I will reach
- you will be reaching

### FUTURE PERFECT

- I will have reached

### PAST PASSIVE

- I was reached
- you were reached
- he/she/it was reached

- *He was reached by phone this morning.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**reach**  
stretch one's hand to grasp

#### something

- How far can you reach?
- I am reaching as far as I can, but I still can't get it.

**reach _____**  
stretch one's hand to grasp

#### object

- The little boy could barely reach the door handle.
- Can you reach the phone for me?
- I can't reach the books on the top shelf.

#### for object

- Peter and Gisela reached for the milk jug at the same time.
- Clint reached in his pocket for his keys.

#### INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

- Reach my glasses, please.
- Can you reach me the phone?
- Reach my glasses for me, please.
- Can you reach the phone for me?

#### for PARAPHRASE

- I reached down and picked up my shoes.
- He reached into the drawer and took out a knife.
- Alison reached under her seat and pulled out a package.

**reach _____**  
arrive at

#### object

- We should reach Phoenix soon.
- The news didn't reach us until yesterday.
- I reached the finish line totally exhausted.
- The negotiators finally reached an agreement last night.

**reach _____**  
extend/develop/increase to

#### object

- The tide had reached its highest point.
- The extension cord won't reach the desk.
- Our broadcast signal reaches the entire metropolitan area.
- We can vote when we reach 18 years of age.
- It will reach 68 degrees tomorrow.
- Unemployment reached its peak in 1933.
- Our Smart Car can reach 30 miles per hour in 6.5 seconds.
- The teacher's patience had finally reached its limit.

**reach _____**  
get in touch with, contact

#### object

- Were you able to reach Samuel?

**reach _____**  
 affect, influence

#### object

- Successful authors reach their readers' hearts.
Present: I read, you read, he/she/it reads, we read, they read

Past: I read, you read, he/she/it read, we read, they read

Present Progressive: I am reading, you are reading, he/she/it is reading, we are reading, they are reading

Past Progressive: I was reading, you were reading, he/she/it was reading, we were reading, they were reading

Present Perfect: I have read, you have read, he/she/it has read, we have read, they have read

Past Perfect: I had read, you had read, he/she/it had read, we had read, they had read

Future: I will read, you will read, he/she/it will read, we will read, they will read

Future Progressive: I will be reading, you will be reading, he/she/it will be reading, we will be reading, they will be reading

Future Perfect: I will have read, you will have read, he/she/it will have read, we will have read, they will have read

Past Passive: It was read, they were read

* He never reads his e-mail.

* She read nothing but short stories.

* She read nothing but short stories.

* The transcript was read aloud in court.

Note: The present form of read rhymes with seed; the past forms of read rhyme with bed.

Complements:

read understand writing/printing
Can any of the children read yet?

read look at and understand the content
I love to read.

of printed material
I always read on the airplane.

read speak [written/printed/on-screen words] aloud
She reads beautifully.

ADVERB OF MANNER
DJ reads with a different voice for each character.

Thank you. You read that beautifully.

He reads too softly for everyone to hear.

OBJECT
Paul read the memo in a perfect imitation of the boss’s voice.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
Can you read me a story?
The teacher reads the class a book for the last 15 minutes.

Can you read a story to me?
The teacher reads a book to the class for the last 15 minutes.

TO PARAPHRASE
We were read a story every night.

PASSIVE
Can you read a story to me?
The teacher reads a book to the class for the last 15 minutes.

read decode and get information from [a set of letters/numbers/symbols]
I can’t read her handwriting.

OBJECT
He taught himself to read Old Icelandic.

The gas man came to read the meter this morning.

Yvonne can’t read music, but she plays beautifully.

Will my computer be able to read this file?

Will my computer be able to read this file?

read look at and understand the content of [written/printed/on-screen material]
I read the newspaper every morning at breakfast.

OBJECT
He read your e-mail and will get back to you.

PASSIVE
Julius Caesar was read in every tenth-grade classroom.

WH-CLAUSE
I read what you said about me.

You need to read what is in the fine print very carefully.

He will read whatever he can get his hands on.
The verb **read** means to learn from printed/on-screen material.

**That-Clause**
- I read that the company may be up for sale.
- The coach read that we are favored to win.
- We read that the parade may be cancelled.

**Learn/Interpret the Meaning of**
- I couldn't read her face at all.
- He is very good at reading people's body language.
- Economists don't always read inflationary signals correctly.
- Diplomatic experts read the implications of every government action.

**Object + as Object**
- I read his note as an apology.
- Everyone read his press release as an announcement of his candidacy.

**Measure and Show**
- The speedometer reads 55 miles per hour.
- The thermometer reads 32 degrees Celsius.

**State**
- The sign reads, “No shirt, no shoes, no service.”

**Phrasal Verbs**
- **read in/into** infer [additional ideas/messages] from reading
- **read off** read aloud [a list]
- **read over/through** read completely
- **read up on** study/learn by reading
- **read between the lines** understand the intended but not explicit meaning of something said/written
- **read lips** determine the words that someone is saying by watching him/her speak
- **Read my lips.** Believe what I am about to tell you.
- **read [someone’s] his/her rights** state [someone’s] legal rights to [someone who has been arrested]
- **read [someone] like a book** understand [someone] well
- **read [someone] the riot act** scold severely
- **read [someone’s] mind/thoughts** understand what [someone] is thinking

**Expressions**
- She is good at reading between the lines of politicians’ speeches.
- When talking to someone who reads lips, you should talk normally.
- "Read my lips: No new taxes.” [PRESIDENT GEORGE H.W. BUSH]
- The arresting officer read the suspect his rights.
- His calm manner doesn’t fool me; I can read him like a book.
- When Ed came home late, his father read him the riot act.
- How did you know I wanted pizza for dinner? You must have read my mind.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I realize</td>
<td>we realize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you realize</td>
<td>you realize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it realizes</td>
<td>they realize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He now realizes that he made a mistake.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>PAST PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I realized</td>
<td>we realized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you realized</td>
<td>you realized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it realized</td>
<td>they realized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* I realized how much it was going to cost.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT PERFECT</th>
<th>PAST PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>… have</td>
<td>… had realized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>… will realize</td>
<td>… will be realizing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE PERFECT</td>
<td>… will have realized</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it was realized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* His worst fears were realized.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**realize _____ understand completely**

**OBJECT**

I finally realized my anxiety for what it was.
Eventually they realized the magnitude of the problem.

**PASSIVE**

The full extent of the problem was never realized.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

I realized that we were totally lost.
No one had realized that the car had a flat tire.
Do you realize that we are leaving in two days?

**WH-CLAUSE**

He finally realized who I was.
Everyone realized what was involved.
I realize how strange my proposal sounds.

**realize _____ make real, achieve**

**OBJECT**

We were realizing our dream vacation.
Good coaching helps players realize their full potential.
Our goal was never realized.

**PASSIVE**

**realize _____ earn**

**OBJECT**

How soon can the business realize a profit?
We realized $200,000 from the sale of the property.
The sum of $240 was realized from the senior class car wash.
**recall** | recalls · recalled · have recalled

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I recall</td>
<td>I am recalling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you recall</td>
<td>you are recalling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it recall</td>
<td>they are recalling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The incident recalls a similar one in 2001.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I recalled</td>
<td>I was recalling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you recalled</td>
<td>you were recalling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it recalled</td>
<td>they were recalling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I finally recalled his name.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></th>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has recalled</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had recalled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was recalled  
you were recalled  
he/she/it was recalled  

* The ambassador was recalled in protest.

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**recall ____ remember**

**OBJECT**

I can recall the accident like it was yesterday.

He couldn't recall the combination to his locker.

**PASSIVE**

Many early memories are easily recalled.

**OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

Everyone recalled Senator Blather promising to cut taxes.

I certainly recall Kathi ordering a taxi for 9 A.M.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

He recalled that he had to go to another meeting.

I recall that you were pretty upset about it.

Fortunately, Betty recalled that we had already ordered the replacement part.

**WH-CLAUSE**

He just recalled who she is.

I can't recall what I was about to say.

Can you recall how much they charged us last year?

**WH-INFINITIVE**

He couldn't recall whom to ask for.

Do you recall where to go next?

I am trying to recall how to set my alarm clock.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

Tom recalled meeting them once before.

He recalled leaving his passport at the hotel.

I dimly recall hearing something about it.

---

**recall ____ bring to mind**

**OBJECT**

What happened to him recalls some similar events in my own life.

Every pirate movie recalls Stevenson's Treasure Island.

Let us recall the words of our Founding Fathers.

The fourth movement recalls themes from the first movement.

**recall ____ order the return of**

**OBJECT**

India recalled the ambassador to demonstrate its concern over the incident.

Meat processors are recalling ground beef again.

**PASSIVE**

Food products containing nuts are frequently recalled.
**receive**  receive · receives · received · have received  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I receive</td>
<td>I am receiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you receive</td>
<td>you are receiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it receive</td>
<td>he/she/it is receiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He receives a monthly pension check.</td>
<td>* I am receiving a mixed message here.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I received</td>
<td>I was receiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you received</td>
<td>you were receiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it received</td>
<td>he/she/it was receiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* I just received the package in the mail.</td>
<td>* We were receiving a dozen inquiries a day.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... have received</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... has received</td>
<td>... was received</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... had received</td>
<td>... were received</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was received</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were received</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was received</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The visitors were received with open arms.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**receive**  get/take [what has been given/sent]  
**OBJECT**

- The kids received **birthday presents** from their grandparents.
- Every struggling business wants to receive **a tax cut**.
- I typically receive **$20 an hour**.
- I received **your shipment of 20,000 widgets** today.
- Your letter was received yesterday.

**receive**  formally greet/welcome  
**OBJECT**

- The wedding party received **the guests** in the church hall.
- The company only receives **visitors** during working hours.
- We were received with great hospitality.

**receive**  experience, be given  
**OBJECT**

- The play received **a standing ovation**.
- He received **a suspended sentence**.
- The senator's statement received **a lot of press coverage**.
- I only received **minor cuts and scrapes** in the accident.
- The Gulf Coast received **the full force of the hurricane**.
- Maude received **a liver transplant**.
- The office received **the news that one of our deliverymen had been robbed**.
- He received **the feeling that they were not getting along very well**.
- I received **the distinct impression that they were hostile to the idea**.

**receive**  get [a radio/television signal]  
**OBJECT**

- We can only receive **AM radio** where we live.
### Recognize

**Recognize**

- **Present**
  - I recognize
  - you recognize
  - he/she/it recognizes
  - *Everyone recognizes the problem.*

- **Present Progressive**
  - Recognize is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

- **Past**
  - I recognized
  - you recognized
  - he/she/it recognized
  - *We recognized what she meant.*

- **Past Progressive**
  - Recognize is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

- **Present Perfect**
  - ... have | has recognized
  - ... had recognized

- **Future**
  - ... will recognize

- **Future Progressive**
  - —

- **Future Perfect**
  - ... will have recognized

### Complements

- **Recognize**
  - **Identify** someone/something previously known
  - **Object**
    - I hardly recognized **him** with his mustache.
    - You may not recognize **me** after all these years.
    - I didn’t even recognize **our old house** when I saw it.
  - **Recognize**
    - identify on the basis of some characteristic
    - **Object**
      - Most doctors today wouldn’t recognize **a case of scurvy** if they saw one.
      - The software can recognize **virtually any type font**.
      - The scar was recognized by the murder victim’s sister.
      - Jack recognized **the language as Catalan**.
      - Apparently, the guards had not recognized **the man as a threat**.
      - I recognized **him to be a friend of my brother’s**.
      - We finally recognized **the bird to be a kind of parrot**.
      - Don't you recognize **who she is**?
      - I quickly recognized **what the problem was**.
      - I didn’t recognize **where we were**.
    - **Passive**
      - The scar was recognized by the murder victim’s sister.
      - The software can recognize **virtually any type font**.
      - The chair recognizes **Mr. Peabody**.
      - The chair recognizes **the distinguished gentleman from California**. [Formal language of the U.S. House of Representatives]
    - **Object + as predicate noun**
      - Jack recognized **the language as Catalan**.
    - **Object + infinitive**
      - I recognized **him to be a friend of my brother’s**.
      - We finally recognized **the bird to be a kind of parrot**.
    - **Wh-clause**
      - Don't you recognize **who she is**?
      - I quickly recognized **what the problem was**.
      - I didn’t recognize **where we were**.
  - **Recognize**
    - publicly give special notice to
    - **Object**
      - We would like to recognize **all members of the armed forces**.
      - Would Ms. Smith please stand and be recognized?
    - **Passive**
      - The chair recognizes **Mr. Peabody**.
      - The chair recognizes **the distinguished gentleman from California**. [Formal language of the U.S. House of Representatives]
  - **Recognize**
    - formally authorize to speak
    - **Object**
      - The chair recognizes **Mr. Peabody**.
      - “The chair recognizes the distinguished gentleman from California.” [Formal language of the U.S. House of Representatives]
    - **Passive**
      - The chair recognizes **Mr. Peabody**.
  - **Recognize**
    - acknowledge the existence/validity/legality of
    - **Object**
      - I recognize **the problems you face**.
      - Everyone recognizes **Bob’s many qualifications for the job**.
      - Dual citizenship is not recognized in some countries.
    - **Passive**
      - We recognize **that you have a legitimate claim**.
      - Everyone recognized **that the problem had gotten out of hand**.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB FORM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>recommend, we recommend, you recommend, he/she/it recommends, they recommend&lt;br&gt;• <em>The chef recommends the grilled trout.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>am recommending, you are recommending, he/she/it is recommending, they are recommending&lt;br&gt;• <em>I am recommending her for the job.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>recommended, we recommended, you recommended, he/she/it recommended, they recommended&lt;br&gt;• <em>She recommended that we eat lunch here.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>was recommended, we were recommended, you were recommended, he/she/it was recommended, they were recommended&lt;br&gt;• <em>The play was highly recommended.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>have recommended, has recommended&lt;br&gt;• <em>I have recommended.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td>will recommend&lt;br&gt;• <em>I will recommend.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>will be recommending&lt;br&gt;• <em>I will be recommending.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>will have recommended&lt;br&gt;• <em>I will have recommended.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

*recommend* ___ suggest favorably / as advice

**OBJECT**
Can you recommend a plumber?
The architect recommends a granite countertop.

**PASSIVE**
Term life insurance is recommended for young couples.

**TO OBJECT + BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE**
I will recommend to Bob that he look for a better job.<br>She recommended to her parents that they travel while they still can.<br>The agent recommended to Jayne that she take the train instead of flying.

**BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE**
The committee recommended that he be hired.<br>The doctor recommends that I be seen by a specialist.<br>Alex is recommending that he stay home today.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
He recommended our staying overnight in Monterey.<br>Would anybody recommend doing that?<br>They recommend setting the thermostat at 65 degrees.
record | records · recorded · have recorded

**PRESENT**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I record</td>
<td>we record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you record</td>
<td>you record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it records</td>
<td>they record</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The device records blood pressure.*

**PAST**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I recorded</td>
<td>we recorded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you recorded</td>
<td>you recorded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it recorded</td>
<td>they recorded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I recorded all of our expenses.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has recorded

**PAST PERFECT**

... had recorded

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am recording</td>
<td>we are recording</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are recording</td>
<td>you are recording</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is recording</td>
<td>they are recording</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I am recording every word of the speech.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was recording</td>
<td>we were recording</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were recording</td>
<td>you were recording</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was recording</td>
<td>they were recording</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The band was recording in the 1950s.*

**FUTURE**

... will record

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**

... will be recording

**FUTURE PERFECT**

... will have recorded

**PAST PASSIVE**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was recorded</td>
<td>we were recorded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were recorded</td>
<td>you were recorded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was recorded</td>
<td>they were recorded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Our telephone conversation was recorded.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**record** make an audio or visual recording

Are we recording now?

The band first recorded in 1985.

**record ____** make an audio or visual recording of

**OBJECT**

She is recording her first album.
The studio is recording all of his songs.

**PASSIVE**

All of her stage performances have been recorded.
All 911 calls are recorded.

**record ____** write down for later use

**OBJECT**

We need to record all of our appointments.
The doctor asked him to record everything he eats.
The coroner recorded a verdict of accidental death.
The minutes of all our meetings are recorded.
The committee recorded that it could not reach a decision.
His notes recorded that there had been an earthquake that day.
The police recorded who went in and out of the building.
I carefully recorded what our expenses were.
Did you record how long it took?

**record ____** achieve

**OBJECT**

Our team recorded its first victory of the season.

**record ____** measure and show

**OBJECT**

The thermometer recorded a high of 103 today.
Electrocardiography records the heart’s electrical signals.
### Present Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>reduce</td>
<td>we reduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>reduce</td>
<td>you reduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>reduces</td>
<td>they reduce</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The software reduces background noise.

### Past Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>reduced</td>
<td>we reduced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>reduced</td>
<td>you reduced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>reduced</td>
<td>they reduced</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The government reduced the speed limit.

### Present Perfect Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have reduced</td>
<td>has reduced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>... will reduce</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was reduced</td>
<td>we were reduced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were reduced</td>
<td>you were reduced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was reduced</td>
<td>they were reduced</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Their wages were reduced by 10%.

### Future Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>reduce</td>
<td>will have reduced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>... will be reducing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Progressive Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>reducing</td>
<td>we are reducing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We are reducing our fixed costs.

### Past Progressive Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was</td>
<td>reducing</td>
<td>we were reducing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were</td>
<td>reducing</td>
<td>you were reducing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was reducing</td>
<td>they were reducing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The storm was reducing visibility.

### COMPLEMENTS

- **reduce lose weight**
  - After Christmas, everyone is trying to reduce.

- **reduce make less/smaller**
  - We used mufflers to reduce the noise.
  - I have reduced my waist by two inches.

- **reduce simplify**
  - Good teachers can reduce complex ideas to their basic elements.
  - He reduced the whole process to three simple steps.

- **reduce change the state/condition of (usually smaller/lower/weaker/poorer)**
  - The storm reduced the town to rubble.
  - The news reduced us to stunned silence.

- **reduce degrade to**
  - The transportation department reduced the highway to one lane.
  - The prosecutor reduced the charge to a misdemeanor.

- **reduce reduce to**
  - The populations of entire communities were reduced to beggars.

- **reduce reduce to**
  - The foreclosure reduced the family to living out of their car.

- **reduce reduce to**
  - Wedding planning can't be reduced to a list of do's and don'ts.
### refer

**PRESENT**  
I refer  
you refer  
he/she/it refers  
* He never refers to notes when he speaks.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**  
I am referring  
you are referring  
he/she/it is referring  
* I know what you are referring to.

**PAST**  
I referred  
you referred  
he/she/it referred  
* She referred me to the research librarian.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**  
I was referring  
you were referring  
he/she/it was referring  
* Perhaps you were referring to something else.

**PRESENT PERFECT**  
... have | has referred  

**PAST PERFECT**  
... had referred  

**PAST PASSIVE**  
I was referred  
you were referred  
he/she/it was referred  
* I was referred to a specialist.

### COMPLEMENTS

The verb *refer* is always used with *to*.

**refer _____ mention, speak of**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to He is always referring to his famous friends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to Are you referring to me?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to The title of the movie refers to a term from classical Greek rhetoric.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to They refer to their pets as their children.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to The general referred to his own soldiers as rabble.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to New York is referred to as the Big Apple.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**refer _____ go for help/information/etc.**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to Applicants may refer to the company's policy manual.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to Students should refer to the map on page 354.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to The carpenters referred to the architect's blueprints.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**refer _____ tell/direct to go for help/information/etc.**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT + TO OBJECT</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to John referred them to his lawyer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to The instructions refer you to the company's website.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to Alice was referred to yet another office.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**refer _____ direct**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT + TO OBJECT</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to We must refer this matter to the whole committee.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**refer _____ concern, be about**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to This paragraph refers to the use of solar energy for heating and cooling.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to His remark refers to his son's graduation five years before.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**refer _____ back return**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to The court referred the case back to the prosecutor's office.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to I referred the complaint back to Customer Service.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb Form</td>
<td>Tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>I am reflecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are reflecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is reflecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I reflected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you reflected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it reflected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I reflected on what my wife had just said.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>I was reflected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were reflected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was reflected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>I will reflect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you will reflect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it will reflect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Progressive</td>
<td>I will be reflecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you will be reflecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it will be reflecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>I will have reflected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

reflect ______ throw back energy [light, sound, heat]

- ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
  - The sun was reflecting into my eyes.
  - The sound reflects off the walls.
  - An amazing amount of heat was reflecting from the building.

- OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
  - The sun reflects light off the water.
  - The walls reflected the sound all around the square.
  - The building reflects the heat into the courtyard.

reflect ______ throw back the image of

- OBJECT
  - The still pond reflected the trees in the moonlight.
  - The mirror didn’t reflect the face of Count Dracula, who was standing right in front of it.

- PASSIVE
  - The statue was reflected in the wading pool.

reflect ______ be the same as

- OBJECT
  - His feelings seemed to reflect my own.
  - The review certainly reflected my feelings about the play.
  - The Dow generally reflects the market as a whole.

reflect ______ bring [credit/discredit] as a result

- ADVERB OF MANNER + on OBJECT
  - His behavior reflected badly on the school.
  - The incident reflects poorly on his judgment.
  - Their actions reflect well on the entire division.

- OBJECT + on OBJECT
  - This award reflects credit on our whole organization.

reflect ______ think seriously

- on OBJECT
  - He reflected on the misery he had caused his family.
  - He reflected on what had just happened.
  - He reflected on how much he had learned.

- THAT-CLAUSE
  - He reflected that things had turned out surprisingly well.
  - I reflected that I had jumped to conclusions.

- on WH-CLAUSE
  - Guy reflected that he should have been more careful.
  - We were reflecting on how it had all started.

- on how much he had learned.
refuse

I refuse
you refuse
he/she/it refuses
* He refuses to admit his mistakes.

I refused
you refused
he/she/it refused
* The car refused to start.

I was refused
you were refused
he/she/it was refused
* Our offer was flatly refused.

I am refusing
you are refusing
he/she/it is refusing
* She is refusing to get involved.

I was refusing
you were refusing
he/she/it was refusing
* They were refusing to cooperate.

I refuse
you refuse
he/she/it refuses

The verb refuse is stressed on the second syllable and rhymes with accuse. The noun refuse is stressed on the first syllable.

refuse not accept something
I am sure they will refuse.
If I were in their shoes, I would refuse too.
It is too late to refuse now.

refuse reject, not accept
object
We decided to refuse the offer.
I steadfastly refused the dessert menu.
All offers of help were politely refused.

refuse not allow
indirect object + direct object
The theater refused them admission because they were only 15 years old.
I refused her the satisfaction of seeing me upset.
The restaurant refused them a table without a reservation.

refuse say that one is unwilling
infinitive
He refused to talk to us.
They refused to be drawn into the controversy.

refuse fail
infinitive
This door refuses to stay closed.
My computer absolutely refuses to talk to my printer.
regard | regards · regarded · have regarded

**REGULAR**

**PRESENT**
I regard we regard
you regard you regard
he/she/it regards they regard
* He regards the situation with optimism.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
Regard is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

**PAST**
I regarded we regarded
you regarded you regarded
he/she/it regarded they regarded
* I regarded the strange food suspiciously.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
Regard is rarely used in the progressive tenses.

**PRESENT PERFECT** ... have | has regarded
**PAST PERFECT** ... had regarded

**FUTURE** ... will regard
**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** —
**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have regarded

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was regarded we were regarded
you were regarded you were regarded
he/she/it was regarded they were regarded
* He was regarded as a potential leader.

**COMPLEMENTS**

regard ______ look at, consider

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER**
I regarded my empty wallet sadly.

**OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN**
The hikers regarded the rope bridge with apprehension.

**OBJECT + AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**
Rob regarded the senator’s campaign with disdain.

**WH-CLAUSE + ADVERB OF MANNER**
The economic downturn is regarded with great concern.

**PASSIVE**
The agency regards the safety of children as paramount.

This letter regards your mining company’s intention to blast off the top of Black Mountain.
register

**Present**
- I register
- you register
- he/she/it registers

**Past**
- I registered
- you registered
- he/she/it registered

**Present Progressive**
- I am registering
- you are registering
- he/she/it is registering

**Past Progressive**
- I was registering
- you were registering
- he/she/it was registering

**Present Perfect**
- I have registered
- you have registered
- he/she/it has registered

**Past Perfect**
- I was registered
- you were registered
- he/she/it was registered

**Future**
- I will register
- you will register
- he/she/it will register

**Future Perfect**
- I will have registered
- you will have registered
- he/she/it will have registered

**Past Passive**
- I was registered
- you were registered
- he/she/it was registered

- My complaint was duly registered.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**register**
- enroll oneself in an activity / school
- be recognized
- measure and show a reading [of instruments]
- achieve

**register**
- enroll on a list
- give notice of, express

**register***

- Every participant has to register at the front desk.
- The students will be registering all this week.
- When can we register?

- The importance of what she said didn't register until later.
- His remark didn't register with me at all.

- The dial didn't register at all.
- Such a small earth tremor won't register.

- He registered to vote in 1945.
- I registered to join the debate club.
- Ten thousand people registered to run in this year's marathon.

- We registered the boat with the Coast Guard.
- Our precinct usually registers several hundred new voters.
- You must register all documents.
- The bride registered her gift list with Neiman Marcus.
- Two thousand incoming freshmen were registered this year.

- I would like to register a complaint.
- He certainly registered his opposition.
- We registered our support of the bill publicly.
- Her face registered complete surprise.

- Our team registered its first win in two weeks.
- Rob's company will register one million dollars in sales this year.

- The thermometer registers 54 degrees.
- The rain gauge registered 1.3 inches.
**PRESENT**

I reject  
you reject  
he/she/it rejects

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am rejecting  
you are rejecting  
he/she/it is rejecting

*He rejects all offers of help.*

**PAST**

I rejected  
you rejected  
he/she/it rejected

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was rejecting  
you were rejecting  
he/she/it was rejecting

*He was rejecting all solid food.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has rejected

**PAST PERFECT**

... had rejected

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was rejected  
you were rejected  
he/she/it was rejected

*No reasonable offer was rejected.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

reject  ______  not accept, refuse to believe / use / agree to

**OBJECT**

- We rejected all the bids.
- Harvard might reject my application.
- He rejects the idea that HIV causes AIDS.
- The publisher has rejected all three of my manuscripts.
- The first draft of our proposal was rejected.
- Organ transplants are sometimes rejected by the recipient’s immune system.
- The committee will reject whomever the president nominates.
- They rejected whatever we proposed.
- Smith always rejects whichever proposal is the most expensive.

**PASSIVE**

The mother bird rejected all the chicks.
Bobby was just rejected by his girlfriend.
Nobody likes being rejected.

**WH-CLAUSE**

The union rejected the first offer the company made.
The union rejected the first offer the company made.

reject  ______  refuse to love / care for

**OBJECT**

**PASSIVE**
### Present

- **Present Progressive**
  - *I am relating* we are relating
  - *you are relating* you are relating
  - *he/she/it is relating* they are relating
  - *He is relating global warming to rainfall patterns.*

### Past

- **Past Progressive**
  - *I was relating* we were relating
  - *you were relating* you were relating
  - *he/she/it was relating* they were relating
  - *My boyfriend was relating all his troubles.*

### Present Perfect

- ... have | has related

### Past Perfect

- ... was related

### Future

- ... will relate

### Future Progressive

- ... will be relating

### Future Perfect

- ... will have related

### Past Passive

- *Stories of Eudora Welty's childhood were related in her memoir.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**relate** feel a bond with people / a performance

- Shy people have a hard time relating.
- The new kid is relating surprisingly well.
- Some people liked the music, but I just couldn’t relate.

**relate** feel a bond with, interact with  
**to** OBJECT

- The kids really relate to Uncle Charlie.
- Philip never did relate to his music teacher.
- The audience related to her performance of the Mendelssohn violin concerto.

**relate** tell about, give an account of  
**to** OBJECT

- He related the events leading up to the strike.
- The movie related the lives of a family in New England.
- The entire story of his summer vacation was related in agonizing detail.

**relate** concern, be about  
**to** OBJECT

- The legislation relates to interstate commerce.
- Your suggestion does not relate to the issue.
- My proposal relates to reducing copying expenses.
- The article relates to making foreign travel easier.

**relate** connect, link, associate  
**OBJECT + to/and/with object**

- The study related road accidents to cell phone use.
- Florence Nightingale related hospital sanitation and mortality rates.
- Studies have related lung cancer with smoking.

**be related** be connected/linked [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]  
**to** OBJECT

- Earthquakes are related to tectonic plate movements.
- Levels of vitamin D are related to sunshine.
- The company’s success is related to the economy.

**be related** be connected by blood or marriage [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]  
**to** OBJECT

- I am related to Perry on my mother’s side.
- He is related to my cousin.
- Whom she is related to?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>I release</th>
<th>you release</th>
<th>he/she/it releases</th>
<th>* He releases the fish that he catches.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESEN T PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td>... will</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>... will</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... will</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RELEASE</strong></td>
<td>allow something to return</td>
<td>to its normal position</td>
<td></td>
<td>Flex your muscles, then release.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RELEASE</strong></td>
<td>allow something to escape</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Push the button down, then release.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RELEASE</strong></td>
<td>set free, allow to escape</td>
<td>OBJECT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hold your breath, then release.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>free from obligation</td>
<td>OBJECT</td>
<td></td>
<td>I released the butterflies that I had captured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RELEASE</strong></td>
<td>make available</td>
<td>OBJECT</td>
<td></td>
<td>The children released the balloons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The judge released the three suspects without bail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RELEASE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The fumes were released harmlessly into the air.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMPLEMENTS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The candidate released her delegates to vote for whomever they chose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The king released the duke from his oath.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Our inheritance was finally released from escrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The senator released his tax returns to the press.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The campaign will release its list of donors tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The administration wouldn’t release the names of the prisoners.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### relieve | relieves · relieved · have relieved

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>relieve</td>
<td>I relieve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>are relieving</td>
<td>we are relieving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>is relieving</td>
<td>he/she/it is relieving.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>relieved</td>
<td>I relieved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>were relieving</td>
<td>we were relieving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>was relieving</td>
<td>he/she/it was relieving.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>have relieved</td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>had relieved</td>
<td>... had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>will relieve</td>
<td>... will relieve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>will be relieving</td>
<td>... will be relieving</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>will have relieved</td>
<td>... will have relieved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>was relieved</td>
<td>I was relieved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>were relieved</td>
<td>you were relieved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, you, he/she/it</td>
<td>was relieved</td>
<td>he/she/it was relieved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complements**

- **relieve** ______ reduce, get rid of
  - **OBJECT**
    - I need something to relieve the itching.
    - Exercise helps relieve stress.
    - Another lane would relieve the traffic congestion.
    - Eating locally grown food would relieve pressure on the environment.

- **relieve** ______ release from responsibility
  - **OBJECT + of OBJECT**
    - The agreement relieved the defendant of liability in the matter.
    - The Air Force relieved the colonel of his command.
    - Her employer relieved her of all management responsibilities.

- **relieve** ______ release from duty/work by replacing
  - **OBJECT**
    - You must relieve the sentries every two hours.
    - Franklin relieved Motte in the ninth inning.
    - Col. Wright relieved Col. Franks in a formal retirement ceremony.

- **relieve** ______ make more pleasant
  - **OBJECT**
    - Only the children’s laughter relieved the gloomy family dinner.
    - Shakespeare usually relieves his tragedies with comic interludes.
    - His dark paintings are relieved only by tiny threads of color.

- **relieve** ______ bring help to
  - **OBJECT**
    - The agency rushed to relieve the flooded city.
    - We hired temps to relieve the store during the Christmas rush.
    - Leningrad was relieved after 872 days of fighting.

- **relieve** ______ urinate
  - **REFLEXIVE PRONOUN**
    - Where can I relieve myself?
    - Call the nurse if you need to relieve yourself.
    - The patient may have difficulty relieving himself for a few days.

**Note:** The use of relieve in this sense is acceptable in a clinical setting.
**Remain** | **remains** · **remained** · **have remained**

**Present**
- **I** remain
- **you** remain
- **he/she/it** remains

- **The problem still remains to be dealt with.**

**Past**
- **I remained**
- **you remained**
- **he/she/it remained**

- **We remained inside until the rain stopped.**

**Present Perfect**
- **I have remained**
- **you have remained**
- **he/she/it has remained**

- **I am remaining here in the shade.**

**Past Perfect**
- **I had remained**
- **you had remained**
- **he/she/it had remained**

**Future**
- **I will remain**
- **you will remain**
- **he/she/it will remain**

**Future Perfect**
- **I will have remained**

**Past Passive**
- **Remain is never used in the passive voice.**

**Complements**

- **remain** stay, linger
  - The teacher asked me to remain after class.
  - I can only remain for a few seconds.

- **remain** continue to exist, be left
  - After the fire, only the chimney and foundation remained.
  - The snow remained for weeks.
  - The bad smell from the fire remained for days.
  - Only three slices of cake remain.

- **remain** continue to be
  - adverb of place
    - Please remain here.
    - Please remain in the car.
    - Please remain where you are.

  - predicate noun
    - The platoon still remained an effective fighting unit.
    - Paul remained sheriff for years.
    - Storms remained a major threat to shipping.

  - predicate adjective
    - Fortunately, the guards had remained alert.
    - I couldn’t remain awake during the long drive.
    - Despite the accident, we all remained friendly with each other.

- **remain** be left [to deal with / do]
  - infinitive
    - Nothing remains to be done.
    - A thorough cleaning remained to be done.
    - The full extent of the damage remains to be seen.

**Phrasal Verbs**

- **remain ahead/behind/down/under/up/...** stay in a specified position
  - Our hockey team remained ahead after two periods.
  - The player remained down for several minutes.

- **remain up** stay awake and out of bed
  - The kids were allowed to remain up on Christmas Eve.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I remember, we remember, you remember, he/she/it remembers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>He never remembers to turn off the light.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I am remembering, you are remembering, he/she/it is remembering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>I am not remembering anything these days.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I remembered, we remembered, you remembered, he/she/it remembered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>I remembered what I was going to do.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was remembering, you were remembering, he/she/it was remembering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>We were just remembering something he said.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had remembered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td>... will remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>... will be remembering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... will have remembered</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was remembered, we were remembered, you were remembered, he/she/it was remembered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>He was remembered with great fondness.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**remember** recall something

I am trying to remember.

Sorry, I can’t remember.

**remember _____ recall, think about again**

**OBJECT**

I finally remembered his name.

Do you remember the day we met?

**PASSIVE**

The accident will be remembered for a long time.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

I remembered that I had an appointment at 10 o’clock.

We remembered just in time that the train was running on a holiday schedule.

**NOTE:** The imperative of remember with that-clauses is also used to emphasize the importance of something, in the sense “don’t forget.”

Please remember that the meeting time has been changed.

Remember that your homework must be finished before you can watch TV.

You must remember that this information is confidential.

**WH-CLAUSE**

Sure, I remember who you are.

Everybody remembers what happened next.

I couldn’t remember where I was supposed to go next.

**WH-INFINITIVE**

John tried to remember what to do in case of fire.

Sam couldn’t remember where to put the commas.

I hope the children remember how to behave.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

I distinctly remember putting the keys on the desk.

Do you remember getting a call from a Mr. Rex?

He doesn’t remember locking the door.

**remember _____ do [what one intends to / should do]**

**INFINITIVE**

I finally remembered to mail the letter in my pocket.

Did you remember to set the alarm system?

**remember _____ think about respectfully**

**OBJECT**

Let us remember those who have died that we might be free.

**remember _____ give a gift/card to**

**OBJECT**

Grandmother always remembers me on my birthday.

Ruby remembered us on our anniversary.
### Regular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle I</th>
<th>Participle II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remind</td>
<td>to remind</td>
<td>reminded</td>
<td>reminding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Tenses

**Present**
- I remind
- You remind
- He/She/It reminds

**Present Progressive**
- I am reminding
- You are reminding
- He/She/It is reminding

**Past**
- I reminded
- You reminded
- He/She/It reminded

**Past Progressive**
- I was reminding
- You were reminding
- He/She/It was reminding

**Present Perfect**
- I have reminded
- You have reminded

**Future**
- I will remind
- You will remind

**Past Perfect**
- I had reminded
- You had reminded

**Future Perfect**
- I will have reminded
- You will have reminded

#### Complements

- **Remind**
  - cause to remember / think of
  - **Object + of Object**
    - My secretary reminded **me of the luncheon date.**
    - The coach reminded **his players of the early curfew.**
    - His hearty laugh reminded **us of his father.**
    - Those limestone bluffs remind **me of my childhood.**
  - **Passive**
    - They were reminded **of the time Randy broke his arm.**
  - **Object + Infinitive**
    - We reminded **the boys to set their alarms.**
    - Please remind **me to call Mr. Ross.**
    - The passengers were reminded **to pick up their customs declarations.**
  - **Object + That-Clause**
    - We reminded **the guests that breakfast was at eight.**
    - Remind **the staff that they need to replace their ID cards.**
    - They were reminded **that smoking is not permitted anywhere in the building.**
  - **Object + Wh-Clause**
    - I reminded **Charles what he needed to bring to the meeting.**
    - He reminded **us where we would have to park.**
    - We were all reminded **how much we missed her.**
  - **Object + Wh-Infinitive**
    - Remind **us what to do.**
    - Cary reminded **the participants where to get the handouts.**
    - The students were reminded **how to fill out the forms.**

---

**She reminded me of my mother.**

**I am reminding everyone to turn in their time sheets.**

**He reminded us to keep the door locked.**

**He was reminding the tour group where to meet.**

**I was reminded that we must finish by 4 o'clock.**

---

**My secretary reminded me of the luncheon date.**

**The coach reminded his players of the early curfew.**

**His hearty laugh reminded us of his father.**

**Those limestone bluffs remind me of my childhood.**

**They were reminded of the time Randy broke his arm.**

**We reminded the boys to set their alarms.**

**Please remind me to call Mr. Ross.**

**The passengers were reminded to pick up their customs declarations.**

**We reminded the guests that breakfast was at eight.**

**Remind the staff that they need to replace their ID cards.**

**They were reminded that smoking is not permitted anywhere in the building.**

**I reminded Charles what he needed to bring to the meeting.**

**He reminded us where we would have to park.**

**We were all reminded how much we missed her.**

**Remind us what to do.**

**Cary reminded the participants where to get the handouts.**

**The students were reminded how to fill out the forms.**
**remove**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong> am removing</td>
<td><strong>I</strong> remove</td>
<td>will remove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong> are removing</td>
<td><strong>you</strong> remove</td>
<td>will be removing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>he/she/it</strong> is removing</td>
<td><strong>he/she/it</strong> removes</td>
<td>will have removed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Acetone removes fingernail polish.*

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong> was removing</td>
<td><strong>I</strong> removed</td>
<td>will remove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong> were removing</td>
<td><strong>you</strong> removed</td>
<td>will be removing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>he/she/it</strong> was removing</td>
<td><strong>he/she/it</strong> removed</td>
<td>will have removed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The nurse is removing the bandages now. The children were removing their jackets.*

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>... have</strong></td>
<td><strong>... have removed</strong></td>
<td><strong>... will have removed</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>... had</strong></td>
<td><strong>... had removed</strong></td>
<td><strong>... will have removed</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Ground beef products were removed from stores in seven states.*

**Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Passive</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong> was removed</td>
<td><strong>I</strong> were removed</td>
<td><strong>... will be removed</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>you</strong> were removed</td>
<td><strong>you</strong> were removed</td>
<td><strong>... will be removed</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>he/she/it</strong> was removed</td>
<td><strong>they</strong> were removed</td>
<td><strong>... will be removed</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Nothing can be removed from the scene of the crime.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**remove**

- take away, eliminate

**OBJECT**

First, we need to remove all the rust.
Remove the lids and mix the paint.
The surgeon decided to remove the tumor.
The editor removed three chapters of the book.
Congress voted to remove the sanctions.
Nothing can be removed from the scene of the crime.

**PASSIVE**

The committee members voted to remove the chair.
The governor of Illinois was removed from office in 2009.

**remove**

- dismiss [from a position/office]

**OBJECT**

The committee members voted to remove the chair.
The governor of Illinois was removed from office in 2009.

**PASSIVE**

Please remove your outer garments.
I removed my muddy boots and went inside.
He removed his watch and glasses and dove into the pool.

**remove**

- take off [clothing, etc.]

**OBJECT**
Present Present Progressive  
I repeat  we are repeating  
you repeat  you are repeating  
he/she/it repeats  they are repeating  
* He repeats what he's read in the paper.

Past Past Progressive  
I repeated  we were repeating  
you repeated  you were repeating  
he/she/it repeated  they were repeating  
* They were repeating the course.

Present Perfect Future  
I repeated  we repeated  
you repeated  you repeated  
he/she/it repeated  they repeated  
* He repeated that we would have to leave.

Past Perfect Future Progressive  
I repeated  we repeated  
you repeated  you repeated  
he/she/it repeated  they repeated  
* They were repeating the course.

Future Perfect  
I repeated  we repeated  
you repeated  you repeated  
he/she/it repeated  they repeated  
* The announcement was repeated several times.

**COMPLEMENTS**

repeat  happen again, do something again  
The noise repeats at regular intervals.  
The theme repeats in the third movement.  
Do you think the champions can repeat?  
Repeat after me: “On my honor I will do my best.....”  
The shawl’s lace pattern repeats every 16 rows.

repeat _____ say again  
OBJECT  
The teacher repeated the question.  
Please repeat the oath after me.  
Nick repeated the secret to Nora.  

PASSIVE  
The storm warning was repeated every 10 minutes.  
The waiter repeated that the tip was not included.  
The weatherman repeated that there would be a severe winter storm.  
I had to repeat several times that their party was too loud.  
Please repeat what you just said.  
I can't repeat what I heard.  
The parrot will repeat whatever you say.

repeat _____ do/perform again  
OBJECT  
The band kept repeating the only tunes they knew.  
The hackers repeated their attack on the server.  
The program is repeated every few months.  
Other scientists must be able to repeat what you did.  
We don’t need to repeat whatever mistakes they made.  
Young children always repeat whatever their parents do.

repeat _____ say/do [something] again  
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN  
You should be careful not to repeat yourself.  
History seldom repeats itself exactly the same way.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>replace</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>replace</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>replaces</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He never replaces burned-out lightbulbs.*

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am replacing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are replacing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is replacing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The company is replacing the strikers.*

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I finally replaced my old truck.*

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was replacing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were replacing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was replacing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*They were replacing the old badges.*

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>has replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He never replaces burned-out lightbulbs.*

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The faulty printer was replaced.*

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will replace</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will be replacing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will be replacing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will have replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will have replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>replaced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The faulty printer was replaced.*

### Complements

replace ______ take the place of

- **OBJECT**
  - Sunshine soon replaced the dreary fog.
  - Nobody can replace Roberta.
  - Johnson will replace Smith at quarterback in the second half.
  - Smiles soon replaced the tears on the kids’ faces.

### Passive

replace ______ put [someone/something new] in the place of

- **OBJECT (+ with OBJECT)**
  - We must replace the clutch before the car breaks down somewhere.
  - Oboe players must replace their reeds frequently.
  - Her doctor said it was necessary to replace her right knee joint.
  - The company replaced all its computers at once.
  - The board is going to replace the entire management team.
  - The gardener replaced the roses with more heat-resistant varieties.
  - We should replace our incandescent bulbs with compact florescents.
  - They replaced their standard copier paper with a brighter white paper.

### Wh-clause

replace ______ take the place of

- **OBJECT**
  - We replaced what we thought caused the problem.
  - They are going to replace whoever can’t meet the quota.
  - Find and replace whatever is broken.

### replace ______ put back where it belongs

- **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**
  - I carefully replaced the vase on the shelf.
  - He replaced the blanket on the bed.
  - The pictures were all replaced in the album.
**Present**
- I reply
- you reply
- he/she/it replies

**Past**
- I replied
- you replied
- he/she/it replied

**Present Progressive**
- I am replying
- you are replying
- he/she/it is replying

**Past Progressive**
- I was replying
- you were replying
- he/she/it was replying

**Present Perfect**
- I have replied
- you have replied
- he/she/it has replied

**Past Perfect**
- I was replied
- you were replied
- he/she/it was replied

**Future**
- I will reply
- you will reply
- he/she/it will reply

**Future Progressive**
- I will be replying
- you will be replying
- he/she/it will be replying

**Future Perfect**
- I will have replied
- you will have replied
- he/she/it will have replied

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**reply**
- answer, respond
- respond to an action with a similar action
- answer, respond to object

**Passive**
- to object + that-clause
- that-clause
- direct quotation

---

I never got around to replying. There is no point in writing because he never replies. How soon can you reply?

Their artillery shelled us, and we promptly replied. They sued us, so naturally we replied by countersuing. Their country expelled our diplomats, so we replied the same way.

I will reply to him as soon as I can. He never replied to our e-mail.

Whom did she reply to?

Our letters were not replied to.

I replied to Don that the meeting time was fine. The receptionist replied to us that an agent would call back later.

Ralph replied to Frank that they should get together sometime.

I replied that we would be glad to meet with them. Shirley replied that she could meet us in Chicago.

Did they reply that it would be okay?

“No,” Arthur replied, “I’m not leaving until tomorrow.”
**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I report</th>
<th>we report</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you report</td>
<td>you report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it reports</td>
<td>they report</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*She reports business news on CNN.*

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I reported</th>
<th>we reported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you reported</td>
<td>you reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it reported</td>
<td>they reported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The school reported record enrollment.*

**Present Perfect**

| ... have | has reported       |

**Past Perfect**

| ... had reported       |

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am reporting</th>
<th>we are reporting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you are reporting</td>
<td>you are reporting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is reporting</td>
<td>they are reporting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We are reporting the incident to the police.*

**Past Perfect**

| ... will report       |

**Future**

| ... will be reporting |

**Future Perfect**

| ... will have reported |

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was reported</th>
<th>we were reported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were reported</td>
<td>you were reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was reported</td>
<td>they were reported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The governor was reported to be involved in bribery.*

---

**Complements**

*report*  ______  tell about, give an account of; announce; tell [someone in authority] about [an accident/crime/etc.]

**Object**

The police reported **an accident on Route 9**.

The mayor reported **an unexpected drop in city revenues**.

All schoolyard accidents must be reported to the principal.

As a society writer, I report **on the lives of famous people**.

Jill reported **the need to make Horse Creek flood proof**.

**Passive**

My neighbor reported **an attempted burglary to the police**.

Gayle reported **the shoplifting to the store manager**.

Senator Blather reported **his achievements to a skeptical audience**.

The captain reported **the soldiers ready for duty**.

The doctor reported **the patient strong enough to go home**.

**Object + to Object**

He was reported **unhappy with the settlement**.

**Object + Predicate Adjective**

The captain reported **the soldiers to be ready**.

The company was reported **to be the nominee**.

The paper reported **him working in Denver**.

The teacher reported **Johnny misbehaving in class**.

He was reported **to be going public**.

**Object + Present Participle**

The company was reported **hiding in a barn**.

The teacher reported **his flight cancelled due to mechanical problems**.

He was reported **to be the nominee**.

**Object + Past Participle**

The boat was reported **sunk in the storm**.

The car was reported **stolen**.

**Present Participle**

The coach reported **that two players had been suspended**.

The treasurer reported **to the board that revenues were down**.

The watchman reported **what he had seen**.

The radio reported **which areas were likely to flood**.

The patient reports **feeling dizzy when he stands up**.

---

**Phrasal Verbs**

*report for _____*  appear /
be present for the purpose of

The recruits reported for duty at 6 A.M.

Managers must report for work an hour early.

*report to _____*  appear /
be present at

Report to your commander—on the double.

New employees should report to the Human Resources department.
**REGULAR**

represent | represents  
represent | represented | have represented

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I represent</td>
<td>we are representing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you represent</td>
<td>you are representing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it represents</td>
<td>they are representing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; John represents a nonprofit organization.</td>
<td>&gt; He is representing them in court.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I represented</td>
<td>we were representing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you represented</td>
<td>you were representing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it represented</td>
<td>they were representing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; The idea represented a bold approach.</td>
<td>&gt; I was representing our company at the trade show.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was represented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were represented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was represented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; Our district was represented by Ms. Santos for 14 years.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**represent** ______ be an official agent for

**OBJECT**

He represents **Italy** in international trade negotiations.
She is representing **a company in Dallas**.
He represents **the fifth congressional district in Oregon**.
They will represent **the United States** in figure skating at the next Winter Olympics.

**NOTE:** For the following two meanings, *represent* is not used in the progressive tenses.

**represent** ______ constitute, make up

**OBJECT**

Her sales represent **half of the company's total**.
The dessert alone represented **475 calories**.

**represent** ______ portray, stand for, signify

**OBJECT**

The picture represents **a storm at sea**.
The scale is a symbol that represents **justice**.
The availability of the land represents **a real opportunity for us**.
The sample represents **a typical population**.
She represents **all that is best about our country**.
The schwa represents **the unstressed “uh” sound in English words**.

**PASSIVE**

Terrorist strongholds are represented by the green areas on the map.

**OBJECT + as predicate noun**

The lawyer represented **our client as a greedy crook**.
The agent represented **the screenplay as a surefire hit**.
The merger was represented **as our last hope**.

**OBJECT + as predicate adjective**

I represented **the proposal as risky and costly**.
The salesman represented **the car as almost new**.

**PASSIVE**

The hotel was represented **as highly desirable**.
**require**

**require | requires · required · have required**

**PRESENT**
- I require
- you require
- he/she/it requires

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am requiring
- you are requiring
- he/she/it is requiring

*This paint requires extra drying time.*

**PAST**
- I required
- you required
- he/she/it required

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was requiring
- you were requiring
- he/she/it was requiring

*The rental agency required a deposit.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has required

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had required

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was required
- you were required
- he/she/it was required

*He was required to appear in traffic court.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**require ____ need**

OBJECT
- The project requires a larger budget.
- The soup requires more seasoning.
- The patient is going to require surgery.
- Organic certification requires avoidance of most synthetic fertilizers and pesticides.

PASSIVE
- Some assembly is required.
- The floors require finishing.
- The food requires microwaving for five minutes on high.
- The plants require watering every other day.

**require ____ order, demand, make necessary**

OBJECT
- The company requires drug tests of all applicants.
- This job requires the ability to multitask.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE
- The government requires us to file form 990-N annually.
- The airline requires you to stay over Saturday night.
- The building code requires public buildings to have automatic sprinkler systems.

PASSIVE
- You are required to have a valid driver’s license for this job.
- The law requires that he be informed of his rights.
- The committee requires that each candidate have a current résumé.
- The court required that the children be placed in foster care.
### Respond

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I respond</td>
<td>We respond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you respond</td>
<td>We respond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it responds</td>
<td>They respond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The dog always responds when he's called.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I responded</td>
<td>We responded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you responded</td>
<td>We responded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it responded</td>
<td>They were responding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The firemen responded to the fire quickly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has responded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had responded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td>I was responded</td>
<td>We were responded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were responded</td>
<td>We were responding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was responded</td>
<td>They were responding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Our complaint was never responded to.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I am responding</td>
<td>We are responding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are responding</td>
<td>We are responding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is responding</td>
<td>They are responding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The patient is not responding, Doctor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I was responding</td>
<td>We were responding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were responding</td>
<td>We were responding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was responding</td>
<td>They were responding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* They were finally responding to the problem.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>... will respond</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Progressive</strong></td>
<td>... will be responding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... will have responded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**respond** reply, answer

- There is no need to respond.
- They will respond if they want to.
- Jim responded without enthusiasm.
- Marty responded by quoting their own words back to them.

**respond** show a reaction

- The accident victim wasn't responding.

**respond** say/do in answer, react

- **to object**
  - I need to respond to his letter.
  - You must respond to their complaint in writing.
  - The police responded to the emergency within minutes.
  - The newspaper editorial must be responded to promptly.

- **to where-clause**
  - I responded immediately to what had happened.
  - We will respond with a press release to whatever claim they make.
  - The fleet will respond to whatever move the enemy makes.

- **(to object +) that-clause**
  - They responded that they would be delighted to come.
  - Carl responded to her that she should come to his house instead.
  - I responded to the group that our plans had changed.

- **direct quotation**
  - The tour guide responded, “Sorry, there is no restroom on this bus.”

**respond** react favorably

- The infection was finally responding to antibiotics.
- Will the cancer respond to chemotherapy?
rest | rests · rested · have rested

PRESENT
I rest you rest he/she/it rests
you rest you rest they rest
he/she/it rests they rest

Past Progressive
I am resting you are resting he/she/it is resting
you are resting they are resting
he/she/it is resting they are resting

Present Perfect Future
... have | has rested

Future Perfect
... will have rested

Past Passive
I was rested you were rested he/she/it was rested
you were rested they were rested
he/she/it was rested they were rested

The children rested under the tree.

Passive
The horses were rested for two days.

COMPLEMENTS

rest relax, stop working, stop an activity

Let's take a break. I need to rest.
We can rest when we get done.

“Let us cross over the river, and rest under the shade of the trees.” [GENERAL STONEWALL JACKSON’S LAST WORDS]
Darla couldn't rest until she learned who her father was.

rest stay unchanged, be still

Just let it rest!
And there the matter rests.

rest support, lay, lean

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

He rested his elbows on the table.

I lightly rested my hand on his shoulder to warn him.

Jeff rested his hands briefly on the wall, and then he vaulted over.

rest be supported, lie, be fixed

ADVERB OF PLACE

My arm rested on the wheel, ready to turn it in an instant.

His hand was resting on the gun in his holster.

His arm rested on her shoulder.

Her eyes rested briefly on my face.

The shovel rested against the tree.

rest cause to relax / be inactive

OBJECT

I have to rest my eyes after working on the computer.

The coach will probably rest some of the best players in the second half.

I should rest my legs before we start hiking again.

The fields are rested every other year.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

rest in/on/upon be based on

His success rests in his ability to delegate.

rest on/upon depend on

The team's fate rests on its All-American point guard.

rest up for relax before exertion

The runner needs to rest up for the marathon.

rest up from relax after exertion

She needs to rest up from the 17-hour flight.

rest with be the responsibility of

The success of the class reunion rests with its organizers.
result | results · resulted · have resulted

REGULAR

present present progressive

- it results they result
  • Rickets results from a lack of vitamin D.

past past progressive

- it resulted they resulted
  • Deregulation resulted in disaster.

present perfect past perfect

- have | has resulted
  • The storm resulted in a massive power failure.
  • The committee's rash actions resulted in a lawsuit.

past passive

- Result is never used in the passive voice.

future future progressive future perfect

- ... will result
  • The increase in shipping rates results from the high cost of insurance.
  • A lot of our health problems result from too much stress in our lives.

result | cause to happen

in object

- Haste always results in confusion.
  • The storm resulted in a massive power failure.
  • The committee's rash actions resulted in a lawsuit.

result | be caused by

from object

- Our failure resulted from inadequate planning.
  • The team's success resulted from its ability to recruit good players.
  • The increase in shipping rates results from the high cost of insurance.
  • A lot of our health problems result from too much stress in our lives.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I retain</td>
<td>Grandpa retains his sense of humor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you retain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it retains</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am retaining</td>
<td>The company is retaining its high-value employees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are retaining</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is retaining</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I retained</td>
<td>The dam retained all of the floodwaters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you retained</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it retained</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was retaining</td>
<td>I was retaining fluid and gaining weight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were retaining</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was retaining</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has retained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>... had retained</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>I was retained</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were retained</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was retained</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was retained</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were retained</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was retained</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**Retain | keep, hold**

Object

Fortunately, our house has retained its value. It is hard to retain a foreign language unless you use it. We seem to retain our childhood memories all our lives. Glass cookware retains heat better than metal. Democrats retained their majority in the Senate. Terry retained her birth surname when she married. The country must retain its young scientists. Capital letters are retained, as in the original document.

**Retain | hire by payment of a fee**

Object

You need to retain a good lawyer. The hotel has always retained an excellent staff. We will have to retain someone to look after the house while we are away. The services of an independent auditor have been retained. They retained Ms. Locke as a consultant. The restaurant retained her as executive chef. I was retained as an assistant to the treasurer.

**Retain | remember, keep in mind**

Object

Nine-year-old David John retains everything he reads.
**PRESENT**

I retire
you retire
he/she/it retires

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am retiring
you are retiring
he/she/it is retiring

* He retires next January.

**PAST**

I retired
you retired
he/she/it retired

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was retiring
you were retiring
he/she/it was retiring

* The ladies retired to the drawing room.

**PRESENT PERFECT** … have | has retired

**PAST PERFECT** … had retired

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was retired
you were retired
he/she/it was retired

* The mortgage was retired in 1995.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**retire** quit working permanently

He couldn’t wait to retire.

When will you retire?

I won’t retire for at least 10 years.

Judy and Rich will eventually retire to their cabin in Virginia.

**retire** give up one’s career/profession

The team’s quarterback had to retire because of knee injuries.

Dancers often retire from the stage in their thirties.

Four senators retired, and three others lost re-election.

Many actors retire because they can’t get enough jobs to support themselves full-time.

**retire** go to bed

My parents usually retire around eleven.

We can’t retire until the kids get back home.

When do you normally retire?

**retire** withdraw, retreat

In times of stress, Mr. Bennet retired to his library.

The actors retired in confusion after the stage set collapsed.

The committee has retired into the conference room.

The troops retired from the battlefield.

**retire** remove from a position/office

OBJECT

The law retires judges when they reach age 75.

The Pentagon retired three generals yesterday.

He was involuntarily retired by the new administration.

**retire** remove from use/production

OBJECT

It’s time to retire this old baseball glove.

The U.S. government is retiring its fleet of gas guzzlers.

The company will retire its cosmetics line next fall.

**retire** pay off [a debt]

OBJECT

The company retired the bonds ten years early.

You should retire your mortgage as soon as possible.

Older notes and debts are usually retired first.
### return

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>Forms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I am returning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I returned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I was returning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had returned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td>I was returned</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**return** *go/come back*

- The visitors will return after lunch.
- “I came through and I shall return.”
  - [GENERAL DOUGLAS MACARTHUR]
- The rains have finally returned.
- Her good humor quickly returned.
- My appetite has returned.

**return _____ go/come back**

**ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

- When will our neighbors return from vacation?
- He will return to his country in the fall.
- Shouldn’t they return home?
- Johanna and Tim just returned from Vietnam.
- Larry returned to work two weeks after surgery.
- She gradually returned to full health.
- After the interruption, I returned to my book.

**return _____ send/give/carry/put back**

**OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)**

- Nikki returned the skirt for a larger size.
- Fill out this form and return it to this address.
- Return visitor passes here when you are ready to leave.
- My son returned the ladder to the garage.
- Harrison returned the opening kickoff to the 40-yard line.
- Voters returned the governor to office.
- Keys must be returned to the front desk.

**return _____ respond to in the same way**

**OBJECT**

- She returned his kiss.
- We will return your hospitality as soon as we can.

**return _____ yield, produce**

**OBJECT**

- The bonds will return 10% a year.
- We hope to return a profit in our second year.
- Our investment didn’t return a penny.

**return _____ send something back in a certain condition**

**OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE**

- The post office returned the package marked “undeliverable.”
- She returned his letter unopened.
- His manuscript was returned unread.
reveal | reveals - revealed - have revealed

**PRESENT**
- I reveal
- you reveal
- he/she/it reveals

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am revealing
- you are revealing
- he/she/it is revealing

*He never reveals what he is going to do.*

**PAST**
- I revealed
- you revealed
- he/she/it revealed

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was revealing
- you were revealing
- he/she/it was revealing

*Jane’s letter revealed some terrible news.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- I have revealed

**PAST PERFECT**
- I had revealed

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was revealed
- you were revealed
- he/she/it was revealed

*The information was revealed at a press conference.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**OBJECT**
- John revealed the new budget at the meeting.
- The lawyers will not reveal the contents of the will.
- His book revealed previously classified information about the war.
- The report reveals her role in health care reform.

**PASSIVE**
- The president’s nominee will be revealed at a press conference today.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**
- The evidence revealed her to have been murdered.
- The audit revealed the company to be running at a loss.
- Harold revealed their decision to have been a mistake.

**(TO OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE**
- The museum revealed that the artifacts had been improperly obtained.
- He revealed to the employees that the company would be sold.
- Marsha revealed to her friends that she had been secretly married to John.

**WH-CLAUSE**
- The police will not reveal whom they suspect.
- I can’t reveal what was decided.
- He never revealed why he did it.
PRESENT
I rid  we rid
you rid  you rid
he/she/it rids  they rid
  * The cat rids the barn of mice.

PAST
I rid  we rid
you rid  you rid
he/she/it rid  they rid
  * They rids themselves of all their coats.

PRESENT PERFECT  ... have | has rid
PAST PERFECT  ... had rid

PAST PASSIVE
I was rid  we were rid
you were rid  you were rid
he/she/it was rid  they were rid
  * We were finally rid of unwanted visitors.

COMPLEMENTS

rid  free from [someone/something not wanted]
OBJECT + of OBJECT  They hoped to rid the world of nuclear weapons.
I can't rid myself of this miserable cold.
You must rid yourself of all debt.
They were trying to rid the field of all noxious weeds.
The alderman wants to rid the city of one-way streets.
The sheriff is trying to rid the county of drug dealers.
“Will no one rid me of this troublesome priest?” [HENRY II, leading to the murder of THOMAS BECKET IN 1170]

PASSIVE  The tent was rid of all mosquitoes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>You</th>
<th>He/She/It</th>
<th>We</th>
<th>They</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rides</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>ride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we ride</td>
<td>you ride</td>
<td>they ride</td>
<td>we are riding</td>
<td>you are riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>we are riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>have ridden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>rode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>we were riding</td>
<td>we were riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>had ridden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>we were riding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>will be riding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>will ride</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>will have ridden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Complements**

- **ride**
  - **sit on a horse/bicycle/motorcycle/etc. and make it move along**
  - Do you know how to ride?
  - She rides quite well.
  - You never forget how to ride.
  - The cowboys rode 70 miles the first day.

- **ride**
  - **move along in a vehicle**
  - He never rides when he can walk.
  - I rode to work that day.
  - They rode in a school bus to the meeting.

- **ride _____ sit on and make move along**
  - OBJECT
  - The kids were riding *their bicycles* in the park.
  - We rented horses and rode *them* all afternoon.

- **ride _____ move along in/on**
  - OBJECT
  - We rode *the train* when we were in Germany.
  - I usually ride *the bus* to work.
  - They rode *every ride* at Disneyland.

- **ride _____ be carried along on/by**
  - OBJECT
  - The surfers were riding *the waves*.
  - Investors rode *the boom in housing* for 20 years.
  - The TV networks were still riding *the fad of reality TV*.

- **ride _____ tease, nag**
  - OBJECT
  - The girls are constantly riding *each other* about music.
  - I had better get back to work. The boss is really riding *us*.

**Phrasal Verbs**

- **ride away/down/off/out/up/etc.**
  - move along in a specified direction
  - Marvin stopped by to talk, then rode off.
  - We rode out to the ferry landing this morning.

- **ride on _____ depend on**
  - The company's reputation is riding on these negotiations.
  - All his hopes are riding on being promoted to news anchor.

- **ride SEP out**
  - survive in safety
  - We rode the storm out in the basement.
  - Can our company ride out these perilous economic times?

- **ride up**
  - move upward out of place
  - His jeans rode up as he jogged across the parking lot.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Progressive</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I ring</td>
<td>I am ringing</td>
<td>I rang</td>
<td>I was ringing</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you ring</td>
<td>you are ringing</td>
<td>you rang</td>
<td>you were ringing</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it rings</td>
<td>they ring</td>
<td>he/she/it was ringing</td>
<td>they were ringing</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The bell rings on the quarter hour.*
- *Your alarm clock is ringing.*
- *The phone was ringing all morning.*

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Passive</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was rung</td>
<td>we were rung</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were rung</td>
<td>you were rung</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was rung</td>
<td>they were rung</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The church bell was rung every Sunday for years.*

**Note:** The irregular verb ring is presented here. The regular verb ring (ring | rings · ringed · ringed) means "surround, form a circle around," as in Cypress trees ring the lake.

### Complements

- **ring** make the sound of a bell
  - All of the church bells were ringing.
  - Good wine glasses will ring if you tap them.

- **ring** make a sound by telephone/bell
  - If you need help, just ring.
  - We rang, but nobody came.
  - Please ring for service.

- **ring** cause a bell/alarm to sound
  - The sound of cannons rang through the air.
  - The halls rang with laughter as the students left for the holiday.
  - After the explosion, my ears rang for half an hour.

- **ring** seem to be
  - The immigrant's story rings true.
  - Harry's apology rang hollow.

### Phrasal Verbs

- **ring out** sound clearly and loudly
  - Three shots rang out in the crisp autumn air.

- **ring up** record the price of [something] on a cash register
  - The cashier rang up the cauliflower at $1.99 a head.

- **ring a bell** seem familiar
  - You're right—that name rings a bell.

### Expressions

- **ring in the new (year), ring out the old** celebrate the beginning of the new year
  - We ring in the new year by watching the ball drop at New York's Times Square.

- **ring off the hook** ring constantly
  - I got nothing done this morning—the phone was ringing off the hook.
**Present Present Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I rise</th>
<th>you rise</th>
<th>he/she/it rises</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we rise</td>
<td>you rise</td>
<td>they rise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The land slowly rises toward the hills.

**Past Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I rose</th>
<th>you rose</th>
<th>he/she/it rose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we rose</td>
<td>you rose</td>
<td>they rose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The river rose until the banks overflowed.

**Present Perfect Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have risen</th>
<th>you have risen</th>
<th>he/she/it has risen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we have risen</td>
<td>you have risen</td>
<td>they have risen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I will have risen</th>
<th>you will have risen</th>
<th>he/she/it will have risen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we will have risen</td>
<td>you will have risen</td>
<td>they will have risen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The tide will be rising until four.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The moon was just rising above the trees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A loud cheer rose from the spectators.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White smoke was rising from the chimney.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Beatles rose to fame overnight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carly rose to be CEO of a Fortune 500 company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He rose from office boy to company director.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**rise**
- go to a higher level
  - The tide will be rising until four.
  - The moon was just rising above the trees.
  - A loud cheer rose from the spectators.
  - White smoke was rising from the chimney.
  - The Beatles rose to fame overnight.
  - Carly rose to be CEO of a Fortune 500 company.
  - He rose from office boy to company director.

**rise**
- stand/get up
  - All rise! [COMMAND ISSUED WHEN A JUDGE ENTERS A COURTROOM]
  - He rose from the couch and turned off the TV.

**rise**
- become greater/higher/stronger
  - As we start going downhill, our speed will rise rapidly.
  - The Roman Empire rose and fell.
  - Stock prices rose two percent today.
  - My income has not risen as much as inflation has.
  - During the concert, the noise rose to unbearable levels.
  - The hills steadily rose as we drove northward.
  - The bread dough was rising quickly.
  - His voice rose to a pitiful squeak.
  - Gas prices have been rising lately.
  - The wind rose to near gale force.

**IRREGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>rise</th>
<th>rises · rose · have risen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>rises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>rise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>has risen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**rise above _____**
- ignore [a bad situation]
  - The legislators rose above their petty disagreements and passed an excellent bill.

**rise up (against _____)**
- rebel/revolt
  - (against [someone/something])
  - The colonists rose up against George III and his army.

**rise and shine**
- get out of bed and be energetic
  - Rise and shine! We've got a big day ahead of us.

**rise to the occasion**
- succeed in dealing with a difficult situation
  - The president rose to the occasion and delivered a forceful, inspiring speech.
Present| Present Progressive | Past | Past Progressive | Present Perfect | Future | Future Progressive | Future Perfect
---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---
I roll | I am rolling | I rolled | I was rolling | ... have | ... will roll | ... will have rolled
you roll | you are rolling | you rolled | you were rolling | ... has | ... will be rolling | ... will have been rolled
he/she/it rolls | he/she/it is rolling | they rolled | they were rolling | ... has | ... will be rolling | ... will have been rolled

* Sometimes the ball rolls into the gutter.

* The ship is rolling pretty badly.

* The waves were rolling onto the beach.

* The dough was rolled out until it was quite thin.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**roll**
- move on wheels
- move by turning over and over
- move/rock back and forth

**roll _____ move on wheels/rollers**
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

**PASSIVE**

**roll _____ turn over and over**
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

**roll _____ form into a ball/tube**
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**roll about/away/back/by/down/in/off/out/over/up/etc. move in a specified direction**

**roll _____ away/back/in/out/up/etc. cause to move in a specified direction**

**roll around happen, arrive**

**roll _____ back reduce**

**roll by move past**

**roll _____ out introduce**

**roll _____ out flatten**

* A late-model Porsche just rolled by.
* The puppy rolled over.
* The trash men rolled the barrels away.
* Roll the windows up; it’s windy.
* When fall rolls around, we’ll get out our winter clothing.
* The drugstore rolled back prices on vitamins.
* The years roll by.
* The company rolled out its latest allergy drug.
* Mom was rolling out the pie dough.
Present
I rule
you rule
he/she/it rules

Past
I ruled
you ruled
he/she/it ruled

Present Perfect
... have | has ruled

Past Perfect
... was ruled

Future
... will rule

Present Progressive
I am ruling
you are ruling
he/she/it is ruling

Past Progressive
I was ruling
you were ruling
he/she/it was ruling

Future Progressive
... will be ruling

Future Perfect
... will have ruled

Past Passive
I was ruled
you were ruled
he/she/it was ruled

The court rules in favor of the defendant.

Henry VIII ruled from 1509 to 1547.

The law was eventually ruled unconstitutional.

The court ruled that the defendant was guilty.

The judge ruled that the defendant be sentenced to five years in the state penitentiary.

The judge ruled that he be released without charges.

He ruled that the company be charged with tax evasion.

When will the judge rule?
When the financial markets are fluctuating wildly, caution rules.
In the long run, the law of supply and demand always rules.

Object + (to be) Predicate Noun
The referee ruled the personal foul (to be) a flagrant one.

Object + (to be) Predicate Adjective
The court ruled us (to be) legally responsible for the accident.

The judge ruled the defendant (to be) innocent.

The judge ruled the driver of the van (to be) guilty.

That-Clause
The court ruled that the defendant was guilty.

The judge ruled that the motion was out of order.

The committee ruled that Henry was due overtime pay.

The court ruled that the defendant be sentenced to five years in the state penitentiary.

The judge ruled that he be released without charges.

He ruled that the company be charged with tax evasion.

Rule gover, have power/control over

Object
Elizabeth I ruled England, Ireland, and Wales.

During the Napoleonic era, England ruled the oceans.

Fear of the plague ruled the city.

Our day-to-day lives are ruled by convention and habit.

WH-Clause
The king ruled who could and could not become a noble.

The referee ruled which team would be considered the visitors.

Our budget rules how much we can afford to spend.

Rule separate out eliminate from consideration

We ruled three applicants out because they didn't have a college degree.

Senator Blather isn't ruling out running for president.

The legislators wouldn't rule out a tax increase on cigarettes.
run ____ perform

OBJECT

Can you run some errands for me?
The doctor will need to run some tests.

run ____ cost [INFORMAL]

(indirect object +) direct object

The shipping will run $8.95.
The trip will run you about $500.

run ____ publish

OBJECT

The newspaper ran a series of articles on homeless people.
Our company ran an ad in the July issue.

run ____ be [at a certain level]

predicate adjective

The store is running low on toilet paper.
We ran late getting to the theater.

run across ____ come upon by chance

We ran across our cousins at the farmers’ market.
We ran across old photos of Great-grandfather.

run against ____ be a candidate opposing

Senator Blather ran against gun control.
She ran against another alderman in the primary.

run along go away

Why don’t you kids run along? Be back here in two hours.
Tara runs around with her friends from high school.

run ____ by/past seek advice about / approval for [something] from

Sam ran the speech by Toby.

run ... down drain all the power from

Stop trying to start the car; you’re running the battery down.
Brandi ran down the rest of the group.

run ... down criticize

The governor is running for a fourth term.
The party ran an unknown businessman for mayor.

run for ____ be a candidate for

My sister ran into a deer on the highway.
Janey ran into Hulga at the grocery store.

run into ___ collide with

I ran off several extra sets for you.
Our hybrid car runs on gasoline and an NiMH battery.

run into ___ meet by chance

The presentation of awards ran on forever.
Our supply of helium ran out—no more balloons!

run ____ by/past seek advice about / approval for [something] from

run over ___ knock down while driving

Quick! The bathtub is running over.
Her friend ran over a skunk.

run over ___ exceed a limit

The class was supposed to last an hour, but it ran over.
Would you run the latest proposal over to my office?

run over ___ bring [something]

Shane ran through his inheritance in a year.
The grocery bill runs to $123.44.

run through ___ use up

Homer’s Odyssey runs to more than 12,000 lines.
George ran up a sizable tab at the luxury hotel.

run to ___ amount to

Technology gains ran stock prices up.
The Cobras ran up a big lead, then benched their starters.

run up against ___ encounter

He finally ran up against a problem he couldn’t solve.

run ___ up accumulate [debt]

run ___ up cause to increase

run up against ___ encounter
### IRREGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am running</td>
<td>I run</td>
<td>we are running</td>
<td>we ran</td>
<td>you run</td>
<td>you run</td>
<td>you are running</td>
<td>you ran</td>
<td>you were run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are running</td>
<td>you run</td>
<td>you are running</td>
<td>you ran</td>
<td>he/she/it runs</td>
<td>he/she/it runs</td>
<td>he/she/it runs</td>
<td>he/she/it ran</td>
<td>he/she/it was run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are running</td>
<td>they run</td>
<td>they are running</td>
<td>they ran</td>
<td>they run</td>
<td>they ran</td>
<td>they are running</td>
<td>they were run</td>
<td>they were run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The road runs west to the river. *</td>
<td>* The children ran through the door. *</td>
<td>* The program was running a little late. *</td>
<td>* The store was run by Harry and his children. *</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

- **run**
  - **go** by moving one’s legs faster than in walking
  - **flow** ([of liquids])
  - **spread**, move freely
  - **operate**, be in use/action
  - **operate**
    - **object**
  - **manage**
    - **object**
  - **go**
    - **adverb of place to/from**
  - **transport**
    - **object + adverb of place to/from**
  - **continue, extend**
    - **adverb of time**
  - **cause to continue/extend**
    - **object + adverb of place to/from**

**Examples:**

- The kids never stop running.
- I try to run two miles every day.
- The tiger has escaped! Run!
- The Missouri River runs into the Mississippi River at St. Louis.
- The paint was too thin. It was running down the wall in streaks.
- A murmur ran through the crowd.
- A light breeze ran through the tall grass.
- The train runs three times a day.
- The engine is not running very smoothly.
- The network servers are not running.
- Do you know how to run the **printing press**?
- She can run any **equipment** in the woodworking shop.
- He runs the **local supermarket**.
- The church runs a **preschool program**.
- I need to run **to the bank**.
- We've got to run **home** for something.
- The ferry runs **from Modoc to Ste. Genevieve and back**.
- Can you run **me back to the office**?
- I will run **you over to the station**.
- The festival runs **for four weeks in June**.
- The fiscal year runs **from July 1 to June 30**.
- The literature class runs **every quarter**.
- This path runs **up the bluff to the reservoir**.
- We ran **electrical conduit under the floor**.
- The logging company ran a **gravel road out to the camp**.
**rush**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>We rush</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I rush</td>
<td>we rush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you rush</td>
<td>you rush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it rushes</td>
<td>they rush</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He rushes into situations without thinking.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>We are rushing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am rushing</td>
<td>we are rushing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are rushing</td>
<td>you are rushing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is rushing</td>
<td>they are rushing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We are rushing your order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>We rushed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I rushed</td>
<td>we rushed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you rushed</td>
<td>you rushed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it rushed</td>
<td>they rushed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We rushed the shipment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>We were rushing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was rushing</td>
<td>we were rushing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were rushing</td>
<td>you were rushing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was rushing</td>
<td>they were rushing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I was rushing to get everything done.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has rushed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>has rushed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>... had rushed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>had rushed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I was rushed to the hospital in an ambulance.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**rush**

move/act quickly, hurry

*Take your time; don't rush.
We are late, so we will have to rush.*

**rush _____ move quickly, hurry**

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

*I rushed after the taxi.
Firefighters rushed to the scene of the warehouse fire.
Water was rushing down the street.
The wind was rushing through my hair.
The young couple rushed into marriage.*

**rush _____ do/make quickly**

OBJECT

*The printer rushed the invitations, and the date was wrong.
Don't rush the job. Make it perfect.*

**rush _____ cause/force to act quickly**

OBJECT

*I don't want to rush you, but the store is about to close.
I hate salesmen who try to rush me.
He wasn't rushed by the manager.*

**rush _____ deliver/send quickly**

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

*They rushed the patient to the emergency room.
The Red Cross rushed medical supplies in.
Can you rush me six copies of the book?
We will rush you the contract overnight.
Can you rush six copies of the book to me?
We will rush the contract to you overnight.*

**rush _____ attack suddenly**

OBJECT

*Santa Anna's army rushed the Alamo.
Longstreet's infantry rushed the center of the Union line.*

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**rush around/down/in/off/out/up/etc.**

move quickly in a specified direction

*Volunteers rushed around making everyone comfortable.*

**rush **SEP** down/in/etc. move [someone/something] quickly in a specified direction**

*Hospitals rushed medical supplies in.*
### Regular

**Satisfy | Satisfies · Satisfied · Have Satisfied**

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I satisfy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>You satisfy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>He/she/it satisfy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *His qualifications satisfy our criteria.*

#### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I satisfied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>You satisfied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>He/she/it satisfied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Her answers satisfied the examiners.*

#### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I have satisfied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I will satisfy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I was satisfied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>You were satisfied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>He/she/it was satisfied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *They were satisfied with his explanation.*

### Complements

**Satisfy**

- meet the needs/wishes/expectations of

**Object**

- His work satisfied the client.
- Was that enough food to satisfy your hunger?
- The design satisfied all the requirements.
- Only the Nobel Prize will satisfy him.
- This cell phone has satisfied all my expectations.
- The actor satisfied the director with his portrayal of Sinbad.

**Note:** *Satisfy* is one of the few verbs that uses *with* (instead of *by*) to introduce the passive agent.

**Passive**

- The committee was satisfied with his work.

**Satisfy**

- convince

**Object + That-Clause**

- I satisfied myself that we were on the right track.
- Joan satisfied us that Harold could do the job well.
- We have to satisfy the press that the senator had no conflict of interest.

**Passive**

- Everybody was satisfied that he was telling the truth.

### Expressions

**Satisfy a/one’s] debt**

- The prisoner has satisfied his debt to society.

**Pay off a debt**
### Present Tense
- I save
- you save
- he/she/it saves
- we save
- you save
- they save

*He saves money by riding a bike to work.*

### Past Tense
- I saved
- you saved
- he/she/it saved
- we saved
- you saved
- they saved

*I saved my store receipt.*

### Present Perfect
- ... have | has saved
- ... had saved

### Passive
- I was saved
- you were saved
- he/she/it was saved
- we were saved
- you were saved
- they were saved

*The money was saved for just that purpose.*

### Complements

**save** rescue/keep from harm/danger

- **OBJECT**
  - The farmers were trying to save their animals from the flood.
  - We want to save the old train station.

- **PASSIVE**
  - The passengers were saved by the prompt action of the crew.

- **WH-CLAUSE**
  - They could only save what they could carry.
  - We will save whatever we can.

**save** keep/store for future use

- **OBJECT (+ for object)**
  - Save the file before you turn off the computer.
  - I am saving room for dessert.
  - We are saving our money for a down payment on a house.
  - We need to save some time after the presentation for discussion.

- **PASSIVE**
  - The champagne is being saved for a special occasion.

- **INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**
  - We saved you some dinner.
  - Save me a seat, will you?
  - We saved some dinner for you.
  - Save a seat for me, will you?

**save** keep from being wasted/lost

- **OBJECT**
  - We saved money by fixing the dishwasher ourselves.
  - You can save time with these shortcuts.

**save** avoid/reduce [expense / use of resources]

- **(on) OBJECT**
  - Carpooling saves (on) transportation costs.
  - Turning the computers off saves (on) electricity.
  - The new freeway will save (on) commuting time.

- **INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**
  - It will save us a lot of trouble.
  - The plan will save the company a fortune in electric bills.
  - Online deposit saves me a trip to the bank.

- **FOR PARAPHRASE**
  - It will save a lot of trouble for us.
  - The plan will save a fortune in electric bills for the company.

- **(OBJECT + from) PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
  - The compact florescents save replacing bulbs every month.
  - The new trail saves me from having to walk through town.
  - My parking permit saves me from having to park on the street.
### Regular and Irregular Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject 1</th>
<th>Subject 2</th>
<th>Subject 3</th>
<th>Subject 4</th>
<th>Subject 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I saw</td>
<td>you saw</td>
<td>he/she/it saws</td>
<td>we saw</td>
<td>they saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>I am sawing</td>
<td>you are sawing</td>
<td>he/she/it is sawing</td>
<td>we are sawing</td>
<td>they are sawing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>I have saw</td>
<td>you have saw</td>
<td>he/she/it have saw</td>
<td>we have saw</td>
<td>they have saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>I will saw</td>
<td>you will saw</td>
<td>he/she/it will saw</td>
<td>we will saw</td>
<td>they will saw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He saws plywood with a special blade.*

### Past Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject 1</th>
<th>Subject 2</th>
<th>Subject 3</th>
<th>Subject 4</th>
<th>Subject 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I sawed</td>
<td>we sawed</td>
<td>you sawed</td>
<td>we sawed</td>
<td>they sawed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>I was sawing</td>
<td>we were sawing</td>
<td>you were sawing</td>
<td>we were sawing</td>
<td>they were sawing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>I was sawed</td>
<td>we were sawed</td>
<td>you were sawed</td>
<td>we were sawed</td>
<td>they were sawed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He was sawing as fast as he could.*

### Present Perfect

... have | has sawed/sawn

### Past Perfect

... had sawed/sawn

### Future Tense

... will saw

### Future Progressive

... will be sawing

### Future Perfect

... will have sawed/sawn

### Past Passive

it was sawed/sawn; they were sawed/sawn

*The beams were sawn nearly through.*

### Complements

**saw**
- cut using a saw
- be cut using a saw
- use a sawing motion
- cut/shape using a saw

**saw**
- cut back and forth using a knife/bar/etc.
- saw **sep** down cut down
- saw **sep** off cut off
- saw **sep** up cut into pieces

**PHRASAL VERBS**

We have been sawing all afternoon.
I will have to saw at an angle.
Look out for nails when you saw.
The new blade saws smoothly.

These pine two-by-fours saw very easily.

Holmes was sawing on his violin.
When he jumped off the cliff, his arms sawed up and down.

We are sawing oak planks for flooring.
I will saw the sheets of fiberglass with a special blade.
John sawed the boards into two-foot lengths.
They have sawn a lot of timber this week.
We were sawing jigsaw puzzles out of masonite.
The lumber had been sawn against the grain.

The prisoner was sawing at the window bars with a table knife.
The lumberjacks sawed the entire woods down.
She sawed off the branches that she could reach.
Gerry sawed the board up into seven pieces of equal length.
### Present Progressive
- I am saying
- You are saying
- He/she/it is saying

### Past Progressive
- I was saying
- You were saying
- He/she/it was saying

### Present Perfect
- I have said
- You have said
- He/she/it has said

### Past Perfect
- I had said
- You had said
- He/she/it had said

### Future
- I will say
- You will say
- He/she/it will say

### Future Progressive
- I will be saying
- You will be saying
- He/she/it will be saying

### Future Perfect
- I will have said

### Past Passive
- I was said
- You were said
- He/she/it was said

### COMPLEMENTS

**say _____**
- **OBJECT**
  - He said the right answer.
  - The teacher said “hello” in Latin.
  - They said nothing about it.

**passive**
- Would you say your name again, slowly?

**infinitive**
- His name was said, but I didn’t catch it.
- The tour guide says to be back on the bus in 15 minutes.
- The recipe said to use only the egg whites.
- Her note said to leave the back door unlocked.

**that-clause**
- They said that they would come back later.
- The law says that everyone is presumed to be innocent.
- He said that we should expect snow.

**wh-clause**
- He never said what he meant to do about the problem.
- Did he say when they were coming?
- The instructions say how to attach the handlebars.
- “Good morning,” she said. “We’re glad you’re here.”

**say _____**
- **OBJECT**
  - The clock says 2:15.
  - His expression said it all.

**to object + ****that-clause**
- The tone of his voice says that he’s disappointed.
- My instinct says to me that we should really be cautious.

**wh-clause**
- Their veto says what they think about the proposal.

**be said _____**
- She was said to be one of the best lawyers around.
- He is said to take forever to make up his mind.

**EXPRESSIONS**

**have _____ to say for yourself**
- The defendant had nothing to say for himself.
- What do you have to say for yourself, young man?

**say the word**
- When I say the word, jump out and shout “Happy Birthday!”

**say yes/no (to _____)**
- Sarah said yes to Lucas when he proposed to her.
- Just say no to drugs.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>search</td>
<td>my briefcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>search</td>
<td>your briefcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>search</td>
<td>their briefcase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The guard always searches my briefcase.

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Searched</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>searched</td>
<td>my briefcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Searched</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>searched</td>
<td>your briefcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Searched</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>searched</td>
<td>their briefcase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The police searched the house thoroughly.

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have searched</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>have searched</td>
<td>my briefcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have searched</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>have searched</td>
<td>your briefcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have searched</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>have searched</td>
<td>their briefcase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We have searched everywhere for a stapler.

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Will have searched</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have searched</td>
<td>my briefcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will have searched</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>will have searched</td>
<td>your briefcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will have searched</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will have searched</td>
<td>their briefcase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He will have searched before he was allowed to enter.

### Complements

**Search**
- **try to find something by looking**
  - Should we start searching?
  - We need to keep searching until we find it.
  - How long did the volunteers search?

**Search**
- **try to find by looking**
  - **for object**
    - What are the auditors searching **for**?
    - The teacher is searching **for the missing tests**.
    - The police are searching **for clues**.
  - **try to find [something] by examining carefully**

**Adverb of Place**
- They searched **in the woods**.
- I searched **everywhere** but never found my keys.
- We still have to search **in the attic and garage**.

**Object**
- They were searching **everybody who entered the building**.
- Did they search **the car**?
- They only searched **backpacks and handbags**.

**Passive**
- You can search **the Web for population statistics**.
- The FBI searched **his house for illegal drugs**.
- Would you search **the living room for the TV remote**?
- I searched **the report for evidence of wrongdoing**.
- The house was searched **for illegal drugs**.

### Phrasal Verbs

**Search after**
- seek / look for
- **[something abstract]**
  - The philosopher is searching after the truth.

**Search out**
- look for and find
- Donna searched out the data that Josh required.

**Search through**
- try to find
- **something by examining the contents of**
  - I searched through the archives.
  - They even searched through my dirty laundry.

**Search high and low for**
- try to find by looking carefully in every possible place
  - We searched high and low for the missing photos.
see _____ meet with, visit
OBJECT
I will see the reporters at 2 o'clock.
Guess whom I saw today?
Would you stop by and see Aunt Tillie?
You will be seen by the next available doctor.

PASSIVE
see _____ seek advice/information/help from
OBJECT
You should see a doctor about that rash.
Steve saw a cancer specialist today.
Alexander is seeing his thesis advisor on Tuesday.

see _____ find out
WH-CLAUSE
See who's at the door, please.
Kari will see what the congressman wants.

see _____ have a romantic relationship with [USED ONLY IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]
OBJECT
Paul is seeing a friend of mine.
She is finally seeing someone that we all like.
Are you seeing anyone?

see _____ accompany
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
Louise saw her guests to the door.
Jake saw Mallory home from the party.

see _____ consider
OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN
They saw Laura as a threat.
I see this as a golden opportunity.

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
We see her as inexperienced and unreliable.
The manager saw his staff as eager and energetic.
Traders will see the economic picture as unstable.

see _____ make sure
(to it) THAT-CLAUSE
See (to it) that the lights are turned off before you leave.
We asked the janitor to see (to it) that the boxes are removed from the hallway.

see _____ experience
OBJECT
My hometown has seen lots of changes.
The price of milk has seen a large increase.

May I see you back to your office?
The receptionist will see you out.

see back/down/in/out/up/etc.
accompany in a specified direction
My secretary will see about ordering new carpet.
The neighbors can see in if the drapes are open.
I'll see you off at the train station.

The windows were papered over so we couldn't see out.
The windshield is so dirty I can't see through.
Glenda saw the project through.

An extra $100 a week will see us through.
Would you see to the lizard in the kitchen?
### IRREGULAR

**see | sees - saw - have seen**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>FORMS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it sees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He sees a physical therapist once a week.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* I saw Marian yesterday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The suspect was last seen fleeing the crime scene.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**see** | understand [something previously said] | Oh, I see! [USUALLY SPoken EMPHATICALLY] |
**see** | acknowledge [something previously said] | I see. [USUALLY SPEAKED IN A LEVEL OR FALLING TONE] |
**see** | use the sense of sight | You won’t be able to see temporarily. Ray can’t see anymore. |
**see _____** | observe with one’s eyes | I saw Tom at the grocery store. We saw the documentary on TV last night. **What** do you see? |
| OBJECT | | The star is best seen through a high-powered telescope. |
| | | Sam saw the wind rip the roof off the house. Nobody saw the suspect break into the house. |
| | | We saw Charles walking to school. I’m sorry. I didn’t see you standing there. Mary was seen talking to Brett. |
| | | Someone must have seen the car stolen. We saw the bridge swept away in the flood. I see that you bought a new car. |
| | | We saw in the paper that your son is getting married. You bought a new car, I see. |
| | | I saw what they are making for dinner. Did anybody see where the kids went? |
| **see _____** | understand | I see your point. Nobody saw the magnitude of the risk. We all see the attractions of living in a big city. |
| OBJECT | | He is widely seen to be qualified. The judge was seen to favor the prosecution. |
| | | I see that we are in big trouble. Our lawyer saw that they were on shaky legal ground. |
| | | I see what we should do. Nobody saw how risky the plan was. |
**seek**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>PERSON 1</th>
<th>PERSON 2</th>
<th>PERSON 3</th>
<th>PERSON 4</th>
<th>PERSON 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I seek</td>
<td>you seek</td>
<td>he/she/it seeks</td>
<td>we seek</td>
<td>you seek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am seeking</td>
<td>you are seeking</td>
<td>he/she/it is seeking</td>
<td>we are seeking</td>
<td>you are seeking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>I am seeking</td>
<td>we are seeking</td>
<td>you are seeking</td>
<td>we are seeking</td>
<td>he/she/it is seeking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* France seeks to establish trade relations.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>I have sought</td>
<td>you have sought</td>
<td>he/she/it has sought</td>
<td>we have sought</td>
<td>you have sought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>I will seek</td>
<td>you will seek</td>
<td>he/she/it will seek</td>
<td>we will seek</td>
<td>you will seek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect</td>
<td>I will have sought</td>
<td>you will have sought</td>
<td>he/she/it will have sought</td>
<td>we will have sought</td>
<td>you will have sought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I sought</td>
<td>we sought</td>
<td>you sought</td>
<td>he/she/it sought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I was seeking</td>
<td>we were seeking</td>
<td>you were seeking</td>
<td>he/she/it was seeking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>I had sought</td>
<td>we had sought</td>
<td>you had sought</td>
<td>he/she/it had sought</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The hikers sought a safe place to camp.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>I was sought</td>
<td>we were sought</td>
<td>you were sought</td>
<td>he/she/it was sought</td>
<td>they were sought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Voting rights were sought by women's groups for decades.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**seek**

- **look for**
  - **OBJECT**
    - Ruby was seeking a **good place for the family reunion**.  
    - Seek **shelter** immediately when you hear the tornado siren.  
    - We sought **anybody who could answer our questions**.  
    - A suspect in the killing is being sought by the police.

- **ask for**
  - **OBJECT**
    - You need to seek **professional advice**.  
    - I am seeking **information about cell phones**.  
    - We should seek **help on this problem**.  
    - Technical information on wind farms is being sought.

- **try, attempt**
  - **INFINITIVE**
    - We sought **to find a better solution to the problem**.  
    - They are seeking **to replace their old computers**.  
    - We never sought **to cause any problems**.  
    - The company has always sought **to have excellent customer relations**.

- **try to get/achieve**
  - **OBJECT**
    - The plaintiff is seeking **damages of $2 million**.  
    - He sought **revenge for his brother's murder**.  
    - She sought **perfection in everything she did**.

### PHRASAL VERBS

- **seek out**
  - **look for and find**
    - The candidate sought out the best pollsters in the country.

### Expressions

- **Seek and ye shall find. If you look hard enough for something, you will find it. [BIBLE]**
  - The farmers' market has every kind of vegetable and fruit you can think of.  
    - Just seek and ye shall find.
Seem | seems · seemed · have seemed

**PRESENT**
I seem  we seem
you seem  you seem
he/she/it seems  they seem
> It seems to be a good idea.

**PAST**
I seemed  we seemed
you seemed  you seemed
he/she/it seemed  they seemed
> John seemed upset about something.

**PRESENT PERFECT** ... have | has seemed
**PAST PERFECT** ... had seemed

**FUTURE** ... will seem
**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** —
**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have seemed

**PAST PASSIVE**
Seem is never used in the passive voice.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

_seem ___  give the impression of being, appear
(to be) PREDICATE NOUN
The message seems *(to be)* a plea for help.
Harry seems *(to be)* a very likeable young man.
San Francisco seems *(to be)* a very civilized city.
It seemed *(to be)* a good idea at the time.

(se to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
Teenagers seem *(to be)* hungry all the time.
They seem *(to be)* unhappy with our suggestion.
Allen seemed *(to be)* very professional in his approach.

**NOTE:** The following uses of _seem_ make the following clause less definite, direct, or confrontational.

_seem ___  appear, in the opinion of the speaker/writer
INFINITIVE
I seem to remember telling you to clean up that mess.
He seemed to think we were rude to him.
Dorothy seemed to dislike her new slippers.
A groundhog seems to have dug a burrow in the river bank.

_seem ___  appear, in the opinion of the person addressed [USED ONLY IN QUESTIONS]
WH + seem + INFINITIVE
Who seemed to be the most seriously injured?
What seems to be the problem here?
What seemed to cause the landslide?
Whatever seems to be the matter?

_seem ___  appear to be true
it + seem + THAT-CLAUSE
It seemed that we had made a big mistake.
It seems that they might cancel the flight.
It may seem that I have changed my mind.

it + seem + as if / as though / like CLAUSE
It seems as if you were right after all.
It seems as though her ideas are the ones that worked the best.
It seems like he didn't like her anymore.

_seem ___  appear to exist
there + seem + to be PREDICATE NOUN
There seems to be a problem with the bill.
There seems to be some misunderstanding.
There seemed to be some confusion about the recommendation.
### select

**select** | selects · selected · have selected

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I select</td>
<td>I am selecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you select</td>
<td>you are selecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it selects</td>
<td>he/she/it is selecting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He always selects the best one for himself.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>PAST PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I selected</td>
<td>I was selecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you selected</td>
<td>you were selecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it selected</td>
<td>he/she/it was selecting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *Our daughter finally selected a college.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT PERFECT</th>
<th>... have</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
<th>... will select</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... has selected</td>
<td>... will select</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST PASSIVE</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was selected</td>
<td>we were selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were selected</td>
<td>you were selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was selected</td>
<td>they were selected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *We were selected to be in the final round.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**select**

- choose, pick out

**OBJECT**

Please select **one of the following options**.

The committee finally selected **its new chairperson**.

**Which wine** did you select?

Select **the words you want to delete** by highlighting them.

Click on “File,” then select “Save.”

She selected **three jackets** for her husband.

Teams always selected **me** last.

**PASSIVE**

The cast for the play has already been selected.

Shoppers can select **from a range of colors**.

Students selected **from a long list of activities**.

The bride and groom can select **from seven reception dinner menus**.

**OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN**

They selected **Lloyd as the best person for the job**.

We selected **the Marriott as the convention site**.

**What** did you select **as its name**?

**PASSIVE**

Southwest was selected **as the official airline**.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

We selected **you to make the presentation**.

They selected **Tony’s restaurant to cater the dinner**.

The magazine selected **our school to be featured in the article**.

**PASSIVE**

Sarah Greene was selected **to be the main speaker**.
Present Present Progressive
I sell we sell
you sell you sell
he/she/it sells they sell
* Our store sells sports equipment.

Past Past Progressive
I sold we sold
you sold you sold
he/she/it sold they sold
* We sold the desk on craigslist.

Present Perfect Future
... have | has sold

Past Perfect Future Progressive
... will sell
... will be selling
... will have sold

Future Perfect
... will have sold

Past Passive
I was sold we were sold
you were sold you were sold
he/she/it was sold they were sold
* That house was sold last week.

COMPLEMENTS
sell be a successful product/idea
I think that his new CD will really sell.
His proposal will never sell.

sell exchange for money
OBJECT
I want to sell my old computer.
He finally sold his jewelry business.

OBJECT + for OBJECT
She sold the lamp for $10.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
How much did you sell the table for?
We sold them some lawn furniture.
Jay sold the dealer his coin collection.
We sold some lawn furniture to them.
Jay sold his coin collection to the dealer.

OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE
He sold us just what we had in mind.
We sell people whatever kind of car they want.

sell be given in exchange [for money]
for OBJECT
The Picasso painting sold for $104 million.
The antique rolling pin sold for $25.

sell offer for purchase
OBJECT
The hardware store sells electrical and plumbing supplies.
Our group is selling raffle tickets.
They sell fish sandwiches on Friday.

PASSIVE
OBJECT + for OBJECT
Gym memberships are sold by the month.
The boutique is selling scarves for as little as $7.

sell be offered for purchase
for OBJECT
Milk is selling for $3.50 a gallon.

sell successfully promote
OBJECT
John really knows how to sell his vision for the company.

PHRASAL VERBS
sell off liquidate
We sold off our clothing division two years ago.

sell out of sell all of
We sold out of French Roast coffee yesterday.
We are sold out of chocolate ice cream.
**send** send | sends · sent · have sent  

### Present Tense
- **I** send
- **we** send
- **you** send
- **he/she/it** sends

- *The firm sends letters by registered mail.*

### Past Tense
- **I** sent
- **we** sent
- **you** sent
- **he/she/it** sent

- *They sent us a nice note.*

### Present Perfect Tense
- **... have | has sent**

### Past Perfect Tense
- **... had sent**

### Future Tense
- **... will send**

### Future Perfect Tense
- **... will have sent**

### Present Progressive Tense
- **I am sending**
- **we are sending**
- **you are sending**
- **he/she/it is sending**

- *I am sending you an e-mail.*

### Past Progressive Tense
- **I was sending**
- **we were sending**
- **you were sending**
- **he/she/it was sending**

- *They were sending their children to a private school.*

### Past Passive Tense
- **I was sent**
- **we were sent**
- **you were sent**
- **he/she/it was sent**

- *The letter was sent to the wrong address.*

---

#### COMPLEMENTS

**send** mail, dispatch

- **OBJECT**

**send** cause to go / be carried

- **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

---

**PASSIVE**

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

**to PARAPHRASE**

---

#### PHRASAL VERBS

**send** _sep_ away/back/by/down/in/out/over/etc. cause to go in a specified direction

**send** (away/back/down/off/out/up) for _____ summon, request

**send** _sep_ in submit

**send** _sep_ in for put [someone] into a contest as a replacement for

**send** _sep_ off mail

**send** _sep_ off cause to go away

**send** _sep_ off say farewell to [someone leaving on a trip]

**send** _sep_ out issue, distribute

**send** _sep_ out for cause [someone] to go on an errand to get

**send** _sep_ up/down cause to go up/down

- The publisher sent my manuscript back unread.
- You may send the ambassador in now.
- Send for the school nurse immediately.
- Abby sent away for extra copies of the report.
- Let’s send out for pizza.
- Please send your application in by December 31.
- The coach sent Hopkins in for Busam.
- We sent a wedding present to them.
- We sent a wedding present to them.
- The town sent the soldiers off with a parade.
- The company sent a press release out this morning.
- I sent Billie out for some more ice cream.

---

**send** _sep_ over/ etc. cause to go in a specified direction
separate | separates  
- separated • have separated

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I separate</td>
<td>I am separating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you separate</td>
<td>you are separating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it separates</td>
<td>he/she/it is separating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The path separates at the top of the hill.</td>
<td>* Her parents are separating.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>PAST PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I separated</td>
<td>I was separating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you separated</td>
<td>you were separating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it separated</td>
<td>he/she/it was separating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Brian separated the yolks and egg whites.</td>
<td>* The searchers were separating to cover more ground.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT PERFECT</th>
<th>PAST PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>I was separated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has separated</td>
<td>we were separated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... had separated</td>
<td>you were separated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was separated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they were separated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The groups were separated by age and ability.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

separate move/go/break apart
Tell the girls to separate and mix with the guests.
The train tracks separate in the next town.
Orange juice will separate if you leave it too long.
We separated at the airport but agreed to meet later for dinner.
The first stage of the rocket didn’t separate properly.

separate stop living together
The Johnstons are separating after 10 years of marriage.

separate _____ cause to move/be apart, divide, be between

OBJECT
The police separated the two gangs.
A high wooden fence separated the two yards.
The teacher separated the class into four groups.
Please separate the invoices into folders by month.

PASSIVE
John and Mary were separated by mutual agreement.
A lot of families were separated during the war.

OBJECT + from OBJECT
We must separate fact from fiction.
Separate the bruised pears from the others.
How do you separate your private life from your public life?
The dairy separates the milk from the cream.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

separate _____ sep out (from / out of _____) remove (from [something])
Separate out the milk jugs from the rest of the recycled plastic.
Electrolysis separates hydrogen out of water.

**EXPRESSIONS**

separate the men from the boys show who is competent and who is not
The current economy will really separate the men from the boys.

separate the wheat from the chaff set what is valuable apart from what is worthless
When it comes to books, our book club tries to separate the wheat from the chaff.
**serve**  |  serves · served · have served

**PRESENT**
- I serve
- you serve
- he/she/it serves
  - *The laser printer serves the whole office.*
- we serve
- you serve
- they serve
  - *We are serving the guests coffee on the deck.*

**PAST**
- I served
- you served
- he/she/it served
  - *Grandpa served in the Navy.*
- we served
- you served
- they served

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has served

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had served

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was served
- you were served
- he/she/it was served
  - *Sorry, lunch was served at noon.*
- we were served
- you were served
- they were served

**COMPLEMENTS**

**serve**  perform a duty/service/obligation

- He has served for many years.
- Everyone has a need to serve.

**serve**  provide food/drink

- We will start serving at five.
- We will have to hire someone to serve.

**serve**  hit a ball over a net to begin play

- The visiting team always serves first.

**serve**  function, be used

- Our school serves as a model of racial harmony.
- Sweating serves to regulate body temperature.
- The severe penalty serves to discourage other cheaters.

**serve**  |  serves · served · have served

- He has served his country for many years.
- How can we serve our customers better?
- One grocery store serves the whole town.
- The power company serves Arizona and southern California.
- He is serving a three-year term in the state penitentiary.
- Marilyn served as church administrator for 31 years.
- Mycroft Holmes served his brother as a crime consultant.
- I served on a committee to eliminate waste in government.

**serve**  |  serves · served · have served

- The restaurant cannot serve minors in the lounge.
- We are not able to serve large tour groups.
- The recipe serves six.

- The restaurant serves Mandarin food.
- The school serves waffles on the weekend.
- Dinner is served.
- They served the whole group lasagna.
- The cooks served the grateful soldiers a hot meal.
- They served lasagna to the whole group.
- The cooks served a hot meal to the grateful soldiers.
- Meyers serves the ball to Larsen.
set | sets · set · have set

**set**

**PRESENT**

I set
you set
he/she/it sets

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am setting
you are setting
he/she/it is setting

**PAST**

I set
you set
he/she/it set

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was setting
you were setting
he/she/it was setting

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has set

**FUTURE**

... will set

**PAST PERFECT**

... had set

**FUTURE PERFECT**

... will have set

* The auctioneer sets a minimum bid.
* I set the alarm for 6 A.M.
* We were setting a new direction for the company.
* The couch was set in front of the TV screen.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**set**

sink below the horizon

The sun will set at 6:43 tonight.

The moon was just setting below the trees in the west.

Orion was setting behind the snowy hills.

The chocolate mousse never set properly.

The cement in the patio was setting nicely.

Be careful. The glue sets in just a few seconds.

become solid/rigid

The hunters set their guns against the fence.

I set my foot on the bottom rung of the ladder.

She set the novel in postwar Canada.

The moon was just setting below the trees in the west.

Orion was setting behind the snowy hills.

The cement in the patio was setting nicely.

Be careful. The glue sets in just a few seconds.

set put, lay

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The hunters set their guns against the fence.

I set my foot on the bottom rung of the ladder.

She set the novel in postwar Canada.

The house was set well back from the road.

The movie was set in Los Angeles.

The album had been set on a shelf in the living room.

arrange, adjust

OBJECT

The doctor set my dislocated shoulder.

I have set the clock for daylight saving time.

I set the volume on the radio way too high.

Last winter, we set the thermostat at 62 degrees.

His face was set in a permanent scowl.

establish, fix

OBJECT

The track team set a record for the 400-meter relay.

The Hunt brothers tried to set the price of silver.

Sarah and Lucas have set the date of their wedding.

Graham sets a good example for the other children.

We set a fund-raising goal of $200.

The real estate agent set the price of our house at $235,000.

cause to be in a certain state/condition

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Lincoln set the slaves free.

Grandpa always sets the dogs loose after breakfast.

OBJECT + to PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The speech set us to thinking about harnessing the sun's energy.
The logician set the problem aside and went to lunch. Our neighbors set scraps out for our dog.

The Scouts set about repairing the holes in the tent. His budget policies set the president against Congress.

His honesty and sense of justice set him apart. We set aside $200 a month for the kids’ education.

They set their differences aside and became close friends. Congress set the issue aside for the time being.

The bad economy will set back our plans to expand. The Supreme Court set aside the appellate court ruling.

The president’s order set genetic research back six years. How much did the new lawn tractor set you back?

The secretary has set down what was said at the executive meeting.

The boss set Hank’s mistake down to inexperience and naiveté.

The church set forth its principles of equality and inclusion. Decay has already set in. With all the political commercials on TV, voter fatigue has set in.

Three hundred pioneers set off from St. Joseph, Missouri. Refugees set out in overcrowded boats for the mainland.

The designer set the title off from the text below.

Be careful not to set Dolores off; she’s already angry.

My husband set the metal detector off with his belt buckle.

Quarrymen set off 150 pounds of dynamite.

The citizens set upon the soldiers and beat them badly.

The store sets out its Christmas items right after Halloween.

Don’t set your tomatoes out before the last frost.

Farmers set to plugging the hole in the dike. Engineers set to work on the project.

My parents set me to vacuuming the dining room. Let’s set a meeting up with the committee chairpersons.

Gerry set up a miniature railroad in the living room. Our group set up a web-based discussion forum.

She set her mom’s computer up to do e-mail.

Adolf Hitler set himself up as dictator.

They set me up on April Fool’s Day, and I fell for it.

Would you set me up with your roommate?
**Regular Verbs**

**settle | settles · settled · have settled**

**Present**
- I settle
- you settle
- he/she/it settles
  - He always settles his bills promptly.

**Past**
- I settled
- you settled
- he/she/it settled
  - They finally settled their argument.

**Present Perfect**
- I have settled
- you have settled
- he/she/it has settled

**Past Perfect**
- I had settled
- you had settled
- he/she/it had settled
  - New Zealand was first settled by Polynesians.

**Future**
- I will settle
- you will settle
- he/she/it will settle

**Future Perfect**
- I will have settled
- you will have settled
- he/she/it will have settled

**Passive**
- I was settled
- you were settled
- he/she/it was settled

**COMPLEMENTS**

**settle**
- come to an agreement
  - The two sides will never settle.
  - The judge asked them to settle before the case came to trial.

- sink gradually
  - Wait until the tea leaves settle before you pour.
  - The house has settled about two inches.
  - We couldn't drive until the dust settled.

- ___ come to an agreement/decision [on]
  - object
  - passive
  - on object
  - Will you settle a bet for us?
  - The suit was settled out of court.
  - Did she ever settle on a wedding dress?

- ___ pay [a debt, bill]
  - object

- ___ cause to sink gradually
  - object

- ___ make calm
  - object

- ___ put in a comfortable position
  - object + adverb of place

- ___ establish a home/colony
  - adverb of place

- ___ establish a colony in
  - object

- ___ come to rest
  - adverb of place

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**settle down**
- calm down
  - The teacher told the rowdy kids to settle down.

- establish a home
  - Adam eventually settled down in south St. Louis.

- accept
  - I'd like $50 for the bike, but I'll settle for $40.
shake | shakes · shook · have shaken

**Present**
- I shake
- you shake
- he/she/it shakes

**Present Progressive**
- I am shaking
- you are shaking
- he/she/it is shaking

- *The windows shake when it's windy.*

**Past**
- I shook
- you shook
- he/she/it shook

**Past Progressive**
- I was shaking
- you were shaking
- he/she/it was shaking

- *I shook the umbrella before I closed it.*

**Future**
- I will shake
- you will shake
- he/she/it will shake

**Future Perfect**
- I will have shaken
- you will have shaken
- he/she/it will have shaken

- *He was shaking his head in disbelief.*

**Past Passive**
- I was shaken
- you were shaken
- he/she/it was shaken

- *Everyone was badly shaken by the earthquake.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**shake**
- tremble, vibrate
  - His voice shakes whenever he gets excited.
  - The floor shakes whenever a train goes by.
  - My legs were beginning to shake from the strain of lifting the box.

**shake ____**
- cause to move quickly up and down / back and forth / from side to side
  - object
  - The cat is shaking its toy mouse furiously.
  - I shook David by the shoulder to wake him up.
  - I shook my head vigorously, trying to get him to stop talking.
  - We shook the rugs and put them back on the floor.
  - They shook hands and smiled for the camera.
  - Shake the dressing well before using.

**shake ____**
- shock, surprise, upset
  - object
  - The news about the accident shook us all badly.
  - The sudden increase in oil prices shook the financial markets.
  - Her daughter’s death shook her religious faith.

- passive
  - She was visibly shaken when she returned.

### PHRASAL VERBS

**shake **
- sep down/off/out/up/etc.
  - cause to move quickly in a specified direction
  - The gardener shook the apples down.
  - Tip Top stood up and shook the dust off.

**shake **
- sep down get money from
  - by using threats
  - The politician shook down corporations for campaign contributions.

**shake **
- sep off get away from
  - The car thief was unable to shake the police off.

**shake **
- sep off get rid of
  - It took me a week to shake off a cold.

**shake **
- sep out clean by shaking
  - We put fresh sheets on the bed and shook out the blankets.

**shake **
- sep out straighten by shaking
  - Lydia shook the shirts out before hanging them up.

**shake **
- sep up mix by shaking
  - I shook the salad dressing up before opening the bottle.

**shake **
- sep up change greatly
  - The new department head shook up the staff with a round of hiring and firing.
Present Present Progressive
I share we share
you share you are sharing
he/she/it shares they share

• Thomas always shares his toys.

Past Past Progressive
I shared we shared
you shared you were sharing
he/she/it shared they were sharing

• We shared a cubicle when we were interns.

Present Perfect Future
... have | has shared

Future Future Progressive
... will share

Future Perfect... will have shared

Past Passive

• The profits and expenses were shared equally.

COMPLEMENTS

share divide something into parts for the use of two or more people

Mommy! They aren't sharing!
We would be happy to share; we have more than enough.
Some kids have a hard time learning to share.
All members of the group must share equally.

share _____ divide into parts for the use of two or more people, have/use together
OBJECT

Let's share a dessert.
Barb and I often share a bottle of wine at dinner.
Can I share this box of donuts with you?
We shared an apartment in Pittsburgh.
The costs must be shared by all participants equally.
We will share what resources we have.
You can't share what you don't have.
Investors will share whatever profits the company makes.

share _____ participate in OBJECT

The whole class shared in the gift for the teacher.
All of us share in my brother's happiness.

share _____ have in common OBJECT

Tim and Johanna share a love for old movies.
We don't share their enthusiasm for home-roasted coffee.
A dislike of snakes and spiders is shared by most cultures.

share _____ tell, express OBJECT

The boss shared a story from his childhood.
Please share your ideas with us.
The widow was unable to share her feelings with the support group.
**PRESENT**

I shave | we shave
---|---
you shave | you shave
he/she/it shaves | they shave

*He shaves every morning.*

**PAST**

I shaved | we shaved
---|---
you shaved | you shaved
he/she/it shaved | they shaved

*We shaved some soap to get thin flakes.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has shaved

**PAST PERFECT**

... had shaved

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was shaved | we were shaved
---|---
you were shaved | you were shaved
he/she/it was shaved | they were shaved

*His head was shaved every few days.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am shaving | we are shaving
---|---
you are shaving | you are shaving
he/she/it is shaving | they are shaving

*Can you get the phone? I'm shaving.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was shaving | we were shaving
---|---
you were shaving | you were shaving
he/she/it was shaving | they were shaving

*He was shaving by the time he was 16.*

**FUTURE**

... will shave

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**

... will be shaving

**FUTURE PERFECT**

... will have shaved

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**shave** cut off one’s beard

I need to shave.

Richard Nixon had such a heavy beard that he shaved twice a day.

When was the last time you shaved?

**shave _____ cut off the hair of with a razor**

OBJECT

Before the surgery, a nurse shaved my back.

Most women shave their legs.

Competitive swimmers shave their whole bodies.

Before the makeup could be applied, his head was shaven.

**shave _____ cut a thin slice from**

OBJECT

We shaved dark chocolate to get chocolate curls.

Shave the cheese as thin as you can.

Thin slices of prosciutto were shaved for the appetizers.

**shave _____ reduce slightly**

OBJECT

We have to shave our prices to remain competitive.

The factory shaved costs by turning the heat down five degrees.

The store shaved ten cents off the regular price.

The injury shaved the odds of our winning.

A few seconds were shaved from the old record.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**shave SEP. off cut [from]**

He shaved off a little sliver from the edge of the table with a plane.
**shed**

*I shed* we shed
you shed you shed
he/she/it sheds they shed
*The tree sheds its leaves all over the patio.*

*The dogs shed all over my black sweater.*

*I was shed* we were shed
you were shed you were shed
he/she/it was shed they were shed
*Our coats were shed as soon as we stepped onto the plane.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**shed** cast off / lose fur/skin/leaves naturally

My dog sheds in the spring and autumn. Most reptiles shed whenever they get too big for their old skin.

Most trees in temperate latitudes shed annually.

**shed** cast off / lose [fur/skin/leaves] naturally

object

Most long-haired dogs shed a lot of fur in the spring. All snakes shed their skins.

Most shade trees shed their leaves.

Cat hair had been shed all over the rug.

**shed** take off, get rid of

object

The kids shed their clothes and put on their bathing suits. I hope to shed about ten pounds this year. Many people never shed their fear of public speaking. You will have to shed some of your low-performing stocks. Their fear of foreign travel has never really been shed.

**shed** cause to flow/drain/slough off

object

My new jacket sheds water pretty well. Our tent didn’t seem to shed a drop of water. The roof is steep enough to shed snow.

**shed** let flow

object

We shed many tears over her death. The soldier shed a lot of blood before a tourniquet was applied.

**EXPRESSIONS**

**shed crocodile tears** pretend that one is crying

The banks were shedding crocodile tears for depositors who lost money.
### shift | shifts · shifted · have shifted

**Present**
- I shift
- you shift
- he/she/it shifts

**Present Progressive**
- I am shifting
- you are shifting
- he/she/it is shifting

*He always shifts the blame to you.*

**Past**
- I shifted
- you shifted
- he/she/it shifted

**Past Progressive**
- I was shifting
- you were shifting
- he/she/it was shifting

*The mayor shifted uneasily in his chair.*

**Present Perfect**
- ... have | has shifted

**Past Perfect**
- ... had shifted

**Future**
- ... will shift

**Future Progressive**
- ... will be shifting

**Future Perfect**
- ... will have shifted

*The balance of power was shifted by recent events.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**shift** | change position
--- | ---

The house has shifted a bit on its foundation.
The audience shifted uneasily during the angry exchange.
The wind is shifting.
Ken's eyes shifted from the café to the bank.
Can you shift a little so I can get by?
Political beliefs have definitely shifted.
Consumer preferences are constantly shifting.

**shift** | move, change

**OBJECT**

Learning to shift your balance correctly is the key to skiing.
They want to shift the date of the conference.
Shift the boxes so we can get the car out of the garage.
They were really trying to shift the blame.
Let's shift the discussion back to economic policy.
Young people shift their music preferences almost weekly.
Advertising tries to shift consumer brand loyalty.
It is nearly impossible to shift a person's basic temperament.
She shifted her gaze to the watercolor by Édouard Manet.

**PASSIVE**

The guns were shifted to cover the port better.
The cargo was shifted to keep the boat balanced.
Political allegiances have been shifted by the economic downturn.
**Present Present Progressive**

- I shine
- you shine
- he/she/it shines
- *The sun always shines in Arizona.*

**Past Past Progressive**

- I shone/shined
- you shone/shined
- he/she/it shone/shined
- *He shined the light right into our eyes.*

**Present Perfect Future**

- I have shone/shined
- you have shone/shined
- he/she/it has shone/shined
- *His shoes were shined and his suit was pressed.*

**Past Perfect Future Progressive**

- I had shone/shined
- you had shone/shined
- he/she/it had shone/shined
- *Their eyes were shining with excitement.*

**Future Future Perfect**

- I will shine
- you will shine
- he/she/it will shine
- *They will be shining.*

**Past Passive**

- it was shone/shined
- they were shone/shined
- *My shoes were shined and my suit was pressed.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**Note:** The irregular form *shone* is used both with and without an object, except in the sense “make bright by polishing”; the regular form *shined* is used only with an object.

- **shine** *give off / reflect light, be bright*
  - The stars were shining brightly.
  - The jewels shone in the display case.
  - The sun, reflecting from the glass building, shone in our eyes.
  - Their swords and spears shone in the moonlight.
  - The princess's hair shone like gold.
  - The lighthouse shone through the mist, guiding us to port.

- **shine** *have a bright appearance*
  - Fred's face was shining with joy as he ran to meet Rosemary.

- **shine** *do very well*
  - Melissa shines in social studies.

- **shine** *cause to give off light*
  - **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
  - The guide shined his flashlight into the back of the tomb.
  - The policeman is shining his headlights on the abandoned car.
  - The newspaper shined light on corruption at City Hall.
  - Bright lights were shone on the prisoners' faces all night long.

- **shine** *cause to give off light*
  - **OBJECT**
  - The jeweler shined the gem until it sparkled.
  - I shined my shoes carefully before the interview.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- **shine down/in/out/up/etc.**
  - *give off light in a specified direction*
  - *cause to give off light in a specified direction*
  - The sun shine down on us as we walked along the beach.
  - Shine the flashlight up a little higher.

- **shine through**
  - *be clearly shown*
  - Her personality really shines through in her photography.
**Present Present Progressive**

I shoot | am shooting
you shoot | are shooting
he/she/it shoots | is shooting

* MacInnis shoots and scores!

**Past Past Progressive**

I shot | was shooting
you shot | were shooting
he/she/it shot | was shooting

* They shot several deer this fall.

**Present Perfect Future**

... have | has shot

**Past Perfect Future Progressive**

... had shot

**Future Perfect**

... will shoot

**Past Passive**

I was shot | were shot
you were shot | were shot
he/she/it was shot | were shot

* Up in the Air was shot in St. Louis.

**SHOOT**

**Present**

I shoot | we shoot
you shoot | you shoot
he/she/it shoots | they shoot

* MacInnis shoots and scores!

**Past**

I shot | we shot
you shot | you shot
he/she/it shot | they shot

* They shot several deer this fall.

**Present Perfect** ... have | has shot

**Past Perfect** ... had shot

**Future** ... will shoot

**Past Progressive**

I was shooting | we were shooting
you were shooting | you were shooting
he/she/it was shooting | they were shooting

* They were shooting the scene in our neighborhood.

**Future Progressive**

... will be shooting

**Future Perfect** ... will have shot

**Passive**

I was shot | we were shot
you were shot | you were shot
he/she/it was shot | they were shot

**Wh-clause**

You can only shoot what is in season.

Shoot whatever moves.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**SHOOT**

**shoot** fire a weapon

The police were ordered to shoot if necessary.

I picked up the bow and shot.

**shoot** hit/kick/throw/strike

a ball/puck toward a goal

James shoots from the baseline. [BASKETBALL]

Beckham shoots from just outside the penalty area. [SOCCER]

Pronger shoots under the goalie's glove. [HOCKEY]

**shoot** make a photograph/film

Just point the camera and shoot.

The crew is shooting in Las Vegas.

**shoot** fire [a gun]

Can you shoot a rifle?

Revelers shot pistols into the air on New Year's Eve.

**shoot** strike with a bullet/arrow

OBJECT

An unknown assailant shot three people.

We were shooting tin cans behind the barn.

Somebody has been shot.

You can only shoot what is in season.

Shoot whatever moves.

**shoot** make a photograph/film

OBJECT

We want to shoot the boats in the harbor.

They were shooting a video of the parade.

The dream sequence was shot in black and white.

**shoot** move very quickly

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FRONM

The car shot through the intersection.

Our boat shot under the bridge.

The song shot straight to the top of the charts.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**shoot away/down/in/off/out/over/up/etc.** move very quickly in a specified direction

The motorcycle shot away when the light turned green.

Eli is shooting for a Ph.D. in environmental sciences.

The daffodils shot up overnight.

Yu-chan is really shooting up.
shout | shouts - shouted - have shouted

Present Present Progressive
I shout we are shouting
you shout you are shouting
he/she/it shouts they are shouting
* He shouts when he's angry.

Past Past Progressive
I shouted we were shouting
you shouted you were shouting
he/she/it shouted they were shouting
* She is shouting into her cell phone.

Present Perfect Future
I have shouted we will shout
you have shouted you will shout
he/she/it has shouted they will shout

Past Perfect Future Progressive
I had shouted we will be shouting
you had shouted you will be shouting
he/she/it was shouted they were shouting
* They were shouting as loud as they could.

Future Perfect
I will have shouted
we will have shouted

Past Passive
I was shouted we were shouted
you were shouted you were shouted
he/she/it was shouted they were shouted
* Alarms were sounded and warnings were shouted.

shout cry out loudly
The kids are always shouting.
Don't shout! I can hear you just fine.
We had to shout above the noise of the engines.
The kids shouted with delight when Santa appeared.
Devon shouted in pain when the nurse gave him a shot.

shout say very loudly
OBJECT
They were shouting the news.
Someone in the crowd was shouting my name.
The kids shouted with delight when Santa appeared.

PASSIVE
Instructions on how to unlock the door were shouted through the window.

THAT-CLAUSE
I shouted that I had won the race.
Marian shouted that she was in the garden.
The conductor shouted that the train was about to leave.

shout signal unmistakably
OBJECT
Her clothes shouted “money.”
Our accent and clothing shout “tourists.”
The patient's pale skin and unresponsiveness shouted “shock.”

shout sep down prevent from speaking by shouting
Protesters shouted the speaker down.

COMPLEMENTS

PHRASAL VERBS
show | shows · showed · have shown
show | shows · showed · have showed

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**Sam was showing the White House visitors around.**
**A guide showed us down to the cafeteria.**
**The bride-to-be showed off her wedding gown.**
**Ronny was always showing off in front of the girls.**
**Ozzie showed up just in time for dinner.**
**The Republican ratings show up as the red line on your screen.**
**His thinning hair really shows up in this photo.**
**Fred showed everybody up at the math contest.**

**EXPRESSIONS**

**I wonder if Todd will show his face at the party tonight.**
**He never showed his hand while discussing free trade.**
**Boyd showed his teeth whenever someone criticized his girlfriend.**
**The patient shows signs of bipolar disorder.**
**The student is showing signs of fatigue.**
**Don't worry; the secretary who's retiring will show you the ropes.**
**The boss showed his true colors when he laughed about firing three employees right before Christmas.**
**show**

**PRESENT**
- I show
- you show
- he/she/it shows

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am showing
- you are showing
- he/she/it is showing

**Past**
- I showed
- you showed
- he/she/it showed

**Past Progressive**
- I was showing
- you were showing
- he/she/it was showing

**Present Perfect**
- have shown

**Past Perfect**
- had shown

**Future**
- will show

**Future Progressive**
- will be showing

**Future Perfect**
- will have shown

**Past Passive**
- was shown

**Past Perfect Passive**
- had been shown

**COMPLEMENTS**

**show**
- be visible/present/presented/displayed

**show ____ lead, guide**
- object + adverb of place to/from

**show ____ display**
- object

**PASSIVE**
- indirect object + direct object

**TO PARAPHRASE**
- that-clause

**show ____ demonstrate**
- object + infinitive

**PASSIVE**
- (object +) that-clause

**OBJECT + Wh-clause**
- that-clause

**OBJECT + Wh-adverb**
- where to park

**EXAMPLES**

- The picture shows a vase of sunflowers.
- I am showing some friends around the garden.
- He showed no emotion as he spoke.
- The movie was showing at a theater downtown.
- The theory was shown to be seriously flawed.

**May I show you to your seats, ladies?**

**The receptionist will show us to the conference room.**

**You must show your ID card before you can enter.**

**The car showed signs of having been in an accident.**

**Her paintings have been shown all over the world.**

**Show me the money.**

**The realtor showed some prospective buyers the house.**

**They always showed their employees real consideration.**

**Show the money to me.**

**The realtor showed the house to some prospective buyers.**

**They always showed real consideration to their employees.**

**John showed himself to be an excellent landscaper.**

**The plans showed the home to be smaller than we had been told.**

**The results were shown to be faked.**

**The concert will show that Louise has made enormous progress.**

**We showed them that we were fully prepared to do the job.**

**The results showed just what we had expected.**

**Janet showed me how much we could save on insurance.**

**The chart showed how much to invest.**

**The manual shows you what to do.**

**Lou will show them where to park.**
shrink | shrinks · shrank · have shrunk

**PRESENT**
- I shrink
- you shrink
- he/she/it shrinks
  - *Wool shrinks if washed in hot water.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am shrinking
- you are shrinking
- he/she/it is shrinking
  - *Our margin of error is shrinking.*

**PAST**
- I shrunk
- you shrank
- he/she/it shrank
  - *The architect shrank the house by a third.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was shrinking
- you were shrinking
- he/she/it was shrinking
  - *The laundry was always shrinking my shirts.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has shrunk

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had shrunk

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was shrunk
- you were shrunk
- he/she/it was shrunk
  - *The deficit was shrunk significantly in the third quarter.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**shrink**  
become smaller
- Hot metal shrinks as it cools.
- Our budget is shrinking by the minute.
- Average take-home pay has shrunk over the last five years.
- Arctic sea ice is shrinking more every summer.
- My waist has shrunk a bit, thanks to my diet.

**shrink _____  cause to become smaller**
- object
  - He shrunk the wool sweaters by using water that was too hot.
  - We waterproofed the wet barrels by shrinking them in the sun.
  - We are trying to shrink our inventory of unsold goods.
  - Our profits have been shrunk by rising costs.

**shrink _____  try to avoid**
- from object
  - Most actors don't shrink from the limelight.
  - The president does not shrink from his role as commander-in-chief.
  - Reggie won't shrink from telling the truth on the witness stand.
  - Scientists don't shrink from examining all the data.

**shrink away/back (from _____)**
- draw back (from [someone/something]), as in fear
  - The children shrank away from the homeless man.
  - The cats shrank back at the sight of the dogs.
shut | shuts · shut · have shut

shut __________ cause to close

OBJECT

I shut the windows and drew the curtains. President Roosevelt shut all the banks temporarily to prevent failures.

He shut the book and returned it to the shelf.

The Navy is going to shut the entire shipyard.

Once inside, I shut the umbrella.

The entrance was shut after the last worker arrived.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

We always shut the animals in the barn at night.

The blockade shut the enemy fleet inside the port.

PASSIVE

The prisoners were shut inside a makeshift jail.

PHRASAL VERBS

shut __________ down close permanently

Producers shut the play down after only 10 performances.

The car manufacturer shut down three automotive plants.

shut __________ in surround, enclose

The cowboys shut the cattle in.

shut off stop operating

The motor shut off 15 minutes ago.

shut __________ off turn off

They shut off the gas before leaving on vacation.

Police shut the street off during the standoff.

Authorities shut off the downtown area because of a bomb threat.

shut __________ out exclude

The manager shut us out of the decision making.

Would you shut up and listen to me?

shut __________ up lock up

Guards shut the prisoners up in their cells.
sign | signs · signed · have signed

**Present**
- I sign
- you sign
- he/she/it signs
- we sign
- they sign

*The sheriff signs all the release forms.*

**Present Progressive**
- I am signing
- you are signing
- he/she/it is signing
- we are signing
- they are signing

*We are signing the contract tomorrow.*

**Past**
- I signed
- you signed
- he/she/it signed
- we signed
- they signed

*The governor signed the bill yesterday.*

**Past Progressive**
- I was signing
- you were signing
- he/she/it was signing
- we were signing
- they were signing

*She was signing books for the entire class.*

**Present Perfect**
- I have signed
- you have signed
- he/she/it has signed
- we have signed
- they have signed

**Past Perfect**
- I had signed
- you had signed
- he/she/it had signed
- we had signed
- they had signed

*The Treaty of Versailles was signed on June 28, 1919.*

**Future**
- I will sign
- you will sign
- he/she/it will sign
- we will sign
- they will sign

**Future Perfect**
- I will have signed
- you will have signed
- he/she/it will have signed
- we will have signed
- they will have signed

**Past Passive**
- I was signed
- you were signed
- he/she/it was signed
- we were signed
- they were signed

*The get-well card had been signed by everyone in the office.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**sign**
- write one's name
- formally agree to the terms of a contract/agreement
- communicate in sign language
- hire with a contract

**OBJECT**
- write one's name on
- formally accept the terms of
- hire with a contract

**PASSIVE**
- The players for next season have all signed.
- All participating countries must sign.
- The union finally signed the new contract.
- The government never actually signed the trade agreement.

**sign**
- formally accept the terms of [a contract, an agreement]
- formally agree to [a contract, an agreement]

**OBJECT**
- Be sure to sign and date the document.
- The president himself signed the note.
- The government never actually signed the trade agreement.

**PASSIVE**
- The actress was signing autographs for her fans.
- The copyright agreement was signed by all parties.
- The city signed the company to provide trash collection.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**sign in/out**
- indicate one's arrival/departure by recording one's name
- The entire committee signed on for another two-year term.

**sign off on**
- formally agree to by signing
- The disc jockey signed on at 6 A.M.
- When do you sign off tonight?

**sign on/off**
- begin/stop broadcasting
- The city signed the company to provide trash collection.

**sign on/up**
- join by signing
- Dozens of people signed up for the Great Books series.

**sign up**
- record an agreement with [someone] to join
- The company signed up 22 software engineers at the job fair.
- We hope to sign up 50 volunteers for Habitat for Humanity.
**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>we sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>you sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>they sing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He sings in the church choir.*

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>we sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>you sang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>they sang</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *She sang several songs by Bellini.*

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have sung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>had sung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were sung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The opera was sung in English.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**sing**

- make musical sounds with one's voice
- make musical sounds, hum, buzz, whistle
- perform [a piece of vocal music]

**OBJECT**

- The choir sang several traditional Christmas carols.
- The Beatles sang their own compositions.
- Herbie sang 1960s hits at the class reunion.

**PASSIVE**

- The national anthem is sung before every baseball game.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**sing along**

- sing together

Everyone at the party sang along with the music.

**EXPRESSIONS**

**sing a different tune**

- have changed one's opinion

He used to favor the death penalty; now he's singing a different tune.

**sing [someone's] praises**

- say good things about [someone]

Your English teacher is singing your praises.

**sing the praises of [someone/something]**

- say good things about [someone/something]

The whole office is singing the praises of the new copier.

**sing to sleep**

- put to sleep by singing

The babysitter was able to sing the baby to sleep.
sink | sinks · sank · have sunk

**PRESENT**

I sink | we sink
you sink | you sink
he/she/it sinks | they sink

* Productivity sinks in the summer.

**PAST**

I sank | we sank
you sank | you sank
he/she/it sank | they sank

* The stock market sank again today.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has sunk

**PAST PERFECT**

... had sunk

**FUTURE**

... will sink

**FUTURE PERFECT**

... will have sunk

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was sunk | we were sunk
you were sunk | you were sunk
he/she/it was sunk | they were sunk

* The boat was sunk in 50 feet of water.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

sink go below the surface

- The ship sank in less than an hour.
- My boots were sinking in the soft mud.
- The wheels sank into the snowdrift.

sink go down gradually

- The hot air balloon was sinking to the earth.
- Tired and hungry, the travelers sank to their knees.
- The sun was sinking in the west.
- The temperature sank as night fell.
- Senator Blather’s poll numbers were steadily sinking.
- The value of our portfolio has sunk by 20%.

sink become weaker

- My heart sank when I heard the bad news.
- The patient in Room 413 is sinking rapidly, Doctor.

sink cause to go below the surface

**OBJECT**

An explosion in the engine room sank the fishing boat.

**PASSIVE**

I sank a shovel into the wet ground.

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

We sank the screws into the wood.

**PASSIVE**

The ship sank its anchor into the sandy bottom of the bay.

sink go gradually [into a certain state/condition]

**INTO OBJECT**

The family sank into poverty.

sink ruin

**OBJECT**

The once-proud company sank into oblivion.

His widow and orphans sank into despair.

**PASSIVE**

These awful rumors could sink the company.

sink back lean back and relax

After work, I poured a drink and sank back on the sofa.

sink in be understood

Has Trina’s desperate situation sunk in yet?

The teacher’s explanation will sink in eventually.

---
**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I sit</th>
<th>we sit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you sit</td>
<td>you sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it sits</td>
<td>they sit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *The cat always sits by the window.*

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I sat</th>
<th>we sat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you sat</td>
<td>you sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it sat</td>
<td>they sat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *We sat on a park bench in the sun.*

**Present Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am sitting</th>
<th>we are sitting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you are sitting</td>
<td>you are sitting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is sitting</td>
<td>they are sitting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I'm just sitting here, waiting for somebody.*

**Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was sitting</th>
<th>we were sitting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were sitting</td>
<td>you were sitting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was sitting</td>
<td>they were sitting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *We were sitting by the fireplace.*

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>… have</th>
<th>has sat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>… had sat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>… will sit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>… will be sitting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>… will have sat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Past Passive**

*Sit* is rarely used in the passive voice.

## COMPLEMENTS

- **sit be seated**
  - Never stand when you can sit. The plane can’t take off until you sit and fasten your seat belt.
  - I can’t sit very long before my legs start to hurt.
  - We trained the dog to sit on command.

- **sit be in session, meet**
  - By law, the Supreme Court sits on the first Monday in October.
  - The budget committee is sitting this afternoon.
  - The state legislature does not normally sit during the summer.

- **sit ____ be seated/located**
  - I sat next to him at dinner.
  - The flock of birds sat on a telephone wire.
  - We are sitting on the runway, waiting to take off.
  - The statue sits in the center of the town square.
  - When I got to the office, a new computer was sitting on my desk.
  - My briefcase was sitting by the chair, right where I had left it.

- **sit ____ have enough seats for**
  - Our dining room table sits eight.

## PHRASAL VERBS

- **sit around**
  - spend time idly
  - We're just sitting around listening to music.
  - We sat back and enjoyed the show.

- **sit back**
  - relax
  - I refuse to sit back and do nothing when people's lives are in danger.

- **sit back/by**
  - not be involved
  - Momma sat us kids down and told us that Grandma had died.

- **sit ____ down**
  - cause to be in a sitting position
  - The sports editor sat in for the regular news anchor last night.
  - The board meeting is tomorrow morning, and I’d like to sit in.

- **sit in for ____ replace**
  - The reporter is sitting on a story about the president’s health.

- **sit in (on ____)**
  - attend (an event)
  - Would it be okay if I sat in on your Language and Culture class?

- **sit on ____ be a member of**
  - She sat on the jury that convicted my neighbor.
  - Senator Blather sits on the Committee on Appropriations.

- **sit on ____ delay in revealing**
  - The lawyer is sitting on a story about the president’s health.

- **sit ____ out not participate in**
  - I’m going to sit this dance out.

- **sit through ____ attend all of**
  - Do we have to sit through another boring lecture?

- **sit up**
  - sit upright
  - Sit up! Slouching is bad for your posture.

- **sit up not go to bed**
  - Kristen sat up knitting half the night.

- **sit up become suddenly alert**
  - Cassie sat up suddenly and looked at the door.
sleep

Present Present Progressive
I sleep we sleep I am sleeping we are sleeping
you sleep you are sleeping you are sleeping he/she/it is sleeping they are sleeping
he/she/it sleeps they sleep

* He usually sleeps seven hours a night.

Past Past Progressive
I slept we slept I was sleeping we were sleeping
you slept you were sleeping you were sleeping he/she/it slept they were sleeping
he/she/it slept they slept

* The kids slept in a tent in the backyard.

Present Perfect Future Future Perfect
... have | has slept ... will sleep ... will have slept
... had slept ... will be sleeping

Past Perfect Future Progressive
Future
I have slept we have slept I will sleep we will sleep
you have slept you will sleep you will sleep he/she/it has slept they will sleep
he/she/it has slept they will sleep

* I am not sleeping very well lately.

Past Passive
The kids were sleeping in a tent in the backyard.

We all need to sleep.
I slept through the storm.
He only slept a few hours last night.
Be quiet; the baby is sleeping.

New York never sleeps.
The surveillance system never sleeps.
The security force never sleeps.

The children sleep in their own bedrooms.
We usually sleep at a motel when we visit my grandparents.
When we go camping, we sleep in an ultralight tent.
If I get home late, I sleep downstairs so I don't wake anybody.

The suite sleeps four adults comfortably.
The studio apartments only sleep two people.
The lodge will be able to sleep our entire family.

Sorry, I slept in this morning.
What's for lunch?

Sherri drank too much at the party and had to sleep it off.

I'll sleep on the matter and give you an answer tomorrow.
Our neighbors slept through the thunderstorm.

I didn't sleep a wink last night.

I played two hours of tennis last evening and slept like a log.
### slide | slides - slid - have slid

#### PRESENT
- I slide
- you slide
- he/she/it slides

#### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
- I am sliding
- you are sliding
- he/she/it is sliding

#### PAST
- I slid
- you slid
- he/she/it slid

#### PAST PROGRESSIVE
- I was sliding
- you were sliding
- he/she/it was sliding

#### PRESENT PERFECT
- I have slide
- you have slide
- he/she/it has slide

#### PAST PERFECT
- I had slid
- you had slid
- he/she/it had slid

#### PAST PASSIVE
- The glass door slides easily now.
- The car slid into the ditch.
- The logs were slid down the hill.

#### COMPLEMENTS

**slide** slip, shift, drop  
Hang on to me—I’m sliding.  
The bag of groceries slid from my hand.  
Make sure the load doesn’t slide.

**slide** gradually become worse  
His reputation is beginning to slide.  
Our once-strong financial position was sliding.

**slide** move/glide smoothly over a surface  
The car slid into a snowbank.  
I slid behind the wheel.  
The canoes slid into the water.  
The truck in front of us was sliding all over the road.  
The drawer slides on side-mounted tracks.

**slide** gradually go/move [into a worse condition]  
The patient was sliding into a coma.  
The company gradually slid into mediocrity.  
The quality of dental care was sliding downhill.  
The temperature slid into the twenties overnight.

**slide** put/push/move smoothly  
She slid the keys into her purse.  
I slid my hands gently under the kitten and lifted it up.  
Just slide your paper under my office door.  
The refrigerator was slid into place.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

slide around/back/down/off/out/under/up/etc. slide in a specified direction  
We slid back down several times.  
Her shawl slid off.  
The window easily slides up and down.

slide SEP around/back/down/in/off/out/up/etc. cause to slide in a specified direction  
The goalie slid the puck back to a defenseman.  
The locksmith can’t slide the bolt in and out.  
The roofer lost his balance and slid off.
slip — go/move [from one state/condition to another]
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
The patient was slipping in and out of consciousness.
slip — gradually go/move [into a worse condition]
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
The company’s profits were slipping to record lows.
The riots were slipping into total chaos.

PHRASAL VERBS

slip away/back/by/down/in/out/past/under/up/etc. go without being noticed / shift in a specified direction
Time is slipping away.
We slipped away when they turned their backs.
Their anniversary slipped by without our remembering it.
My glasses slipped down again.
The key slipped out and fell on the floor.
Hilary and DJ slipped off to spend time in Caliban’s.
The dock worker slipped the rope back on the pulley.
The carpenter slipped the bolt in and out.

slip away/back/by/down/in/out/past/under/up/etc. cause to slide/shift in a specified direction
Gloria slipped into jeans and a sweatshirt.
Nate slipped out of his pajamas and into the shower.
Bridget slipped a jacket on.
Greg slipped his sweater off.

let it slip reveal something, usually unintentionally
The press secretary let it slip that the president would travel to the Mideast soon.

slip between/through the cracks be neglected/forgotten
Veterans’ benefits slipped between the cracks in the military budget.
These proposals will slip through the cracks if we don’t write them down.

slip one over on ______ fool, deceive
Debbie slipped one over on her boss and didn’t get caught.

slip [someone’s] mind be forgotten by [someone]
This afternoon’s meeting completely slipped my mind.

slip through [someone’s] fingers avoid capture by / elude [someone]
The bank robbers slipped through our fingers again.
She almost figured out the problem, but the solution slipped through her fingers.
Present
I slip you slip he/she/it slips
you slip you slip they slip

* The transmission slips when in reverse.

Past
I slipped you slipped he/she/it slipped
you slipped you slipped they slipped

* I slipped on the ice.

Present Perfect
... have | has slipped

Past Perfect
... had slipped

Past Progressive
I am slipping you are slipping he/she/it is slipping
you are slipping you are slipping they are slipping

* The candidate's approval ratings are slipping.

Future
... will slip

Future Progressive
... will be slipping

Future Perfect
... will have slipped

Past Passive
I was slipped you were slipped he/she/it was slipped
you were slipped you were slipped they were slipped

* The usher was slipped a few dollars and we got really good seats.

slip lose traction / one's grip, fall accidentally
Tom slipped and fell off the ladder.
He slipped and fell to his hands and knees.
The rear tires slipped and the car slid off the road.
The rope slipped and the load crashed to the floor.
The gears are slipping badly.

slip make a mistake
Her boss slipped and told her she was getting a raise.

slip gradually become worse
Grandpa's memory is really slipping.
Our control over events was slipping.
The senator's ability to shape the story was slipping.

slip _____ slide, shift, drop
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
The book slipped from her hand.
She slipped on the icy sidewalk.
The wrench was constantly slipping off the bolt.
Events were slipping out of our grasp.

slip _____ go without being noticed
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
We slipped out of the noisy room.

slip _____ slide, put/push/move smoothly (often unobtrusively)
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
I slipped the gun into my pocket.
He slipped the ring onto her finger.
A letter had been slipped under my door.
I slipped the cab driver a ten-dollar bill.
My mother always slips her grandchildren little treats.
The senator slipped the reporters some information.
I slipped a ten-dollar bill to the cab driver.
My mother always slips little treats to her grandchildren.
The senator slipped some information to the reporters.

slip _____ be released/freed from
OBJECT
The ship slipped its mooring and set sail.
The hounds slipped their leashes and raced ahead.
“Cry ‘Havoc,’ and let slip the dogs of war.”
[Shakespeare]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Complements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>smile</td>
<td></td>
<td>Keep smiling! Babies smile when people smile at them. Americans automatically smile when they meet someone. Can you smile for the camera?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>smile</td>
<td></td>
<td>The queen smiled her appreciation for the gift. The boss smiled his approval.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>smiles</td>
<td></td>
<td>The little girl smiled a bashful little smile. The villain in old movies always smiled a sneering leer. I smiled a self-conscious, stupid grin when my name was called.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>smile</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fortune smiles on the brave. [proverb] Fate smiled on Napoleon at Austerlitz.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>smile</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>smiles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>smile</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>smiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>smiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>smiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>smiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>smiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>smiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>smiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>smiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>smiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>smiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>has smiled</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>...</td>
<td>had smiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **smile** make the corners of one's mouth turn up to show amusement/happiness/pleasure
- **smile** ______ convey with a smile
  **OBJECT**
  - The queen smiled her appreciation for the gift.
  - The boss smiled his approval.
- **smile** ______ give [a smile of a certain type]
  **OBJECT**
  - The little girl smiled a bashful little smile.
  - The villain in old movies always smiled a sneering leer.
  - I smiled a self-conscious, stupid grin when my name was called.
- **smile on** ______ be favorable to
  - Fortune smiles on the brave. [proverb] Fate smiled on Napoleon at Austerlitz.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- **smile on** ______ be favorable to
  - Fortune smiles on the brave. [proverb] Fate smiled on Napoleon at Austerlitz.
sneak | sneak | sneaks · sneaked · have sneaked
sneak | sneak | sneaks · snuck · have snuck

PRESENT
I sneak we sneak
you sneak you sneak
he/she/it sneaks they sneak
→ He sneaks a candy bar at bedtime.

PAST
I sneaked we sneaked
you sneaked you sneaked
he/she/it sneaked they sneaked
→ We sneaked out of the meeting early.

PRESENT PERFECT … have | has sneaked
PAST PERFECT … had sneaked

PAST PASSIVE
I was sneaked we were sneaked
you were sneaked you were sneaked
he/she/it was sneaked they were sneaked
→ Food was sneaked out of the cafeteria.

COMPLEMENTS

sneak _____ move quietly and secretly in order not to be noticed
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
They were trying to sneak into the game.
We had to sneak back into the dorms after curfew.
Apparently, the prisoners had sneaked over the wall.
Someone had sneaked into the coffee room and eaten all the donuts.

sneak _____ take/bring quietly and secretly in order not to be noticed
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
I sneaked a recorder into the meeting.
The kids had sneaked some cookies out of the kitchen.
They had sneaked some friends into the hotel pool.
Something had been sneak out of the secure area.

sneak along/around/away/in/out/up/... etc. sneak in a specified direction
Nobody likes people who sneak around.
The kids sneaked away with a bag of candy.
I wasn’t invited, but my friends sneaked me in.

sneak up on _____ approach quietly and secretly
We sneaked up on Dad while he was working the crossword puzzle.
Sandy sneaked up on me and tapped me on the shoulder.
**solve**

solve | solves · solved · have solved

---

### Present

**Present**

I solve     we solve
you solve   you solve
he/she/it solves they solve

* Sherlock always solves the mystery.

**Past**

I solved    we solved
you solved  you solved
he/she/it solved they solved

* I finally solved the equation.

**Present Progressive**

I am solving  we are solving
you are solving you are solving
he/she/it is solving they are solving

* The police are solving about half their cases.

**Past Progressive**

I was solving we were solving
you were solving you were solving
he/she/it was solving they were solving

* My students were solving 90% of the math problems.

**Present Perfect**

... have | has solved

**Past Perfect**

... had solved

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**OBJECT**

In books, the detective always solves the crime.

My students haven't learned to solve quadratic equations yet.

No one has solved the mystery of inflation.

She can solve the Rubik's Cube in three minutes.

Oedipus solved the riddle of the Sphinx.

We finally solved Tim's crossword puzzle in yesterday's New York Times.

Many mathematicians have tried to solve Goldbach's conjecture.

Which problem were you trying to solve?

**Passive**

A good puzzle can only be solved by several people working together.

---
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I sound</td>
<td>An alarm sounds when the door opens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>you sound</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>he/she/it sounds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>I am sounding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>you are sounding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Progressive</td>
<td>he/she/it is sounding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I sounded</td>
<td>He sounded pretty worried about it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>you sounded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>he/she/it sounded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>I was sounding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>you were sounding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Progressive</td>
<td>he/she/it was sounding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>... had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>... will</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**sound** make a noise

- The bell sounds every 15 minutes.
- My alarm sounds like the crack of doom.
- The buzzer sounded before he shot the ball.
- Behind them in the forest, a horn was sounding.

**sound** make a noise by blowing on/into

**object**

- The huntsmen sounded the horn to call the hounds.
- Sound the car horn to tell them to open the garage door.
- The truck sounded its horn to warn the car in front of it.
- The trumpets were sounded and the procession began.

**sound** give an audible signal/warning

**object**

- The captain sounds three blasts when the ship leaves the dock.
- The bell sounds the hour.
- The whistle sounds the shift change at the factory.

**sound** seem, appear

**(like) predicate noun**

- Donna sounded (like) a perfect fit for the job.
- It sounded (like) a reasonable idea to us.
- His proposal sounded (like) a huge gamble.
- Harry sounds a little strange.
- The violin sounded off-key to me.
- It doesn't sound right that it should take so long to fix the car.
- His story sounded improbable.
- It sounds as if Vince wants to come to the party.
- It sounds as though we'll have to leave tomorrow.
- It sounded like Beth had lost her purse again.

**it + sound + as if / as though / like clause**

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**sound off** complain, often loudly

- Citizens were sounding off about traffic congestion on Mulberry Street.
### 460 speak

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Progressive</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I speak</td>
<td>I am speaking</td>
<td>we speak</td>
<td>we are speaking</td>
<td>you speak</td>
<td>you are speaking</td>
<td>you speak</td>
<td>they are speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>He speaks really well.</em></td>
<td><em>I am speaking at the luncheon this afternoon.</em></td>
<td><em>They spoke about website design.</em></td>
<td><em>They were speaking French at the time.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has spoken</td>
<td>... were speaking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>English was spoken everywhere they traveled.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Complements

**speak** talk, say words

- Are you hurt? Can you speak?
- Most children start speaking before their second birthday.
- He was so upset he couldn't speak.

**speak** have a conversation

- They need to find a place where they can speak privately.
- They were speaking in whispers.
- After their argument, they weren't speaking for months.

**speak** make a public presentation

- Everybody at the conference wants to hear her speak.
- It takes a lot of practice to speak in public.
- I am not used to speaking without notes.

**speak ______ say, express**

- object

- They are speaking the truth about what happened.
- He spoke gentle words of wisdom.

**speak ______ have a conversation with**

- to object

- We spoke to the police about the break-in.
- Have you spoken to your mother?
- May I speak to Mr. Hunteleigh?

**speak ______ talk in [a specific language]**

- object

- She can speak German and Dutch pretty well.
- How many languages do you speak?
- Both English and French were spoken at the conference.

**speak for ______ say something on behalf of**

- I am speaking only for myself.
- The candidate spoke for lowering taxes.
- “I speak for the trees, for the trees have no tongues.” [DR. SEUSS]

**speak for ______ ask for**

- I’d like to speak for the last slice of cheesecake.
- The last copy of the book is already spoken for.

**speak of ______ speak about**

- Grandpa spoke of hardships during the Great Depression.

**speak out express one’s opinion**

- Thomas speaks out at every meeting he attends.

**speak up speak more loudly**

- Speak up! We can't hear you in the back row.

**speak up for ______ speak in support of**

- She always speaks up for military families.
### speed | speeds · sped · have sped

#### PRESENT
- I speed
- you speed
- he/she/it speeds
- *He speeds when he gets on the freeway.*
- I am speeding
- you are speeding
- he/she/it is speeding
- *She is already speeding away.*

#### PAST
- I sped
- you sped
- he/she/it sped
- *The sailboat sped before the wind.*
- I was speeding
- you were speeding
- he/she/it was speeding
- *We got pulled over because we were speeding.*

#### PRESENT PERFECT
- ... have
- ... has sped

#### PAST PERFECT
- ... had sped

#### PAST PASSIVE

*Speed is rarely used in the passive voice.*

#### COMPLEMENTS
- **speed** → go/move fast
  - The dogs sped across the roadway.
  - The skiers sped down the slope toward the lodge.
  - The horses are speeding around the final turn.
  - The rescuers were speeding to the scene of the accident.

- **speed** → drive faster than the legal limit
  - If you speed, you could lose your driver’s license.
  - He was speeding in a construction zone and had to pay a huge fine.

- **speed** → cause to go/move faster
  - *OBJECT*
  - We changed the rules to speed the approval process.
  - Some men will try anything to speed hair growth.
  - Trying to speed an entrenched bureaucracy is next to impossible.

#### PHRASAL VERBS
- **speed along/away/down/over/past/up/etc.** → go fast in a specified direction
  - An ambulance sped past with its siren blaring.
  - Teens were speeding up and down Main Street.

- **speed along/away/down/over/past/up/etc.** → cause to go faster in a specified direction
  - The manager tried to speed the process along.
  - The delivery service sped the package over.

- **speed up** → go/move faster
  - Ricky sped up when he saw the police car.
  - We tend to speed up going downhill.

- **speed up** → cause to go/move faster
  - We really need to speed up the production line.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Other Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>You just love to spend. We can't keep spending at this rate. They spend and spend until they are broke.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>spends</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>* He spends too much when he eats out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Other Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>We spent some time with my parents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>* We spent some time with my parents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Other Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>have/have had</td>
<td>has/had spent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Other Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>...</td>
<td>have/have had</td>
<td>has/had spent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Other Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Past Passive</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>was spent</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>A fortune was spent trying to fix the problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>were spent</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was spent</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>* A fortune was spent trying to fix the problem.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

- **Spend pay out money**
  - Object - They just love to spend. We can't keep spending at this rate. They spend and spend until they are broke.
  - Passive - They spend and spend until they are broke.

- **Spend pay [money]**
  - Object - We will spend a lot fixing our roof. They spend over half their income on housing. You have to spend money to make money.
  - Passive - They spend over half their income on housing. You have to spend money to make money.

- **Spend be occupied for [a period of time]**
  - Object + Adverb of Place - I will spend all of next week in Chicago. The kids spent half the summer at camp.
  - Object + Present Participle - We spent all week working on the budget. A horse spends three hours a day sleeping.
  - Passive - Last weekend was spent cleaning out the garage.

- **Spend exhaust, use up**
  - Object - The storm finally spent itself during the night. General Lee had already spent all his reserves.
  - Passive - Your talent would be better spent writing textbooks.
Present Present Progressive

Present Perfect Future

Past Past Progressive

Past Perfect Future Progressive

Future Perfect

Past Passive

463

I spill we spill I am spilling we are spilling

you spill you spill you are spilling you are spilling

he/she/it spills they spill they are spilling

· The coffee spills if you fill the cup too full.

· Look out—you're spilling your drink.

I spilled we spilled I was spilling we were spilling

you spilled you spilled you were spilling you were spilling

he/she/it spilled they spilled they were spilling

· I spilled tea on my sweater.

· The water in the tub was spilling over the top.

· Some of the soup was spilled, so I cleaned it up.

The past form spilled may also be spelled spilt.

NOTE: The past form spilled may also be spelled spilt.

COMPLEMENTS

spill flow over the edge of a container

Careful! The milk is spilling.

The water was spilling over the dam in a great torrent.

Blood spilt from the soldier’s abdominal wound.

Tears spilled from my mother’s eyes.

The tools were spilling out of the chest.

spill _____ be emptied [onto a surface]

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The sugar spilled all over the tablecloth.

The pencils and books spilled across the desk.

The concertgoers spilled onto the street.

The kids’ toys spilled onto the playroom floor.

spill _____ cause to flow over / run out

OBJECT

Careful! You’re spilling the wine.

The tanker spilled diesel oil into the harbor.

Gasoline had been spilled down the side of our car.

spill _____ cause to be emptied [onto a surface]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I spilled rice all over the kitchen floor.

I spilled the contents of the suitcase across the bed.

Wreckage from the airplane crash had been spilled over several miles.

PHRASAL VERBS

spill over overflow

The teakettle boiled and spilled over.

The revolt in Boston spilled over into the countryside.

EXPRESSIONS

spill the beans reveal a secret/surprise

The producers won’t spill the beans on who will star in the film.
**spin**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present Progressive</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Progressive</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am spinning</td>
<td>you are spinning</td>
<td>you will be spinning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are spinning</td>
<td>you are spinning</td>
<td>they will be spinning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The senator’s office is spinning the story.</td>
<td>The senator’s office was spinning the story.</td>
<td>The senator’s office will be spinning the story.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>… have spun</td>
<td>… had spun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>… have spun</td>
<td>… had spun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The disk at a high speed.*

*The senator’s office is spinning the story.*

*Our wheels were spinning on the ice.*

*The bets were placed and the roulette wheel was spun.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**spin** whirl around quickly

- The altimeter was spinning fast.
- The dryer is still spinning.
- Your wheels will spin in this slush.
- The earth spins on a 23.4-degree axis.
- The policeman spun when he heard the shot.

**spin** seem to be whirling around quickly, as if to make someone dizzy

- I have to sit down; my head is spinning.
- The news was enough to make your head spin.

**spin** cause to whirl around quickly

Monday through Friday

- I spun the propeller to get the engine started.
- The drivers were spinning their wheels in the soft ground.
- I showed the kids how to spin their new top.
- The server spun the ball so that it bounced at an odd angle.
- The wheel was spun by the next contestant.

**spin** draw out and twist into yarn

- My daughter spins wool fleece into yarn.
- The cashmere yarn had been spun by hand.

**spin** make a web [of spiders]

- Spiders had spun webs in every corner.

**spin** interpret in a way favorable to oneself

- The aides were busily spinning the election results.
- He was trying to spin the news to minimize the damage.
- The story was spun until it was unrecognizable.

### PHRASAL VERBS

**spin away/off/out/etc. spin in a specified direction**

- The Frisbee is spinning away into the air.

**spin off separate and fly away from something that is spinning**

- The fan blade may spin off if you don’t tighten it.

**spin** separate and fly away from something that is spinning

- The chemical company spun off its herbicide division.

**spin** off create a separate company from part of an existing one

- He spun himself away from the computer.
Present Present Progressive
I spit we are spitting
you spit you are spitting
he/she/it spits they are spitting

Past Past Progressive
I spitted we were spitting
you spitted you were spitting
he/she/it spitted they were spitting

Present Perfect
I have spit I have been spitting
you have spat you have been spitting
he/she/it has spit he/she/it has been spitting

Past Perfect
I had spit I had been spitting
you had spat you had been spitting
he/she/it had spit he/she/it had been spitting

Future
... will spit
... will be spitting

Future Perfect
... will have spit
... will have been spitting

Our cat spits when she sees a dog.
The victim is spitting blood.
He coughed and spit into his handkerchief.
They were spitting watermelon seeds.
The words were spat in utter contempt.

Rinse out your mouth and spit, please.
People who chew tobacco have to spit constantly.
I have such a bad taste in my mouth that I'm spitting all the time.

He was spitting angrily.
The defendant was spitting with sudden rage.
It's spitting outside; you'd better wear a raincoat.

The diner spit a chicken bone across the table.
Aaron accidentally spit a mouthful of soda all over the floor.
The engine was spitting oil.
The pan was so hot that it spit cooking oil on my hand.
The bonfire was spitting sparks high into the night air.

The man spat abuse at the crowd.
He spat an oath and slammed the door.
The man spat an incoherent warning at the children.
Present Progressive
I am splitting
you are splitting
he/she/it is splitting
* The couple next door is splitting.

Past Progressive
I was splitting
you were splitting
he/she/it was splitting
*I was splitting enough wood to last all winter.

Future
... will split
... will be splitting
... will have split

Past
I split
you split
he/she/it split
* We split the cost equally.

Present Perfect
... have | has split
Past Perfect
... had split

Past Passive
I was split
you were split
he/she/it was split
* The prize was split among the winning contestants.

**split** separate/divide into parts
My lips were splitting from the sun.
The ice was heaving and splitting.
The trail splits at the top of the ridge.
The class split into three groups.

split end a marriage/relationship
My cousin and his wife are splitting after five years.
Jayne got into a fight with her boyfriend and they decided to split.
Do you think they will split after what happened?
This issue could cause the Republican Party to split.

split cause to separate/divide into parts
OBJECT
We split the logs for firewood.
Would you split the English muffins and toast them?
They split the searchers into small groups so they could cover more ground.

PASSIVE
Diamonds are still split by hand.
The atom was first split in 1932.

split share/divide among participants
OBJECT
We need to split the workload more fairly.
Investors will split the profits in proportion to the size of their investment.
Rhonda split a pizza with Stan.
If we get the winning ticket, we will split the prize equally.
Overtime hours must be split among all workers.

PASSIVE
The group split what they had earned.
We will split whatever we win.
They decided to split however much money they get.

**split** sep up (into ____)
divide
(into [groups, etc.])
He split the class up into three groups according to height.

**split** sep off separate
The forum moderator split the topic off from the main thread.

split off (from ____)
separate (from [someone/something])
Icebergs are splitting off from glaciers at an alarming rate.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>SINGULAR PROGRESSIVE</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>PLURAL PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td>I spoil</td>
<td>I am spoiling</td>
<td>we spoil</td>
<td>we are spoiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you spoil</td>
<td>you are spoiling</td>
<td>you spoil</td>
<td>you are spoiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it spoils</td>
<td>he/she/it is spoiling</td>
<td>they spoil</td>
<td>they are spoiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>* He spoils the party for everyone else.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>I spoiled</td>
<td>I was spoiling</td>
<td>we spoiled</td>
<td>we were spoiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you spoiled</td>
<td>you were spoiling</td>
<td>you spoiled</td>
<td>you were spoiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it spoiled</td>
<td>he/she/it was spoiling</td>
<td>they spoiled</td>
<td>they were spoiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>* The food spoiled due to a power outage.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PERFECT</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>has spoiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PERFECT</td>
<td>... had spoiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PASSIVE</td>
<td>I was spoiled</td>
<td>we were spoiled</td>
<td>you were spoiled</td>
<td>you were spoiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was spoiled</td>
<td>they were spoiled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>* The children were hopelessly spoiled by their parents.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** The past form **spoil** may also be spelled **spoilt**.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**spoil** | rot, become inedible/undrinkable | The food will spoil unless we refrigerate it right away.  
                  We had lunch in the shade so the egg salad wouldn't spoil.  
                  The wine had spoiled because of bad corks.

**spoil** | ruin, make useless/worthless | A tacky housing development completely spoiled the view.  
                  Too many cooks spoil the broth. [PROVERB]  
                  Their desserts are spoiling my diet.  
                  The scandal could spoil the senator's chances for re-election.  
                  The wedding was nearly spoiled by those obnoxious photographers.

**spoil** | raise with too little discipline | Jefferson could spoil what his father has built.  
                  The hotel totally spoiled whatever beauty the beach had.  
                  The poor publicity spoiled whatever chance the movie had.

**spoil** | treat very well | Martha, you are spoiling that child!  
                  They have spoiled their dogs. They are completely out of control.

**spoil** | treat very well | Uncle Bill spoils his nieces and nephews on their birthdays.  
                  She spoiled me with a gift card from the local bakery.  
                  Children are often spoiled by their grandparents.
**spread | spreads - spread - have spread**

**PRESENT**
I spread  we spread  
you spread  you spread  
he/she/it spreads  they spread  
  * He spreads peanut butter on his bagels.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am spreading  we are spreading  
you are spreading  you are spreading  
he/she/it is spreading  they are spreading  
  * The city is spreading into the valley.

**PAST**
I spread  we spread  
you spread  you spread  
he/she/it spread  they spread  
  * We spread a blanket on the grass.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was spreading  we were spreading  
you were spreading  you were spreading  
he/she/it was spreading  they were spreading  
  * They were spreading rumors about the senator.

**PRESENT PERFECT**  ... have | has spread  
**PAST PERFECT**  ... had spread  

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was spread  we were spread  
you were spread  you were spread  
he/she/it was spread  they were spread  
  * The seeds were spread by a mechanical applicator.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**spread** move/extend outward

- Bad news spreads like wildfire.
- The floodwater was spreading by the minute.
- Violence is spreading in much of the world.

**spread **___ extend [over/to an area]
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

- The ripples spread across the pond.
- Elm disease has spread through the upper Midwest.
- The impact of deflation spread throughout the economy.
- The city is spreading in all directions.
- The forest fire spread to several hilltop villages.

**spread **___ cause to move/expand outward
OBJECT

  * He is always spreading rumors.
  * The senator hopes to spread the blame for the mistake.
  * Malaria is spread by one type of mosquito.

**spread **___ open/stretch out
OBJECT

- The bird spread its wings.

**spread **___ distribute
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

- He spread the map across the hood of the car.
- The eruption spread dust over hundreds of square miles.
- They spread the payments over five years.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**spread **see around publicize

- They spread the news around that her campaign staff had been fired.

**spread out scatter**

- The rescuers spread out to search the mountainside.

**spread it on thick exaggerate praise/blame**

- The car salesman was really spreading it on thick.

**spread [oneself] too thin do too many things at once**

- Between work and volunteer activities, Emma has spread herself too thin.
### Present Progressive

- **I**: am springing
- **we**: are springing
- **you**: are springing
- **he/she/it**: is springing
- **they**: are springing

- *He is springing out of bed in the morning.*
- *Crocuses are springing up everywhere.*

### Past Progressive

- **I**: was springing
- **we**: were springing
- **you**: were springing
- **he/she/it**: was springing
- **they**: were springing

- *The door sprang open.*
- *Dolphins were springing out of the water.*

### Present Perfect

- **I**: have sprung
- **we**: have sprung
- **you**: have sprung
- **he/she/it**: has sprung
- **they**: have sprung

- *I have sprung.*
- *We have sprung.*

### Past Perfect

- **I**: was sprung
- **we**: were sprung
- **you**: were sprung
- **he/she/it**: was sprung
- **they**: were sprung

- *The trap was sprung by a raccoon.*

### Past Passive

- **I**: was sprung
- **we**: were sprung
- **you**: were sprung
- **he/she/it**: was sprung
- **they**: were sprung

### Phrasal Verbs

- **spring for** pay for
  - I’ll spring for a new coat for you.

- **spring up** begin, be started
  - A wonderful friendship sprang up between us.
  - A new fast-food restaurant sprang up on the corner.
  - Flowers and weeds are springing up in the garden.

- **spring a leak** begin to leak
  - Our boat sprang a leak in the middle of the lake.

- **spring into action** become suddenly active
  - After Amber read his letter, she sprang into action.

- **spring to mind** be thought of
  - Which president springs to mind when I say “father of our country”?
**stand**

verb

**stand** | stands · stood · have stood

**IRREGULAR**

**stand** | tolerate, endure [USUALLY USED IN QUESTIONS OR NEGATIVE STATEMENTS]

**OBJECT**

How do you stand the pressure?
I can’t stand the suspense.
No one can stand his superior attitude.
How can you stand listening to that nonsense?
Wine grapes can’t stand being in poorly drained soil.
I can’t stand not knowing what happened.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

**stand** | 470

**OBJECT**

Tim stands six foot four.
The horse stands 15 hands at the withers.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**stand apart/aside/back/off/etc.**

stand in a specified position

Max stood aside and let the medics by.

We stood back so that we wouldn’t get hurt.

**stand around**

loiter, be idle

The teenagers stood around with their hands in their pockets.

**stand at _____** be at a specified amount/number

The bid stands at $250.

Our team’s record stands at 11–4.

**stand by** be near and ready if needed

He asked me to stand by in case his car wouldn’t start.

**stand by** stand near but not involve oneself

Three people stood by and watched the robbery take place.

**stand by** support, defend

She stood by her husband throughout his illness.

“U.S.A.” stands for “United States of America.”

We won’t stand for your nonsense any longer.

**stand in for** take the place of, act for

Would you stand in for me at next Tuesday’s meeting?

Because of his height, Don really stands out in a crowd.

I can’t get any work done if you’re standing over me.

This idea won’t stand up under scrutiny.

Lori stood him up again.

When Nancy was criticized, her coach stood up for her.

My parents always stood up for immigrants’ rights.

**stand over** keep close watch on

The politician stood his ground in spite of accusations by the opposition party.

**stand up** prove to be true/good

Does your team stand a chance of winning?

I stand corrected; there are two m’s in recommend.

Their book stood head and shoulders above the competition.

She beat every candidate who stood in her way to the nomination.

Son, it’s time for you to get your own apartment and stand on your own two feet.

The politician stood his ground in spite of accusations by the opposition party.

Senator Blather won’t stand still for criticism of his immigration policy.

It stands to reason that interest rates are low in a recession.

**EXPRESSIONS**

**stand a chance (of _____)** have a chance of

Does your team stand a chance of winning?

**stand corrected** admit that one is wrong

I stand corrected; there are two m’s in recommend.

**stand head and shoulders above _____** be far superior to

Their book stood head and shoulders above the competition.

**stand in [someone’s] way** oppose obstruct [someone]

She beat every candidate who stood in her way to the nomination.

**stand on [one’s] own two feet** be independent, not need anyone’s help

Son, it’s time for you to get your own apartment and stand on your own two feet.

**stand on one’s ground** maintain one’s position while being attacked

The politician stood his ground in spite of accusations by the opposition party.

**stand still for _____** tolerate [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

Senator Blather won’t stand still for criticism of his immigration policy.

**stand to reason** be sensible/reasonable

It stands to reason that interest rates are low in a recession.
### stand | stands · stood · have stood

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I stand, you stand, he/she/it stands, we stand, you are standing, they are standing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I am standing, you are standing, he/she/it is standing, we are standing, you are standing, they are standing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I stood, you stood, he/she/it stood, we stood, you were standing, they were standing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was standing, you were standing, he/she/it was standing, we were standing, you were standing, they were standing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>I have stood, you have stood, he/she/it has stood, we have stood, you have been standing, they have been standing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>I had stood, you had stood, he/she/it had stood, we had stood, you had been standing, they had been standing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td>I will stand, you will stand, he/she/it will stand, we will stand, you will be standing, they will be standing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I will be standing, you will be standing, he/she/it will be standing, we will be standing, you will be standing, they will be standing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>I will have stood, you will have stood, he/she/it will have stood, we will have stood, you will have been standing, they will have been standing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

- **stand** be/get in an upright position
  - Everyone stood when the funeral procession went by.
  - By the end of the game, we were all standing and cheering.

- **stand** remain undisturbed
  - Let the tea leaves stand for a few minutes.
  - The custard needs to stand until it is at room temperature.
  - The mixture should stand until all the liquid is absorbed.

- **stand** remain as is
  - The committee's original recommendation stands.
  - The judge let the lower court's ruling stand.
  - That tradition has stood since the school began.

- **stand** cause to be in an upright position
  - She stood the dolls against the dresser.
  - The librarian stood the books on the shelf.
  - Stand the children in front of a mirror.
  - Stand the rugs in the corner, please.
  - We stood the flagstaff in a big pot.
  - The palm plants were stood along the garden wall.

- **stand** be located
  - The church stands at the corner of Waterman and Kingshighway.
  - A rake and hoe stood against the fence.
  - The train is standing at the station.
  - He was standing just outside the door, waiting for us.
  - The town stands on a little hill overlooking the bay.

- **stand** step to and remain [in a certain place]
  - Stand over there, please.
  - I stood to the side and let them pass.
  - We all stood on the grass so that the ambulance could get by.

- **stand** be [in a certain condition]
  - He stood firm in his opposition to the plan.
  - I stand ready to help.
  - The house stood empty for many years.
**Present**

I stare  
you stare  
he/she/it stares  
* He stares whenever someone talks to him.

**Past**

I stared  
you stared  
he/she/it stared  
* I stared in disbelief at the television.

**Present Progressive**

I am staring  
you are staring  
he/she/it is staring  
* You are staring off into space again.

**Past Progressive**

I was staring  
you were staring  
he/she/it was staring  
* Everyone was staring at his ridiculous costume.

**Past Perfect**

I was stared  
you were stared  
he/she/it was stared  
* We were stared at by the other hotel guests.

**Future**

... will stare  

**Future Progressive**

... will be staring  

**Future Perfect**

... will have stared

---

**Complements**

**stare** look steadily with one's eyes open, often in awe/fear/stupidity/surprise

The dead soldiers lay there, staring with empty eyes.
I just stood there, staring in astonishment.
The news stunned Robert. He stared with his mouth open and his face blank.

**stare _____** look steadily with one's eyes open

**at** object

I stared **at my broken cell phone** in dismay.  
We stared **at the unexpected results**.  
The kids stared **at the broken window** in amazement.

**Passive**

We were always stared at when we held our knives and forks in the American style.

**at wh-clause**

They stared **at what they had done**.  
The kids were staring **at what Uncle Matt had brought them**.  
People were staring **at whoever had just come in**.

---

**Phrasal Verbs**

**stare ____ sep** down  
 stare at another person until he/she looks away

The batter stared the umpire down after the called third strike.

**stare out**  
 gaze outward

The farmer stared out across his fields of wheat.

---

**Expressions**

**stare _____ in the face**  
 be obvious to [someone]

His keys were staring him in the face the whole time.

**stare (off) into space**  
 look straight ahead without seeing anything in particular

After the indictment, he stared off into space and sighed.
start | starts · started · have started

**PRESENT**
- I start
- you start
- he/she/it starts

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am starting
- you are starting
- he/she/it is starting

**PAST**
- I started
- you started
- he/she/it started

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was starting
- you were starting
- he/she/it was starting

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has started

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had started

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was started
- you were started
- he/she/it was started

- The meeting starts promptly at nine.
- The snow was starting to build up on the roofs.
- The fire was started by campers.
- The fire was started by campers.
- The fire was started by campers.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**start**
- begin
  - Hurry up! The program is starting.
  - Go ahead and start without me.
  - My English class starts at 8:30 A.M.
  - The desert starts just beyond the coastal range.

**start**
- begin operating
  - The engine started with a roar.
  - Our car doesn’t start easily on cold mornings.

**start**
- move/jump/jerk suddenly in alarm/surprise
  - The horses start at any unusual sound or movement.
  - He is so upset that he starts at the slightest noise.
  - We never know what will cause the baby to start.

**start**
- _____ begin
  - object
    - Harry will start kindergarten in the fall.
    - I started my new job this week.
  - passive
    - The restoration of the old train station was started today.
  - infinitive
    - It started to rain this morning.
    - I started to vacuum the living room rug.
  - present participle
    - We started reading the newspaper.
    - It started raining this morning.
    - I started vacuuming the living room rug.

**start**
- _____ cause to happen/operate
  - object
    - I started the car and pulled back onto the highway.
    - Apparently, the fire was started by lightning.
  - passive
    - The incident started me thinking about what happened.
  - object + present participle
    - The tax incentives started them considering using solar power.

**start**
- _____ originate, establish
  - object
    - Steven started the argument.
    - We started our business in 1977.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**start off/out**
- begin [an action, trip]
  - The Lewis and Clark Expedition started off in August 1803.
  - We started out walking, then we began to run.
  - Rick started out as a pitcher, but now he’s an outfielder.
state

state | states · stated · have stated

**PRESENT**
I state
you state
he/she/it states
* He always states the obvious.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am stating
you are stating
he/she/it is stating
* I am stating what I believe to be the truth.

**PAST**
I stated
you stated
he/she/it stated
* She stated that we needed to delay our trip.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was stating
you were stating
he/she/it was stating
* They were stating their side of the argument.

**PRESENT PERFECT**
... have | has stated

**PAST PERFECT**
... had stated

**PAST PASSIVE**

**COMPLEMENTS**
state · report, express in a definite and formal manner

**OBJECT**
Everyone stated their opinions about what we should do.
Just state the facts, please.
I stated our options as I saw them.
The teacher stated the classroom rules on the first day of school.
The secretary stated the time and date of the next meeting.

**PASSIVE**
Her recommendations were stated in no uncertain terms.

(to object +) THAT-CLAUSE
He stated that his car had been stolen.
The report will state that driving deaths have declined by 15% this year.
I can confidently state that my client is completely innocent.
I stated to the salesmen that we could not pay their expenses.
We stated to the driver that we had to return to the hotel.
The aide stated to us that we would need to come back the next day.

**WH-CLAUSE**
The reporter won’t state who gave her the information.
You should only state what you are absolutely sure about.
Please state where you live.

**EXPRESSIONS**

state the obvious · express
what people already know

The treasurer stated the obvious: The company will lose money this year.
stay | stays · stayed · have stayed

**PRESENT**

I stay we stay
you stay you stay
he/she/it stays they stay

- He stays with friends when he's in town.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am staying we are staying
you are staying you are staying
he/she/it is staying they are staying

- I am staying at the Hilton.

**PAST**

I stayed we stayed
you stayed you stayed
he/she/it stayed they stayed

- Charlotte stayed remarkably calm.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was staying we were staying
you were staying you were staying
he/she/it was staying they were staying

- Were the kittens staying warm?

**PRESENT PERFECT** … have | has stayed

**PAST PERFECT** … had stayed

**PAST PASSIVE**

it was stayed they were stayed

- The court's decision was stayed.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**stay** remain in a place

Can you stay for minute?
Please stay; I want to ask you something.
I'd like to stay and talk, but I'm in a hurry.

"What is truth?" said jesting Pilate, and would not stay for an answer. [FRANCIS BACON]

**stay _____ remain [in a place]**

**ADVERB OF PLACE**

I stay at home when it rains.
Can you stay on the phone while I take another call?

**stay _____ live for a while, usually as a guest**

**ADVERB OF PLACE**

We are going to stay a few days with my sister and her family.
I am just staying there for the weekend.
We can't stay where we are for more than a week.

**stay _____ remain [in a certain state/condition]**

**PREDICATE NOUN**

They stayed good friends all their lives.
He stayed a bachelor for as long as I knew him.
I stayed a private the whole time I was in the army.

Stay calm—everything is going to be all right.
The cuttings need to stay damp until they are planted.
The deer stayed perfectly motionless until we made a noise.

**PREDICATE ADJECTIVE**

**stay _____ stop/delay [a formal action]**

**OBJECT**

The judge issued an order to stay the execution.
The chair can stay any committee action.
The sentence was stayed by court order.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**stay away/back/behind/down/in/out/etc. remain in a specified position**

He asked the children to stay away while he finished working on the speech.
Thank goodness our children stayed off drugs.

**stay off _____ avoid**

Marilyn said she would stay on until we hire a replacement.

**stay on remain at a job**

Allison stayed out all night partying.

**stay out remain away from home**

You should stay out of their argument.

**stay out of _____ not involve oneself in**

The kids are going to stay up and watch a movie.
steal | steals · stole · have stolen

**PRESENT**
- I steal we steal
- you steal you steal
- he/she/it steals they steal
  - *Our dog steals food from the cats’ dishes.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am stealing we are stealing
- you are stealing you are stealing
- he/she/it is stealing they are stealing
  - *I am stealing an idea from you—okay?*

**PAST**
- I stole we stole
- you stole you stole
- he/she/it stole they stole
  - *Someone stole my wallet at the gym.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was stealing we were stealing
- you were stealing you were stealing
- he/she/it was stealing they were stealing
  - *They were stealing into the kitchen for cookies.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has stolen
**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had stolen

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was stolen we were stolen
- you were stolen you were stolen
- he/she/it was stolen they were stolen
  - *The car was stolen right out of the garage.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**steal** take something that doesn’t belong to one without paying for it / without permission

“Thou shalt not steal.” [BIBLE]

Fagin forced the children to steal.

Even though he was starving, Oliver refused to steal.

**steal _____ take without paying for / without permission**

OBJECT

Somebody stole my son’s bicycle.

He claimed that they had stolen his idea.

iPods are stolen out of backpacks every day.

**steal _____ take/borrow while acknowledging the fact [often used humorously]**

OBJECT

Can I steal your husband for a few minutes?

I need to steal a few minutes of your time.

Can I steal your chair?

**steal _____ move quietly/secretly**

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The thieves stole into the garage and took some tools.

We stole into the boss’s office for a surprise birthday party.

The cavalry stole behind Union lines and attacked from the rear.

**steal _____ get/win in a tricky manner**

OBJECT

Sam felt that Bob had stolen Martha’s affections.

**steal _____ take secretly and slyly**

OBJECT

He managed to steal a look at the classified documents.

I stole a kiss when we had driven for a mile.

**steal away/down/in/out/up/etc. move quietly/secretly in a specified direction**

My aunt stole away and cried.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**steal [someone’s] thunder say/do what [someone else] intended to say/do, thereby lessening his/her impact**

Her opponent stole her thunder by appearing on TV an hour before she did.

**steal the show receive more attention than anyone else at an event**

A young tap dancer named Dulé Hill stole the show.
**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>step</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He steps aside so other people can pass.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am stepping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are stepping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is stepping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Everyone is stepping over the broken glass.

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>stepped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>stepped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>stepped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He stepped back from the curb.

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had stepped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>had stepped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>had stepped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>will be stepping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have stepped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

Step is rarely used in the passive voice.

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **step**  walk a short distance
  - **ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
    - Jason stepped out of the garage and used his cell phone.
    - I had to step around the large dog sleeping in the middle of the path.
    - We stepped down from the deck.
    - Please step over here.
    - Could you step into my office for a minute?
    - Please step out of the boat, sir.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- **step aside/away/back/down/in/off/out/over/past/under/etc.** walk in a specified direction
  - Would you all please step back?
  - We stepped out for a breath of fresh air.

- **step aside/down** leave one's job
  - The senior forward stepped aside for a talented freshman.
  - Our club's secretary stepped down after six years on the job.

- **step forward** offer information
  - A stranger stepped forward and identified the robber.
  - Do you think the president will step in to settle the dispute?

- **step in** become involved
  - The appraiser stepped off all the rooms in the house.
  - The club has stepped up pressure on members who haven't paid their dues.

- **step off** measure by taking steps
  - The factory stepped production up when war was declared.

**EXPRESSIONS**

- **step on it / step on the gas** hurry up
  - We'll have to step on it if we want to be on time.

- **step on [someone’s] toes** offend [someone]
  - I don't want to step on anyone's toes, but this report has lots of misspellings.

- **step out of line** misbehave
  - Steve stepped out of line and got scolded by Sister Mary.
**stick** | sticks · stuck · have stuck

### Present Progressive
- I am sticking
- you are sticking
- he/she/it is sticking
- we are sticking
- they are sticking

**Past Progressive**
- I was sticking
- you were sticking
- he/she/it was sticking
- we were sticking
- they were sticking

### Future
- I will stick
- you will stick
- he/she/it will stick
- we will stick
- they will stick

### Future Progressive
- I will be sticking
- you will be sticking
- he/she/it will be sticking
- we will be sticking
- they will be sticking

### Future Perfect
- I will have stuck
- you will have stuck
- he/she/it will have stuck
- we will have stuck
- they will have stuck

### Past Passive
- I was stuck
- you were stuck
- he/she/it was stuck
- we were stuck
- they were stuck

**COMPLEMENTS**

**stick**
- remain fixed in place

- The drawer is still sticking.
- Our wheels stuck in the soft earth.
- I’m afraid the proposal is stuck in committee.
- The transmission has stuck in first gear.
- If you throw enough dirt at somebody, some of it will stick.
- Snow was sticking on the ground.
- Our pants were sticking to the plastic seats.

**stick ****
- attach, fasten, fix

- OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

- We stuck a patch on the tire.
- I stuck some pictures on the wall.
- They stuck the interns in a dingy basement office.
- He was stuck in a dead-end job.

**stick ****
- poke, pierce, thrust

- OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

- The nurse stuck a thermometer in his mouth.
- The cowboy stuck a cigarette behind his ear.
- The little boy stuck a pin into the balloon.
- The workers stuck their hands in their pockets.
- Political signs had been stuck on the lawn.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**stick down/in/out/up/etc.**
- extend in a specified position

**stick away/back/down/in/on/out/up/etc.**
- thrust/attach in a specified location

- I asked Barb to stick around until I started my car.
- I'll stick the stamps on at the post office.
- He stuck his tongue out at the teacher.
- The lid was sticking up on the jewelry box.
- My toes were sticking out from under the quilt.
- Margaret stuck the report back in the drawer.
- That lime green shirt of his really sticks out.
- Bob quit his new job after a week; he couldn’t stick it out.
- Two masked men stuck up a gas station last night.
- Everyone should stick to the point being discussed.
- Mom always stuck up for us kids.
### Present
- I sting you sting he/she/it stings
- We sting you sting they sting

*That antiseptic really stings.*

### Present Progressive
- I am stinging you are stinging he/she/it is stinging
- We are stinging you are stinging they are stinging

*My hands are still stinging.*

### Past
- I stung you stung he/she/it stung
- We stung you stung they stung

*The smoke from the grill stung our eyes.*

### Past Progressive
- I was stinging you were stinging he/she/it was stinging
- We were stinging you were stinging they were stinging

*Sweat bees were stinging everyone at the picnic.*

### Present Perfect
- I have stung you have stung he/she/it has stung
- We have stung you have stung they have stung

### Past Perfect
- I was stung you were stung he/she/it was stung
- We were stung you were stung they were stung

*The swimmers were stung by jellyfish.*

### Future
- I will sting we will sting he/she/it will sting
- You will sting you will sting they will sting

### Future Progressive
- I will be stinging you will be stinging he/she/it will be stinging
- We will be stinging you will be stinging they will be stinging

### Future Perfect
- I will have stung we will have stung he/she/it will have stung
- You will have stung you will have stung they will have stung

### Past Passive
- I was stung you were stung he/she/it was stung
- We were stung you were stung they were stung

*The kids who were playing in the sandbox were stung by ants.*

### Complements

- **sting** hurt by pricking/piercing the skin
  - Wasp will sting if you get too close to their nest.
  - Careful—those plants sting if you even brush them.
  - The insects sting when the wind dies down.

- **sting** feel a sharp tingling/burning pain
  - My skin is stinging.
  - Our throats were stinging from the exhaust.
  - My hands stung from the vibrations.

- **sting** cause emotional pain
  - His criticisms stung at first.
  - Malicious gossip stings terribly.
  - Man, what he said really stings!

- **sting** cause a sharp tingling/burning pain to **OBJECT**
  - A bee just stung me.
  - The medicine stung my throat.
  - The sunblock stung my eyes.
  - The cold stung my ears and hands.

- **sting** cause emotional pain to **OBJECT**
  - Unjust criticism stings a writer.
  - Being ridiculed would sting anyone.

- **sting** cause emotional pain to **PASSIVE**
  - I was stung by her malicious attack.
  - We were stung by how quickly they reacted.
**stink**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I stinkweginkyou stinkhe/she/it stink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>I am stinkingwe are stinkyou are stinkhe/she/it is stinkingthey are stinking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>* The barn really stinks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td>* The durian is stinking and I can't take it on the bus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I stank/stunkwegunk/stunkyou stank/stunkhe/she/it stank/stunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td>I was stinkingwe were stinkingyou were stinkinghe/she/it was stinkingthey were stinking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>* The whole economic situation stank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td>* The dead skunk was stinking to high heaven.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>I have stunkwe have stunkyou have stunkhe/she/it has stunkthey have stunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had</td>
<td>I had stunkwe had stunkyou had stunkhe/she/it had stunkthey had stunk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Passive Voice**

Stink is never used in the passive voice.

**Complements**

- **stink**
  - give off a strong, unpleasant smell
  
  The alley stank like an open sewer.
  When tissue swells and stinks, it may be a sign of gangrene.
  His breath stank from cheap tobacco.
  You need to take out the garbage before it starts to stink.

- **stink**
  - be worthless / very bad
  
  The movie stinks. No one liked it.
  The proposed merger stinks and will probably end up in court.
  I think the plan stinks and should be junked.
  The company’s reputation stinks because of what they did.

**Phrasal Verbs**

- **stink up**
  - SEP up fill with a strong, unpleasant smell
  
  Will hamsters stink up the house?

- **stink up the joint/place**
  - perform very badly
  
  Our team really stunk up the joint tonight.

- **stink to high heaven**
  - give off an extremely unpleasant smell
  
  When broccoli goes bad, it stinks to high heaven.
**stop** | **stops** · **stopped** · **have stopped**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>we stop</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I stop</td>
<td>you stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you stop</td>
<td>they stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>they stop</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The train stops there for 10 minutes.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>we are stopping</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am stopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are stopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it is stopping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We are stopping for lunch.*

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>we stopped</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I stopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you stopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*My watch just stopped.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>we were stopping</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was stopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were stopping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was stopping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The police were stopping all traffic on the Interstate.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has stopped</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... had stopped</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The game was stopped by the referee.*

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>we were stopped</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was stopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were stopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was stopped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will stop</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will be stopping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will have stopped</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**stop**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>halt</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The rain has stopped.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The train stopped between stations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We stopped to stretch our legs and take a few pictures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The laughing stopped abruptly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**stop**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>cease functioning</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The engine stops whenever I step on the gas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My watch has stopped. What time is it?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**stop**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>cause to halt</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stop the car!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The drugs should stop the infection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The opposition will try to stop the bill's passage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don't try to stop me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bank stopped payment on the check.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>passive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I can't stop you (from) going ahead with your plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We must stop him (from) hurting himself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luckily, he was stopped (from) investing in the crazy scheme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The guard will stop whoever tries to enter after hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The plastic will stop whatever water leaks through the roof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The children stopped giggling and began to listen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I couldn't stop laughing at what he had said.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The factory stopped producing that model last year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**stop**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>pause</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Has he stopped to think how many people depend on him?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mario doesn't stop to consider the effect on the environment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**stop by/in/off**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>visit briefly, often on one's way to another place</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Senator Blather stopped by my office on his way to Capitol Hill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aunt Luella stopped in for a few minutes this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We usually stop over in Memphis on our way to New Orleans.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**stop over**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>stay at a place before continuing a trip</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The plumber stopped the leak up with putty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The kitchen sink drain is stopped up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**stop SEP up**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>plug, clog</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The plumber stopped the leak up with putty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The kitchen sink drain is stopped up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### stress | stresses · stressed · have stressed

#### PRESENT
- I stress
- you stress
- he/she/it stresses

#### PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
- I am stressing
- you are stressing
- he/she/it is stressing

#### PAST
- I stressed
- you stressed
- he/she/it stressed

#### PAST PROGRESSIVE
- I was stressing
- you were stressing
- he/she/it was stressing

#### PRESENT PERFECT
- ... have | has stressed

#### PAST PERFECT
- ... had stressed

#### PAST PASSIVE
- I was stressed
- you were stressed
- he/she/it was stressed

- The company always stresses safety.

- You are stressing yourself needlessly.

- The schools were stressing math skills.

- The importance of exercise was stressed in health class.

### COMPLEMENTS

**stress** become extremely tense/anxious

- You shouldn't stress like this. It's not good for you.
- It's okay. No one is stressing.

**stress** ______ emphasize

- I can't stress enough **the need to be accurate in your work.**
- The doctor stressed **the importance of taking your medication.**
- The actor stressed **every word in his farewell speech.**
- Stress **the second syllable of “record”** when it's used as a verb.
- Keeping costs under control was always stressed.

**passive**

- Please stress **that we expect quite cold weather on the trip.**
- I stressed **that the kids really need to be patient during dinner.**
- We stressed **that we haven’t got much time.**
- He stressed **what he wanted us to accomplish.**
- Politicians always stress **how patriotic they are.**
- I can't stress enough **how much this means to us.**

**stress** ______ strain, put physical/emotional pressure on

- Weight lifting can really stress **your knee joints.**
- The unusually heavy snow has stressed **the roof trusses.**
- Our communication system has been stressed to the point of collapse.
- Everyone has been stressed by money concerns.
PRESENT
I stretch we stretch you stretch you stretch he/she/it stretches they stretch
He always stretches before he runs.

PAST
I stretched we stretched you stretched you stretched he/she/it stretched they stretched
The cat stretched in front of the fireplace.

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stretched
PAST PERFECT ... had stretched

PAST PASSIVE
I was stretched we were stretched you were stretched you were stretched he/she/it was stretched they were stretched
The canvas was stretched over the wooden frame.

COMPLEMENTS

stretch  extend, become larger
My sweater stretched in the laundry.
These pants are stretching badly.
Will this material stretch?

stretch  warm up one's muscles
You need to stretch before exercising.
If you don't stretch, you can pull a muscle.

stretch  extend one's limbs
The cat was stretching in the sun.
I couldn't stretch enough to reach the top shelf.

stretch ______ cause to extend, cause to become larger/longer
OBJECT
I stretched the sweater over my head and went out for a walk.
The Scouts stretched the rope between two trees.
We stretched the canvas over the frame.
The rubber band was stretched until it nearly broke.

strecth ______ extend (one's limbs)
OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)
The student yawned and stretched his arms and legs.
Melanie stretched her arms toward the puppies.

stretch ______ extend the length/amount of
OBJECT
The bank has stretched their payments over a longer period.
I stretched the main dish by adding more noodles.
They decided to stretch their vacation a few more days.
Our finances were already stretched to the limit.

passive
stretch ______ extend/spread
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM
Their ranch stretches for fifty miles.
The military base has stretched into the desert.
The long hours of the night stretched before me.

PHRASAL VERBS

stretch down/out/up extend one's limbs in a specified direction
Can you stretch down and touch your toes?
Anne stretched out on the living room floor.

stretch out be prolonged
How long will this concert stretch out?

stretch ______ separate out prolong
My boss stretches staff meetings out forever.
**Present**

- I stride
- you stride
- he/she/it strides
  - *He strides in like he is on a mission.*
- we stride
- you are striding
- you are striding
- they are striding
  - *The horses are striding along at a fast clip now.*

**Past**

- I strode
- you strode
- he/she/it strode
  - *The cowboys strode into the town square.*
- we strode
- you were striding
- you were striding
- they were striding
  - *They were striding as though they were on parade.*

**Present Perfect**

- ... have | has stridden
- past perfect
- ... had stridden

**Past Progressive**

- I am striding
- you are striding
- he/she/it is striding
  - *He strides in like he is on a mission.*
- we are striding
- you are striding
- you are striding
- they are striding
  - *The horses are striding along at a fast clip now.*

**Past Perfect**

- I was striding
- you were striding
- he/she/it was striding
  - *The cowboys strode into the town square.*
- we were striding
- you were striding
- you were striding
- they were striding
  - *They were striding as though they were on parade.*

**Future**

- ... will stride
- future progressive
- ... will be striding
- future perfect
- ... will have stridden

**Past Passive**

*Stride is never used in the passive voice.*

### Complements

- **stride** walk with long steps
- He doesn't walk, he strides.
- The boys were pretending to stride like soldiers.
- He was striding so fast that he was almost running.

- **stride** walk briskly
  - **ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
  - He strode **across the room** in two quick steps and jerked open the door.
  - They strode angrily **down the street and into the mayor's office**.
  - The delegation strode **past us**, grim faced, not looking to the left or right.

- **stride along/away/down/in/out/up/etc.** stride in a specified direction
  - He was striding along, muttering to himself.
  - Leon glared at the boss, then strode away.
  - The captain strode up and shook my hand.
Present Present Progressive
Past Past Progressive
Present Perfect Future
Past Perfect Future Progressive
Future Perfect
Past Passive

Present
I strike    we strike
you strike  you strike
he/she/it strikes  they strike

* The idea strikes us as promising.

Past
I struck    we struck
you struck  you struck
he/she/it struck  they struck

* She struck her foot on a chair.

Present Perfect  ... have | has struck
Past Perfect  ... had struck

Future
... will strike
Future Progressive  ... will be striking
Future Perfect  ... will have struck

Past Passive
I was struck    we were struck
you were struck  you were struck
he/she/it was struck  they were struck

* He was suddenly struck by a brilliant idea.

Complements

strike  attack, cause sudden damage/injury

An earthquake struck this morning in northern California.
Disaster struck when the ferry capsized in heavy seas.
The killer has struck again.
Many snakes hiss before they strike.

strike  refuse to work until one’s demands are met

The maintenance workers voted to strike.
We will strike if our demands are not met.
They are striking for better health benefits.

strike  hit forcefully

OBJECT

A falling tree limb struck me on the shoulder.
The van struck several parked cars.
He struck the ball with his head.
Sunshine struck the mirror, temporarily blinding me.
The Pinkston family was struck by tragedy today.
We were all struck by the coincidence.

PASSIVE

strike  occur to

OBJECT

it + strike + OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

A great idea just struck me.
The solution to the problem struck him.
It struck us that our problem had been solved.
It strikes me that you are taking an unnecessary risk.
It struck everyone that it was getting very late.

OBJECT + as predicate noun

NOTE: The predicate noun refers to the subject, not the object.

He struck her as an honest man.
The attack struck the policeman as a suicide bombing.
The proposal struck us as an idiotic idea.

OBJECT + as predicate adjective

NOTE: The predicate adjective refers to the subject, not the object.

Thomas struck her as nice but a little strange.
The proposal struck me as promising.
Their children struck us as well-behaved.
strike | reach/achieve [an agreement, compromise]

**OBJECT**
The two sides finally struck a **deal**. You must strike the **right balance between compassion and assertiveness**. A compromise on the budget was finally struck.

**PASSIVE**

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**strike back/down/out** attack in a specified direction

**strike SEP back/down/out** hit in a specified direction

**strike SEP down** invalidate [a law]

**strike SEP off** remove

**strike off/out (for [____])** set out (to [someplace])

**strike on [____]** realize suddenly

**strike out** fail

**strike SEP up** begin

**EXPRESSIONS**

**strike a balance (between [____])** compromise (between [two things])

She manages to strike a balance between her work and her family.

**strike a bargain/deal** reach an agreement

The union and the company struck a bargain at the eleventh hour.

**strike a chord (with [____])** sound familiar to [someone]

Those words strike a chord with me; what song are they from?

**strike a happy medium** find a satisfactory compromise

She speaks French and I speak English, so we struck a happy medium and watched a French film with English subtitles.

**strike a nerve** cause a strong negative reaction

Your insensitive comment about immigration really struck a nerve.

**strike funny** seem humorous/odd to

It strikes me funny that they dropped charges against the politician.

**strike home** make sense

His advice to save for a rainy day really strikes home.

**strike it rich** become suddenly wealthy

They struck it rich in the real estate business.

**strike [one, two,...twelve]/midnight** [of a clock] indicate the hour by a certain number of sounds

The clock struck one, and the mouse ran down. [NURSERY RHYME]

**strike pay dirt** become suddenly successful

The Mars rover has struck pay dirt: It has discovered evidence of water on the planet.

**strike [someone’s] fancy** appeal to [someone]

Miss Elizabeth Bennet struck Mr. Darcy’s fancy.

**strike while the iron is hot** do something while one has the opportunity

The economy is booming, and the board recommends that the company strike while the iron is hot.
string | strings · strung · have strung

**string**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I string</th>
<th>we string</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you string</td>
<td>you string</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it strings</td>
<td>they string</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He strings Christmas lights in the trees.*

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I strung</th>
<th>we strung</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you strung</td>
<td>you strung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it strung</td>
<td>they strung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I strung the bows for the children.*

**Present Perfect**

... have | has strung

**Past Perfect**

... had strung

- *My tennis racket was strung too tight.*

**Future**

... will string

**Future Progressive**

... will be stringing

**Future Perfect**

... will have strung

**Complements**

**string** hang/stretch [in a line]

- **OBJECT**
  - We used to string **popcorn and cranberries** on our Christmas tree.
  - The fishermen strung **lines** in the channel.
  - The decorating committee wanted to string **lanterns** in the hall.
  - A trip wire had been strung across the path.

- **PASSIVE**
  - Kids love to string **different shapes of uncooked pasta**.
  - When we catch fish, we string **them** on a line.
  - The beads were strung to make simple necklaces.

**string** thread (on a line/cord)

- **OBJECT**
  - You can’t string **a tennis racket** by hand.
  - It takes a great deal of strength to string **a powerful bow**.
  - The instruments were all strung by a professional musician.

**string** put strings on [a racket, bow, musical instrument]

- **OBJECT**
  - Jenny strung Reggie along for several months before telling him to get lost.
  - He strings employees along by promising raises that they never get.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**string** **SEP** along keep [someone] hoping for romance / a reward

**string** **SEP** out prolong

**string** **SEP** up hang by the neck

- The professor was stringing out his lecture on quantum gravity.
- An angry mob strung the cattle thieves up in the town square.
strive | strives · strove · have striven
strive | strived · strived · have strived

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>we strive</th>
<th>I strive</th>
<th>you strive</th>
<th>he/she/it strives</th>
<th>* He strives to do his very best.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>we are striving</td>
<td>I am striving</td>
<td>you are striving</td>
<td>he/she/it is striving</td>
<td>* He is striving to succeed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>we strove</td>
<td>I strove</td>
<td>you strove</td>
<td>he/she/it strove</td>
<td>* We strove to get the job finished on time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>we were striving</td>
<td>I was striving</td>
<td>you were striving</td>
<td>he/she/it was striving</td>
<td>* Everyone was striving to beat the deadline.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PERFECT</td>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... has striven</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST PERFECT</td>
<td>... had striven</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td>... will strive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE PROGRESSIVE</td>
<td>... will be striving</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE PERFECT</td>
<td>... will have striven</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PAST PASSIVE
Strive is never used in the passive voice.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**strive | make a great effort, try very hard**

**INFINITIVE**
You must always strive **to improve yourself.**
We always strove **to get the kids to school on time.**
Successful companies constantly strive **to make their products better.**
If you don't strive **to succeed**, you will surely fail in the long run.
The whole team was striving **to be the best in the league.**

**strive | fight, struggle**

**for OBJECT**
We strive **for peace and freedom.**

**against OBJECT**
The activists are striving **against poverty and injustice.**
**study**

**PRESENT**
- I study  
- you study  
- he/she/it studies

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am studying  
- you are studying  
- he/she/it is studying

- *He studies two hours every morning.*

**PAST**
- I studied  
- you studied  
- he/she/it studied

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was studying  
- you were studying  
- he/she/it was studying

- *I studied Latin and Classical Greek.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has studied

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had studied

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was studied  
- you were studied  
- he/she/it was studied

- *The proposal was studied from every angle.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**study**

- spend time learning  
- It seems like all I do is study.
- He really needs to study harder.
- I can't study when it's so noisy.
- Nobody likes to study all the time.

- study _____ spend time learning in preparation for object  
  - Laurie is studying for her midterm exams.  
  - John is studying for his driver's test.

- study _____ take one or more courses in object  
  - I plan to study Chinese next year.  
  - He hopes to study geology when he gets to college.  
  - She is studying voice and piano at the conservatory.  
  - Latin is still studied in some high schools.

- study _____ thoroughly investigate object  
  - I have been studying the railroad timetable, and I still don't understand it.  
  - The police have been studying the suspect's movements that day.  
  - The reporter studied his notes before answering.  
  - The grant applications were carefully studied.

- study _____ visually examine carefully object  
  - The school board studied the architect's drawings.  
  - The dermatologist studied every inch of my face and hands.  
  - He anxiously studied the faces of the passengers.  

- study up on _____ learn a lot about in a short time  
  - We need to study up on when to plant tomatoes.  
  - You need to study up on French culture before your trip to Paris.
submit | submits · submitted · have submitted

**PRESENT**
- I submit
- you submit
- he/she/it submits

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am submitting
- you are submitting
- he/she/it is submitting

*He submits his dissertation this semester.*

**PAST**
- I submitted
- you submitted
- he/she/it submitted

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was submitting
- you were submitting
- he/she/it was submitting

*I submitted the additional evidence.*

**PRESENT PERFECT** ... have | has submitted
**PAST PERFECT** ... had submitted

**FUTURE** ... will submit
**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be submitting
**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have submitted

**PAST PASSIVE**
- it was submitted
- they were submitted

*The paperwork was submitted in March.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**submit** surrender, yield

The opposition will not submit without a fight.
Without reinforcements, the castle will have to submit.
The employers got a court order that forced the strikers to submit.

**submit ____ subject [to a process/treatment]**

**OBJECT + to OBJECT**
- We submitted the bone fragment to DNA testing.
- I submitted myself to a body search.
- The parties submitted the issue to binding arbitration.

**submit ____ formally present [a document]**

**OBJECT**
- You have to submit your application three weeks in advance.
- I will submit my grant proposal next week.
- He is going to submit his resignation tomorrow.
- The defense lawyer was allowed to submit additional evidence.
- The request must be submitted in writing.

**PASSIVE**

**submit ____ formally present/argue**

**THAT-CLAUSE**
- Mr. Smith submits that he is totally innocent of all charges.
- In the indictment, they submit that you left the scene of the accident.
- In his testimony, Dr. Brown will submit that the defendant is not competent to stand trial.
**succeed**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I succeed</td>
<td>That magic trick always succeeds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you succeed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it succeeds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I am succeeding</td>
<td>We are succeeding pretty well with the fund-raiser.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are succeeding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is succeeding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I succeeded</td>
<td>He succeeded in ending the war.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you succeeded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it succeeded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was succeeding</td>
<td>The new ad campaign was finally succeeding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were succeeding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was succeeding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have succeeded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had succeeded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was succeeded</td>
<td>Henry VIII was succeeded by his son Edward.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were succeeded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was succeeded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **succeed** perform/happen as planned/desired
  - You can't succeed unless you try.
  - The pilot test succeeded beyond our expectations.
  - They succeeded more by luck than design.
  - Jerry succeeded as a trial lawyer.
  - It seemed that Barry succeeded at nearly everything he tried.
  - Nicole succeeded in her role as Virginia Woolf.

- **succeed** ______ achieve [a goal] in present participle
  - They succeeded in getting the contract.
  - I hope to succeed in finding the right job.
  - We have succeeded in recruiting an excellent staff.

- **succeed** ______ follow [into a job/office]
  - John Adams succeeded George Washington in 1797.
  - Roger will succeed his father as head of the company.

- **succeed** ______ object
  - Roberta was succeeded by Terry as chair of the committee.
# Suffer

### Present

I suffer  
you suffer  
he/she/it suffers  
* His family suffers when he works late.

### Present Progressive

I am suffering  
you are suffering  
he/she/it is suffering  
* She is suffering from severe headaches.

### Past

I suffered  
you suffered  
he/she/it suffered  
* We suffered a major setback yesterday.

### Past Progressive

I was suffering  
you were suffering  
he/she/it was suffering  
* I was suffering a terrible cold at the time.

### Present Perfect

... have | has suffered

### Past Perfect

... had suffered

### Future

... will suffer

### Future Progressive

... will be suffering

### Future Perfect

... will have suffered

### Past Passive

... was suffered  
... were suffered  
* Severe losses were suffered in the attack.

## Complements

**Suffer**  
**Feel physical/emotional**  
* The economic downturn has caused many people to suffer.  
* Too many patients were suffering unnecessarily.

**Suffer**  
**Become worse**  
* Our profit margin has suffered since the merger.  
* The kids’ grades suffered because we moved so often.  
* Concerns about mad cow disease have caused beef prices to suffer.

**Suffer**  
**Experience, undergo**  
[pain/loss/damage/unpleasantness]  
* She has suffered **migraine headaches** all her life.  
* We expect to suffer a **small loss** this quarter.  
* The team suffered **two losses** on its recent road trip.  
* The police department suffered a **total breakdown in its communication system**.

**Passive**  
**From object**  
* We suffered a **setback** on our way to financial independence.  
* Only minor injuries were suffered in the accident.

**Suffer**  
**Tolerate [usually negative]**  
* The country will not suffer **such an attack** without retaliation.  
* Senator Blather won’t suffer **criticism**.

## Expressions

**Suffer fools gladly**  
**Tolerate**  
**Stupidity in others**  
* Our professor does not suffer fools gladly.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>REGULAR</strong></th>
<th>suggest</th>
<th>suggests</th>
<th>• suggested</th>
<th>• have suggested</th>
<th>suggest</th>
<th>491</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Present

- *I suggest* we suggest
- *you suggest* you suggest
- *he/she/it suggests* they suggest
  - *He suggests that we come back after lunch.*

### Present Progressive

- *I am suggesting* we are suggesting
- *you are suggesting* you are suggesting
- *he/she/it is suggesting* they are suggesting
  - *I am suggesting that we take a break.*

### Past

- *I suggested* we suggested
- *you suggested* you suggested
- *he/she/it suggested* they suggested
  - *I suggested lunch at a Mexican restaurant.*

### Past Progressive

- *I was suggesting* we were suggesting
- *you were suggesting* you were suggesting
- *he/she/it was suggesting* they were suggesting
  - *The dark clouds were suggesting a storm.*

### Present Perfect

- *have | has suggested*...

### Past Perfect

- *have | has suggested*...

### Future

- *will suggest*...

### Future Progressive

- *will be suggesting*...

### Future Perfect

- *will have suggested*...

### Past Passive

- *I was suggested* we were suggested
- *you were suggested* you were suggested
- *he/she/it was suggested* they were suggested
  - *The idea was suggested in April.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**suggest**  
**recommend, mention for consideration**

- The waiter suggested *the salmon.*
- I suggested a *gift certificate* for her birthday.
- The designer suggests a *different typeface* for the text.
- Several candidates were suggested and discussed.

**OBJECT**

- I suggested *to my son* that we have pancakes for *breakfast.*
- The committee suggested *to the board* that Susan *be named president.*
- The senator suggested *to his staff* that they ignore *all questions from the press.*

**PASSIVE**

- *No one is suggesting that we give up.*
- I suggested *to my son* that we have pancakes for *breakfast.*
- The committee suggested *to the board* that Susan *be named president.*
- The senator suggested *to his staff* that they ignore *all questions from the press.*

**(to object +) BASE-FORM THAT-CLAUSE**

- I suggested *whom they might contact in Madrid.*
- Can you suggest *where we should go next?*
- The guidebook suggested *how much we should expect to pay for a hotel there.*
- Some friends suggested *where to stay.*
- Tony suggested *how to proceed next.*

**WH-CLAUSE**

- I suggested *whom they might contact in Madrid.*
- Can you suggest *where we should go next?*
- The guidebook suggested *how much we should expect to pay for a hotel there.*
- Some friends suggested *where to stay.*
- Tony suggested *how to proceed next.*

**WH-INFINITIVE**

- *The people at the next table suggested what to order.*
- Some friends suggested *where to stay.*
- Tony suggested *how to proceed next.*

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

- *Jan suggested renting some movies for the kids.*
- The consultant suggested *reducing our overhead costs.*
- I suggested *just redoing the kitchen and leaving everything else alone.*

**suggest**  
**bring to mind as similar/connected to**

- The perfume is designed to suggest *a tropical forest.*
- Her paintings suggest *the work of Georgia O’Keeffe.*
- The crime suggests *a revenge killing.*

**OBJECT**

- The perfume is designed to suggest *a tropical forest.*
- Her paintings suggest *the work of Georgia O’Keeffe.*
- The crime suggests *a revenge killing.*

**suggest**  
**imply, say indirectly**

- Nick is suggesting *that the package was never delivered.*
- A recent study suggests *that red wine may make your heart healthier.*
- Are you suggesting *that no one wants me at the party?*
supply | supplies · supplied · have supplied  

**COMPLEMENTS**

supply  ____ furnish, provide

**OBJECT**

Ralph's Pretty Good Grocery will supply **everything for your picnics**.

Robbery seemed to supply **the motive for the break-in**.

The union will supply **extra workers** if they are needed.

Sunshine does not always supply **an adequate amount of vitamin D**.

**PASSIVE**

About half of our power is supplied by wind and solar.

supply  ____ take care of the needs of

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

The Ordnance Corps supplies **the troops ammunition**.

I supplied **them the information they wanted**.

His firm supplies **our company technical support**.

The Ordnance Corps supplies **ammunition to the troops**.

I supplied **the information they wanted to them**.

His firm supplies **technical support to our company**.

**OBJECT + with OBJECT**

The Ordnance Corps supplies **the troops with ammunition**.

I supplied **them with the information they wanted**.

His firm supplies **our company with technical support**.

**OBJECT + (with) WH-CLAUSE**

He supplied **the children (with) whatever art supplies they needed**.

She supplies **the manager (with) whatever reports he requests**.
support | supports
· supported · have supported

**support**

carry (the weight of), hold up

**OBJECT**
Two rotting wooden posts supported the sagging porch.

His knees can’t support his weight anymore.

**PASSIVE**
The wounded soldier was supported by his comrades.

**support**
advocate, approve of, agree with

**OBJECT**
Senator Blather supports farm subsidies and fully funded crop insurance.

Our organization has supported civil rights legislation for decades.

We support Jack Eberhardt for commissioner.

**WH-CLAUSE**
I can’t support what you are doing.

The senator will support whomever his party nominates.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
The government has supported growing corn for ethanol.

We supported Jane’s starting her own business.

I supported his going to school out of state.

**support**
provide a living for

**OBJECT**
People cannot support a family on the minimum wage.

Doris has always been supported by her family.

**support**
sustain

**OBJECT**
The island could no longer support vegetation after the volcano erupted.

The company cannot support carrying such a high level of debt.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
The new research supports our hypothesis.

A recent study supports the value of using alternative energy sources.

**support**
help to prove

**OBJECT**
The computer will support whatever programs you need to run.

The operating system supports having 256 windows open at the same time.

**support**
be compatible with

**OBJECT**
Will the new computer support all of our old applications?

The computer will support whatever programs you need to run.

**WH-CLAUSE**
The new computer will support whatever programs you need to run.

**PRESENT PARTICIPLE**
The company will support whatever programs you need to run.

The operating system will support having 256 windows open at the same time.
### suppose

**Suppose** make assumptions

Don’t suppose so much.

He is only supposing.

---

**suppose _____** think of as true/possible without really knowing

**Object**

The defense is supposing facts that are not in the evidence.

His idea supposes a long chain of unlikely events.

Some interpretations of quantum mechanics suppose the existence of parallel universes.

Quinn supposed them (to be) loyal supporters.

The agent supposed the house (to be) a rental property.

The coach supposed the other team (to be) a weak opponent.

Everyone supposed the strange man (to be) delusional.

Everyone supposed the house (to be) mortgaged to the hilt.

We supposed the children (to be) ready for bed.

Everyone supposed the family to have a fortune.

Until the 19th century, diseases were supposed to be caused by an imbalance of humours.

It’s supposed to rain today and tomorrow.

Suppose that you are right. What would you do next?

Let’s suppose that money is no object.

Suppose that you were in my shoes.

---

**suppose _____** guess, believe

**That-clause**

I suppose that the accident happened sometime during the night.

Do you suppose that the flight was delayed?

I suppose that it is time to quit.

---

**be supposed _____** be expected/obliged/allowed [used only in the passive]

**Infinitive**

I am supposed to give you this message.

The children are not supposed to go to the park alone.

We are supposed to meet someone at the airport.
**REGULAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I surprise you surprise he/she/it surprises <em>He surprises us with his bizarre ideas.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I surprised you surprised he/she/it surprised <em>I surprised Mary when I came home early.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>... had surprised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td>I was surprised you were surprised he/she/it was surprised <em>Everyone was surprised by Bill’s early retirement.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**surprise**

**OBJECT**

cause mild astonishment/shock to

- The announcement surprised **everyone**.
- The children surprised **us** with a trip to Hawaii.
- We surprised **some deer** when we were walking in the woods.

**PASSIVE**

- Was anybody surprised by what happened?

**surprise**

**OBJECT**

attack/encounter suddenly/unexpectedly [not used in the progressive tenses]

- The Japanese Navy surprised **the U.S. fleet at Pearl Harbor**.
- The security guard surprised **the shoplifter**.
- Mom surprised **us** in the middle of a video game.

**PASSIVE**

- Union forces were surprised by Stonewall Jackson’s corps at Chancellorsville.

**OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

- The police surprised **them stealing scrap metal**.
- The principal surprised **some students smoking in the gym**.
- We surprised **the dogs sleeping on the couch again**.
**surround**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Present Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I surround</td>
<td>I am surrounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you surround</td>
<td>you are surrounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it surrounds</td>
<td>he/she/it is surrounding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The garden surrounds the house.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I surrounded</td>
<td>I was surrounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you surrounded</td>
<td>you were surrounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it surrounded</td>
<td>he/she/it was surrounding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* A fence surrounded the original factory.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... has surrounded</td>
<td>... had surrounded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Passive</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future Progressive</strong></th>
<th><strong>Future Perfect</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was surrounded</td>
<td>we were surrounded</td>
<td>... will surround</td>
<td>... will have surrounded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were surrounded</td>
<td>you were surrounded</td>
<td>... will be surrounding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was surrounded</td>
<td>they were surrounded</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* I was surrounded by noise.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**surround** | form a circle/ring around, enclose, envelop

**Object**

A ring of forts completely surrounded the city.

The children surrounded us, asking endless questions.

The empty prairie surrounded our camp from horizon to horizon.

The village was completely surrounded by high mountains.

The rock star was surrounded by screaming fans.

**Passive**

Controversy surrounded everything he did.

A cloud of suspicion surrounded the courtroom.

Confusion and uncertainty surrounded them like fog.

**surround** | dominate the environment of

**Object**

He felt that he was surrounded by fools.
**survive** | survives · survived · have survived

### Regular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present</strong></th>
<th><strong>Present Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I survive</td>
<td>I am surviving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you survive</td>
<td>you are surviving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it survives</td>
<td>they are surviving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>He survives one crisis after another.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Progressive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I survived</td>
<td>I was surviving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you survived</td>
<td>you were surviving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it survived</td>
<td>they were surviving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The bank barely survived the Depression.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Present Perfect</strong></th>
<th>**Have</th>
<th>Has survived**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have survived</td>
<td>I have survived</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you have survived</td>
<td>you have survived</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it have survived</td>
<td>they have survived</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Past Perfect</strong></th>
<th><strong>Past Passive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was survived</td>
<td>I was survived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were survived</td>
<td>you were survived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was survived</td>
<td>they were survived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>He was survived by a daughter and two grandchildren.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**survive** continue to live/exist

- Against all odds, the baby survived.
- The shipwrecked crew clung to the raft, hoping to survive.
- People can survive under the most adverse conditions.
- Very few fossils from that period survive.
- The old French custom survives today.

**survive** continue to live/exist (used humorously/ironically)

- Oh, I think we might survive after all.
- I'm sure the kids will survive.
- The economy will probably survive despite our best efforts to ruin it.

**survive** continue to live/exist in spite of

- The duke survived the assassination attempt.
- His family survived the terrible ordeal in the earthquake.
- Senator Blather survived the political scandal involving illegal campaign contributions.

**survive** live longer than [a close relative]

- He survived his wife by only two months.
- Private Ryan survived his three brothers.
- Donald survived his son by eight years.

**survive**

- The fire was survived by two children.
- He is survived by his wife and three children.
- Mrs. Brown is survived by her lovely daughter.
**suspect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present progressive</td>
<td>past progressive</td>
<td>present perfect</td>
<td>past perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I suspect</td>
<td>I suspected</td>
<td>I was suspected</td>
<td>A gas leak was suspected as the cause of the explosion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we suspect</td>
<td>we suspected</td>
<td>we were suspected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you suspect</td>
<td>you suspected</td>
<td>you were suspected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it suspects</td>
<td>he/she/it suspected</td>
<td>he/she/it was suspected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they suspect</td>
<td>they suspected</td>
<td>they were suspected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He suspects that a circuit malfunctioned.*

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will suspect</th>
<th>... will have suspected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present participle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object + of object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object + infinitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object + of present participle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**
The verb *suspect* is stressed on the second syllable, like *inspect.*
The noun *suspect* is stressed on the first syllable.

**Complements**

**suspect _____ believe to be guilty of / the fault of**

**Object**

- The police suspect a local gang.
- You have no reason to suspect him.
- The garage mechanic suspects the car's oxygen sensor.

**Passive**

- A faulty power supply is suspected.
- No one would suspect her of drug abuse.

**Object + of Object**

- The cops suspect him of murder.
- Doctors suspect inflammation to increase the risk of heart attacks.

**Object + Infinitive**

- George suspected Donald to have leaked the memo to the press.
- We suspect a neighbor of trampling our flower bed.
- Who would suspect Grandma of hiding candy around her house?

**suspect _____ consider likely/true**

**Object**

- Researchers suspect a link between diabetes and Alzheimer's disease.
- The investigator suspected fraud.

**That-Clause**

- I suspect that you are right.
- We suspected that the builder was overcharging us.
- The doctor suspected that Kathy might have torn the cartilage in her knee.
- No one could have suspected that the loans were so risky.
swear | swears · swore · have sworn

### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>swears</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**He swears that he knew nothing about it.**

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am swearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are swearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is swearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**They are swearing that they are innocent.**

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>swore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>swore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>swore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The witness swore to tell the truth.**

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was swearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were swearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>were swearing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The soldiers were swearing and yelling at us.**

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had sworn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were sworn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>were sworn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The appropriate oaths were sworn during the ceremony.**

### COMPLEMENTS

- **swear** use offensive language, usually in anger
  - He swore under his breath.
  - Please don't swear around the children.
  - It was enough to make one swear!
- **swear** promise, vow, pledge, state very seriously
  - He swore the oath of office.
  - I swore a solemn promise.
  - Peter swore his undying love to Héloïse.
  - The nobles all swore their allegiance to the king.
  - The oath was sworn and witnessed.
  - I swear to do it.
  - Criminals always swear to never commit another crime.
  - He swears to mend the error of his ways.
  - “I swear to tell the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth.” [Common Courtroom Oath]
  - I swear that we were not the cause of the accident.
  - The defendant swore that he only shot in self-defense.
  - The kids all swore that they didn’t let the dog out.
  - “I do solemnly swear that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States...” [Oath of Office]
- **swear at** curse at
- **swear by** have great faith in
  - Trudy swears by yoga.
- **swear** sep in administer an oath to
  - The Chief Justice of the Supreme Court swears in the President of the United States.
  - The witness was sworn in by the bailiff.
- **swear off** promise to quit
  - Randi has sworn off dieting.

### PHRASAL VERBS

- **swear at** curse at
- **swear by** have great faith in
- **swear** sep in administer an oath to
  - The Chief Justice of the Supreme Court swears in the President of the United States.
  - The witness was sworn in by the bailiff.
- **swear off** promise to quit
  - Randi has sworn off dieting.

### EXPRESSIONS

- **swear** to secrecy cause to promise not to repeat a secret
  - Annette swore me to secrecy about her background.
  - I wouldn’t swear to it, but I think Elvis is still alive.
- **swear** to it be absolutely certain about something [usually negative]
Present

I sweat we sweat you sweat he/she/it sweats
you are sweating you are sweating
he/she/it is sweating they are sweating

Past

I sweated we sweated you sweated you sweated
he/she/it sweated they sweated

I am sweating we are sweating
you are sweating you are sweating
he/she/it is sweating they are sweating

I am really sweating tomorrow’s exam.

Future

I will sweat we will sweat you will sweat
you will be sweating they will be sweating

They will have sweated we will have sweated
you will have been sweating they will have been sweating

They sweated so much they felt faint.

Past Passive

I was sweated we were sweated you were sweated you were sweated
he/she/it was sweated they were sweated

The wrestlers were sweated until they got down to 190 pounds.

COMPLEMENTS

**sweat** perspire

Everyone in the hot office was sweating like crazy.
I always sweat when I work out.
He sweats so much that he has to change his clothes after lunch.

**sweat** form drops of water

The bottles of water began to sweat.
The plaster walls were actually sweating in the humid air.
The cheese is sweating and needs to be refrigerated.

**sweat** be worried/nervous

The police let him sweat overnight.
Don’t sweat. Everything will be okay.
They are going to make him sweat until he tells what happened.

**sweat** cause to perspire through exertion

**OBJECT**
The coach wants to sweat the football players at every practice.
The training session had sweat everybody.

**PASSIVE**
The horses were sweat by the trainers and then allowed to slowly cool off.

**sweat** be worried/nervous about

**OBJECT**
Noel was sweating the job interview.
Everyone sweats the final exam.

**OVER OBJECT**
Maureen sweated over her English literature grade.
Ruth was sweating over the upcoming conference in Montreal.

**sweat** work very hard on

**OVER OBJECT**
The candidate sweated over the wording of his acceptance speech.
Jeffrey sweated all day over his essay.

PHRASAL VERBS

**sweat** **sep** off lose [an amount of weight] by exercising

Angie sweated off 22 pounds in two months.

**EXPRESSIONS**

**sweat blood** work very hard

She was willing to sweat blood for a spot on the Olympic team.

**sweat bullets** be extremely worried/nervous

Poor Leroy was sweating bullets outside the principal’s office.
### Present Progressive

- **I** am sweeping
- **you** are sweeping
- **he/she/it** is sweeping
- **you** are sweeping
- **they** are sweeping

*He is sweeping the leaves into the gutter.*

*She is sweeping the front porch.*

### Past Progressive

- **I** was sweeping
- **you** were sweeping
- **he/she/it** was sweeping
- **you** were sweeping
- **they** were sweeping

*The Giants swept the three-game series.*

*The incoming tide was sweeping across the bay.*

### Present Perfect

- **I** have swept
- **you** have swept
- **he/she/it** has swept
- **they** have swept

*I have swept the broom.*

*They have swept the leaves.*

### Future Perfect

- **I** will have swept
- **you** will have swept
- **he/she/it** will have swept
- **they** will have swept

*I will have swept the room.*

*They will have swept the garden.*

### Past Passive

- **I** was swept
- **you** were swept
- **he/she/it** was swept
- **they** were swept

*The room was swept this morning.*

*The garage was swept already.*

### Complements

- **sweep** clean with a broom/brush
  - **object**
  
  You need to sweep the kitchen floor.
  
  I'll sweep the carpet in the entryway.
  
  The garage has already been swept.

- **sweep** clear away
  - **object + adverb of place to/from**
  
  The room was swept this morning.
  
  The room was swept this morning.

- **sweep** carry along in a continuous motion
  - **object + adverb of place to/from**
  
  The cook swept a greasy cloth over the lunch counter.
  
  The cook swept a greasy cloth over the lunch counter.

- **sweep** move quickly
  - **adverb of place to/from**
  
  The rumor swept through the crowd.
  
  A gust of rain swept down the empty street.

- **sweep** search
  - **object**
  
  The volunteers swept the woods, looking for the lost children.
  
  Technicians swept the office for hidden electronic devices.

- **sweep** win all that can be won in
  - **object**
  
  Our party swept the fall election.
  
  Our party swept the fall election.

### Phrasal Verbs

- **sweep along/down/in/off/out/past/up/etc.** sweep in a specified direction
  - The queen swept in with all her attendants.
  
  The queen swept in with all her attendants.

- **sweep along/aside/away/back/in/off/out/past/up/etc.** sweep [something] in a specified direction
  - The Russian revolution swept the old system away overnight.
  
  The Russian revolution swept the old system away overnight.
swell | swells · swelled · have swelled
swell | swells · swelled · have swollen

PRESENT
I swell we swell
you swell you swell
he/she/it swells they swell

* My ankles swell if I stand too long.

PAST
I swelled we swelled
you swelled you swelled
he/she/it swelled they swelled

* The sails swelled in the wind.

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has swelled
PAST PERFECT ... had swelled

PAST PASSIVE
I was swollen we were swollen
you were swollen you were swollen
he/she/it was swollen they were swollen

* The river was swollen by weeks of rain.

COMPLEMENTS

swell | become larger/stronger, expand
My hands swelled from the heat.
The crowd in front of the gate was swolling by the minute.
The orchestra music was swelling and the lights dimmed.
The balloon swelled and began to lift.

swell | cause to become larger/stronger, cause to expand

OBJECT
The snowmelt had swollen all the lakes.
The bad news swelled the rumors about layoffs.
The pump quickly swelled the balloons to full size.

PASSIVE
My lymph nodes were swollen.

swell | become filled [with an emotion]

with OBJECT
Ebenezer’s heart swelled with the Christmas spirit.
Tiny Tim swelled with gratitude.
The cyclist was swelling with confidence after winning the Tour de France.
### Present Progressive
- I am swimming
- You are swimming
- He/she/it is swimming

### Past Progressive
- I was swimming
- You were swimming
- He/she/it was swimming

### Present Perfect
- I have swum
- You have swum
- He/she/it has swum

### Past Perfect
- I had swum
- You had swum
- He/she/it had swum

### Future Perfect
- I will have swum
- You will have swum
- He/she/it will have swum

### Future Progressive
- I will be swimming
- You will be swimming
- He/she/it will be swimming

### Past Passive
- He was swum
- They were swum

### Complements
- **swim** travel through water by moving one's arms and legs
- **swim** be dizzy

### Phrasal Verbs
- **swim along/around/away/in/off/out/up** travel through water by moving in a specified direction
- **sink or swim** fail or succeed
- **swim against the current/tide** act in a way opposite to others

### Expressions
- The English Channel was first swum in 1875.
### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am swinging</td>
<td>we are</td>
<td>swinging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are swinging</td>
<td>you are</td>
<td>swinging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is swinging</td>
<td>they are</td>
<td>swinging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* You are swinging the bat too late.

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was swinging</td>
<td>we were</td>
<td>swinging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were swinging</td>
<td>you were</td>
<td>swinging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was swinging</td>
<td>they were</td>
<td>swinging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* He swung his racket and missed.

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>had swung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was swung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were swung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was swung</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The heavy beam was swung into place.

### Complements

**swing**  
sway/rock back and forth

- The gate was swinging in the wind.
- The earthquake caused the chandeliers to swing.
- The dancers were swinging in time to the music.

**swing**  
change suddenly

- The storm winds swung crazily from one direction to another.
- His moods were swinging more and more wildly.
- Opinion polls were swinging all over the map.

**swing**  
strike at something in a sweeping motion

- The batter swings and misses.
- The tired boxers were swinging wildly.
- A good golfer swings with his hips, not just with his arms.

**swing**  
move ([something]) in a sweeping motion

**Adverb of Place To/From**

- The cowboy swung **into the saddle**.
- The children swung **onto the wagon**.
- I swung **into the driver's seat**.

**Object**

- He swung **the bat** and drove the ball into left field.
- The player swung **a punch** when the referee wasn't looking.
- He swung **the golf club** and topped the ball.

**Object + Adverb of Place To/From**

- I swung **my leg over the top rail** and jumped.
- Larry swung **his suitcase onto the bed**.
- She swung **her arm around my shoulder**.
- The kids swung **the rope over a limb**.

**swing**  
influence decisively

**Object**

- The senator thought his ad could swing **the election**.
- We hoped to swing **enough undecided voters** to win.

### Phrasal Verbs

**swing around/down/in/off/out/etc.**

- swing **in a specified direction**

- swing **around/down/in/off/out/etc.**

- swing **[something] in a specified direction**

- **swing by/over**  
visit briefly

- **swing by/over ____ visit briefly**

- The cowboy swung down from the saddle.
- The path swings off to the right at the top of the hill.
- The knight swung his sword around, and everyone stepped back.
- Susan will swing by if she has a chance.
- I'll swing by Grandma's on the way to the store.
- Can you swing over to the drugstore and buy some aspirin?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Irregular Forms</th>
<th>Example Sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>I take</td>
<td>He took his daughter’s hand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you take</td>
<td>Our ID cards were taken by the police.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it takes</td>
<td>Frank took a job at the radio station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we take</td>
<td>Gerry took a jar of olives from the refrigerator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you take</td>
<td>You should always take your passport when you travel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it takes</td>
<td>Take an umbrella in case it rains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we take</td>
<td>Can you take the kids with you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you take</td>
<td>I usually take my lunch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it takes</td>
<td>Would you take these books to the library?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we take</td>
<td>Amos took the package to the post office.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you take</td>
<td>This bus takes riders to the stadium.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it takes</td>
<td>Bill is taking Fran to the dance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we take</td>
<td>This path takes you to the top of Buttimer Hill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you take</td>
<td>We can take the elevator or the stairs—you choose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it takes</td>
<td>My parents once took the Queen Mary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we take</td>
<td>Let’s take the scenic route.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you take</td>
<td>We took Route 66 from Chicago to Los Angeles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it takes</td>
<td>The kids took a shortcut through the woods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we take</td>
<td>They took the bus home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you take</td>
<td>Gentlemen, please take your seats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it takes</td>
<td>The two teams are taking the field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we take</td>
<td>Let’s take a 10-minute break.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you take</td>
<td>Thomas always takes an afternoon nap.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it takes</td>
<td>We took a nice walk in the park.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we take</td>
<td>Bill took a class in income tax preparation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
take _____ eat, drink, swallow
OBJECT
I’ll take a black coffee and two donuts, please.
I took an aspirin for my headache.

take _____ capture, win
OBJECT
After a brief fight, the soldiers took the fort.
The Cardinals took three out of four games from the Mets.

take _____ subscribe to, rent
OBJECT
They take several newspapers and magazines.
We took an apartment in the city.

take _____ steal
OBJECT
Somebody took my wallet.
People often take newspapers without paying for them.

take _____ require, use up
OBJECT + INFINITIVE
It took a long time to repair the leak.
It takes $50 to fill the truck with gas.
They took two days to drive to Dallas.
It takes a lot of courage to go skydiving.

take _____ endure, suffer
OBJECT
Football players take a lot of physical punishment.
I can’t take this heat and humidity.

take _____ photograph
OBJECT
Uncle Cecil took pictures during the family reunion.

take _____ interpret
OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER
She took my joke seriously.

---

PHRASAL VERBS

**take **

Grandmother took us along to the store.
The elevator takes you down to the parking garage.

**take**

The officer took down his address and phone number.
Volunteers took the political signs down after the election.
Betty took me for my older brother.
We could eat at Lombardo's and take in a movie.
Today we'll take in the zoo and the art museum.

**take**

My husband takes in stray cats from the neighborhood.
Our plane will take off at 3:05 p.m.
Sales of used cars have taken off like a rocket.
The dealer took 50% off because the table was scratched.
My company took 30 new employees on in March.
Sorry, I just can’t take on another project.
The surgeon took Dad's gallbladder out.

**take**

A recent college graduate took over the programming department.
Khalil has really taken to calligraphy.
Susan has taken to Leonard in a big way.
Your printing presses are taking up the whole basement!
Meetings took up the governor's entire afternoon.
Stephanie has taken up knitting.
**Present**

I talk
you talk
he/she/it talks

**Present Progressive**

I am talking
you are talking
he/she/it is talking

*He talks when he should be listening.*

**Past**

I talked
you talked
he/she/it talked

**Past Progressive**

I was talking
you were talking
he/she/it was talking

*They talked for the first time in years.*

**Present Perfect**

I have talked
we have talked

**Future**

I will talk
we will talk

**Past Perfect**

I was talked
we were talked

**Future Perfect**

I will have talked
we will have talked

*The problem was talked over before the committee met.*

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**talk**  
*say words, speak*

After his stroke, he couldn't talk.  
When do children first learn to talk?  
The ability to talk is uniquely human.

**talk**  
*converse*

We have to talk.  
My kids spend all their time talking on their cell phones.

**talk**  
*gossip*

The whole school was talking.  
Be careful, or you will have people talking.

**talk**  
*reveal secret/confidential information*

I don't believe he would ever talk.  
We can't afford to let him talk.

**talk**  
*use [a particular language] in speaking*

The waiters are talking in Italian.  
They were talking a language I did not know.

**talk**  
*discuss*

Let's talk business.

**talk**  
*communicate the significance of [used only in the progressive tenses]*

They were talking big money.  
He was talking a major crisis in the near future.  
I am talking big losses here.

**talk**  
*convince [to do / not to do]*

The staff talked Sam into running for Congress.  
Dad talked me out of enlisting in the Army.

### PHRASAL VERBS

**talk [someone] down**  
*convince [someone] to sell for [less money]*

She talked the salesman down $1,700.

**talk SEP out/over/through**  
*discuss fully*

The engineers talked the difficulties over.  
You need to talk this through with your teacher.

**talk [someone] through**  
*explain the steps of to [someone]*

The receptionist talked me through the application form.

**talk SEP up**  
*promote*

She is talking up her plan to help families pay for college.
### teach

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>teaches</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *He teaches computer science.*

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *I taught in Spain for a year.*

**Present Perfect**

...have | has taught

**Past Perfect**

...had taught

- *English was taught beginning in the earliest grades.*

---

**Complements**

- **teach** instruct professionally
  - I have been teaching for ten years.
  - Her sister teaches at Osaka University.
  - I would like to teach.

- **teach** provide training/instruction in [a skill, topic]
  - object
  - He teaches martial arts.
  - I would like to teach English.
  - Experience teaches moderation in all things.
  - indirect object + direct object
  - She taught them the names of the constellations.
  - He taught first-year students world history.
  - I taught myself the basics of geometry.
  - to paraphrase
  - She taught the names of the constellations to them.
  - He taught world history to first-year students.
  - I taught the basics of geometry to myself.

- **teach** provide training/instruction to
  - object
  - Kathy teaches seventh graders.
  - She only teaches graduate students.
  - He teaches management trainees.
  - object + infinitive
  - I taught the kids to drive.
  - The army taught them to be disciplined.
  - passive
  - We were taught to think for ourselves.
  - Their religion teaches how to act.
  - (object +) wh-infinitive
  - The class teaches students how to write a resume.
  - The book taught investors what to look for in a stock.

- **teach** provide [a particular philosophy/knowledge] to
  - (object +) that-clause
  - History teaches that the pen is mightier than the sword.
  - My parents taught us that hard work never hurt anyone.
  - The instructor taught the class that a 60-40 mixture of stocks and bonds is best.

- **teach** a lesson show [someone] the correct way to behave
  - His mother taught him a lesson on the value of money by making him work for his allowance.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense</th>
<th>verb form</th>
<th>example sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I tear we tear</td>
<td>He tears stamps off envelopes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you tear you tear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it tears they tear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I tore we tore</td>
<td>The ligament tore with a “popping” sound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you tore you tore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it tore they tore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present Perfect</strong></td>
<td>… have</td>
<td>have torn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>… has</td>
<td>has torn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Perfect</strong></td>
<td>… had</td>
<td>had torn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past Passive</strong></td>
<td>I was torn</td>
<td>A huge hole was torn in the building by the explosion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we were torn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were torn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was torn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The irregular verb *tear*, which rhymes with *care*, is presented here. The regular verb *tear*, which rhymes with *deer*, means “to cry.”

### Complements

- **tear** rip, come apart
  - Darn it! My new jeans are tearing.
  - The canvas will tear if there is a high wind.
  - I tore the envelope trying to open it.
  - A big gust of wind tore our only sail.
  - The documents had been torn in shipping.
  - The artillery fire tore a huge gap in our right flank.
  - A hole was torn in his shield by a spear.
  - The kids tore out of the room.
  - The horses tore around the last curve.

- **tear** ____ cause to rip / come apart
  - make/punch [a hole, opening] in
  - move with force/speed
  - damage [a muscle, ligament] by overstretched
  - damage greatly [used only in the passive]
  - around/away/down/off/out/etc.
  - move with force/speed in a specified direction
  - pull in a specified direction

### Phrasal Verbs

- **tear around/away/down/off/out/etc.** move with force/speed in a specified direction
  - The limousine tore away from the curb.
  - The neighbor’s dog always tears out after moving cars.
  - Tear the coupons apart and organize them.
  - Carpenters tore up the old carpet.

- **tear into ____** begin to do/eat/etc. forcefully
  - Jackie is tearing into remodeling the kitchen.
  - The girls really tore into the peanut butter.
  - The boss tore into an employee who was late.
  - The manager tore up the singer’s contract and offered her 10 times the money.
### tell reveal secret/confidential information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>reveal</td>
<td>secret/confidential information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tell have a definite effect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>have a definite effect</td>
<td>effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tell know the outcome/result [used in questions and negative sentences]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>know the outcome/result</td>
<td>outcome/result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tell put into words, express

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>put into words, express</td>
<td>words, express</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tell inform

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE</th>
<th>PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>inform</td>
<td>inform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tell order, command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT + INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>order, command</td>
<td>order, command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tell recognize, determine with certainty [usually with can or could]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>THAT-CLAUSE</th>
<th>PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>recognize</td>
<td>determine with certainty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### tell separate off scold, criticize

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT + INFINITIVE</th>
<th>PHRASE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>separate off</td>
<td>separate off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
<td>will tell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PHRASAL VERBS

**tell sep. off** scold, criticize

She told my brother off for not keeping his room clean.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I tend</th>
<th>you tend</th>
<th>he/she/it tends</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we tend</td>
<td>you tend</td>
<td>they tend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- John tends to worry about everything.

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I tended</th>
<th>you tended</th>
<th>he/she/it tended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we tended</td>
<td>you tended</td>
<td>they tended</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He tended to get jumpy if he ate chocolate.

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have tended</th>
<th>you have tended</th>
<th>he/she/it has tended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had tended</th>
<th>you had tended</th>
<th>he/she/it had tended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am tending</th>
<th>you are tending</th>
<th>he/she/it is tending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- We are tending to eat out less often.

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was tending</th>
<th>you were tending</th>
<th>he/she/it was tending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- They were tending west along the river.

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I will tend</th>
<th>you will tend</th>
<th>he/she/it will tend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I will have tended</th>
<th>you will have tended</th>
<th>he/she/it will have tended</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

#### tend ____ be likely

**INFINITIVE**

- We all tend to favor our dominant hand.
- He tends to get rattled when he has to speak in public.
- That jacket always tends to ride up in back.
- I tend to get a headache if I work at the computer too long.
- Most right-handed golfers tend to pull the ball to the right.
- We tend not to trust politicians.

#### tend ____ go/move in a certain way

**ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

- The river tends southward as it crosses the plain.
- Richard tends toward an urban lifestyle.
- Valerie's taste tends toward avant-garde.
### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>test</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>I test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>test</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>tests</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they test</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The school tests every incoming student.*

### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am testing</td>
<td>we are testing</td>
<td>I am testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are testing</td>
<td>you are testing</td>
<td>you are testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is testing</td>
<td>they are testing</td>
<td>he/she/it is testing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We are testing the latest software.*

### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>tested</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>I tested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>tested</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you tested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>tested</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they tested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I tested the antenna’s reception.*

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was testing</td>
<td>we were testing</td>
<td>I was testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were testing</td>
<td>you were testing</td>
<td>you were testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was testing</td>
<td>they were testing</td>
<td>he/she/it was testing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The vet was testing the cattle for mad cow disease.*

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had tested</td>
<td>I was tested</td>
<td>I had tested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>tested</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were tested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>tested</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they were tested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*My patience was severely tested by his rambling phone calls.*

### Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was tested</td>
<td>we were tested</td>
<td>I was tested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were tested</td>
<td>you were tested</td>
<td>you were tested</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was tested</td>
<td>they were tested</td>
<td>he/she/it was tested</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complements

**test**

Administer examinations

* I will be testing all afternoon.
  How often do we need to test?*

**test** _____ check the quality/suitability/performance/condition of **OBJECT**

*They tested the paint for traces of lead.
  You should always test the temperature of the water in the kids’ bath.*

The state tests each fourth, eighth, and twelfth grader.

The doctor tested my reflexes.

I tested the brakes before we started down the mountain.

We tested all drug addicts for HIV infection.

Every qualifying runner will be tested for drugs.

**PASSIVE**

Test _____ put under extreme stress **OBJECT**

*Carol would test the patience of a saint.
  Such behavior would test any marriage.*

The series of defeats severely tested the army’s resolve.

Even his good nature was tested by their rudeness.

### Expressions

**test the water(s)** determine the level of support/approval for a new product/planning/proposal

*We were testing the water with an online version of the dictionary.
  Senator Blather is testing the waters for a possible presidential bid.*
thank | thanks · thanked · have thanked

**PRESENT**
I thank you thank he/she/it thanks
you thank you thank they thank
he/she/it thanks they thank

* The senator always thanks the voters.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am thanking you are thanking he/she/it is thanking
you are thanking you are thanking they are thanking
he/she/it is thanking they are thanking

* They are thanking all the volunteers.

**PAST**
I thanked you thanked he/she/it thanked
you thanked you thanked they thanked
he/she/it thanked they thanked

* I thanked them again for helping us.

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was thanked you were thanked he/she/it was thanked
you were thanked you were thanked they were thanked
he/she/it was thanked they were thanked

* We were thanking the sponsors.

**PAST PERFECT**
... have | has thanked
**PAST PERFECT**
... had thanked

**FUTURE**
... will thank
**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
... will be thanking
**FUTURE PERFECT**
... will have thanked

* We were thanked for the flowers we sent.

### COMPLEMENTS

**thank** | express gratitude to

**OBJECT (+ for OBJECT)**
Please thank them on behalf of all of us.
I would like to thank you for all your help.
We thanked our friends for all their work.
Who should we thank for the lovely gift?
I have my teachers to thank for my success.

**PASSIVE**
Our hosts must be properly thanked.
The president thanked us for volunteering our time.
The group will be thanked for donating time and money to the project.
I would like to thank whoever arranged the meeting.
They thanked whoever could take a minute to talk to them.
We will thank whomever you got to help my parents.

**thank** | blame [used ironically]

**OBJECT (+ for OBJECT)**
Look at this mess! I guess I can thank you, kids.
We have Greg to thank for the mix-up.
You can thank my parents for choosing a Bambi party theme.

**thank** [one's] lucky stars

be grateful for one’s luck
Gretchen should thank her lucky stars.

**thank God/goodness/heaven(s)**

I/we are grateful
Thank goodness I had an extra computer battery.
Thank heavens that winter is over.
think | thinks · thought · have thought

**PRESENT**
- I think
- you think
- he/she/it thinks
  - *He thinks that the movie begins at 7:45.*
- we think
- you think
- they think

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am thinking
- you are thinking
- he/she/it is thinking
  - *Don’t rush me—I’m thinking.*
- we are thinking
- you are thinking
- they are thinking

**PAST**
- I thought
- you thought
- he/she/it thought
  - *I thought long and hard about it.*
- we thought
- you thought
- they thought

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was thinking
- you were thinking
- he/she/it was thinking
  - *They were thinking that the worst had happened.*
- we were thinking
- you were thinking
- they were thinking

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have thought
- ... has thought

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had thought

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was thought
- you were thought
- he/she/it was thought
  - *The accident was thought to have been caused by pilot error.*
- we were thought
- they were thought

**COMPLEMENTS**
- think ___ use one’s mind, reason
  - Think twice before you do anything.
  - “I think, therefore I am.” [RENÉ DESCARTES]
- think ____ believe, expect
  - THAT-CLAUSE
    - I thought that dinner was good, but a little too heavy.
    - Do they think that the flight will leave on time?
- think ____ consider, judge
  - OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN
    - The reviewer thought the book (to be) a bit of a dud.
    - The public thought Clark (to be) a dashing hero.
  - OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE
    - Everyone thought Thomas (to be) promising.
    - They thought the idea (to be) ready to present to the board.
  - PASSIVE
    - The car was thought (to be) quite overpriced.
  - OBJECT + INFINITIVE
    - I thought him to have more sense than that.
  - PASSIVE
    - He was thought to own several Renoirs.
- think ____ remember [used in questions and negative sentences, often with can or could]
  - OF OBJECT
    - I can’t think of the girl’s name.
  - INFINITIVE
    - Did you think to lock the back door?
    - Who thought to bring some insect repellent?
  - WH-CLAUSE
    - We couldn’t think what his name was.
    - I couldn’t think where we were supposed to meet the group.
  - WH-INFINITIVE
    - I couldn’t think what to say.
    - Aunt Polly couldn’t think where to turn next.
- think ____ contemplate, consider
  - OF/ABOUT OBJECT
    - The board was thinking of Rex for secretary.
    - She thinks about him all the time.
  - OF/ABOUT PRESENT PARTICIPLE
    - Anne was thinking of asking Wentworth to the concert.
    - We were thinking about ordering Chinese for dinner.

**PHRASAL VERBS**
- think _sep_ over consider carefully
  - I need to think your proposal over before making a decision.
- think _sep_ up invent, plan
  - We thought up a better way to manage inventory.
  - They thought up a clever way to trick Bartholomew and Jacob.
threaten | threatens | threatened | have threatened

**Present**
- I threaten
- you threaten
- he/she/it threatens

**Future**
- I will threaten
- you will threaten
- he/she/it will threaten

**Past**
- I threatened
- you threatened
- he/she/it threatened

**Past Perfect**
- I had threatened
- you had threatened
- he/she/it had threatened

**Passive**
- I was threatened
- you were threatened
- he/she/it was threatened

**Present Progressive**
- I am threatening
- you are threatening
- he/she/it is threatening

**Past Progressive**
- I was threatening
- you were threatening
- he/she/it was threatening

**Future Progressive**
- I will be threatening
- you will be threatening
- he/she/it will be threatening

**Future Perfect**
- I will have threatened
- you will have threatened
- he/she/it will have threatened

**Past Passive**
- I was threatened
- you were threatened
- he/she/it was threatened

**COMPLEMENTS**

**threaten**

- state one’s intention to harm/punish / perform a harmful/punitive act
- object
- The gang threatened the shop owners.
- The pirates were threatening the shippers.

- passive
- The students were threatened by the vice principal.

- (object +) that-clause
- The police threatened that they would use tear gas.
- The sergeant threatened the recruits that they would do guard duty.

- object + with object
- The sergeant threatened the recruits with guard duty.
- The principal threatened the students with suspension.

- object + with present participle
- We threatened the kids with unplugging the TV.

- infinitive
- The outraged patient threatened to sue the hospital.
- I threatened to take my business elsewhere.
- The renters threatened to stop paying the landlord unless the leaks were repaired.

**threaten**

- endanger

- object
- The weather was threatening our plans for a picnic.
- The broken finger threatened his career as a pianist.

- passive
- His health had been threatened by years of smoking.

**threaten**

- seem likely [to cause harm]

- infinitive
- The virus threatened to spread to other villages.
- The storm threatened to cut off the only road across the mountains.
- The freeze threatened to ruin the peach crop.
throw ______ put suddenly [in a place, condition]
OBJECT + into OBJECT

The sheriff threw the suspects into jail.  
His remarks threw the audience into hysteria.

PHRASAL VERBS

The players were throwing a Frisbee around.
Would you throw the ball back?
He threw his head back and laughed.
He threw his book bag down.
He throws money around like it grows on trees.
Don't throw the lamp away; I'm going to fix it.
Jan threw in the idea of working at a soup kitchen.
They will throw in a medium pizza for free.
His foreign accent threw the police off.
I'll throw on a jacket and be ready to go.
We won't throw the plastic out; we'll recycle it instead.
The teacher threw him out for using profanity.
The judge will throw the convict's testimony out.
Dave is always throwing out suggestions.
We can throw together some pasta for supper.
Our engineering department can throw a scale model together in a week.
He threw up on the way home from the ballpark.
A developer threw up a flimsy apartment building on the corner.

EXPRESSIONS

The company threw us a curve by switching medical insurance plans.
Johnny throws a fit when I ask him to wash his hands.
Scientists threw some light on the human genome.
The committee threw cold water on our ideas for reducing waste.
The program glitch threw the programmers for a loop.
Frank threw good money after bad by buying 100 more shares of the worthless stock.
The firm is throwing in the towel after losing its three biggest customers.
After losing eight straight Solitaire games, Dad threw his hands up and decided to read the newspaper.
Mid-level managers love to throw their weight around when the boss is gone.
Paul threw himself into basketweaving.
The district attorney threw the book at the alleged child molester.
throw | throws · threw · have thrown

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>throw</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>throw</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>throws</td>
<td>they throw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He throws great parties.*

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>they throw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I threw another log on the fire.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>has thrown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We have thrown.*

**FUTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>throw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>have thrown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*A rope was thrown to the people in the canoe.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**throw**

toss/hurl a projectile

He doesn’t throw with much force. If you want to play baseball, you have to learn how to throw.

**throw**

toss, hurl

Kids love to throw rocks.

**throw**

direct, cast

The lantern threw light around the barn.

**throw**

toss, give

He threw the dog a bone.

**throw**

host [an event]

The church threw a potluck dinner.

**Irregular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>throw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>threw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>throwing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

He threw the dog a bone.

We threw my sister a going-away party.
thrust | thrusts · thrust · have thrust

PRESENT

I thrust  
you thrust  
he/she/it thrusts

we thrust  
you thrust  
he/she/it is thrusting

• He thrusts the note in his pocket and sighs.

PAST

I thrust  
you thrust  
he/she/it thrust

we thrust  
you thrust  
he/she/it was thrusting

• I thrust through the crowd frantically.

PRESENT PERFECT

... have | has thrust

PAST PERFECT

... had thrust

PAST PASSIVE

I was thrust  
you were thrust  
he/she/it was thrust

we were thrust  
you were thrust  
they were thrust

• A gun was thrust into my hand.

COMPLEMENTS

thrust | push forward suddenly

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The soldier thrust a sword through his shield.

Batman thrust his elbow into the villain's stomach.

The host thrust the children into the limelight.

Fame had been thrust on her at an early age.

thrust | move forward forcefully

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

A tugboat was thrusting through the waves.

Her scream thrust through the still night air.

thrust | jut, extend out

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

A long wharf thrust into the river.

A diving board thrust over the water.

PHRASAL VERBS

thrust back/down/in/out/up/etc. | move forcefully in a specified direction

The boy's tongue thrust out as he sighted down the barrel.

Daffodils were thrusting up on the first warm day of spring.

The police thrust the protesters aside.

He opened his briefcase and thrust the report in.
PRESENT
I tie we tie you tie you tie he/she/it ties they tie

* A hospital gown ties in the back.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
I am tying we are tying you are tying you are tying he/she/it is tying they are tying

* We are tying bows for the Christmas tree.

PAST
I tied we tied you tied you tied he/she/it tied they tied

* I tied my shoelaces before going out.

PAST PROGRESSIVE
I was tying we were tying you were tying you were tying he/she/it was tying they were tying

* They were tying the load so it wouldn't move.

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has tied
PAST PERFECT ... had tied

PAST PASSIVE
I was tied we were tied you were tied you were tied he/she/it was tied they were tied

* The deaths were tied to a faulty space heater.

COMPLEMENTS

tie be fastened by string/cord/rope/etc. The apron ties in front.
These shoes don't tie; they fasten with Velcro.
tie have the same score/rank At this point, the best we could do is tie.
We want to win, not just tie.
Mary Kay tied with Jill for first place.
Mary Kay and Jill tied for first place.
tie ______ fasten/bind/fix with string/cord/rope/etc.
OBJECT
Grayson just learned to tie his own shoes.
Can you help me tie this package?
The old box was tied with heavy twine.
They tied his hands behind him.
We tied the dresser on the back of the truck.
The kids tied the wagon to the bicycle.
The volleyball net was tied between two trees.

PASSIVE
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

PASSIVE

tie ______ form [into a knot/bow]
OBJECT
He tied a perfect square knot.
The kids were tying ribbons.
Can you tie a bowtie?

tie ______ connect, relate
OBJECT + TO OBJECT

PASSIVE
Experts tie many cancer deaths to secondhand smoke.
All currencies are tied to the U.S. dollar.
Our economic future is tied to the global market.

PHRASAL VERBS

tie sep down/in/off/together/up/etc.
fasten/bind/fix in a specified position

Phrasal verbs
tie sep down/up limit the freedom of,
cause to be busy, block

The campers tied the tent down.
The robbers tied up all of the hostages.
The new puppy tied them down on weekends.
I am tied down all day tomorrow.
Meetings will tie me up all morning.
The boss will be tied up until 4 P.M.
We were tied up in rush-hour traffic.
tie in (with _____) be related/connected
(to [something])

Your story ties in with what the police already know.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td>I touch&lt;br&gt;you touch&lt;br&gt;he/she/it touches&lt;br&gt;* This problem touches everyone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I am touching&lt;br&gt;you are touching&lt;br&gt;he/she/it is touching&lt;br&gt;* The tree branches are touching the roof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
<td>I touched&lt;br&gt;you touched&lt;br&gt;he/she/it touched&lt;br&gt;* He touched a button and the door closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Progressive</strong></td>
<td>I was touching&lt;br&gt;you were touching&lt;br&gt;he/she/it was touching&lt;br&gt;* The hem of her skirt was touching the ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td>I have touched&lt;br&gt;you have touched&lt;br&gt;he/she/it has touched&lt;br&gt;* Everyone was touched by her performance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>I will touch&lt;br&gt;you will touch&lt;br&gt;he/she/it will touch&lt;br&gt;* The recession has touched every business in the county.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td>I will have touched&lt;br&gt;you will have touched&lt;br&gt;he/she/it will have touched&lt;br&gt;* They were touched by his loyalty.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **touch** come into contact<br>The two boats touched with a bump.<br>The wires must have touched, causing a short circuit.<br>Their hands touched briefly.
- **touch** place one's hand / body part on<br>He touched Jerry's shoulder and whispered something in his ear.<br>He was so tall he could reach up and touch the ceiling. Don't touch the wet paint on the cabinet.<br>Their hands were touching the back of the seat in front of me.
- **touch** consume, handle, disturb [often negative]<br>I haven't touched a drink in years.<br>You have hardly touched your dinner.<br>She told her little sister not to touch her stuff.<br>No contractor would touch that job.<br>We haven't touched a penny of our retirement fund. Don't touch a single paper on my desk.<br>Gang members can't be touched by the police.
- **touch** make physical contact with [of inanimate objects]<br>A downed electrical wire touched the automobile and sparked. Don't let the flag touch the ground.
- **touch** affect<br>His music really touches me. The recession has touched every business in the county.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

- **touch down** land [of a plane]<br>Our flight will touch down in Cincinnati at 8:05 P.M.
- **touch off** cause, ignite<br>Bad banking practices touched off a financial crisis. A spark from an electric motor touched off the explosion.
- **touch up** improve the appearance of<br>We need to touch up the paint on this table.
- **touch (up)on** mention briefly<br>The speaker barely touched on the need for stricter regulations.
### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am training</td>
<td>he/she/it trains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are training</td>
<td>they train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is training</td>
<td>they are training</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- He trains at least three times a week.
- I am training to run my first marathon.

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>trained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>trained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>trained</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was training</td>
<td>trained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were training</td>
<td>trained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was training</td>
<td>trained</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Ralph trained his staff really well.
- We were training in the old gym.

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was trained</td>
<td>trained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were trained</td>
<td>trained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was trained</td>
<td>trained</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The dogs were trained to assist handicapped people.

### Complements

- **Train** prepare for a profession/job
  - My doctor trained at Johns Hopkins School of Medicine.
  - The football players train all summer.
  - Even superior athletes must train.
  - If you want to get better, you have to train harder.

- **Train** teach, coach
  - I train dogs.
  - The camp trains track and field athletes.
  - The school specializes in training young singers.
  - If you want to get better, you have to train harder.

### Expressions

- **Train** [one's] sights on focus on
  - The candidate trained his sights on his opponent.
  - Blanche trained her sights on getting a college scholarship.
travel | travels · traveled · have traveled

**PRESENT**
- I travel
- you travel
- he/she/it travels

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am traveling
- you are traveling
- he/she/it is traveling

*Anne travels a lot in her current job.*

**PAST**
- I traveled
- you traveled
- he/she/it traveled

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was traveling
- you were traveling
- he/she/it was traveling

*We traveled to Cambodia and Vietnam.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has traveled

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had traveled

**PAST PASSIVE**
- it was traveled
- they were traveled

*The old road was traveled by a lot of people.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**travel**
- make a trip/journey

When we retire, we want to travel.
They travel every chance they get.

**travel _____ make a trip/journey**

**ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

(+ ADVERB OF TIME)

The boat travels **from Athens to Genoa**.
The convoy traveled **from Washington to San Francisco**.
We plan to travel **to Southeast Asia this winter**.
They will travel **home after Christmas**.

**ADVERB OF MANNER**

My boss always travels **first-class**.
Vivian has learned to travel **like a pro**.

**travel _____ make a trip/journey in/on/through**

**OBJECT**

We always travel **the back roads**, if we have a choice.
My parents have traveled **the length of the Amalfi Coast**.
The Australian outback is rarely traveled by tourists.

**PASSIVE**

**travel _____ move through time/space**

**ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

**ADVERB OF MANNER**

The pain traveled **across his chest and down his left arm**.
Light waves travel **faster than sound waves**.

**travel _____ be transported**

**ADVERB OF MANNER**

Many local wines travel **poorly**.
The coal is traveling **by barge** on the Mississippi River.

**travel _____ spread, be passed**

**ADVERB OF MANNER**

The news of General Lee's surrender traveled **slowly**.
Rumors travel **at lightning speed**.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**travel along/around/down/over/up/etc. travel in a specified direction**

We traveled around in search of historic sites.
The tour group traveled down to Lisbon.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PRESENT</strong></th>
<th><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I treat</td>
<td>I am treating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you treat</td>
<td>you are treating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it treats</td>
<td>they are treating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He treats his employees very well. *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST</strong></th>
<th><strong>PAST PROGRESSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I treated</td>
<td>I was treating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you treated</td>
<td>you were treating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it treated</td>
<td>they were treating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* I treated my sore finger as best I could. *</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **PRESENT PERFECT** | have | has treated |
| **PAST PERFECT**   | had treated |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was treated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were treated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was treated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* The medical staff was treating a gunshot wound. *</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>treat</th>
<th>pay for someone’s food/entertainment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>put your money away! I’m treating.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He never treats, even when it’s his turn.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandparents love to treat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>treat</th>
<th>pay for / provide [the food/entertainment] of, reward</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He treated the whole office.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The coach treated the team after every game.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children with birthdays were always treated by their classmates.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My best friend treated me to some sushi.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can I treat you to lunch?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The teacher treated us to chocolate chip cookies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jane treated herself to a day at the spa.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>treat</th>
<th>act toward, deal with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object + adverb of manner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The children treated their pets gently.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most cultures treat visitors with great respect.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The staff treated the information very seriously.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The civilians were treated quite roughly by the soldiers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>treat</th>
<th>try to cure/heal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By law, emergency rooms must treat all persons requiring care.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A nurse treated my burned hand.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unusual skin rashes should be treated by a dermatologist.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>treat</th>
<th>discuss in writing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object (+ adverb of manner)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her book treats the period from August to October 1914.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His book treats the issue of global warming with seriousness and urgency.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health care reform was treated very superficially in that article.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>treat</th>
<th>add a cleaning/preserving substance to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object (+ with object)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dave treats his deck every other year.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We treat the deck every spring with a waterproof sealant.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat the ketchup stain with warm soapy water.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The swimming pool water is treated with chlorine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
trust

**PRESENT**
- I trust
- you trust
- he/she/it trusts

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am trusting
- you are trusting
- he/she/it is trusting

*John trusts people more than he should.*

**PAST**
- I trusted
- you trusted
- he/she/it trusted

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was trusting
- you were trusting
- he/she/it was trusting

*Everyone trusted Bernard.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- have | has trusted

**PAST PERFECT**
- had trusted

**FUTURE**
- ... will trust

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**
- ... will be trusting

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- ... will have trusted

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was trusted
- you were trusted
- he/she/it was trusted

*Successful Civil War generals were trusted by their soldiers.*

---

### COMPLEMENTS

**trust**
- believe in someone's/something's trust/reliability/ability
  - Trust, but verify. [Russian proverb]
  - Dishonest people take advantage of the human tendency to trust.
  - Abused children have to learn to trust again.

**trust**
- believe in the truth/reliability/ability of
  - OBJECT
    - We all trusted their assessment of the project's risk.
  - PASSIVE
    - Gold is trusted when paper currencies fail.
  - IN OBJECT
    - The general is trusting in his infantry.
  - WH-CLAUSE
    - Trust what you see with your own eyes, not what you hear.

**trust**
- depend/rely on
  - OBJECT + INFINITIVE
    - We trust you to deliver the message.
    - You can always trust people to act in their own self-interest.
  - PASSIVE
    - Can you be trusted to babysit your little brother this afternoon?

**trust**
- hope, expect [as a polite form of implied question, usually with rising intonation]
  - THAT-CLAUSE
    - I trust that you had pleasant trip.
    - We trust that everything will turn out all right.
    - I trust that the children are well.
    - I trust that your parents and all your sisters are well.

**trust**
- put in the care of, allow to use
  - OBJECT + with OBJECT
    - She trusted the hotel manager with her jewelry.
    - I don't trust Grandpa with the car anymore.
### REGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>VERB FORMS</th>
<th>MEANINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I try</td>
<td>attempt / make an effort to do something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you try</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it tries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PROGRESSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I am trying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you are trying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it is trying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>He always tries to do his best.</em></td>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I tried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you tried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it tried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I tried to call them earlier.</em></td>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>… have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>… has tried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>… had tried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was tried</td>
<td>attempt, make an effort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were tried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was tried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>The Dover case was tried in U.S. District Court.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS

**NOTE:** When the verb *try* is used in the past tense in the sense “attempt,” it implies that the attempt did not succeed.

**try** attempt / make an effort to do something

- He tried really hard.
- “If at first you don’t succeed, try, try again. Then quit.”  
  [COMEDIAN W.C. FIELDS]

**try** attempt, make an effort

- I tried to call you last night.
- We will try to see them when we are in Los Angeles.
- He tried to talk them out of it.
- I tried calling you last night.
- We will have to try borrowing the keys from the janitor.
- They tried fixing the porch light.

**try** attempt to use, test

- I tried his number, but no one answered.
- We tried the engine again, and this time it worked.
- Try the door to see if it’s unlocked.
- You should try the white wine. You’ll like it.
- Everything we could think of had already been tried.

**try** conduct [a trial]

- Justice Brown tried the case.
- The Illinois Appellate Court tried the appeal.
- The case was tried by a three-person judicial panel.

**try** put on trial

- The court first tried Mr. Coleman in 2005.
- The suspect was tried and convicted.

**try** sep on put on [clothing] to see how it looks and fits

- Hilary tried on seven pairs of shoes before she found a pair she liked.
- Try this dress on; the color will look good on you.

**try out for** compete for a position/role

- Elizabeth tried out for the marching band.
- Elton tried out for the role of Macbeth.
When will they turn the book into a movie?  
The genie turned Cotton into a monkey.  
Cinderella’s coach was turned into a pumpkin at midnight.  
Eventually, of course, his luck turned bad.  
The milk turned sour when the refrigeration failed.  
Charles turned pale and swallowed hard.  
Oak leaves turn yellow and orange in the fall.

We should turn around now because it is getting dark.  
Everyone turned away when my brother entered the room.  
She turned the card over so she could write on the back.  
Security guards turned the protesters away.  
The secretary turned the box over.

The politician turned against the voters who elected him.  
The 1939 Stalin-Hitler pact turned him against totalitarianism of any kind.  
You should turn the heat down when you’re not at home.  
Will someone turn the radio down? I’m on the phone.  
We turned down Jack’s offer to drive.  
Every publisher turned his manuscript down—except one!  
I think I’ll turn in early tonight.  
Turn in your homework at the beginning of class.  
The sink is full; turn off the water.  
Turn the lights off when you leave.  
Her constant criticism really turns us off.

The lion turned on the zoo handler.  
Turn the heat on; it’s cold in here.  
Reggae music really turns me on.

“How did your weekend turn out?” “It turned out fine.”  
She turned out to be his long-lost sister.  
More than four hundred people turned out for Randy Pausch’s last lecture.  
Turn out the lights; the party’s over.  
The school turns out very talented musicians.  
The factory will turn out 1,000 wind turbines a month.  
The guard told us to turn over our wallets and belts.  
The staff turned to organizing the packages for delivery.  
The flood victims turned to the government for shelter.  
Aunt Edith finally turned up at suppertime.

Did your other sock ever turn up?  
You could turn the heat up if you’re cold.  
Would you please turn up the music?  
The reporter turned up evidence of fraud.
### Present Tense

- **I turn**
- **you turn**
- **he/she/it turns**

*The road turns south at the river.*

### Past Tense

- **I turned**
- **you turned**
- **he/she/it turned**

*He turned pale when he heard the results.*

### Present Perfect Tense

- **I have turned**
- **you have turned**
- **he/she/it has turned**

### Past Perfect Tense

- **I was turned**
- **you were turned**
- **he/she/it was turned**

*The boat was turned south into the bay.*

### Future Tense

- **I will turn**
- **you will turn**
- **he/she/it will turn**

### Passive

- **I have been turned**
- **you have been turned**
- **he/she/it has been turned**

### COMPLEMENTS

**turn**
- **rotate, revolve, move around**
- **an axis**

*The big wheel slowly began to turn.*

**turn**
- **change direction**

*His head turned when I called his name.*

**turn**
- **cause to rotate/revolve**
- **OBJECT**

*The helmsman turned the wheel.*

**turn**
- **change direction/position**
- **ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

*The car turned into the last driveway on the left.*

**turn**
- **cause to change direction**
- **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

*The captain turned the boat into the wind.*

**turn**
- **cause the other side of to be visible**
- **OBJECT**

*I turned the pages on the calendar.*

**turn**
- **change the setting of**
- **OBJECT + TO OBJECT**

*He turned the TV to the Weather Channel.*

**turn**
- **perform by moving in a circle**
- **OBJECT**

*Little Leslie can turn a somersault.*

**turn**
- **reach, pass**
- **OBJECT**

*Juan’s brother turned 18 yesterday.*
**understand**

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun Phrase</th>
<th>Object Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td>we understand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td>you understand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>understands</td>
<td>they understand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* He understands the situation perfectly.

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
<th>Subject Pronoun Phrase</th>
<th>Object Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>we understood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>you understood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>they understood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* They understood only a few words.

**Present Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
<th>Object Phrase</th>
<th>Time Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>understands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Phrase</th>
<th>Object Phrase</th>
<th>Time Phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The tour guide was easily understood.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**understand**

**of something**

- Do you understand?

**understand _____ comprehend, know the meaning of**

**OBJECT**

- The doctor understood the nature of the patient’s symptoms.
- Do you understand this equation?
- Nobody could understand the cockney slang used in the movie.

**PASSIVE**

- The assembly instructions must not have been understood.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- I understood what he was trying to say.
- Did you understand where we were going?
- We need to understand how much this is going to cost.

**WH-INFINITIVE**

- Do you understand whom to call if you have a problem?
- I understand what to do.
- Do you understand where to pick up your passengers?

**understand _____ know what makes [something] work/happen**

**OBJECT**

- It takes students a long time to really understand evolution.
- Does anyone understand the stock market?
- Almost no one understands credit and default swaps.

**PASSIVE**

- The role of washing hands to control disease was not understood at the time.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- Do you understand what drives the global economy?
- Even third graders understand why the sun seems to rise in the east and set in the west.

**understand _____ know and be sympathetic to the feelings/attitudes of**

**OBJECT**

- My boyfriend doesn’t understand me.
- I don’t think the director understood Lady Macbeth very well.
- Older people never understand the younger generation.

**understand _____ get the idea/notion [OFTEN AS A POLITE FORM OF IMPLIED QUESTION]**

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

- I understand you to be a student at Santa Cruz.
- We understand them to be having lunch with us.
- I understand the apartment to be available.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

- I understand that you are applying for a job with us.
- We understand that the flight may be delayed.
- It is understood that the parents will have joint custody.
### Regular

**unite** | **unites** · **united** · **have united**

#### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>unite</td>
<td>I unite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>unite</td>
<td>you unite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>unite</td>
<td>he/she/it unite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The treaty unites the warring factions.

#### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am uniting</td>
<td>I am uniting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are uniting</td>
<td>you are uniting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is uniting</td>
<td>he/she/it is uniting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The denominations are uniting to form a new church.

#### Past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>united</td>
<td>I united</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>united</td>
<td>you united</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>united</td>
<td>he/she/it united</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Italy united under Victor Emmanuel II.

#### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was uniting</td>
<td>I was uniting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were uniting</td>
<td>you were uniting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was uniting</td>
<td>he/she/it was uniting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Rebel forces were uniting under a single leader.

#### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have united</td>
<td>I have united</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have united</td>
<td>you have united</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>had united</td>
<td>I had united</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>had united</td>
<td>you had united</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will unite</td>
<td>I will unite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will unite</td>
<td>you will unite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>will have united</td>
<td>I will have united</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>will have united</td>
<td>you will have united</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was united</td>
<td>I was united</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were united</td>
<td>you were united</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was united</td>
<td>he/she/it was united</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Farmers were united in opposition to the proposed regulations.

### Complements

**unite** | **join together for a common purpose**

Many small rural school districts have been forced to unite.

He called on the party to unite.

“Workers of the world, unite.” [Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels]

The divided enemy forces were unable to unite.

The community unites in the spring to celebrate Earth Day.

The country united against the threats to its citizens.

Cells unite to form tissues.

**unite** | **combine, join/put together to make one**

**Object**

Einstein tried to unite electromagnetism and gravity in a unified field theory.

He was able to unite theory and practice in his work.

Charlotte and John were united in marriage on March 23.

Scotland and England were united in 1707 to form the Kingdom of Great Britain.
**uphold** | upholds · upheld · have upheld | ✔️ IRREGULAR

**PRESENT**
- I uphold
- you uphold
- he/she/it upholds

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am upholding
- you are upholding
- he/she/it is upholding

*The firm upholds its tradition of service.*

**PAST**
- I upheld
- you upheld
- he/she/it upheld

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was upholding
- you were upholding
- he/she/it was upholding

*The court upheld the lower court ruling.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has upheld

**FUTURE**
- ... will uphold

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had upheld

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- ... will have upheld

**PAST PASSIVE**
- it was upheld
- they were upheld

*The ruling was upheld by the appellate court.*

**COMPLEMENTS**

**uphold**
- confirm/support [a decision, opinion]
  - The courts will usually uphold lower court rulings unless there is a demonstrable error of fact or law.
  - The whole committee upheld the ruling of the subcommittee.
  - The Supreme Court upheld the plaintiff in Brown v. Board of Education.

**uphold**
- maintain [a custom, practice]
  - John upheld the family tradition by joining the Navy.
  - The new CEO vowed to uphold the company’s reputation for fiscal responsibility.

**OBJECT**
- lower court rulings
- the plaintiff
- the family tradition
- the company’s reputation

**PASSIVE**
- The decision was upheld unanimously by the appeals court.
- The honor of the Corps had been upheld.
**upset | upsets · upset · have upset**

### Present

- **I** upset
- **you** upset
- he/she/it upsets

- past passive
  - I was upset

- present perfect... have | has upset
  - he/she/it had upset

### Past

- **I** upset
- **you** upset
- he/she/it upset

- past passive
  - we were upset

- past perfect... had upset

- past passive
  - you were upset

### Present Progressive

- I am upsetting
- you are upsetting

- present perfect... are upsetting

### Past Progressive

- I was upsetting
- you were upsetting

- past perfect... were upsetting

### Future

- ... will upset

- future progressive... will be upsetting

- future perfect... will have upset

- past passive
  - they were upset

- passive
  - he/she/it was upsetting

### Expressions

- **upset**
  - knock over
  - object
    - The dogs upset **some potted plants** on the patio.
  - passive
    - The waiter upset **a bottle of wine** as he was clearing the table.

- **upset**
  - cause to be disturbed/worried/unhappy
  - object
    - The hotel clerk’s rudeness really upset **us**.
  - passive
    - Thunderstorms upset **the dogs** terribly.

- **upset**
  - disturb the order/working of
  - object
    - The kids are really good at upsetting **my daily routine**.
  - passive
    - Global warming is upsetting **many delicate ecosystems**.

- **upset**
  - win a surprising victory over
  - object
    - The Jets upset **the Colts** in Superbowl III.

### Complements

- **upset**
  - knock over
  - object
    - The dogs upset **some potted plants** on the patio.

- **upset**
  - cause to be disturbed/worried/unhappy
  - object
    - The hotel clerk’s rudeness really upset **us**.

- **upset**
  - disturb the order/working of
  - object
    - The kids are really good at upsetting **my daily routine**.

### Expressions

- **upset the apple cart**
  - ruin something
    - Grady upset the apple cart by telling Louise about the surprise party.
### verb

**Present**

Table: Present Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>urge</td>
<td>I urge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>urge</td>
<td>you urge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>urges had</td>
<td>he/she/it urges had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* She urges us to read Jane Austen's novels.

**Present Progressive**

Table: Present Progressive Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>am urging</td>
<td>I am urging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are urging</td>
<td>you are urging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>is urging</td>
<td>he/she/it is urging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The mayor is urging everyone to remain calm.

**Past**

Table: Past Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>urged</td>
<td>I urged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>urged</td>
<td>you urged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>urged</td>
<td>he/she/it urged</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* We urged them to come for dinner.

**Past Progressive**

Table: Past Progressive Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was urging</td>
<td>I was urging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were urging</td>
<td>you were urging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was urging</td>
<td>he/she/it was urging</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The police were urging drivers to stay off the roads.

**Present Perfect**

Table: Present Perfect Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>have had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>has urged</td>
<td>has urged</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Perfect**

Table: Past Perfect Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
<td>have had</td>
<td>have had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

Table: Past Passive Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was urged</td>
<td>we were urged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were urged</td>
<td>you were urged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was urged</td>
<td>he/she/it was urged</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* A thorough investigation was urged by the committee.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**urge**

**recommend, advocate strongly**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>recommend</td>
<td>Our financial advisor urged patience.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>advocated</td>
<td>The captain urged a dawn attack on the enemy’s right flank.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**object + INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>urge</td>
<td>The doctor urged my mom to see a specialist.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**base-form that-clause**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>urge</td>
<td>The doctor urged that my mom see a specialist.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**urge**

**encourage**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>encourage</td>
<td>I urged them to speak up about what had happened.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>urged</td>
<td>He urged us to keep our options open at this point.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**object + INFINITIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>urge</td>
<td>My parents urged my sister to move closer to them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>urged</td>
<td>The speakers urged the city council to provide better snow removal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**encourage/force to move**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>encourage</td>
<td>We urged the children inside.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>urged</td>
<td>The coach urged the players onto the field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**object + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>urge</td>
<td>The police urged the crowd away from the accident.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>urged</td>
<td>The passengers were urged to the rear of the bus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**urge**

**SEP away/back/et al.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>urge</td>
<td>The ushers urged the spectators back.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**to move in a specified direction**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>urge</td>
<td>The candidate urged her supporters on by viciously attacking her opponent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**urge**

**SEP on**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>urge</td>
<td>The lieutenant urged his troops on through the rain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**PRESENT**
- I use
- you use
- he/she/it uses

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am using
- you are using
- he/she/it is using

**PAST**
- I used
- you used
- he/she/it used

**PAST PASSIVE**
- I was used
- you were used
- he/she/it was used

**FUTURE**
- I will use
- you will use
- he/she/it will use

**FUTURE PERFECT**
- I will have used
- you will have used
- he/she/it will have used

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPLEMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>use ______ employ, put into service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT + INFINITIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use ______ exploit, treat badly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use ______ consume, exhaust the supply of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASSIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use ______ need [WITH can or could]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>used to _____ did at an earlier time [HELPING VERB INTRODUCING AN HABITUAL ACTION/STATE IN THE PAST]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BASE-FORM INFINITIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/get used to _____ be/get accustomed to / familiar with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OBJECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT PARTICIPLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** The verb use ends in a /z/ sound, rhyming with lose.
The noun use ends in an /s/ sound, rhyming with goose.
**varies** | **varied** | **have varied**

**PRESENT**
- I vary
- you vary
- he/she/it varies
- *Seafood prices vary from day to day.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
- I am varying
- you are varying
- he/she/it is varying
- *I am varying my exercise routine.*

**PAST**
- I varied
- you varied
- he/she/it varied
- *The temperature never varied.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
- I was varying
- you were varying
- he/she/it was varying
- *We were varying our diet as much as we could.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- ... have | has varied

**PAST PERFECT**
- ... had varied

**PAST PASSIVE**
- it was varied
- they were varied
- *The courier’s route was varied for greater security.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**vary** change, differ in size/amount/degree

- At the equator, the length of day varies only slightly.
- Your mileage may vary.
- The terms of the contracts can vary quite a lot.
- The amount of rainfall varies enormously from year to year.
- Opinions vary about the impact of global warming.
- The nutritional value of fruits and vegetables varies according to climate and soil conditions.

**vary** change to be less uniform/predictable

**OBJECT**

- The conductor never varied the tempo, making the piece sound too mechanical.
- Don’t vary the format of the reports without a good reason.
- He never varied his comedy act, and it eventually failed.
- You should vary your reading; all those romance novels can’t be good for you.

**PASSIVE**

- The activities at camp were always varied, so we never got bored.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>FORMS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td>I view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you view</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it views</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>He always views the parade with his son.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST</strong></td>
<td>I viewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you viewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it viewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>The inspector viewed the office wiring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td>... had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PASSIVE</strong></td>
<td>I was viewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you were viewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it was viewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>The new rules were not viewed favorably by the staff.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

**view**

| OBJECT | The owner of the building viewed **the water damage**. |
| OBJECT | The governor viewed **the flood damage** from a helicopter. |
| OBJECT | People from all over the world come to view **the fall foliage in New England**. |
| OBJECT | Whenever there is an automobile accident, drivers slow down to view **the wreck**. |
| PASSIVE | We got up in the middle of the night to view **the northern lights**. |
| WH-CLAUSE | The exhibit was viewed by nearly 100,000 visitors. |
| WH-CLAUSE | Our website is viewed by 4,000 people a day. |
| WH-CLAUSE | They wanted to view **what was left of the shipwreck**. |
| WH-CLAUSE | Our tour group hopes to view **where the first atomic device was detonated in the New Mexico desert**. |

**view**

| OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER | Most politicians viewed Senator Blather with utter contempt. |
| OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER | The farmers viewed **the restrictions on the use of pesticides with conflicting emotions**. |
| PASSIVE | The proposal was viewed with alarm. |
| OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN | The committee views **smoking as a health and ethics issue**. |
| OBJECT + AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVE | Brutus viewed Caesar as a threat to republican rule. |
| OBJECT + AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVE | Experts view **the economic downturn as temporary**. |
| OBJECT + AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVE | The opposition viewed the proposal as shortsighted. |

**view**

| OBJECT | Forty percent of children viewed **the first episode**. |
| OBJECT | The Nixon-Kennedy debate was viewed by more than 66 million people. |
**visit** | visit · visited · have visited

- **Present**
  - I visit
  - you visit
  - he/she/it visits
  - *He visits our office when he's in town.*

- **Present Progressive**
  - I am visiting
  - you are visiting
  - he/she/it is visiting
  - *She is visiting her grandmother.*

- **Past**
  - I visited
  - you visited
  - he/she/it visited
  - *They visited some old friends in Dallas.*

- **Past Progressive**
  - I was visiting
  - you were visiting
  - he/she/it was visiting
  - *We were visiting someone in the neighborhood.*

- **Present Perfect**
  - ... have | has visited

- **Past Perfect**
  - ... had visited

- **Past Passive**
  - I was visited
  - you were visited
  - he/she/it was visited
  - *We were visited by the Bennets recently.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

- **visit** talk briefly with each other
  - They visited during the intermission.
  - We visited for a few minutes at the grocery store.
  - We don’t often get a chance to visit without being interrupted by the children.

- **visit** talk briefly
  - with object
  - I visited with Brian during the afternoon break.
  - She visits with her niece on the phone every morning.

- **visit** come/go to see socially
  - object
  - We visit Kevin and Janet whenever we can.
  - No one ever visits them.
  - My parents were visited by some old college friends this weekend.

- **visit** go to [a place] as a tourist
  - object
  - We visited the Lake District for a few days.
  - I'd like to visit the ruins of the Roman Forum.
  - Everyone who visits Australia wants to go again.
  - Hawaii is visited by millions of tourists every year.

- **visit** go to [a place] for a certain reason
  - object
  - The cargo ship visits every major trading port in the Mediterranean.
  - We visited the clinic to get Thomas a flu shot.
  - Ten thousand customers a day visit our website.
  - A food inspector visits the restaurant periodically.
  - Every nursing home is visited by state inspectors at least twice a year.
### Present Present Progressive
- I vote  
- you vote  
- he/she/it votes

- I am voting  
- you are voting  
- he/she/it is voting

*He always votes early in the day.*

### Past Past Progressive
- I voted  
- you voted  
- he/she/it voted

- I was voting  
- you were voting  
- he/she/it was voting

*I voted by mail this year.*

### Present Perfect Future
- I have voted  
- you have voted  
- he/she/it has voted

- I was voted  
- you were voted  
- he/she/it was voted

*He was voted the new chair of the committee.*

### Past Perfect Future Progressive
- I had voted  
- you had voted  
- he/she/it had voted

- I had been voting  
- you had been voting  
- he/she/it had been voting

*People were voting in record numbers.*

### Future Perfect
- I will have voted  
- you will have voted  
- he/she/it will have voted

### Present Passive
- I have been voted  
- you have been voted  
- he/she/it has been voted

*We were voted most likley to succeed.*

### Past Passive
- I was voted  
- you were voted  
- he/she/it was voted

- I had been voted  
- you had been voted  
- he/she/it had been voted

### COMPLEMENTS

#### Vote
- cast a ballot
- indicate [a choice] by ballot / other expression of choice
- object

- passive
- against object
- for object

- object + (to be) predicate noun

- passive
- infinitive

#### Expressions
- with [one’s] feet indicate dissatisfaction by leaving a business without purchasing anything
- with [one’s] wallet/pocketbook decide on the basis of one’s financial interest

### PHRASAL VERBS
- vote down defeat, reject
- vote in elect
- vote out defeat

- The Senate voted the amendment down.
- They voted him in by 348 votes.
- My brother wants to vote all the incumbents out.

### Vote with [one’s] wallet/pocketbook
- I voted with my wallet and bought the product online: free shipping and no sales tax.
### Present Tense
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I wait</td>
<td>I am waiting</td>
<td>you are waiting</td>
<td>he/she/it is waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you wait</td>
<td>you are waiting</td>
<td>you are waiting</td>
<td>you are waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it waits</td>
<td>they are waiting</td>
<td>they are waiting</td>
<td>they are waiting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He waits to hear what everyone else says.*

### Past Tense
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I waited</td>
<td>I was waiting</td>
<td>you waited</td>
<td>he/she/it waited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you waited</td>
<td>you were waiting</td>
<td>you were waiting</td>
<td>you were waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it waited</td>
<td>they were waiting</td>
<td>they were waiting</td>
<td>they were waiting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I waited at the station for you.*

### Present Perfect Tense
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have waited</td>
<td>I have waited</td>
<td>you have waited</td>
<td>he/she/it has waited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you have waited</td>
<td>you have waited</td>
<td>you have waited</td>
<td>you have waited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it has waited</td>
<td>they have waited</td>
<td>they have waited</td>
<td>they have waited</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We are waiting for a taxi.*

### Past Perfect Tense
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was waited</td>
<td>I was waited</td>
<td>you were waited</td>
<td>he/she/it was waited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were waited</td>
<td>you were waited</td>
<td>you were waited</td>
<td>you were waited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was waited</td>
<td>they were waited</td>
<td>they were waited</td>
<td>they were waited</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*We were finally waited on.*

### Present Passive
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>1st Person Singular</th>
<th>2nd Person Singular</th>
<th>3rd Person Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have been waited</td>
<td>I have been waited</td>
<td>you have been waited</td>
<td>he/she/it has been waited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you have been waited</td>
<td>you have been waited</td>
<td>you have been waited</td>
<td>you have been waited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it has been waited</td>
<td>they have been waited</td>
<td>they have been waited</td>
<td>they have been waited</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMPLEMENTS
- **wait** stay in a place or do nothing until a certain event occurs
  - Come on! We can’t wait forever.
  - Hurry up—the Nelsons are waiting.
  - I can’t stand waiting like this.
- **wait** be delayed until later
  - The report will have to wait until tomorrow.
  - The job can’t wait; do it now.
- **wait** stay [in a place], remain ready
  - **ADVERB OF TIME**
    - I can only wait until 3 o’clock.
    - Wait until the light turns green.
    - Wait 10 minutes before removing the cake from the pan.
  - **ADVERB OF PLACE**
    - Please wait here.
    - A limo will be waiting at the station.
    - Please tell our guests to wait in the garden.
    - Where do you want us to wait?
  - **for object**
    - We’re waiting for Hilary and DJ, and then we’ll go to Gullify’s.
  - **for object + infinitive**
    - The driver was waiting for the rain to stop.
    - They are waiting to take the elevator.
  - **INFINITIVE**
    - Are you waiting to use the copier?
- **wait** delay [USUALLY NEGATIVE]
  - **INFINITIVE**
    - I can’t wait to meet them.
    - Don’t wait to get started.

### PHRASAL VERBS
- **wait on** serve/assist
  - [a customer]
    - Have you been waited on yet, sir?
    - I’m waiting on customers in the automotive department.
    - It takes forever to get waited on here.
- **wait** *sep* out defeat by waiting
  - The company waited him out, and he eventually signed the contract.
- **wait up** delay going to bed
  - Don’t wait up for us; we won’t be home until midnight.

### EXPRESSIONS
- **wait on** hand and foot serve
  - [someone] extremely well
    - She waits on him hand and foot—how awful!
**Regular**  
**Irregular**  
**Regular**

**Regular Verbs**  
**Wake**  
**Past**  
Present: *I wake*  
Past: *I woke*  
Present Perfect: *I have woken*  
Past Perfect: *I had woken*  
Future: *I will wake*  

**Irregular Verbs**  
**Waken**  
**Past**  
Present: *I waken*  
Past: *I wakened*  
Present Perfect: *I have wakened*  
Past Perfect: *I had wakened*  
Future: *I will waken*  

**Passive**  
Past: *I was woken*  
Present: *I am wakened*  
Past Perfect: *I had wakened*  
Future Perfect: *I will waken*  

**Present Progressive**  
*I am waking*  
**Past Progressive**  
*I was waking*  
**Future Progressive**  
*I will be waking*  
**Future Perfect**  
*I will have wakened*  

**Waken**  
Present: *He/she/it wakes*  
Past: *He/she/it woke*  
Present Perfect: *He/she/it has wakened*  
Past Perfect: *He/she/it had wakened*  
Future: *He/she/it will waken*  

**Present Progressive**  
*He is waking*  
**Past Progressive**  
*He was waking*  
**Future Progressive**  
*He will be waking*  
**Future Perfect**  
*He will have wakened*  

**Past Passive**  
Past: *I was woken*  
Present: *I am wakened*  
Past Perfect: *I had wakened*  
Future Perfect: *I will waken*  

**Regular Verbs**  
**Wake**  
Past: *He usually wakes at seven.*  
Past Progressive: *He's waking the neighborhood with his lawn mower.*  
Future: *The birds were always waking us at dawn.*  

**Past Passive**  
Past: *I woke just before the alarm went off.*  
Past Progressive: *The birds were always waking us at dawn.*  
Future: *The birds were always waking us at dawn.*  

**Present Perfect**  
... have | has woken/waked ... will wake  
**Past Perfect**  
... had woken/waked ... will be waking  
**Future Perfect**  
... will have woken/waked ... will have wakened

**Note:**  
*Wake* and *waken* have the same meanings and the same general uses. They are similar to *awake*/*awaken* (verb No. 49), with this difference: *Wake* is used with *up* (*Jane woke up at 7 o'clock*), but *awake*, *awaken*, and *waken* are not.

**Wake**  
*quit sleeping*  
*We need to be quiet because the children wake so easily.*  
*The patient began wakening from the anesthetic.*  
*In the springtime, I wake long before I need to get up.*

**Wake _____ arouse from sleeping**  
*OBJECT*  
*Wake the children at eight if they are not up already.*  
*Don't wake me unless it is an emergency.*  
*His snoring would wake the dead.*  
*I was woken by the sound of dripping water.*  
*The thunderstorm woke whoever was sleeping.*

**Wake _____ stir up**  
*OBJECT*  
*Spring woke the slumbering land.*  
*The injustice woke a feeling of outrage in the entire community.*  
*His good fortune wakened feelings of envy in the little village.*

**Wake up become aware of what is happening**  
*I hope he wakes up before it's too late.*  
*Fritz woke up after the heart attack and started exercising and eating right.*

**Wake SEP up cause to become aware of what is happening**  
*The advisor woke the mayor up to the danger of rising water.*  
*This report will wake citizens up to the importance of alternative energy sources.*

**Expressions**  
*Wake up and smell the coffee*  
*become aware of what is happening*  
*The world has changed, and we must wake up and smell the coffee.*
**Present**

I walk  we walk
you walk  you walk
he/she/it walks  they walk

* He always walks to work.

**Past**

I walked  we walked
you walked  you walked
he/she/it walked  they walked

* We walked about three miles this morning.

**Present Perfect**

... have | has walked

**Past Perfect**

... had walked

**Past Passive**

I was walked  we were walked
you were walked  you were walked
he/she/it was walked  they were walked

* The horses were walked after they were ridden.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

walk  move on foot at a normal speed

walk  abandon/withdraw from negotiations  [INFORMAL]

walk  be released from jail, escape prosecution for a crime  [INFORMAL]

walk ______  go on foot

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

walk ______  move in/on/over/through on foot

OBJECT

walk ______  exercise [an animal]

OBJECT

PASSIVE

walk ______  push [a bicycle, motorcycle] on foot

OBJECT

walk ______  go with / guide on foot

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

PASSIVE

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

walk around/back/forth/in/off/out/over/ etc.  walk in a specified direction

walk ______ around/back/over/etc.  take/ deliver on foot

walk in on ______  interrupt by entering a room

walk out on ______  leave, abandon

---

After I broke my hip, I couldn’t walk for months. Children first start walking at about the age of one year.

If we don’t get a better offer, we’ll walk.

The merger talks are not succeeding; I think the other company is going to walk.

If the police can’t find more evidence, he will walk.

He’s going to walk after just two months in jail.

They walked to the barn.

We walked home after the movie.

I don’t like the suburbs; you can’t walk anywhere.

I’ve walked this street every morning for years.

We walked two miles, then turned around.

You will have to walk the dogs twice a day.

Have the horses been walked?

He had to walk his mountain bike back to the car.

She walked her bike while talking to us.

The usher walks the wedding guests to their seats.

I need to walk my mother home.

Prisoners must be walked to the gate by a guard.

---

Guess who walked in just now.

Pam screamed at me, then walked off.

Matt walked Emily back to her dorm room.

Would you walk this package over to the post office?

He walked in on a meeting of the board of directors.

We’re nearly finished; you can’t walk out on us now.
want | wants · wanted · have wanted

**PRESENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I want</th>
<th>we want</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you want</td>
<td>you want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it wants</td>
<td>they want</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

· He wants to know if you are free for lunch.
· He is wanting to go to Paris next summer.

**PAST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I wanted</th>
<th>we wanted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you wanted</td>
<td>you wanted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it wanted</td>
<td>they wanted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

· The kids wanted pizza for lunch.
· We were wanting to go out for dinner tonight.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... have</th>
<th>has wanted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... had wanted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was wanted</th>
<th>we were wanted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were wanted</td>
<td>you were wanted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was wanted</td>
<td>they were wanted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

· The murderer was wanted by the FBI.

**FUTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will want</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**FUTURE PERFECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>... will have wanted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**COMPLEMENTS**

want ____ need, wish, desire

**OBJECT**

Our daughter wants her own cell phone.
Do you want fries with that?
We want a driver who knows the area.

**OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE**

We want a table by the window.
Security wants a guard at every entrance.
The decorator wants a rug in the entryway.

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**

The doctor wants you to take it easy for a while.
I just want them to leave us alone.
We want a cab to take us to the airport at four.

**OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

The boss wants them working on the landscaping project.
I don't want you staying out too late.
He doesn’t want anybody finding out about our plans.

**OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE**

I want the job finished by noon.
The sheriff wants him placed under arrest.
We want lunch served in the conference room.

**INFINITIVE**

The kids want to go home soon.
I want to set the record straight.
Does anyone want to take notes?

**WH-CLAUSE**

We all want what is best for you.
He wants whoever left the message for him.
I want whatever she’s having.

want ____ desire to capture

**OBJECT**

The police want him for armed robbery.

**PASSIVE**

He is wanted by the police in three states.

**PHRASAL VERBS**

want down/in/out/up/etc. desire to be in a specified position

want out desire to be freed of a responsibility

The baby’s squirming; he wants down.
I think the cat wants in.
The hours are too long, the work is too hard, and I want out.
**warn**  

**warn** | warns · warned · have warned  

---

**PRESENT**  
I warn you warn  
you warn you warn  
he/she/it warns they warn  
* The sign warns people to stay away.  

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**  
I am warning you are warning  
you are warning you are warning  
he/she/it is warning they are warning  
* I am warning you.  

**PAST**  
I warned you warned  
you warned you warned  
he/she/it warned they warned  
* I warned them to be careful.  

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**  
I was warning you were warning  
you were warning you were warning  
he/she/it was warning they were warning  
* The police were warning drivers to stay off the roads.  

**PRESENT PERFECT**  … have | has warned  

**PAST PERFECT**  … had warned  

**FUTURE**  … will warn  

**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE**  … will be warning  

**FUTURE PERFECT**  … will have warned  

---

**COMPLEMENTS**  

**warn** ______ caution, alert, inform [about a danger, threat]  

**OBJECT**  
We warned the hikers, but they paid no attention.  
I am warning you: Don't do it.  

**PASSIVE**  
All of the race participants have been warned.  

**OBJECT + about/of OBJECT**  
The company warned doctors about a vaccine shortage.  
Gerry warned her students about plagiarism.  

**OBJECT + INFINITIVE**  
The guide warned us to watch out for pickpockets.  
I warned the children to stay on the paths.  
Police warned the crowd not to enter the building.  
Mom warned us not to eat too much before swimming.  
We had been warned to drink only bottled water.  
We warned them that it could snow.  
The Coast Guard warned boaters that the winds in the channel would be dangerous.  
Everyone was warned that there was a risk of cholera in the area.  

**PASSIVE**  
The guidebook warned us which places to stay away from.  
The visitors were warned what topics to avoid.  

**OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE**  
He warned us what to expect.  
The guidebook warned us which places to stay away from.  

**PASSIVE**  
The Surgeon General has warned that smoking is dangerous to your health.  
The sign warned that violators would be prosecuted.  

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**  

**warn SEP off** tell [someone] to keep out  

The farmer warned the hunters off as soon as they got out of their truck.
### PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun(s)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>wash</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>wash</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>washes</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>he/she/it washes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He washes his car every weekend.*

### PAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun(s)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>washed</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I washed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>washed</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you washed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>washed</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they washed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*I washed and dressed the wound.*

### PRESENT PERFECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun(s)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>have washed</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I have washed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>have washed</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you have washed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>have washed</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they have washed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The clothes were washed in hot water.*

### PAST PASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Pronoun(s)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was washed</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I was washed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>was washed</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were washed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>was washed</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they were washed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The clothes were washed in hot water.*

### COMPLEMENTS

**wash** clean/bathe oneself

- Go back and wash!
- How often does he wash?
- Be sure to wash behind your ears.
- I can't wash; there isn't any water.

**wash ___** clean with a liquid and (usually) a cleansing agent

- **OBJECT**
  - I washed and dried my hands.
  - We need to wash the curtains.
  - I washed five loads of laundry after our camping trip.

**PASSIVE**

- The metal is first washed in an acid bath.

**wash ___** splash, sweep, flow

- **ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
  - The waves were washing over the dock.
  - Water was washing along the deck of the ship.
  - Tears washed down her face.

**wash ___** carry away by the action of water

- **OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM**
  - The tide had washed our little boat back onto the beach.
  - The storm had washed debris across the road.
  - Sand and mud had been washed onto our patio.

### PHRASAL VERBS

**wash away/down/in/off/out/up/etc.** be carried in a specified direction by the action of water

- The Gummersheimer home washed away in the floodwater.
- A dead whale washed up on the Oregon coast.
- The incoming tide washed away the sandcastle we had built.
- The bridge was washed out at Maestown.
- Pam washed off the patio chairs.

**wash ___ away** remove by the action of water

- Her injury washed away any chance of winning the match.
- She washed the cookies down with a glass of milk.
- With the drug conviction, Bubba is all washed up as a player.
**watch**

**Present Present Progressive**

I watch **we watch**
you watch **you watch**
he/she/it watches **they watch**
*He only watches sports on TV.*

**Past Past Progressive**

I watched **we watched**
you watched **you watched**
he/she/it watched **they watched**
*We watched our daughter’s soccer game.*

**Present Perfect Future**

I have watched **we have watched**
you have watched **you have watched**
he/she/it has watched **they have watched**

**Future Perfect Future Progressive**

I will have watched **we will have watched**
you will have watched **you will have watched**
he/she/it will have watched **they will have watched**

**Past Passive**

I was watched **we were watched**
you were watched **you were watched**
he/she/it was watched **they were watched**
*The program was watched by millions of people.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

*watch*  look at something carefully

**OBJECT**  The movie was too scary for me to watch.
I don’t know what happened; I wasn’t watching.

*watch*  monitor, pay careful attention to

**OBJECT**  Everybody watched the folk dancers.
Does anybody like to watch his home movies?
It felt like somebody was watching us.

**PASSIVE**  The game will be watched by all our friends.
They watched the car in front of them slide off the icy road.
The fans watched their team lose its third game in a row.

**OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE**  They watched the folk dancers.
The children watched the seaplanes landing on the water.
The fans watched their team lose its third game in a row.

**OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE**  We all watched the folk dancers.
The children watched the seaplanes landing on the water.

**WH-CLAUSE**

Watch what happens next.
I wasn’t watching which key he used to open the door.

**watch** monitor, pay careful attention to

**OBJECT**  I am really trying to watch my weight.
A financial advisor will watch your portfolio balance.
The government is watching the situation in Iran closely.

**WH-CLAUSE**  Watch what you are doing!
Watch where you are driving.
You need to watch how much you are spending on nonessentials.

**watch** take care of, protect

**OBJECT**  Grandma watched the children while I was at the store.
Watch my purse for me, will you?

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**watch for**  look for [someone/ something that one expects to see]

**watch out**  be careful

**watch out for / over**  protect, take care of

We can watch for Doris from the window.
Astronomers were watching for planets in other solar systems.

Watch out! There’s a snake!

The teachers were watching out for the pupils.
Our Great Pyrenees dog was watching over the sheep.
wear | wears · wore · have worn

**PRESENT**
I wear we wear
you wear you wear
he/she/it wears they wear

*He always wears a coat and tie.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**
I am wearing we are wearing
you are wearing you are wearing
he/she/it is wearing they are wearing

*I am wearing a skirt and sweater to the concert.*

**PAST**
I wore we wore
you wore you wore
he/she/it wore they wore

*She wore her little black dress to the party.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**
I was wearing we were wearing
you were wearing you were wearing
he/she/it was wearing they were wearing

*What were they wearing?*

**PRESENT PERFECT** … have | has worn
**PAST PERFECT** … had worn

**PAST PASSIVE**
I was worn we were worn
you were worn you were worn
he/she/it was worn they were worn

*In those days, white was never worn after Labor Day.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

*wear* remain in good condition after much use

That fabric won’t wear very well.
The carpet in the hall will wear for years.

*wear _____ have/carry on one’s body*  
**OBJECT**

The kids wear jeans most of the time.
Politicians felt it necessary to wear flag pins.
Men are required to wear ties when meeting with clients.
Mary wears bifocals now.

*wear _____ have [a certain hairstyle]*  
**OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER**

She wore her hair off the shoulder.
He wore his hair in a ponytail.
Her hair was worn in a huge Afro.

*wear _____ have [a certain facial expression]*  
**OBJECT**

He was wearing a silly grin when he made the announcement.
His face wears a permanent scowl.
Why are you wearing such a sad face?

*wear _____ damage/erode gradually, usually by friction*  
**OBJECT**

Wagon wheels wore ruts along the Oregon Trail.
The Mississippi River wore a new channel east of Kaskaskia.
A path had been worn through the forest.

*wear SEp sep down make weak/tired*  
The 12-hour days are wearing the staff down.

*wear off go away gradually*  
The effects of the painkiller wore off after a few hours.

*wear on continue, pass*  
The meeting wore on into the early hours of the morning.
It got more cloudy as the day wore on.

*wear out become exhausted/useless*  
The tires have worn out on my pickup truck.

*wear SEp out use until exhausted*  
Our son has worn out his winter coat.

*wear SEp out exhaust, tire out*  
Shopping all day with his wife wore him out.
**weave**

**weave** | **weaves** · **wove** · **have woven**
---|---
**Present**
I weave & we weave
you weave & you weave
he/she/it weaves & they weave
* She weaves baskets from birch bark.
**Past**
I wove & we wove
you wove & you wove
he/she/it wove & they wove
* The spider wove a web across the doorway.
**Present Perfect** ... have | has woven
**Past Perfect** ... had woven

**Present Progressive**
I am weaving & we are weaving
you are weaving & you are weaving
he/she/it is weaving & they are weaving
* The children are weaving simple placemats.

**Past Progressive**
I was weaving & we were weaving
you were weaving & you were weaving
he/she/it was weaving & they were weaving
* They were weaving a wool rug.

**Future** ... will weave
**Future Progressive** ... will be weaving
**Future Perfect** ... will have woven

**Past Passive**
— —
— —
— —
— —
it was woven & they were woven
* These wall hangings were woven by hand.

**COMPLEMENTS**

**weave**

pass threads/strips/etc. over and under one another to form something
They are teaching the students how to weave.
Children learn by watching their mothers weave.
In some cultures, only men weave.

**weave** move in and out / side to side
A red SUV weaved through the bridge traffic.

**weave** ______ pass [threads/strips/etc.] over and under one another [to form something]
They wove **palm fronds** to make a thatched roof.
I wove **my fingers** to make a step for her.
We wove **the reeds** into a simple boat.

**weave** ______ form by passing threads/strips/etc. over and under one another
The mill wove **beautiful linen tablecloths**.
Every society on earth has woven **some kind of basket**.
The women wove **a crown from flowers they had picked**.
A crude filter was woven from plant stalks.

**weave** ______ combine to make a whole
A good story weaves **a number of plot lines**.
The poem weaves **the themes of love and loss in 19th-century England**.

**weave** ______ make by combining into a whole
“Oh! what a tangled web we weave
When first we practice to deceive.” [SIR WALTER SCOTT]
Wagner’s operas are woven from many musical themes.

**weave** ______ form [a web] [of a spider]
A spider wove **a beautiful web** between those two trees.

**Note:** The regular past form **weaved** is used only in the sense “move in and out / side to side”; **wove** and **woven** are used in all other senses.
Present
I wed 
you wed 
he/she/it weds 

Past
I wed 
you wed 
he/she/it was wed 

Present Perfect
... have 
... has wed 

Past Perfect
... had wed 

Past Passive
I was wed 
you were wed 
he/she/it was wed 

Present Progressive
I am wedding 
you are wedding 
he/she/it is wedding 

Past Progressive
I was wedding 
you were wedding 
he/she/it was wedding 

Future
... will wed 

Future Perfect
... will have wed/wedded 

Future Progressive
... will be wedding 

COMPLEMENTS
wed marry

When did they wed? 
John and Marcia wed after a tumultuous engagement. 
My parents wed in Hawaii when Dad was in the Navy. 

wed object 

She wed her childhood sweetheart. 
Whom did she finally wed? 
My father wed my mother in 1982. 

wed object

I have wed hundreds of people over the years. 
Reverend Gerry wed your parents. 
They were wed in the garden, if I remember correctly. 

wed object 

Fusion cuisine weds cooking styles from all over the world. 
The building weds Spanish and modernist styles. 
His art weds realism and postmodernism.
**Present Present Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong> weep</td>
<td><strong>you</strong> weep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong> am weeping</td>
<td><strong>you</strong> are weeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>he/she/it weeps</strong></td>
<td><strong>he/she/it is weeping</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>She is weeping uncontrollably.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Past Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong> wept</td>
<td><strong>you</strong> wept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong> was weeping</td>
<td><strong>you</strong> were weeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>he/she/it wept</strong></td>
<td><strong>he/she/it was weeping</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The children were all weeping.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Future Progressive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>... will weep</strong></td>
<td><strong>... will be weeping</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Past Passive**

- **it was wept**
- **they were wept**

- **No tears were wept for him.**

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**weep shed tears, cry**

- You have to take time to weep.
- The whole family was weeping during the service.
- She wept every time she thought of the accident.

**weep give off drops of liquid**

- The walls were weeping in the humid air.
- Aloe plants weep if you cut them.
- The damp air weeps when it comes into contact with the cold metal.

**weep shed [tears]**

**OBJECT**

- Weep no tears for me.
- He wept bitter tears for what he had done.

**PASSIVE**

- Endless tears were wept over such a senseless death.
PRESENT
I wet        we wet
you wet      you wet
he/she/it wets they wet
*S He always wets her lips before she speaks.

PAST
I wet/wetted we wet/wetted
you wet/wetted you wet/wetted
he/she/it wet/wetted they wet/wetted
*S He wet his fingers before taking the ball.

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wet/wetted
PAST PERFECT ... had wet/wetted

PAST PASSIVE

it was wet/wetted they were wet/wetted
*S Once the insulation was wetted by the storm, it was useless.

COMPLEMENTS
wet ______ moisten, dampen
OBJECT
The barber always wets my hair before he cuts it.
You should wet the cork before putting it back in the bottle.
Lightly wet the metal with oil so the engine won't smoke.
The oily pavement had been wet by the mist, making it slippery.

wet ______ urinate in/on
OBJECT
The baby always wets his diaper at the most inconvenient time.
We will need to change his pajamas; he wet them again.
One of the kids wet the bed.

PHRASAL VERBS
wet ____ SEP down put water on
After every game, they wet the infield down.

wet [one's] whistle take a drink
Thirsty? Here's some lemonade for you
to wet your whistle.
**Present**

I win  
you win  
he/she/it wins  

- He wins most card games he plays.

**Past**

I won  
you won  
he/she/it won  

- I won first place in the math contest.

**Present Perfect**

... have | has won  

**Past Perfect**

... had won  

**Past Passive**

I was won  
you were won  
he/she/it was won  

- The election was won by superior organization.

### COMPLEMENTS

**win**  
be victorious in a contest/competition

- I never win.  
  They could win if they played their very best.  
  Who's winning?

**win _____**  
be victorious in [a contest, competition]

**OBJECT**

- Alice and Albert won the dance competition.
- Barack Obama won the 2008 presidential election.
- Heather always wins the argument.

**PASSIVE**

- The game was won in the last minute.

**win _____**  
receive as the result of a contest/conflict/bet

**OBJECT**

- We won a week's vacation in Hawaii.  
  After bitter fighting, they finally won the fortress.  
  They hope to win the Rose Bowl this year.  
  I almost won the jackpot in last week's Lotto.

**INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT**

- You could win yourself a prize.  
  The victory won us a little more time.  
  Excellent coaching won them the championship.

**for paraphrase**

- You could win a prize for yourself.  
  The victory won a little more time for us.  
  Excellent coaching won the championship for them.

**win _____**  
gain [affection, support, admiration, etc.]

**OBJECT**

- Ministers have to win a congregation's respect.  
  The comedian won the audience's applause.  
  Their goal was to win the hearts and minds of the people.  
  Faint heart never won fair lady. [Proverb]

### PHRASAL VERBS

**win out**  
be finally victorious

- It took six months, but our proposal won out.

**win _____ sep. over**  
convert, persuade

- The president won congressional leaders over to his point of view.
### Present Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I wind</th>
<th>we are winding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you wind</td>
<td>you are winding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it winds</td>
<td>they are winding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The path winds across the hills for miles.

### Past Progressive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I wound</th>
<th>we were winding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you wound</td>
<td>you were winding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it wound</td>
<td>they were winding</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* She wound the cloth around her head.

### Present Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have wound</th>
<th>we have wound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you have wound</td>
<td>you have wound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it has wound</td>
<td>they have wound</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was wound</th>
<th>we were wound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were wound</td>
<td>you were wound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was wound</td>
<td>they were wound</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The rope was wound around a tree trunk.

### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I will wind</th>
<th>we will wind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you will wind</td>
<td>you will wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it will wind</td>
<td>they will wind</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I will have wound</th>
<th>we will have wound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you will have wound</td>
<td>you will have wound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it will have wound</td>
<td>they will have wound</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was wound</th>
<th>we were wound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were wound</td>
<td>you were wound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was wound</td>
<td>they were wound</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The rope was wound around a tree trunk.

---

**Note:** The verb *wind*, which rhymes with *kind*, is presented here; its irregular past form *wound* rhymes with *sound*. The regular verb *wind*, which rhymes with *sinned* and means "to make out of breath," is rarely used.

---

### Complements

- **wind _____ coil, move in twists and turns**
  - **Adverb of Place To/From**
    - We wound **in and out through the trees**.
    - The path wound **around the hill**.
    - Vines wound **around the old oak tree**.
    - The river winds **through a maze of canyons**.
    - The wire wound **across the ceiling and out the window**.

- **wind _____ wrap, cover by circling**
  - **Object + Adverb of Place To/From**
    - To make an electromagnet, wind **wire around an iron core**.
    - He wound **his shirt over his fist** and broke the window.
    - I wound **the rope around my waist** and began to climb down.
    - She wound **her arms around her daughter** and consoled her.
    - Her long hair had been wound **into a coil on her head**.

- **wind _____ tighten the spring of**
  - **Object**
    - Did you remember to wind **the clock**?
    - Wind **the top** and put it on the floor.
    - In old cars, the starter was wound by hand.

- **wind _____ wrap around a center/core**
  - **Object + Adverb of Place To/From**
    - We wound **the videotape to where the game started**.
    - She is winding **the yarn into a center-pull ball**.
    - The film had been wound **to the end of the reel**.

---

### Phrasal Verbs

- **wind along/around/down/up/etc.**
  - twist in a specified direction
  - The creek winds along for several miles.

- **wind down**
  - come slowly to an end
  - The party was winding down by midnight.

- **wind down**
  - relax
  - Mike was beginning to wind down after a hectic day at work.

- **wind up**
  - end
  - The conference is scheduled to wind up at noon.
  - The acrobat wound up in the hospital with a broken leg.
  - They wound up living in Paris for the rest of their lives.

- **wind ____ up**
  - bring to an end
  - Let’s wind this meeting up, okay?
Present Progressive  
I am wishing  
you are wishing  
he/she/it is wishing  
* You are wishing for too much.

Past Progressive  
I was wishing  
you were wishing  
he/she/it was wishing  
* We were all wishing for better weather.

Future  
... will wish

Future Progressive  
... will be wishing

Future Perfect  
... will have wished

Past Passive  
I was wished  
you were wished  
he/she/it was wished  
* I was wished a happy birthday by everyone.

wish  long for / desire something

Dorothy closed her eyes and wished.  
Don't wish, act!

wish  desire/want [something that cannot or probably will not happen]

I wish that I were more prepared.  
We wished that the rain would stop before we got to Pittsburgh.  
Little Bo Peep wished that she had taken better care of her sheep.  
Stymie wished that Cotton was a monkey.  
I wish that I were a rich man.

wish  have/express a desire

Object + to be predicate noun  
We all wished the play to be a smash hit.  
I wished the winter to be a mild one.

Object + to be predicate adjective  
I just wished the project to be ready on time.  
We all wished the young couple to be happy.  
They wished the evaluation to be favorable.

Indirect object + direct object  
We wished him a pleasant flight.  
Everyone wished the graduates successful careers.  
The doctor wished his patient a swift recovery.

for object  
He was wishing for a quick response from the company.  
What are you wishing for?  
They wished for more time to complete the project.

(for) object + infinitive  
I didn't wish (for) them to go to so much trouble.  
Do you wish (for) the caterer to prepare a new menu?  
We wished (for) a taxi to be here at seven.

Infinitive  
She wishes to say a few words.  
They wish to make a reservation for dinner.  
We wish to apologize for being so late.

wish  on [someone] want [something bad] to happen to [someone] [usually negative]

I wouldn't wish cancer on my worst enemy.
**PRESENT**

- I wonder
- you wonder
- he/she/it wonders

*He wonders if you would like to join us.*

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

- I am wondering
- you are wondering
- he/she/it is wondering

*We're wondering whether it is going to rain.*

**PAST**

- I wondered
- you wondered
- he/she/it wondered

*I wondered what had happened to you.*

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

- I was wondering
- you were wondering
- he/she/it was wondering

*They were wondering whom to call in an emergency.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has wondered

**PAST PERFECT**

... had wondered

*His unexpected success was much wondered at.*

**PAST PASSIVE**

- it was wondered
- they were wondered

**COMPLEMENTS**

**wonder _____ want / be curious to know**

**about OBJECT**

- We were wondering about the price of gas.
- Did you wonder about the car's safety features?
- The boss was wondering about Elaine's ability to do the job.

**WH-CLAUSE**

- I wonder who she is.
- Everyone wondered what went wrong.
- John is wondering where he left his car keys.
- I wonder why she never answered my e-mail.
- We wondered how much it was going to cost.

**WH-INFINITIVE**

- My parents were wondering what to do while the grandkids were at school.
- Janet was wondering when to break the news.
- I wondered how to respond to such an awkward question.

**if/whether CLAUSE**

- I wonder if we can afford a new car.
- I wonder if Holly is coming home for Christmas.
- I wonder whether we will arrive on time.

**if/whether CLAUSE [used to introduce a polite question]**

- I wonder if you would like to have dinner with me.
- I wonder if that was a good idea.
- I wonder whether we would be more comfortable indoors.
- I wonder whether we should call.

**wonder _____ be surprised, marvel**

**at OBJECT**

- We wondered at his reluctance to attend the meeting.
- Others wondered at Arianna's conversion to liberalism.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

- I don't wonder that he would be so upset.
- We didn't wonder that it was such a big deal for them.
- Do you wonder that they canceled their vacation?
- I don't wonder that she would feel that way.
work _____ cause to function at/near capacity

OBJECT

The coach really worked the defense today.
We worked the pump as hard as we could, getting all the water out of the basement.
During an emergency, your job is to work the phones.

work _____ knead, massage, cause to move by manipulation

OBJECT

Work the clay and water until it is a smooth paste.
The dentist worked the tooth back and forth to loosen it.
I worked my calf muscle until it stopped cramping.

PHRASAL VERBS

work around _____ avoid [a problem, situation] without eliminating it

We can work around your busy schedule.
The linebacker needs to work at running backward.
Jimmy needs to work on his spelling.
I’m working for Janey this week; she’s on vacation.
We can work you in to see the doctor at 3:45.
The author worked in a reference to her cat.
She worked off the last of her student loans.
Mike worked off 20 pounds in three months.
This drug doesn’t work on all allergy sufferers.
I’ll work on Eli to attend the conference.
The designer is working on a new website.
Artie is working on his old Ford truck.
Don works out at the gym three days a week.
How did the job interview work out?
They worked out a plan to repay the loan.
The bill works out to $8.53 for each of us.
Don’t work yourself up over nothing.
Go grocery shopping if you want to work up an appetite.
Will Lennie work up the courage to ask Barbara out?
Donna, can you work up the unemployment figures?
My son worked up to assistant manager in two years.

work out _____ exercise

Don works out at the gym three days a week.

work out _____ happen, develop

How did the job interview work out?

work out to _____ amount to

The bill works out to $8.53 for each of us.

work [one’s] _____ way along/into/out of/over/through/up/et c. move/proceed in a specified direction

The mountaineer worked his way along the cliff’s edge.
Jimmy worked his way up to DC-9 captain.
We hope that the young couple can work things out.
Gordon works like a horse, even on weekends.
The new page layout software works like a charm.
She’s working her fingers to the bone so her children have enough to eat.

work like a beaver/dog/horse work very hard

work [one’s] fingers to the bone work very hard

EXPRESSIONS
work | works • worked • have worked

**PRESENT**

I work we work
you work you work
he/she/it works they work
* He works at home one day a week.

**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am working we are working
you are working you are working
he/she/it is working they are working
* I’m working late tonight.

**PAST**

I worked we worked
you worked you worked
he/she/it worked they worked
* The phone worked the last time I used it.

**PAST PROGRESSIVE**

I was working we were working
you were working you were working
he/she/it was working they were working
* He was working the night shift.

**PRESENT PERFECT**

... have | has worked

**PAST PERFECT**

... had worked

**PAST PASSIVE**

I was worked we were worked
you were worked you were worked
he/she/it was worked they were worked
* The dough was worked until it was smooth and elastic.

**COMPLEMENTS**

* work labor, toil
  Don't bother us—we're working.

* work function properly [OF A MACHINE]
  The printer was finally working.
  Cell phones won't work here in the valley.
  I couldn't get the snow blower to work this morning.
  Are the lights working?

* work succeed [OF A PLAN, STRATEGY]
  The new marketing campaign seems to have worked.
  Our redesigned kitchen works really well.
  His get-rich-quick schemes never work.

* work ______ labor, toil, have [a job]
  ADVERB OF TIME
  My boyfriend works from nine to five.
  How many hours do you work in an average week?

  ADVERB OF PLACE
  Christopher works in book publishing.
  Jean is still working at a lawyer's office.
  I worked on a farm when I was younger.

  ADVERB OF MANNER
  They have been working pretty hard.
  The sculptor works in wood and metal.

* work ______ operate [a machine]
  OBJECT
  I couldn't use his car because I can't work a stick shift.
  Do you know how to work an abacus?
  Can you work this DVD player?
  The warehouse job involves working a forklift.

* work ______ solve [a puzzle, problem]
  OBJECT
  I couldn't work my daughter's algebra problems.
  Do you like to work crossword puzzles?
  Tim works Sudoku puzzles during his lunch hour.
### worry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I worry</td>
<td>I am worrying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you worry</td>
<td>you are worrying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it worries</td>
<td>he/she/it is worrying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* He worries too much.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past Progressive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I worried</td>
<td>I was worrying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you worried</td>
<td>you were worrying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it worried</td>
<td>he/she/it was worrying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* We worried that we were late for the movie.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... have</td>
<td>... had worried</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Future Progressive</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>... will worry</td>
<td>... will be worrying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... will have worried</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Past Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was worried</th>
<th>we were worried</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you were worried</td>
<td>you were worried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it was worried</td>
<td>they were worried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* I was worried by his odd response.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### COMPLEMENTS

**worry**  
be anxious/concerned

- There is good reason to worry.
- I never worry.
- “Don’t Worry, Be Happy”  
  [Bobby McFerrin song]

**worry**  
cause to be anxious/concerned

**OBJECT**

- The financial news is worrying everyone.
- Please don’t worry your mother now.
- The approaching storm front worried all of us.

**PASSIVE**

- The doctor was worried by his patient’s high fever.

**worry**  
be anxious/concerned

**ABOUT OBJECT**

- Floyd worries about his retirement fund.
- They are worried about the neighbor’s pit bull.
- We were worried about roof damage after the storm.

**ABOUT PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

- She worries about having colon cancer.
- He’s always worried about doing the right thing.
- We are worried about being able to afford health care.

**THAT-CLAUSE**

- I worry that we have overcommitted ourselves.
- Nobody worries that they have too much money.
- She’s worried that their horses aren’t getting enough exercise.
**Present**
- I wrap
- you wrap
- he/she/it wraps

**Present Progressive**
- I am wrapping
- you are wrapping
- he/she/it is wrapping

- *He always wraps gifts on Christmas Eve.*

- *We are wrapping presents in the spare bedroom.*

**Past**
- I wrapped
- you wrapped
- he/she/it wrapped

**Past Progressive**
- I was wrapping
- you were wrapping
- he/she/it was wrapping

- *I wrapped duct tape around the pipe.*

**Past Perfect**
- I had wrapped

**Past Perfect Progressive**
- you were wrapping
- *They were wrapping the children in blankets.*

**Future**
- I will wrap

**Future Perfect**
- you will be wrapping

- *I will wrap duct tape around the pipe.*

**Future Progressive**
- you will be wrapping

- *They will be wrapping the children in blankets.*

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**wrap**
- cover something by winding/folding

**wrap**
- cover by winding/folding

- material around it

**OBJECT**
- We need to wrap all of the wine glasses.
- I wrapped the baby while you get the car.

**PASSIVE**
- I wrapped my sore wrist as well as I could.

- The letters had been neatly wrapped in a lacy pink handkerchief.

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**wrap around**
- go around

**wrap sep. up**
- complete, finalize

**wrap [someone] up in**
- engross/
- absorb [someone] in

**EXPRESSIONS**

**wrap [one’s]/the [vehicle] around**
- drive into, usually at high speed

**wrap [someone] around [one’s] (little) finger**
- have total control over

- Derek wrapped his SUV around a tree.
- Delilah had Samson wrapped around her finger.
- His granddaughter can wrap him around her little finger.
**Present**

I write  
you write  
he/she/it writes

**Present Progressive**

I am writing  
you are writing  
he/she/it is writing

* He never writes anymore.

**Past**

I wrote  
you wrote  
he/she/it wrote

**Past Progressive**

I was writing  
you were writing  
he/she/it was writing

* Jane Austen wrote Emma before 1816.

**Present Perfect**  ... have | has written

**Past Perfect**  ... had written

**Future**  ... will write

**Future Progressive**  ... will be writing

**Future Perfect**  ... will have written

**Past Passive**

I was written  
you were written  
he/she/it was written

* The letter was written to a family friend.

---

**COMPLEMENTS**

**write** form letters/words with a pen/pencil/etc.

His arthritis made it hard for him to write.

Please write neatly.

The kids promised to write from camp as soon as they could.

People don’t write nearly as much as they used to.

**write** compose and send a letter

John and Abigail Adams wrote each other frequently.

John wrote Marcia a touching letter.

John wrote a touching letter to Marcia.

**write** compose and send [a letter]

John and Abigail Adams wrote each other frequently.

John wrote Marcia a touching letter.

John wrote a touching letter to Marcia.

Donizetti apparently wrote The Elixir of Love in three weeks.

Mark Twain wrote hilariously funny letters to the editor.

**write** put in writing

I wrote a check for $40.

The doctor wrote a prescription for an antibiotic.

Please write your name and address in the space provided.

**write** express/communicate in written form

Darwin wrote that species evolve over the course of generations through natural selection.

He wrote me that they might move back to California.

She wrote how the product should be introduced.

Teddy wrote his parents what he thought of the camp food.

“There was never a good war,” wrote Benjamin Franklin, “or a bad peace.”

---

**PHRASAL VERBS**

**write sep down** make a note/record of

The secretary wrote down everything she said.

**write sep off** give up on, cancel

The bank wrote off the $8,000 loan.

**write sep off** consider lost, hopeless, etc.

The hotel manager wrote off the missing towels.

Many fans write the Cubs off before September.

**write sep off** deduct from one’s taxes

We wrote the computer off as an itemized deduction.

**write sep out** spell out [a number, abbreviation]

Write out “621” as “six hundred twenty-one.”
yields, yielded, have yielded

**PRESENT**
- I yield
- you yield
- he/she/it yields
- we yield
- you are yielding
- he/she/it is yielding
- we are yielding

*The trees yield a good crop every year.*

**PAST**
- I yielded
- you yielded
- he/she/it yielded
- we yielded
- you were yielding
- he/she/it was yielding
- we were yielding

*I yielded the point.*

**PRESENT PERFECT**
- I have yielded
- you have yielded
- he/she/it has yielded
- we have yielded
- you have been yielding
- he/she/it has been yielding
- we have been yielding

**PAST PERFECT**
- I had yielded
- you had yielded
- he/she/it had yielded
- we had yielded
- you had been yielding
- he/she/it had been yielding
- we had been yielding

*The government was yielding to pressure.*

**FUTURE**
- I will yield
- you will yield
- he/she/it will yield
- we will yield

*The Illinois Country was yielded to the British in 1763.*

**PAST PASSIVE**
- The trees were yielding
- The army was yielding

**COMPLEMENTS**

*yield* give up, surrender

- The defenders will never yield.
- Lack of food and water will force them to yield.
- The senators opposed to the vote finally yielded.

*yield* give way under force/pressure

- If there is much flooding, our temporary dike will yield.
- I put my shoulder against the door and pushed until it yielded.

*yield* produce [an agricultural product]

- object
  - The soil yields a good harvest of wheat and barley.
  - The olive press yields up to 50 gallons of oil an hour.
  - Young trees won't yield much fruit for the first five years.

*yield* give [a result, finding]

- object
  - The survey yielded some surprising attitudes.
  - Searching the DNA database yielded two possible matches.
  - Different statistical methods can yield very different results.

*yield* generate [a financial return]

- object
  - This bond will yield its face value at the end of 10 years.
  - This security has yielded a constant dividend throughout the company's history.
  - The CD will yield two percent above the prime rate.

*yield* give as the result of a search

- object
  - A search of the suspect's car yielded hair from the victim.
  - A second search of her purse yielded the missing cell phone.
  - An afternoon spent panning for gold yielded two small flakes worth about 50 cents.

*yield* give up, surrender, grant

- object
  - He yielded the argument gracefully.
  - Will the speaker yield the floor?
  - The owners yielded to the worker's demands.
  - I finally yielded to my craving for ice cream.
  - The commandant yielded the fort to the British.
  - Cars entering the intersection must yield the right of way to any cars already in the intersection.
  - Senator Blather has yielded his seat to a younger, smarter, more energetic politician.
Irregular Verb Form Index

This index includes all irregular forms of the 152 irregular verbs in this book: the irregular past forms, as well as the irregular third-person singular present forms used by a few verbs. The past forms of some regular verbs have irregular spellings, and these forms are also included.

A form followed by an asterisk (*) is a past form that is spelled like the base form of the verb; except for read, the past form is also pronounced like the base form.

am be 52
are be 52
arisen arise 34
arose arise 34
ate eat 169
awoke awake 49
awoken awake 49

bade bid 61
beat* beat 54
beaten beat 54
became become 55
become* become 55
been be 52
began begin 56
begun begin 56
bent bend 59
bet* bet 60
bid* bid 61
bidden bid 61
bit bite 63
bitten bite 63
bled bleed 64
blew blow 66
blown blow 66
bore bear 53
born bear 53
borne bear 53
bought buy 74
bound bind 62
broadcast* broadcast 70
broke break 68
broken break 68
brought bring 69
built build 71
burnt burn 72
burst* burst 73

came come 95
cast* cast 78
caught catch 79
chose choose 84
chosen choose 84
clung cling 90
come* come 95

cost* cost 121
crept creep 125
cut* cut 128
dealt deal 131
did do 161
does do 161
done do 161
dove dive 159
drank drink 165
drawn draw 162
dreamt dream 163
drew draw 162
driven drive 166
drove drive 166
drunken drink 165
dug dig 152
eaten eat 169
fallen fall 197
fed feed 200
fell fall 197
felt feel 201
fit* fit 209
fled flee 211
flew fly 214
flown fly 214
flung fling 212
forbade forbid 216
forbidden forbid 216
forgave forgive 219
forgiven forgive 219
forgot forget 218
forgotten forget 218
fought fight 202
found find 206
froze freeze 221
frozen freeze 221
gave give 227
given give 227
goes go 228
gone go 228
get* get 226
gotten get 226
grew grow 231
ground grind 230
grown grow 231
had have 239
has have 239
heard hear 241
held hold 246
hid hide 243
hidden hide 243
hit* hit 245
hung hang 236
hurt* hurt 250
is be 52
kept keep 273
knelt kneel 275
knew know 278
knit* knit 276
known know 278
laid lay 282
lain lie 290
lay lie 290
leapt leap 285
led lead 283
left leave 287
left lent 288
let* let 289
lit light 292
lost lose 301
made make 304
meant mean 309
met meet 311
overcame overcome 330
overcome* overcome 330
paid pay 338
pled plead 346
proven prove 367
put* put 374
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Irregular Form</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quit</td>
<td>quit</td>
<td>seek</td>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rang</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>swing</td>
<td>504</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>381</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rid</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>415</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ridden</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>416</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rose</td>
<td>rise</td>
<td>418</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>421</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rung</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>417</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>said</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>426</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>450</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sank</td>
<td>sink</td>
<td>451</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>452</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saw</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>428</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sawn</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>425</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seen</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>428</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sent</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>433</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>436</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shaken</td>
<td>shake</td>
<td>438</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shaven</td>
<td>shave</td>
<td>440</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shed</td>
<td>shed</td>
<td>441</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shine</td>
<td>443</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shook</td>
<td>shake</td>
<td>438</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>444</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shown</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>446</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shrank</td>
<td>shrink</td>
<td>447</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shrinked</td>
<td>shrink</td>
<td>447</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>448</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slept</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>453</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slid</td>
<td>slide</td>
<td>454</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snuck</td>
<td>sneak</td>
<td>457</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td>432</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sought</td>
<td>seek</td>
<td>429</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spat</td>
<td>spit</td>
<td>465</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sped</td>
<td>speed</td>
<td>461</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>462</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spilt</td>
<td>spill</td>
<td>463</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spit</td>
<td>spit</td>
<td>465</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splitt</td>
<td>split</td>
<td>466</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoilt</td>
<td>spoil</td>
<td>467</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>460</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoken</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>460</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprang</td>
<td>spring</td>
<td>469</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spread</td>
<td>spread</td>
<td>468</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprung</td>
<td>spring</td>
<td>469</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spun</td>
<td>spin</td>
<td>464</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stank</td>
<td>stink</td>
<td>479</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stole</td>
<td>steal</td>
<td>475</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stolen</td>
<td>steal</td>
<td>475</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>470</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stricken</td>
<td>strike</td>
<td>484</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stridden</td>
<td>stride</td>
<td>483</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>striven</td>
<td>strive</td>
<td>486</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strode</td>
<td>stride</td>
<td>483</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strove</td>
<td>strive</td>
<td>486</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>struck</td>
<td>strike</td>
<td>484</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strung</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>485</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stuck</td>
<td>stick</td>
<td>477</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stung</td>
<td>sting</td>
<td>478</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stunk</td>
<td>stink</td>
<td>479</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sung</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>450</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunk</td>
<td>sink</td>
<td>451</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>503</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweat</td>
<td>sweat</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swept</td>
<td>sweep</td>
<td>501</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swollen</td>
<td>swell</td>
<td>502</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swore</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td>499</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sworn</td>
<td>swear</td>
<td>499</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swum</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>503</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swung</td>
<td>swing</td>
<td>504</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taken</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>505</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taught</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>507</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thought</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>513</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>threw</td>
<td>throw</td>
<td>515</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thrown</td>
<td>throw</td>
<td>515</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thrust</td>
<td>thrust</td>
<td>516</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>told</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>509</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>took</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>505</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tore</td>
<td>tear</td>
<td>508</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>torn</td>
<td>tear</td>
<td>508</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td>525</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upheld</td>
<td>uphold</td>
<td>527</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upset</td>
<td>upset</td>
<td>528</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wed</td>
<td>wed</td>
<td>544</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>went</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>228</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wept</td>
<td>weep</td>
<td>545</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wet</td>
<td>wet</td>
<td>546</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woke</td>
<td>wake</td>
<td>536</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woken</td>
<td>wake</td>
<td>536</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>won</td>
<td>win</td>
<td>547</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wore</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>542</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worn</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>542</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound</td>
<td>wind</td>
<td>548</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wove</td>
<td>weave</td>
<td>543</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woven</td>
<td>weave</td>
<td>543</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>written</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>554</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>554</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Big Book of English Verbs Exercise and Self-Assessment CD-ROM is a unique program that will help you improve your English verb skills.

INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS
This product should be installed on your computer so the CD-ROM need not be present in your drive to work. It is designed to run on a single standalone computer.

PC
To start: Insert the CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive. The CD-ROM installation should launch automatically once it is inserted. If the installation does not launch automatically, do the following: Double-click MY COMPUTER. Find and open your CD-ROM disk drive. Double-click on SETUP or SETUP.EXE.

The installer will copy all necessary files to your hard drive, as well as create a Program Group with access to the main application. No system modifications are made other than the file copy and program group processes described above.

Once the program files are installed, click on the Big Book icon on your desktop or use the START menu and select Programs/McGraw Hill/English Verbs.

Apple Macintosh
To start: Insert the CD-ROM into your CD-ROM drive. A window will open, showing the contents of the CD. Drag the program icon to your Applications folder. For easy access, create an alias of the program on your desktop or on your dock.

SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS
PC
Microsoft Windows 2000, XP, Vista
Intel Pentium III processor (450 MHz recommended) or better
256 MB RAM
Display capable of 800 x 600 resolution and 16-bit color
Windows-compatible sound card

Apple Macintosh
Mac® OS X 10.3.9, 10.4.x, 10.5.x
Power PC processor (G3 or higher recommended), any Intel Processor
256 MB RAM
This CD-ROM is intended for use by a single student on a standalone computer.

TROUBLESHOOTING

Note to users who receive the error message “The error ELNTFCASTEROOR in module. Interface not supported”
Issue: This error message is displayed when attempting to execute a Zinc Projector. This occurs because Zinc Projectors require the Microsoft MDAC drivers to be present on the user's system to function correctly. The MDAC Drivers are used by the Projector to evoke Database Connectivity. (They are still required even if your Projector does not use Database functionality.)
Solution: The MDAC drivers are installed by default across 99.9% of systems from Win98SE upward. In very rare cases, however, some OEM licenses do not include them. In this case, they can be downloaded and installed, completely free, from the Microsoft website.

Note to Windows 2000 users

COPYRIGHT NOTICE
Copyright © 2009 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved.
Printed in the United States of America. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.